Class D21
Book .A54R
Copyright No.

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

499
348

Progressive Map, No. 1.

A

MANUAL

OF

GENERAL HISTORY:

BEING AN OUTLINE HISTORY OF THE WORLD
FROM THE CREATION TO THE
PRESENT TIME.

FULLY ILLUSTRATED WITH MAPS.

FOR THE USE OF

COLLEGES, HIGH-SCHOOLS, ACADEMIES, ETC.

BY

JOHN J. ANDERSON, A.M.,

Author of a "Grammar School History of the United States," a "Pictorial School History of the United States," a "History of England," "The Historical Reader" "The United States Reader," etc., etc.

NEW YORK:
CLARK & MAYNARD, PUBLISHERS,
5 BARCLAY STREET,
1874.

Anderson's Historical Series.

A Junior Class History of the United States. Illustrated with hundreds of portraits, views, maps, etc. Price, $1.00.

A Grammar School History of the United States. Annotated; and illustrated with numerous portraits and views, and with more than forty maps, many of which are colored. 300 pp. 16mo. Price, $1.20.

A Pictorial School History of the United States. Fully illustrated with maps, portraits, vignettes, &c. 404 pp. 12mo. Price, $1.65.

A Manual of General History. Illustrated with beautifully colored maps showing the changes in the political divisions of the world, and giving the location of important places. 419 pp. 12mo. Price, $2.00.

A School History of England. Illustrated with colored maps showing the geographical changes in the country at different periods. 300 pp. 12mo. Price, $1.60.

Anderson's Bloss's Ancient History. Illustrated with colored maps and a chart. 445 pp. 12mo. Price, $2.00.

The Historical Reader, embracing selections in prose and verse, from standard writers of Ancient and Modern History; with a Vocabulary of Difficult Words, and Biographical and Geographical Indexes. 12mo. 544 pp. Price, $1.80.

The United States Reader, embracing selections from eminent American historians, orators, statesmen and poets, with explanatory observations, notes, etc. The whole arranged so as to form a complete class-manual of United States History, to which are added a Vocabulary of Difficult Words and a Biographical Index of Authors. 12mo. 414 pp. Price, $1.50.

A School History of Rome. In preparation.

A School History of Greece. In preparation.

A School History of France. In preparation.

An Introductory School History of the United States. From 1492 to 1875. A class-book for advanced grades on the catechetical plan. Illustrated with maps. 195 pp. 16mo. Price, 60 cents.

A Common School History of the United States. On the catechetical plan. Illustrated with maps. 350 pp. 16mo. Price, $1.00.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1874 by
JOHN J. ANDERSON,
in the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington, D. C.

-42

TO TEACHERS.

This work is designed to supply what the author believes to be a great want among school text-books at the present time—namely, a convenient manual of general history, with the necessary geographical and chronological accompaniments. The plan pursued corresponds with that of the author's popular school histories of the United States, the situation of the different places mentioned in the text being shown on *maps*, specially prepared for this work. These maps, as far as it was found possible in so elementary a work, also present the progressive changes in the various political divisions of which the history successively treats. In connection with them is given a system of *map-questions*, by which the pupil's attention is called to the exact location of places just previous to their occurrence in the History.

The value of this plan has never been disputed by any teacher or student by whom it has been employed, experience clearly showing, that by associating events with places, both are more permanently impressed on the mind.

The questions at the bottom of the pages are chiefly designed to draw attention to single facts, or to very brief statements; those at the end of the sections, called *Review Questions*, associate facts belonging to the same individual, place, or train of events, and are thus of a topical character. This system of exercises

affords all that is needed to give the pupil that power and readiness of grouping, describing, and relating, in which the chief value of historical study consists.

The arrangement of matter followed is that by *countries*, rather than by *periods*, the author being of opinion, that the latter tends to confuse very much the mind of a student who has not already acquired a pretty good outline of the history of each country described. By dividing the whole subject into the periods of *Ancient, Mediæval, and Modern* history, the awkward and unsatisfactory method has been avoided of keeping the pupil's attention, while he is studying the history of one country, entirely away from the contemporaneous history of other nations. This is still further obviated by the several *tables of contemporaneous events* interspersed through the work. Events that are connected with the history of several countries are referred to briefly in each, so that they may be impressed upon the mind more clearly, by being viewed from each as a stand-point.

The *indicated pronunciation* of proper names, which in the study of general history (particularly of ancient history) are so apt to be mispronounced, will be found a source of great convenience to both teacher and pupil, to whom it is not always possible to consult such vocabularies as contain these words, and who, therefore, generally acquire, by habit, incorrect methods of pronunciation, very difficult afterward to be abandoned. The authorities employed are *Webster's and Worcester's Dictionaries, and Lippincott's Pronouncing Gazetteer.*

Being convinced of the great importance of chronology, the author has inserted *dates* very freely, but generally so as to form no essential part of the narra-

tive,—in order that, while the pupil need not be expected to make these dates a matter of special study, he may obtain, by keeping them in view, a definite idea of the events in their order of occurrence, and of the intervals of time by which they are separated.—Teachers need not be admonished against the folly of requiring dates to be memorized apart from the narrative to which they relate.

The maps should be used freely, being consulted constantly, and occasionally drawn on the blackboard, either by the teacher, or one of the pupils. No recitation should be permitted without a reference to them. In this way, the conceptions of the pupils will be made clear and accurate, the eyes as well as the ears being called into requisition.

Trusting that this work will receive the generous patronage and consideration awarded to his other historical publications, the author, with these few remarks and suggestions, commits it to the impartial examination of his colaborers in the cause of education.

The new edition of this work brings the narrative down to the present time (1874). Copious notes have also been inserted at the end of the Sections, with the view to explain and illustrate the text; and as these consist of extracts from the works of eminent historians, the titles of which are given, they will prove, it is thought, useful in calling attention to, and awakening an interest in, these standard publications.

MAPS.

PAGE

1. The Persian Empire under Darius (Progressive Map, No. 1), *Frontispiece.*
2. Ancient Monarchies.. 12
3. Ancient Greece (Progressive Map, No. 2)..... *facing* 33
4. Asia Minor..... 41
5. The Retreat of the Ten Thousand 47
6. The Marches of Alexander the Great..... 52
7. Ancient Italy (Progressive Map, No. 3)..... *facing* 67
8. Vicinity of Rome..... 68
9. The Roman Empire under Augustus (Progressive Map, No. 4)..... *facing* 104
10. The Barbaric Monarchies at the commencement of the reign of Justinian (Progressive Map, No. 5)..... *facing* 131
11. The Empire of Charlemagne and the Contemporary Monarchies (Progressive Map, No. 6)..... ...*facing* 142
12. Great Britain and Ireland..... 158
13. France, and the neighboring Countries..... 188
14. Spain and Portugal..... 226
15. The Places referred to in the Modern History of Europe (Progressive Map, No. 7)..... *facing* 232
16. Discoveries and Explorations in North America..... 358
17. South America (Progressive Map, No. 8)..... *facing* 366
18. Part of New Jersey and Pennsylvania..... 372
19. The United States at the close of the Revolution (Progressive Map, No. 9)..... *facing* 374
20. The Niagara Frontier..... 377
21. Taylor's Campaign.. 380
22. Scott's Campaign 381
23. Part of Maryland and Virginia..... 384

CONTENTS.

PAGE

INTRODUCTION 9

PART I. ANCIENT HISTORY.

SECTION I.—The Most Ancient Nations 11
Babylonia or Chaldea (12); Assyria (14); Media (16); Lydia (17); Ancient Egypt (19); Ethiopia (24); Syria and Palestine (25); Chronological Recapitulation (28).

SECTION II.—Persia, Greece, and Macedonia 31
Persia (31); Greece (33); Macedonian Empire (49); Chronological Recapitulation (64).

SECTION III.—Rome 67
Samnite War (75); Punic Wars (77); Pergamus (84); The Gracchi (86); War against Jugurtha (88); Social War (89); Mithridatic War (89); Civil War of Marius and Sylla (90); Servile War (91); Jewish history (92); Conspiracy of Catiline (93); First Triumvirate (93); Second Civil War (95); Second Triumvirate (99); Chronological Recapitulation (100); Table of Contemporaneous Events (102).

SECTION IV.—The Roman Empire 04
Augustus (104); Tiberius (105); Caligula (106); Claudius (106); Nero (107); Galba (108); Otho (108); Vitellius (108); Vespasian (109); Titus (109); Domitian (110); The Five Good Emperors (111); Commodus (113); Pertinax (114); Septimius Severus (114); Caracalla (115); Macrinus (115); Heliogabalus (116); Alexander Severus (116); Maximin (116); Gordian (117); Decius (117); Valerian (117); Gallienus (118); Claudius (119); Aurelian (119); Tacitus (120); Diocletian (120); Constantine (121); Julian the Apostate (122); Jovian (123); Theodosius the Great (123); Honorius (124); Valentinian III. (125); Maximus (125); Romulus Augustulus (127); Chronological Recapitulation (127).

PART II. MEDIÆVAL HISTORY.

SECTION I.—The Eastern Empire..... 131
SECTION II.—The Dark Ages..... 142
The Franks (142); The Normans (146); The Saxons in Britain (147); The Saracens (149); The Feudal System (153); Chronological Recapitulation (154).
SECTION III.—England in the Middle Ages..... 157
Norman Kings (160); The Plantagenets (163); Chronological Recapitulation (184).
SECTION IV.—France during the Middle Ages..... 187
Branch of Valois (196); Chronological Recapitulation (202).
SECTION V.—The Crusades..... 205
First Crusade (206); Second Crusade (207); Third Crusade (208); Fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh Crusades (209); Influence of the Crusades (210); Chronological Recapitulation (211).
SECTION VI.—Central and Southern Europe during the Middle Ages..... 213
Germany (213); The Hanseatic League (216); Switzerland (219); Italy (220); Spain (225); Portugal (227); Chronological Recapitulation (228); Table of Contemporaneous Events (230).

PART III. MODERN HISTORY.

SECTION I.—England..... 232
The Tudors (232); The Stuart Family (245); The Commonwealth (254); House of Brunswick (267); Chronological Recapitulation (281).
SECTION II.—France..... 285
House of Bourbon (295); Chronological Recapitulation (329).
SECTION III.—European States..... 325
Germany (325); Austria (330); Prussia (331); Poland (333); Holland and Belgium (335); Sweden, Norway, and Denmark (337); Russia (340); Switzerland (343); Italy (344); Spain (346); Portugal (348); Turkey (349); Greece (352); Chronological Recapitulation (353); Table of Contemporaneous Events (357).
SECTION IV.—American History..... 359
Discoveries and Settlements (359); United States (369); Mexico (391); Central America (392); West Indies (393); Chronological Recapitulation (396).

INTRODUCTION.

HISTORY AND CHRONOLOGY—THEIR DIVISIONS, SOURCES, ETC.

1. HISTORY is a narration of the events which have happened among mankind, including an account of the rise and fall of nations, as well as of other great changes which have affected the political and social condition of the human race.

2. *Chronology* is a department of history which treats of the exact time, or date, of each event, with reference to some fixed time, called an *era* or *epoch*. The epoch usually employed in our times among Christian nations for reckoning dates, is the birth of Christ, called the *Christian Era.** All dates preceding this are marked B. C., that is, *Before Christ;* and all subsequent to it are marked A. D., that is, *Anno Domini*, which means *In the year of our Lord;* that is, *After the birth of Christ.*

3. Previous to the fifth century B. C., there are but few dates that can be fixed with tolerable certainty; that is to say, no uninterrupted series of dates can be accurately and positively assigned to events which are known to have occurred. In the earliest ages all dates are uncertain, authorities differing very much with regard to them, from

* This era is, however, commonly placed four years after the time at which the birth of Christ is supposed to have taken place.

INTRODUCTION.—**1.** What is history?
2. What is chronology? What is an era or epoch? What epoch is usually employed? What does B. C. mean? A. D.?
3. When do dates become reliable?

the absence of reliable information respecting these very remote periods.

4. History is best divided into *Ancient*, *Mediæval*, and *Modern*. Ancient history is considered to end 476 A. D., the date of the destruction of the western division of the Roman Empire. Mediæval history, or the history of the Middle Ages, extends from 476 A. D. to about the time of the fall of the eastern division of the Roman Empire, in 1453. All subsequent history belongs to the third division. This mode of dividing the subject is, however, entirely arbitrary.

5. The most important facts to be learned in history are those that refer to the progress of mankind in civilization, —in the arts, sciences, literature, political freedom, social culture, and religious truth. Whatever events have no immediate bearing upon these, though often affording matter for curious reflection and interesting research, are of secondary importance.

6. The chief *sources of ancient history* are the Sacred Scriptures of the Old and New Testament, which are the compositions of inspired writers, the works of ancient writers not divinely inspired, and ancient monuments, medals, coins, inscriptions, etc.*

* "The nations of antiquity made use to a very large extent of this mode of commemorating events. In Egypt, in Assyria, in Babylonia, in Armenia, in Persia, in Phœnicia, in Lycia, in Greece, in Italy, historical events of importance were from time to time recorded in this way—sometimes on the natural rock, which was commonly smoothed for the purpose; sometimes on obelisks or pillars; frequently upon the walls of temples, palaces, and tombs; occasionally upon metal plates, or upon tablets and cylinders of fine clay—hard and durable materials, all of them capable of lasting hundreds or even thousands of years, and in many cases continuing to the present day. * * * * The histories of Egypt and Assyria have been in a great measure reconstructed from the inscriptions of the two countries. The great inscription of Behistun has thrown much light upon the early history of Persia. That on the Delphic tripod has illustrated the most glorious period of Greece. It is now generally felt that inscriptions are among the most important of ancient records, and that their intrinsic value makes up to a great extent for their comparative scantiness."—RAWLINSON.

4. How is history divided? At what date does ancient history end? Mediæval history? What other division is there?

5. What are the most important facts of history?

6. What are the chief sources of ancient history?

PART I.

ANCIENT HISTORY.

SECTION I.

The most Ancient Nations.

Extending from the Earliest Ages to the Foundation of the Persian Empire by Cyrus the Great.

1. The exact date of the Creation and Fall of Man cannot be fixed with any degree of certainty, neither can the interval of time between the Creation and the Deluge be ascertained. The estimates of different chronologists as to these facts vary so widely that they seem worthy of no credence whatever. The difficulty of assigning the exact time of those events does not, however, at all diminish the evidence of their actual occurrence.

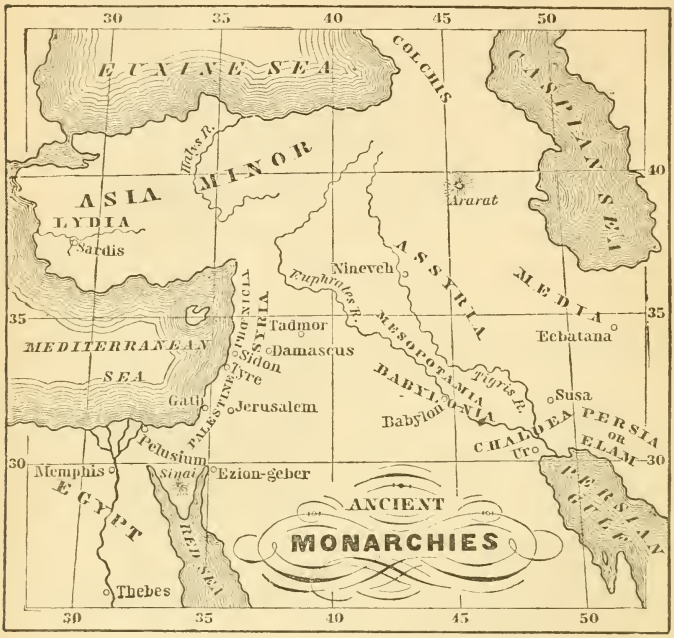
2. After the dispersion of mankind at Bā'bel, it is supposed that the descendants of Shem, the eldest of Noah's sons, went to the east and populated Asia; those of Ham, with few exceptions, passed into Africa; and those of Jā'phet journeyed to the west and occupied different parts of Europe.* The *oldest monarchies*, of which history gives us any account, are those of Babylo'nia and Assy'ria in Asia, and those of Egypt and Ethiō'pia in Africa.

* *See Notes* 1 *and* 2, *at the end of the Section.*

Map Questions.—(See Map, page 12.) What rivers unite and flow into the Persian Gulf? What region situated between them? Where was Babylonia? Assyria? Chaldea? Persia or Elam? Media? What city in Babylonia? In Chaldea? In Assyria? In Media? Where was Susa? What river tributary to the Euxine or Black Sea? What monarchy in Asia Minor? Its capital? What regions east of the Mediterranean Sea? Principal cities? What two great cities on the Nile River? What port at its eastern mouth? What port at the head of the Red Sea? What celebrated mountain near to it? What region east of the Euxine Sea?

Section I.—**1.** Can the exact date of the creation and fall of man be fixed?

2. What events immediately followed the dispersion of mankind? Whither did the sons of Noah migrate? Which are the oldest monarchies?



Babylonia or Chaldea.

3. The city of Bab'ylon was founded by *Nimrod*, the son of Cush, and grandson of Ham. It was situated on the river Euphra'tēs, and became the capital of *Babylo'nia* or *Chalde'a*,—a region lying along that river, and originally called *Shi'nar*. [*See Note 3, end of the Section.*]

4. Nimrod is described in the Scriptures as a "mighty hunter," and is supposed to be the same as the *Be'lus* of whom the historians speak in connection with the early history of this country, or the *Bel*, afterward worshipped as a god by the people. The constellation Ori'on is thought to represent this celebrated hero.

3. By whom was Babylon founded? How situated? Of what was it the capital?
4. Who was Nimrod?

5. **Babylon** is supposed to have been built about twenty-two centuries B. C. It was in its early history a city of minor importance, *Ur* and others being capital cities while it remained a mere village. The Chaldees (*kal-deez'*) seem to have occupied at first the shores of the Persian Gulf, and to have afterward spread northward, until about 1700 B. C., when the seat of government was fixed at Babylon.*

6. The minute history of this monarchy during about a thousand years from this date cannot be given; neither can its relations to the neighboring kingdoms of Assy'ria and E'lam, during this period, be positively defined. The explorations made in recent years among the ruins found in this whole region (called *Mesopota'mia*) have thrown much light upon many questions pertaining to its history; but an exact statement of the particular results reached would be out of place in this elementary work.

7. The line of Babylonian kings becomes exactly known to us from the year 747 B. C. The "Canon of Ptolemy," an astronomical work of the great geographer, gives us from this date the succession of monarchs to 330 B. C., when Babylon became a part of the dominions of Alexander the Great. The inscriptions discovered among the ruins confirm the truth of this work.

8. The date of the commencement of the reign of Nabonas'sar is precisely fixed by the record of certain astronomical phenomena, made by Ptolemy. This date, called the *Era of Nabonassar*, is very famous in history. It is the year 747 B. C. (more particularly, Wednesday, February 26th of that year).

9. About 680 B. C. Babylon became subject to Assyria, but subsequently regained its independence; and under

* *See Note* 4, *end of the Section.*

5. When was Babylon built? What is said of the Chaldees?
6. To what extent is the early history of Babylonia known? What region was called Mesopotamia? Recent discoveries therein?
7. When does the exact history of the Babylonian kings begin? What does the "Canon of Ptolemy" make known to us? How confirmed?
8. What is the Era of Nabonassar? How is it fixed?
9. When was Babylon subject to Assyria? Give the history of Nebuchadnezzar?

the celebrated monarch *Nebuchadnez'zar*, acquired very great power. This king defeated the king of Egypt, subdued *Jehoi'akim*, king of Judah, and in consequence of repeated revolts, destroyed Jerusalem, and put an end to the kingdom of Judah under *Zedeki'ah*, carrying its inhabitants captives to Babylon (588 B. C.) He afterward turned his attention to the embellishment of his capital, and erected in Babylon many edifices of wonderful extent and magnificence.

10. After his death the Babylonian empire declined; and in 538 B. C., during the reign of *Belshaz'zar*,* as recorded in the Scriptures, the city was taken by Cyrus, king of the Persians; and Babylonia thus became a Persian province.

Assyria.

11. Of the three countries that occupied the plain of Mesopotamia, Assyria was the most modern. It was a very fertile and populous region, and at the height of its prosperity was a powerful empire. That it had advanced greatly in civilization and the arts, is proved by the vast ruins which remain, and which in recent years have been diligently explored.

12. The inscriptions discovered among these ruins have shown that very much of the history, previously received upon the credit of the Greek historians, is quite erroneous. The statements, however, of the Babylonian writer *Bero'sus*, who lived about 268 B. C., and whose account coincides very nearly with the Scriptures, are proved to be correct.†

13. Nineveh, the capital city of Assyria, built on the Tigris River, and once among the most splendid cities of the world, was, according to the Scriptures, built by Ash'-

* More probably *Nabona'dius* and his son *Belshaz'zar*. † *See Note 5, end of Section.*

10. What followed the death of Nebuchadnezzar? When and by whom was Babylon taken?
11. What was the situation of Assyria? How is it described? Evidences of its civilization?
12. What have the inscriptions shown? What is said of Berosus?
13. Nineveh—its situation and origin? When did it rise to greatness?

ur, after the foundation of Babylon (*Genesis*, x. 11). That it rose to greatness after Babylon is stated by Berosus and proved by the inscriptions.

14. Little is known of Assyria previous to 770 B. C., when *Pul* invaded Palestine, but was bought off by *Men'ahem*, king of Israel (2 *Kings*, xv. 19, 20). In 738 B. C., *Tig'lath Pile'ser*, another king of Assyria, conquered Syria, and invading Palestine, carried away captive many of the Jews.

15. His successor *Shal-man-e'ser* also invaded Palestine, and laid siege to Sama'ria, the capital of the kingdom of Israel, which after a time surrendered (721 B. C.), but probably to *Sar'gon*, the successor of Shalmaneser; since such seems to be the testimony of the monuments (2 *Kings*, xviii. 9, 10).

16. *Sen-nach'e-rib*, the son and successor of Sargon, obtained possession of Babylon, and made two expeditions against Judea, in the first of which he carried away 200,000 of the Jews captive; but in the second he failed entirely, his army having been destroyed by a pestilence, miraculously sent by God to preserve the Jews. This was during the reign of the Jewish king *Hez-e-ki'ah*. Sennacherib was a short time afterward slain by his sons.

17. The last great king of Assyria was *E'sar-had'don*, son of Sennacherib, who reigned also over Babylon, at which he sometimes held his court; bricks bearing his name having been recently found among the ruins of that city. His conquests extended over a large part of Western Asia, and he claimed authority over Egypt and Ethiopia. *Manas'seh*, king of Judah, was brought as a prisoner before him at Babylon; but after a few years' detention was restored to his throne, by the clemency of the Assyrian monarch. The Babylonian reign of Esar-haddon lasted

14. First well-established date in Assyrian history? Date of Tiglath Pileser's invasion of Palestine? What conquests did he make?
15. Give an account of Shalmaneser's invasion?
16. What expeditions were undertaken by Sennacherib? Their results?
17. Who was the last great king of Assyria? His conquests? What Jewish king was made prisoner by him? Duration of his reign?

thirteen years (from 680 B. C. to 667 B. C.), but how long he reigned subsequently at Nineveh cannot be positively ascertained.

18. After this splendid reign Assyria rapidly declined, and was frequently attacked by the Medes, then rising into power. In 606 B. C. (or 625 B. C.), Nin'eveh was taken and destroyed by these people, under their king *Cy-ax'a-rēs.* The last king, *Sar'acus,* called *Sar-dan-a-pā'lus* by the Greeks, finding that he could make no successful resistance, set fire to his palace, and perished, with all belonging to him, in the conflagration. Assyria then became a Median province, and afterward, with Babylonia, formed one of the divisions of the Persian empire.

19. Nineveh, in the time of Herod'otus, had ceased to exist; and when Xen'ophon passed it (401 B. C.), during the expedition of which he gives an account, the very name had been forgotten, though he testifies to the extent of the deserted city, stating that the height of the ruined walls was 150 feet. [*See Note* 6, *end of Section.*]

Media.

20. The fall of Nin'eveh produced a great change in the condition of Western Asia. Babylon became independent under a line of native kings, who in a short time raised their country to a very high degree of power and prosperity. The *Medes,* then just risen into power, rapidly overran and subdued the whole region from the Caspian Sea to the *Hā'lys River,* and made war upon *Lyd'ia,* a country lying farther west.

21. These people, resembling the Persians in origin and language, coming from the east, had settled in the region lying immediately south of the Caspian Sea, and were at

18. What was the subsequent history of Assyria? When and by whom was Nineveh taken? What was done by Saracus, or Sardanapalus? What became of Assyria?

19. What is said of the subsequent history of Nineveh?

20. What was the effect of the fall of Nineveh? What was accomplished by the Medes?

21. Who were the Medes? How did their power commence?

first subject to the Assyrians; but about 708 B. C., the various tribes united and threw off the Assyrian yoke, choosing a king named *Dej'o-ces*, and making *Ecbat'ana* their capital.

22. His son *Phraor'tes* subdued the Persians, and at his death was succeeded by Cyaxares, who spread his conquests so widely, as to be considered the founder of the GREAT MEDIAN EMPIRE. He was succeeded by Astyages (*as-ti'ah-jēz*), whose daughter married a Persian prince, and gave birth to *Cyrus*, afterward called *The Great*. Cyrus, being bold and aspiring, put himself at the head of the Persian tribes, and marching with a large army into Media, deposed Astyages, and uniting the Median and Persian dominions under himself as monarch, thus founded the GREAT PERSIAN EMPIRE.

LYDIA.

23. *Lyd'ia* was situated in the western part of Asia Minor, and was especially noted for its fruitful soil and great mineral wealth, its chief river, the Pacto'lus, abounding in gold, which was also found in the neighboring mines. Hence the Lydians soon became corrupted by luxury and vicious indulgences. They are supposed to have settled in Asia Minor about 720 B. C. The early history of this people is fabulous and unreliable.

24. During about two centuries the Lydian monarchy occupied a prominent position in the history of Western Asia; and when Cyaxares the Mede overran this part of the country, he was completely checked in his career of conquest by the Lydians under their king, Alyattes (*ā-le-at'tēz*); and after a war of six years, in which he had been often defeated by the Lydians, Cyaxares retired beyond the

22. Conquests of Phraortes and Cyaxares? By whom was the Median Empire founded? By whom and in what manner was the Persian Empire founded? Origin of Cyrus the Great?

23. Where was Lydia situated? For what noted? Sources of its wealth? When did the Lydians settle in Asia Minor? Their early history?

24. Duration of the Lydian power? What war during the reign of Alyattes?

Ha'lys, the boundary of the Lydian kingdom at that time.

25. This war between the Lydians and Medes is said to have been terminated in a singular way. Their two great armies had come to an engagement (610 B. C.*), when, in the midst of the battle a total eclipse of the sun occurred, which so alarmed the soldiers that they immediately retired from the conflict. The two monarchs thereupon concluded not only a peace, but a firm treaty of alliance with each other; and peace continued to subsist between these two powers until the time of Cyrus, about half a century afterward. [*See Note 7, end of Section.*]

26. Alyattes is said to have reigned about forty years after the close of this war, and to have constructed a vast monument, inferior only to the great pyramids of Egypt. Its base was formed of immense blocks of stone, the structure above being a great mound of earth. This mound has been explored in modern times, and a chamber found within, formed of solid blocks of marble, which gave evidence of having been rifled of its contents long before. It was without doubt the tomb of Alyattes.

27. This king was succeeded (about 568 B. C.) by his son Crœsus (*kre'sus*), noted for his immense wealth, being by far the richest monarch of his time. He is also distinguished as the last monarch of Lydia; for, having made war upon Cyrus the king of Persia, he was entirely defeated; and his capital Sardis being taken by the enemy, he was made a prisoner, and condemned by Cyrus to be burnt alive upon a funeral pyre, but was afterward released. "Thus, within a very few weeks, from being a powerful and prosperous monarch, ruler over thirteen nations, he

* This is Grote's estimate. According to Pliny, 584 B. C.

25. In what remarkable way was this war terminated? Date of the battle? How long did peace subsist?
26. How long did Alyattes reign? What singular structure did he erect?
27. By whom was he succeeded? For what is Crœsus noted? His fate? What became of Lydia?

was reduced to the condition of a captive and a beggar, dependent upon the will of a despot whose anger he had provoked." Lydia consequently became a province of the Persian Empire.

Ancient Egypt.

28. Egypt is one of the most interesting countries described in history, being greatly celebrated for its antiquity, its remarkable civilization, singular institutions, and great power and influence in the ancient world. Its early history is involved in fable; but it seems to be settled that the first king was called Me'nes, and that he founded the famous city of Mem'phis, although the time at which he lived is variously estimated by chronologists. (Probably about 2700 B. C.) [*See Note* 8, *end of Section.*]

29. In the third century B. C., *Ma-ne'tho,* an Egyptian priest, compiled a history of his country, in which he divided the period from Menes to the final loss of independence (about the middle of the fourth century) into 30 dynasties. Although this work itself has perished, chronological abstracts from it are preserved in other ancient writings; and these, together with the allusions found in the Bible, and the accounts given by Herodotus and other ancient writers, with what has been gleaned, in modern times, from the hieroglyphic inscriptions on the monuments, constitute all the sources of ancient Egyptian history.

30. The history of the first seventeen dynasties, occupying a period of about twelve centuries, is very much involved in obscurity, the monuments only affording a few scattered facts and dates. The most famous of the pyramids are supposed to have been erected during the fourth

---

28. How is Egypt distinguished? Its early history? The first king?
29. What are the sources of Egyptian history? How many dynasties are enumerated by Manetho?
30. During what period is the history unknown or uncertain? Date of the Pyramids? What is said of Memphis? The *Hyksos?*

dynasty; in which period the city of Memphis attained a very high degree of splendor, and the state of civilization of the people was quite advanced. The most noted event was the invasion and conquest of the country by a foreign people from the East, who ruled probably from the fifteenth to the eighteenth dynasty, under the name of the *Hyk'sōs*, or "Shepherd Kings."

31. These kings ruled in Lower Egypt as military despots, and very much oppressed the native people. It was during the reign of one of these, as it is now believed, that Joseph was made the chief minister, and that Jacob and his family were allowed to settle in the land of Goshen. It is supposed that they remained in Egypt a little more than two centuries, and that the exodus took place about 1652 B. C., during the rule of the 17th dynasty, which appears to have been of Assyrian origin.

32. During the next three dynasties, the Egyptians enjoyed an independence from foreign rule, the first monarch of the eighteenth dynasty having expelled the Shepherd Kings and reinstated the native sovereigns. Some of the greatest of the Egyptian monarchs belong to this period. The most noted were *Thot'mēs III.*, who subdued Syria, and reduced Nineveh and perhaps Babylon to his sway (1444 B. C.); Thotmes IV., who caused the Great Sphinx to be constructed; and *Ra-me'sēs I.* and *II.*, the latter of whom, called *Sesos'tris* by the Greeks, was a very great conqueror, and adorned both Egypt and Nubia with many splendid temples and other edifices. The exploits of these monarchs are recorded in pictures and hieroglyphs on the monuments.

33. *She'shonk*, called *Shi'shak* in the Bible (1 *Kings*, xiv. 25), attacked Judah and took Jerusalem, despoiling it of all its treasures (971 B. C.) This event is depicted on

31. Where and how long did the Hyksos rule? At what period are the Israelites supposed to have settled in Egypt? When did they leave it?

32. When did Egypt become independent? What is said of Thotmes III., Thotmes IV., and Rameses I. and II.? How are their exploits recorded?

monuments found in the great temple at Karnak. *Tirha'kah*, of the 25th dynasty, came to the assistance of the Jewish king Hezekiah against Sennacherib, the dreadful destruction of whose army has been already mentioned. This dynasty was of Ethiopian origin; and hence Tirhakah is called in the Bible the *King of Ethiopia*.

34. The 26th dynasty was commenced by *Psammet'ichus I.*, who by means of Greek mercenaries acquired an absolute power over the whole country. His successor, *Neka'o*, or *Ne'chos II.*, attempted the construction of a canal across the isthmus of Su'ez, but desisted after 120,000 men had perished in the undertaking.* After defeating Josiah, king of Judah, he was himself defeated by Nebuchadnezzar, (605 B. C.) A-mā'sis, virtually the last of this dynasty, had a long and prosperous reign; but having incurred the displeasure of Camby'sēs, king of Persia, his son and successor, *Psammen'itus*, after a brief reign of six months, encountered the Persian host, and was defeated at *Pelu'sium*, 525 B. C. Thus Egypt came under the power of Cambyses, who treated the people with very great cruelty.

35. During the remaining dynasties, from the battle of Pelusium to 350 B. C., Egypt was engaged in a constant struggle with the Persians for its independence, which it often regained, but as often lost. In these efforts it was greatly assisted by the Greeks. Its final conquest by the Persians took place at the date above mentioned; since which time the prophecy of Eze'kiel, that "there shall be no more a prince of the land of Egypt," has been literally fulfilled, for not one native ruler has ever occupied the throne for a period of more than 2000 years. The subsequent history of Egypt will be related in connection with that of the nations to whom it has successively belonged.

* *See Note 9, end of the Section.*

33. Invasion of Judah by Sheshonk? What is said of Tirhakah? Why called in the Bible "King of Ethiopia?" Where is Karnak? *Ans. At Thebes.*

34. Give an account of Psammetichus I. What great work was attempted by Nechos II.? What led to the Persian invasion? Its result?

35. In what contest was Egypt engaged during the remaining dynasties? By whom was it aided? Its final conquest, and the fulfilment of Ezekiel's prophecy?

36. Civilization of the Egyptians. The early population and civilization of Egypt were due to its extraordinary fertility, caused by the annual inundations of the Nile. In fact, this region may be geographically described as the valley of that river, extending about 500 miles from north to south, and bounded on the western side by a rocky ridge sloping into the Great Desert, and on the east by low ranges descending to the Red Sea. It was anciently divided into *Upper*, *Middle*, and *Lower Egypt.*

37. Upper Egypt, or the *Theb'-a-is*, as it was often called, included the narrow valley in the extreme southern part. Its capital was the great city *Thebes*, which, in the time of its splendor, is said to have extended over twenty-three miles, and to have had one hundred gates. The ruins of splendid temples, colossal statues, obelisks, and sphinxes still bear witness to its wonderful size and grandeur.

38. Middle Egypt, or *Heptan'omis*, as it was called on account of its *seven districts*, embraced the wider portion of the Nile basin below the Thebais. Its capital was *Memphis*, the City of the Pharaohs who received and protected the Israelites. This district contains the finest of the pyramids, which are situated on the west side of the Nile, and extend for a distance of about seventy miles.

39. Lower Egypt consists of the *Delta of the Nile*, an extremely fertile region, and anciently very populous. The entire population of Egypt must have been large at the earliest periods. It has been estimated at seven millions, under the Pharaohs. The construction of the Great Pyramid, it is said, required the constant employment of 100,000 men for more than twenty years. [*See Note* 10.]

40. The Egyptians were a brown race, and were divided into seven distinct *castes*, or ranks,—of which the priests

---

36. Cause of the civilization of Egypt? Of its extraordinary fertility? How is its situation described? How was it divided?
37. Describe Upper Egypt. What is said of its capital, Thebes?
38. How is Middle Egypt described?
39. Lower Egypt? What estimate is given of the population of Egypt?
40 The Egyptians—their color, castes, and religion?

and warriors were the most honored; next, the agriculturists, merchants, mariners, and artisans; while shepherds, the lowest caste, were held in great abomination. The Egyptian religion was a gross superstition, the lower orders of the people worshipping the most degraded animals, idols, &c. Astrology formed a prominent part of the national belief; hence their close observation of the heavenly bodies.

41. Their progress in the mechanical arts was considerable, as is seen in the inscriptions on the monuments. The weaving of cotton and linen cloth, working in copper and brass, and pottery, were among the most prominent branches of manufacture. Agriculture was pursued with great skill and industry. A considerable traffic was carried on with other countries, gold, ivory, ebony, skins, and slaves being brought from Ethiopia; incense from Arabia; and spices from India; and for these articles were exported principally grain and cloths. This commerce was chiefly carried on by Greek and Phœnician merchants, since the Egyptians had not attained any skill in shipbuilding.

42. Much advancement was made also in the fine arts, painting, sculpture, and music. The skill in architecture which they had acquired is shown by the magnificent edifices, the ruins of which still exist; such as the temples, pyramids, obelisks, &c. These exhibit a peculiar style, but are very remarkable for their massive grandeur and regularity. The great pyramids were, in ancient times, counted among the wonders of the world.

43. The government was an absolute monarchy, but the priestly caste had very great influence, since there was a close union between the government and religion of the

41. What mechanic arts were pursued? Agriculture? Commerce? How carried on?

42. What progress had the Egyptians made in painting, sculpture, &c.? Their architecture?

43. How is their government described? How connected with religion? Origin of the custom of embalming?

country. There were religious ceremonies prescribed for every important action, and these even the kings were obliged to observe. The general belief that the soul would, after a certain long period, return to the body from which, at death, it had departed, caused great care to be taken to preserve the body from decay. Hence the custom of embalming, and hence also the pyramids, which seem to have been only tombs, constructed by the kings, to preserve their mortal remains from decay. [*See Note* 11.]

Ethiopia.

44. Directly south of Egypt lay the country of the *Ethiopians*, a nation the origin of which is lost in antiquity. Its capital, *Mer'o-e*, from its situation on the upper Nile, became the emporium of Arabia, Egypt, and other great nations in its vicinity; and Ethiopia grew to be one of the most powerful states of the ancient world (about 1000 B. C.) For a time it was tributary to Egypt; but (about 750 B. C.) it acquired its independence, under *Sab'acus*, and in its turn subdued Egypt, which it kept under its sway about sixty years.

45. During the reign of Psammetichus, 240,000 Egyptians emigrated to Ethiopia, and settling there added greatly to the prosperity of the State. After subduing Egypt, Cambyses invaded Ethiopia; but his soldiers suffered incredible hardships from famine in the deserts, and having reached Meroe, which he captured, he was obliged to relinquish his design and return to Egypt. About five centuries later, Ethiopia was conquered by the Romans.

Phœnicia.

46. This region, bordering on the eastern shore of the

44. Situation of Ethiopia? Its capital? To what country was it tributary? Under what king did it achieve its independence?

45. What emigration took place from Egypt to Ethiopia? What monarch attempted its conquest? The result? When conquered by the Romans?

46. What was the situation of Phœnicia? For what noted? What is said of Tyre and Sidon? Which were the most ancient colonies of the Phœnicians? Which was the greatest of their colonies?

Mediterranean Sea, is noted as having contained *Si'don* and *Tyre*, the most ancient commercial cities mentioned in history. These two cities were independent, each being under a government of its own. They were not only celebrated for their commerce, but became the great colonizing powers of the ancient world. Their most ancient colonies were Ga'dēs (now *Cadiz*), in Spain, and U'tica, in Africa. Some of the earliest settlements in Greece are said to have been made by Phœnicians. The greatest of their colonies was *Car'thage*, on the northern coast of Africa, founded by *Di'do*, a Tyrian princess, 878 B. C.

47. Their manufactures of glass and linen, perfumes and purple dye, were sources of unbounded wealth; and they were universally considered the most skilful workmen in gold, silver, ivory, bronze, &c. Their ships visited the most remote parts of the Mediterranean Sea, and even passed the Straits into the Atlantic, reaching *Britain* and the *Cana'ries*. They also carried on an active slave-trade.

48. **Sidon** (or *Zidon*) was under the dominion of Tyre in the eighth century, when the country was invaded by Shalmaneser, king of Assyria. It then submitted to the invader, and Tyre, after a long siege, was also subdued. The latter was besieged and taken by Nebuchadnez'zar (587 B. C.); and both cities were afterward reduced by Cyrus (538 B. C.) Having revolted against the Persians, in 351 B. C., Sidon was fired by its own inhabitants and entirely destroyed. It was, however, afterward rebuilt; and both cities, in 332 B. C., were compelled to submit to *Alexander the Great*, Tyre yielding to the conqueror after a determined resistance of seven months.

Syria and Palestine.

49. **Syria** is the name given to a region of indefinite

47. Sources of their wealth? To what countries did their ships penetrate?
48. What is said of Sidon? By whom were Tyre and Sidon conquered in the eighth century? Give their subsequent history.
49. What was the situation of Syria? What is said of Damascus? Who were its most noted kings?

extent situated to the east of the Mediterranean Sea. It was called by the Hebrews *A'ram.* Damascus was the oldest and most important city, and seems to have been an important place even in the times of Abraham, while in the subsequent history of the Jews it became quite prominent. King David gained a great victory over the Syrians of Damascus, and reduced their city. It afterward, however, regained its independence, and under the three noted kings named *Ben-hā'-dad* contended repeatedly with Israel. *Haz'-a-el* gained important victories over the Israelites, ravaged their territory, and plundered Jerusalem. Damascus was afterward successively subdued by the Assyrians, Persians, Macedonians, and Romans.

50. **Palestine** was situated between the Mediterranean and the valley of the Jordan, extending about 145 miles from north to south, with an average breadth of less than fifty miles. Yet within this small area were enacted the most momentous events in the world's history. Pal'estīne is but another name for *Philis'tia,* or the country of the *Philis'tines,* those fierce idolaters, with whom so many and so long wars were waged by the Israelites. Their chief cities were *Ash'dod* or *A-zō'-tus, As'ke-lon, Gath, Ga'za,* and *Ek'-ron,* all noted in sacred history.

51. Of the twelve tribes of Israel, nine and a half were located to the west and two and a half to the east of the Jordan. Into this region they had been led by *Joshua, Moses* being only permitted to catch a distant glimpse of the promised land. After the death of Joshua, followed the period of the *Judges,* which lasted about five centuries. The last of the Judges was *Samuel,* who, when the people demanded a king, anointed *Saul* (1095 B. C.).

52. Saul was succeeded by *David,* during whose reign

50. What was the extent of Palestine? What is said of the Philistines? Give the names of their chief cities?

51. What was the location of the twelve tribes of Israel? Give an account of their early history there. Who was their first king?

52. How long did David reign? What was the extent of the kingdom during his reign? What was the character of David's reign?

(from 1055 to 1015 B. C.), the kingdom of Israel stretched from the Mediterranean Sea to the Euphrates River, and from Syria to the Red Sea; and probably contained a population of at least five millions. He encouraged navigation and trade, particularly with Tyre, and sought to instruct his people in the arts. The events of his splendid but troubled reign, with a minute account of his character and conduct, are recorded in the Bible (2 *Sam.* and 1 *Chron.*).

53. The reign of Solomon (1015–975 B. C.) was the most splendid period of the Jewish history. For him was reserved the honor of building the great temple of Jehovah. He formed alliances with the surrounding nations, opened an active trade with Egypt, and, to facilitate his commercial objects, erected *Tad'mor* in the desert, which afterward became so renowned as Palmy'ra. He also built a superb navy, at a port (*E'zi-on-ge'ber*) which he established at the northern part of the Red Sea. The history of his wisdom, his prosperity and wealth, and his fall into idolatry and sin, is greatly interesting and instructive. (1 *Kings*, ii.–xi.)

54. After the death of Solomon, the kingdom was divided, in consequence of the tyranny and insolence of his son *Re-ho-bo'am*, against whom ten tribes revolted and followed *Jer-o-bo'am*, who established himself at *Shĕ'chem*, as king of *Israel*. To Rehoboam were thus left only two tribes, forming the kingdom of *Judah*. A desultory war was maintained between the two divisions during most of the reign of Jeroboam, which lasted twenty-two years. (1 *Kings*, xii.)

55. Israel.—The history of the successive kings of Israel is a sad record of war and sin. These kings were noted only for their wickedness and idolatry, and brought upon the people, in consequence, the severe punishments of God.

---

53. Describe the reign of Solomon.
54. What caused the division of the kingdom? What kingdoms were formed? What is said of the reign of Jeroboam?
55. What is said of the kings of Israel? How did this kingdom end?

It was terminated by the invasion of the Assyrians, to whom the last king, *Ho-she'a,* was compelled to surrender *Sama'ria,* and the ten tribes were carried into captivity (721 B. C.). (2 *Kings,* xvii. 6.) Their place was supplied by Babylonian settlers, from whom, with a small part of the Jewish population, was derived the Samaritan race.

56. **Judah.**—This kingdom lasted 135 years longer. Most of its kings were wicked and idolatrous; but three reigns were marked by virtue and piety. During the reign of *Je-hosh'a-phat* the kingdom was in a more prosperous condition than it had been since the days of Solomon. *Hezekiah's* reign is remarkable for the invasion of Sennacherib, and the miraculous destruction of his army. It was on this occasion that the shadow on the sun-dial was made to move back to confirm the wavering faith of Hezekiah. (2 *Kings,* xx. 9.)

57. The last king was *Zed-e-ki'ah,* during whose reign Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, took Jerusalem, and destroyed it, sending the unfortunate monarch in chains to Babylon, whither were also transported the miserable inhabitants (586 B. C.). The temple was razed to the ground (2 *Kings,* xxxv.);* and for more than fifty years the holy city perished, except in the memory of the heart-broken exiles. The restoration of the Jews took place in 536 B. C., in pursuance of an edict of Cyrus, the great Persian monarch. (2 *Chron.* xxxv. 22, and *Ezra,* i.)

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

B. C.

2700. Menes, king of Egypt.
2000. Invasion of Egypt by the Hyksos, or Shepherd Kings.
1867. Settlement of the Israelites in Egypt.
1732. Birth of Moses.

* See also 2 *Chronicles,* xxxvi. 11-21, and *Jeremiah,* xxxix.

56. How much longer did Judah last? What is said of the reign of Jehoshaphat? What noted events of Hezekiah's reign are mentioned?
57. Who was the last king? What was his fate? By whom was Jerusalem destroyed? How and when were the Jews restored?

1700. Babylon, the capital of the Chaldees.
1652. Exodus of the Israelites from Egypt.
1612. Death of Moses.
1444. Syria subdued by the Egyptians, under Thotmes II.
1320. Rameses the Great, king of Egypt.
1095. Saul, the first king of Israel.
1055. David begins to reign over Israel.
1015. Accession of Solomon.
975. Secession of the Ten Tribes, and the division of the kingdom.
971. Jerusalem taken by Shishak, king of Egypt.
878. Carthage founded by the Tyrians.
750. Sabacus restores the independence of Ethiopia.
747. Era of Nabonassar.
721. Samaria taken—and end of the Kingdom of Israel.
720. The Lydians settle in Asia Minor.
625. Taking of Nineveh by the Medes.
610. Famous battle between the armies of Alyattes and Cyaxares.
586. Destruction of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar, and the captivity of the Jews.
587. Tyre taken by Nebuchadnezzar.
568. Commencement of the reign of Crœsus.
546. Crœsus taken prisoner by Cyrus.
538. Babylon taken by Cyrus.
536. Restoration of the Jews by an edict of Cyrus.
525. Pelusium taken, and Egypt subdued by Cambyses.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. What events immediately followed the Deluge?	11
2. Name the most ancient monarchies	11
3. Give an account of the establishment of the Babylonian monarchy	12
4. Who were the Chaldees?	13
5. What is meant by the Era of Nabonassar?	13
6. What were the principal events of Nebuchadnezzar's reign?	14
7. Relate the subsequent history of Babylon	14
8. Give an account of the foundation of the Assyrian Empire	14
9. Mention the most noted of its monarchs	15-16
10. What were the principal events of their reigns?	15-16
11. How did the Empire terminate? Its last king?	16
12. Give an account of the rise of the Median Empire	16
13. What led to the foundation of the Persian Empire?	17
14. Who were the Lydians, and where did they settle?	17
15. Name their most noted kings	17-18
16. Relate the principal events of their reigns	17-18

17. By whom was the Lydian monarchy overturned?..... 18
18. For what was Crœsus noted?.. 18
19. State the sources of Egyptian history..... 19
20. What portion of it is involved in obscurity?..... 19
21. Who were the most noted kings of Egypt?..... 20–21
22. What were the most important events of their reigns?..... 20–21
23. What great work was undertaken by Nekao?..... 21
24. Who was the last of the 26th Dynasty?.... 21
25. By whom was Egypt subdued in 525 B. C.? 21
26. Give a sketch of its history for the next two centuries..... 21
27. What prophecy has been fulfilled in its history?..... 21
28. Give a sketch of the geography of Egypt..... 22
29. Describe the civilization, government, &c., of the Egyptians..... 22–23
30. What powerful state south of Egypt? Its capital?..... 24
31. Give a sketch of its history..... 24
32. Which were the most noted commercial cities of antiquity?..... 25
33. Mention their most important colony..... 25
34. What were the sources of their wealth?..... 25
35. Give a sketch of their history..... 25
36. Give a brief account of Syria and Damascus..... 26
37. Where did the Philistines dwell? Their chief cities?..... 26
38. Mention the most noted events in the history of Palestine..... 26–27
39. What was the extent of the Jewish kingdom during the reign of David? 27
40. What were the chief events of Solomon's reign?..... 27
41. Into what separate kingdoms was Israel afterward divided?..... 27
42. Give a sketch of the history of the kingdom of Israel..... 27–28
43. How did it end?..... 28
44. Give an outline of the history of Judah..... 28
45. During whose reign was the miracle of the sun-dial?..... 28
46. What terminated the kingdom of Judah?..... 28
47. How and when were the Jews restored to their own country?..... 28
48. What is the oldest date referred to in ancient history?..... 28
49. Is it reliable?..... 19
50. What were the principal events between 2000 B. C. and 1500 B. C.?..... 28–29
51. What were the chief events between 1500 B. C. and 1000 B. C.?..... 29
52. What, between 1000 B. C. and 500 B. C.?..... 29
53. Name the different kingdoms treated of in this section in the order of their foundation..... 12–28
54 State the geographical situation of each. (See Map, p. 12.)..... 12
55. What was the capital of each? (See Map, p. 12.)..... 12

NOTES.

1. The Dispersion (p. 11, ¶ 2).—The place where the Bible narrative states that the ark rested after the deluge, the starting-point for the sons of Noah, is Mount Ararat. After the most careful investigations, the mountain mass of Little Bokhara, and Western Thibet, is agreed upon as the place whence the human race issued. Here the largest rivers of Asia—the Indus, the Oxus, and the Jaxartes—take their rise. From this as a center, the families of Shem, Ham, and Japhet were dispersed. The family of Ham, from whom the people of Phœnicia, of Egypt, and Ethiopia were descended, was the first to leave the common center. Of the four sons of Ham, the race of Cush has been identified with the Ethiopians, the Egyptians with Misraim, the Libyans with Phut, and Canaan with the Phœnicians, together with all the tribes lying between the Mediterranean and the Dead Seas before the settlement of the Hebrews. The race of Shem was the next to leave the country in which the descendants of Noah dwelt after the flood. They occupied the countries extending from Mesopotamia to the southern part of Arabia, and from the Mediterranean Sea to the country beyond the Tigris. In many places, as the country bordered by the Oxus, the banks of the Tigris, and a part of India, the Cushite race was probably expelled first by the descendants of Shem, and by the Aryans, the sons of Japhet. Of the descendants of Ham, Eber was the progenitor of the Hebrews, Joktan of the Arabs, Lud of the people of Lydia. The race of Japhet was the last to leave their home. They migrated to the south, crossed the Hindoo Koosh, and entered India, subjugating the earlier Hamitic tribes, and to the west, over the most of Europe, and became the progenitors of the Sanskrits, Greeks, Romans, Persians, and the Teutonic tribes.

2. Comparative Philology (p. 11, ¶ 2).—The descendants of the sons of Noah included only the white race, who, speaking the same language in the land of Shinar, were dispersed in consequence of the confusion of tongues at the building of the Tower of Babel. The negroes in the days of the Pharaohs, and the yellow and red races, have no mention in the sacred narrative. The results of comparative philology teach that in every language there are three distinct epochs: the *monosyllabic*, the *agglutinative*, and the *inflected*. The monosyllabic languages consist only of simple words expressing the idea, or notion, independent of their relations to other words, as the ancient Chinese. The agglutinated languages, in which two roots are joined together to form words, one of them losing its independent meaning and becoming subsidiary to the other, have received the name of *Turanian*, which comprise all the languages spoken in Europe and Asia not included under the Aryan or Semitic families. The inflected languages, in which the roots coalesce, so that neither the one nor the other retains its substantive independence, have been divided into two great families, the Semitic and the Indo-European, Aryan, or Japhetic. The Semitic languages embrace the valley of the Tigris and Euphrates, Syria and Arabia. It should not be inferred from this that the name Semitic was restricted to those countries peopled by the race of Shem, for a large part of the Hamitic nations spoke the Semitic languages. The Indo-European embraced the countries extending from the plains of India, across the plateau of Iran, and the highlands of Armenia, into Europe, of which it covers nearly the whole surface. Thus it will be seen from this brief survey that the results of comparative philology are in substantial accord with the narrative of the Bible; that the races were originally one; that they emigrated from a region of Central Asia, at the east of the Caspian and northwest of India; that they were originally a pastoral people, gradually changing their habits as they descended into the plains

of the Indus and the Euphrates. The method of investigation, as applied to the Aryan, is as follows: It is found that the names of many common objects are the same in all the families of the languages of this stock, and it would be unreasonable to suppose that two nations widely separated would have independently selected the same name for the same object. Thus the word for *house* in Greek is δόμος, in Latin *domus*, in Sanskrit *dama*, in Zend *demana*, from which root comes our word *domestic*. From the fact that the same word was used by all these different nations to designate the same object, it is pretty certain that the ancient Aryans lived in houses. In this way the early history of a people extending far beyond any authentic records possessed by man, has been partially restored. For a further investigation of this subject, the pupil is referred to *Max Müller's Science of Language*.

3. Chaldea (p. 12, ¶ 3).—"The Chaldean monarchy had from the first an *architectural* character. Babylon, Erech, or Orchoë, Accad, and Calneh, were founded by Nimrod. Ur was from an early date a city of importance. The attempt to build a tower 'which should reach to heaven,' made here (Gen. xi. 4.), was in accordance with the general spirit of the Chaldean people. Out of such simple and rude materials as brick and bitumen, vast edifices were constructed, pyramidical in design, but built in steps or stages of considerable altitude. Other arts also flourished. Letters were in use; and the baked bricks employed by the royal builders, had commonly a legend in their center. Gems were cut, polished, and engraved with representations of human forms, portrayed with spirit. Metals of many kinds were worked, and fashioned into arms, ornaments, and implements. Textile fabrics of a delicate tissue were manufactured. Commerce was carried on with the neighboring nations both by land and sea: the 'ships of Ur,' visiting the shores of the Persian Gulf, and perhaps those of the ocean beyond it. The study of astronomy commenced, and observations of the heavenly bodies were made and carefully recorded."—*Rawlinson's Ancient History.*

4. Babylon (p. 13, ¶ 5).—"The descriptions of Babylon which have come down to us in classical writers, are derived chiefly from two sources, the works of Herodotus and of Ctesias. These authors were, both of them, eye-witnesses of the glories of Babylon—not, indeed, at their highest point, but before they had greatly declined—and left accounts of the city and its chief buildings, which the historians and geographers of later times were, for the most part, content to copy. According to Herodotus, the city, which was built on both sides of the Euphrates, formed a vast square, enclosed within a double line of high walls, the extent of the outer circuit being about fifty-six miles. The entire area included would thus have been about two hundred square miles. Herodotus appears to imply that this whole space was covered with houses, which, he observes, were frequently three or four stories high. They were laid out in straight streets crossing each other at right angles, the cross streets leading to the Euphrates, being closed at the river end with brazen gates, which allowed or prevented access to the quays wherewith the banks of the Euphrates were lined along its whole course through the city. In each division of the town, Herodotus says, there was a fortress or stronghold, consisting in the one case of the royal palace, in the other of the great temple of Belus. * * * The two portions of the city were united by a bridge, composed of a series of stone piers with movable platforms of wood stretching from one pier to another."—*Smith's Dictionary of the Bible.*

5. Berosus (p. 14, ¶ 12).—"Even among his contemporaries, Berosus enjoyed the reputation of great wisdom; nay, what is more strange still, a statue was erected to him even at Athens. He was a Chaldean, and no doubt, an astrono-

mer or astrologer. We see from his fragments that he was a very truthful man."—*Niebuhr.*

6. Nineveh (p. 16, ¶ 19).—"Traditions of the unrivaled size and magnificence of Nineveh were equally familiar with the Greek and Roman writers, and to the Arab geographers. But the city had fallen so completely into decay before the period of authentic history, that no description of it, or even of any of its monuments, is to be found in any ancient author of trust. Diodorus Siculus asserts that the city formed a quadrangle of no less than sixty miles in circuit, and was surrounded by walls one hundred feet high, broad enough for three chariots to drive abreast upon them, and detended by fifteen hundred towers, each two hundred feet in height. * * * * * * Herodotus speaks of the Tigris, as 'the river upon which the town of Nineveh formerly stood.' He must have passed, in his journey to Babylon, very near the site of the city—perhaps actually over it. So accurate a recorder of what he saw would scarcely have omitted to mention, if not to describe, any ruins of importance that might have existed there. Not two centuries had then elapsed since the fall of the city. Equally conclusive proof of its condition is afforded by Xenophon, who, with the ten thousand Greeks, encamped during his retreat, on or very near its site (B. C. 401). The very name had then been forgotten, or, at least, he does not appear to have been acquainted with it."—*Smith's Dictionary of the Bible.*

7. Eclipse of Thales (p. 18, ¶ 25).—"On the refusal of Alyattes to give up his suppliants when Cyaxares sent to demand them of him, war broke out between the Lydians and the Medes, and continued for five years, with various success. In the course of it, the Medes gained many victories over the Lydians, and the Lydians also gained many victories over the Medes. Beside their other battles there was one night engagement. As, however, the balance had not inclined in favor of either nation, another combat took place in the sixth year, in the course of which, just as the battle was growing warm, day was on a sudden changed into night. This event had been foretold by Thales, the Milesian, who forewarned the Ionians of it, fixing for it the very year in which it actually took place. The Medes and Lydians, when they observed the change, ceased fighting, and were alike anxious to have terms of peace agreed on."—*Rawlinson's Herodotus.*

8. Antiquity of Egypt (p. 19, ¶ 23).—"If Egypt is not the oldest civilized nation of antiquity, it may vie with any other known in history; and the *records* of its civilization, left by the monuments, unquestionably date far before those of any other country. But the inhabitants of the valley of the Nile were not the most ancient of mankind, they evidently derived their origin from Asia; and the parent stock, from which they were a very early offset, claim a higher antiquity in the history of the human race. Their skull shows them to have been of the Caucasian stock, and distinct from the African tribes westward of the Nile; and they are evidently related to the oldest races of Central Asia."—*Rawlinson.*

9. Circumnavigation of Africa (p. 21, ¶ 34).—"Neco next fitted out some ships, in order to discover if Africa was circumnavigable; for which purpose he engaged the services of certain Phœnician mariners; and he has the honor of having been the first to ascertain the peninsular form of that continent, about twenty-one centuries before Bartolomeo Diaz and Vasco de Gama."—*Rawlinson.*

10. Ancient Egypt (p. 22, ¶ 39).—"Thousands of years have passed since the foundation of the first Egyptian dynasty. The pyramids have seen the Old Empire, the Hyksos monarchs, the New Empire, the Persian, the Macedonian, the Roman, the Mohammedan. They have stood while the heavens themselves have changed. They were already 'five hundred years old when the Southern Cross dis-

appeared from the horizon of the countries of the Baltic.' The pole-star, itself, is a new comer to them. Well may Humboldt, referring to these incidents, remark that 'the past seems to be visibly nearer to us when we thus connect its measurement with great and memorable events.' No country has had such a varied history as this birth-place of European civilization. Through the darkness of fifty centuries, we may not be able to discern the motives of men, but through periods very much longer, we can demonstrate the conditions of nature. If nations, in one sense, depend on the former, in a higher sense they depend on the latter. It was not without reason that the Egyptians took the lead in Mediterranean civilization. The geographical structure of their country surpasses even its hoary monuments in teaching us the conditions under which that people were placed. Nature is a surer guide than the traces of man, whose works are necessarily transitory. The aspect of Egypt has changed again and again; its structure, since man has inhabited it, never. The fields have disappeared, but the land remains."—*Draper.—History of the Intellectual Development of Europe.*

11. Egyptian Custom of Embalming the Dead (p. 24, ¶ 43).—"According to the Egyptian doctrine of transmigration, the soul of man was destined to pass through the bodies of different animals, and at the end of three thousand years, to return and inhabit a human form; but the cycle could not commence till the body began to perish; hence, say many historians, arose the practice of embalming the dead. The greatest attention was bestowed upon this work, which was enforced by severe and sacred laws. Many hands were employed in the ceremony; some drew the brain through the nostrils; others opened the side and took out all the softer parts of the body; others then filled the cavities with spices and drugs. After a certain time, the body was wrapped in fine linen, dipped in gum, and impregnated with perfumes. Finally, it was delivered to the relatives, who put it in an open chest, and placed it upright against the wall of a sepulcher."—*Bloss's Ancient History.*

12. Phœnician Commerce, etc. (p. 25, ¶ 47).—"The Phœnician commerce was chiefly a carrying trade; but there were also a few productions of their own in which their traffic was considerable. The most famous of these was the purple dye, which they obtained from two shell-fish, the *buccinum*, and the *murex*, and by the use of which they gave a high value to their textile fabrics. Another was glass, whereof they claimed the discovery, and which they manufactured into various articles of use and ornament. They were also skillful in metallurgy; and their bronzes, their gold and silver vessels, and other works in metal, had a high repute. Altogether, they have a claim to be considered one of the most ingenious of the nations of antiquity, though we must not ascribe to them the invention of letters, or the possession of any remarkable artistic talent."—*Rawlinson's Ancient History.*

13. Jewish Chronology (p. 29).—There has been considerable discussion in regard to the important epochs in the sacred history of the Jews. The chronology of Usher cannot, in face of the results of modern research and discovery, be accepted as indisputably correct. Dr. Smith remarks [Dictionary of the Bible, Art. *Chronology*], "We, therefore, take B. C. 1652, as the most satisfactory date of the Exodus." The four hundred and thirty years of sojourn, he thinks, commenced when Abraham entered Palestine, and hence the latter event occurred B. C. 2082. Also, "the temple of Solomon was destroyed on the nineteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar, in the fifth month of the Jewish year. In Ptolemy's Canon, this year is current in the proleptic Julian year, B. C. 586, and the fifth month may be considered as about equal to August of that year." These points being fixed, the remaining chronology may readily be established.

SECTION II.

Persia, Greece, and Macedonia.

From the Foundation of the Persian Empire to the Conquest of Greece by the Romans.

1. **Persia,** at first of small extent, under Cyrus became a vast empire extending from the Ægean (*ē-jē'an*) Sea beyond the Euphra'tes; and included, besides the original territory, Media, Assyria, Babylonia, Asia Minor, and Syria. All these countries were subdued by Cyrus in the short space of twenty-nine years (558–529 B. C.); so great were the activity, enterprise, and address of that extraordinary man. His death took place during an expedition against the *Mas-saj'e-tæ,* (*g* like *j,*) a barbarous tribe living east of the Caspian; and he was succeeded by his son *Cam-by'ses.*

2. The reign of Cambyses lasted nine years, its chief event being the invasion and conquest of Egypt (525 B. C.), in which country he played the part of a ruthless tyrant. A large army which he despatched against the temple of Ammon in an oasis of the Desert (*Si-wah'*) perished in a simoom. He cruelly murdered his brother *Smer'dis;* but an impostor, under the name of Smerdis, usurped the throne of Persia, during his absence in Egypt; and a short time after this the death of Cambyses took place in consequence of a wound which he received from his own sword while

---

Map Questions.—(See Progressive Map No. 1.) Name the principal divisions of Asia Minor. What region southeast of the Euxine Sea? What mountains between the Euxine and Caspian Seas? What country south of the Caspian? What people farther east? What rivers tributary to the Sea of Aral? What country between? What river bounded the Persian Empire on the east? Its chief tributaries? To what water was the Indus tributary? What desert region north of the Erythræan Sea? Where was Persepolis? What country northwest of the Euxine Sea? What country south of the Danube River?

1. What was the extent of Persia under Cyrus? What countries did it comprise? When and how did the death of Cyrus occur?

2. What was the length of Cambyses' reign? What were its chief events? What were the circumstances of his death?

mounting his horse.—This king appears to have been the *A-has-u-e'rus* spoken of in Ezra.

3. Smerdis, the impostor, on the discovery of the fraud, was quickly deposed by the Persian nobles, who elected *Darius I.*, called *Hys-tas'pes*, as king. This monarch was active and successful. During the thirty-six years of his reign (521–485 B. C.) he perfected the organization of the empire, dividing it into twenty provinces, over which he placed governors called by the Persians *satraps*, and selected as his capital Susa in the spring; Ecbat'ana in summer; and Babylon in the winter. The most important wars which he waged were those against the Scythians and the Greeks.

4. With an immense army he crossed the Bos'porus by means of a bridge of boats, and advanced against the Scythians, a barbarous race dwelling on the other side of the Danube, in what is now European Turkey. The expedition was unsuccessful; and leaving a force to conquer Thrace, he returned to Persia, and marched his army to the East, extending his authority as far as the Indus. The Io'nians, a Grecian colony dwelling on the western coast of Asia Minor, having revolted, and having been assisted by some of the Greeks, who took Sardis and burnt it, he determined to bring the whole of Greece under his authority. In two expeditions, however, he was entirely defeated, and while preparing for a third died, 485 B. C.

5. XERXES I. (*zerx'ēz*), the son and successor of Darius, renewed the attempt to subdue the Grecian States, collecting a vast army and fleet for the purpose; but he also was defeated, and after a reign of twenty years, transmitted the enterprise to his son *Ar-tax-erx'ēs I.*, who was compelled finally to make peace with the Greeks, after the war had continued about fifty years (449 B. C.). The sub-

3. Who succeeded Smerdis the impostor? What is said of Darius I.?
4. How did his war against the Scythians result? That against the Greeks?
5. Who renewed the attempt? Under whose reign did the war end? Who was the last king of Persia? By whom was he subdued? How long had the Persian Empire lasted?

Progressive Map, No. 2.

sequent history of Persia is of no importance except as it is connected with that of the Greeks. The last king was *Darius III.*, called *Cod-o-man'nus*, who was subdued by Alexander the Great, and Persia became a part of the *Macedonian Empire*, having lasted a little over two centuries. (329 B. C.)

6. The Persians, at first, and until after the reign of Cyrus, were a hardy race, of simple manners, and great courage in war; but subsequently they became, like the Medes, soft and effeminate, losing their bold hardihood, and becoming entirely corrupted by luxury and vicious indulgence. Their religion was, before the conquest of the Medes, a simple worship of the Spirit of Good (*O-ro-mas'dēs*), and a belief in an Evil Spirit (*Ah'ri-man*) to be hated and shunned. They afterward became converts to the religion of Zo-ro-as'ter, and worshipped the element of fire, under priests called *Ma-gi*. The impostor Smerdis belonged to the Magian priesthood.

Greece.

7. The country known in history as Greece anciently consisted of three quite distinct parts: the first in the north, composed of *Thes'sa-ly* and *E-pī'rus;* the second, in the middle, called *Hel'las*, which was the most important part; and the third, the peninsula forming the southern portion of the country, called *Pel-o-pon-nē'sus* (now called *Mo-re'a*). To these was afterward added *Mace-do'nia*, which was situated to the north of Thessaly and

Map Questions. (See Progressive Map, No. 2).—What was the situation of Hellas? Peloponnesus? Epirus? Thessaly? Macedonia? What were the divisions of Hellas? Of Peloponnesus? What was the capital of Laconia? Messenia? Elis? Argolis? Attica? Name the principal towns of Bœotia. What town in Achaia? Phocis? Eubœa? Epirus? What town near the east coast of Attica? What towns in Thessaly? Macedonia? What gulfs south of Macedonia? East of Peloponnesus? South of it? What island in the Saron'ic Gulf? What island near the coast of Messenia? What river in Laconia? In Acarnania? What mountains east of Epirus? South of Thessaly? What pass leading from Thessaly into Greece?

6. Describe the Persians. What was their religion? Who were the Magi?

7. Of what parts did Ancient Greece consist? Name the most important states of each, and point them out on the map.

Epirus. Central Greece and Peloponnesus were divided into several small states, of which the most important were the following:—

HELLAS.—*At'tica, Bœo'tia, Pho'cis, East* and *West Lo'cris, Do'ris, Æ-to'lia,* and *Ac-ar-na'ni-a.* To the east was the large island of *Eubœa* (*u-be'ah*).

PELOPONNESUS.—*Laco'nia, Ar'go-lis, Achaia* (*a-ka'yah*), *Ar-ca'dia, E'lis,* and *Mes-se'nia.* (See Map of Greece.)

8. The primitive inhabitants of Greece are supposed to have been the descendants of Jā'van, the son of Jā'phet; and hence it was called by the Hebrews *Javan.* A Celtic race from the East, called the *Pe-las'gī,* settled in Thrace in very ancient times; and these with other kindred races passed into Greece, and are known in the fabulous history of the period as *Hel-le'nēs, Lel'e-gēs,* &c. The Hellenes appear to have been the most energetic, since the rest of the Pelasgians disappeared before them. They also gave to the country its name, *Hellas,* by which, exclusively, it was known in ancient times.

9. The history of this country may be divided into two portions; the *legendary* or *traditional* history, and the *authentic* history. The first commences at the earliest periods and extends to the first Olympiad (776 B. C.). The second extends to the conquest of Greece by the Romans (146 B. C.). The most ancient traditions represent the country as divided into a large number of small states, each under its own chief or petty king, and engaged in war and piracy. This period of the history is often called the *Heroic Age,* since it abounds in fabulous stories of men of superhuman strength and valor, such as Her'culēs, Theseus (*the'-sūse*), Achilles (*a-kil'lēz*), &c.

10. The most important events of the Heroic Age were

8. Who were the successive inhabitants of Greece? Who were the Pelasgi? What is said of the Hellenes?

9. How may the history of Greece be divided? When does each division commence? What is meant by the Heroic Age?

10. What was the Argonautic Expedition? What is said of the Trojan War?

the *Argonautic Expedition* and the *Trojan War*. The first, supposed to have occurred about 1225 B. C., was an enterprise the object of which, according to the tradition, was to bring from Colchis (*kol'kis*) a golden fleece. The heroes who engaged in it, sailing in a vessel called *Argo*, were called the *Argonauts*. Whether it was actually a voyage of discovery or commerce, or a mere piratical expedition, cannot be ascertained. The only account of the Trojan War is contained in the poems of Homer. Troy was besieged ten years by the Greeks, and was finally taken by stratagem (1184 B. C.).

11. This period appears to have been followed by one of great revolutions and migrations of the Hellēnic races. The *Æo'lians* were driven from their home in Thessaly, and proceeded southward, expelling in their turn the ancient inhabitants of the lands which they settled (1124 B. C.). Another race from Thessaly, called the *Do'rians*, invaded the Peloponnesus, and made an entire conquest of it (1104 B. C.). This movement, being conducted by the descendants of Her'culēs, who had been banished more than a century previously, is called in history the *Return of the Heracleidæ** (*her-a-cli'de*). Other migrations led to the Æo'lian, Dor'ic, and Ion'ic colonizations of Asia Minor. The dates of these events are not entirely reliable.

12. The authentic history of Greece may be properly considered as commencing 776 B. C.; that is, at the first recorded Olympiad, a period of four years, which elapsed between two celebrations of the Olympic games. These games were celebrated in honor of Jupiter, at Olym'pia, in Elis, and constituted the most splendid national festival of the Greeks. Their origin is lost in the darkness of antiquity.

* *Heracleidæ* is a Greek word which means *descendants of Hercules*.

11. What migrations followed the Trojan War? What is meant by the Return of the Heracleidæ? What colonies were established in Asia Minor?

12. What was an Olympiad? What were the Olympic games? Who was Lycurgus? His age?

It was, as is supposed, about this time (776 B. C.) that Lycur'gus reformed the government and laws of Sparta, and gave to it the constitution by which it afterward acquired the supremacy in Grecian affairs.

13. Sparta, the capital of Laconia, sometimes called *Lacedæmon* (*las-e-dē'mon*), was originally Pelasgian, but was conquered by the Dorians when they invaded the Peloponnesus, and soon became the chief of the Dorian states. Lycurgus by his laws designed to perpetuate the primitive simplicity and hardihood of the people, by preventing the spread of luxury, and by educating the youth so as to make them brave and patriotic soldiers. The effect was soon brought to a test in the wars with the Messenians, the first of which lasted twenty years (743–723 B. C.); the second, seventeen (685–668 B. C.), and resulted in the entire defeat of the Messenians, and their dispersion into various parts. For the next three centuries Messenia formed a part of Laconia.

14. Wars were also waged by Sparta with the other states of the Peloponnesus, and resulted in extending her authority over the whole peninsula. The Arcādians had become her subject allies (560 B. C.); Ar'gos* was too much weakened by defeat to make any resistance (547 B. C.); and no northern state at this period could compete with her in military power. The government of Laconia was vested in two hereditary kings, a Senate elected by the nobles, and five magistrates called the *Eph'o-rī.*† The kings were of limited power; they presided in the Senate, and led the armies. The Ephori were annually elected, and were clothed with very great authority. They could restrain the kings, control the public

* In Grecian history the *states* are often called by the names of their capital *cities*. Thus, Laconia is generally known as *Sparta*; Argolis, as *Argos*, &c.

† Ephori, plural of *ephorus*, which means an *overseer* or *inspector*.

13. What is said of Sparta? What was the design of the laws of Lycurgus? What wars were waged with the Messenians?

14. What conquests were made by the Spartans? Describe the Spartan government. Who were the Ephori? What were their powers?

assemblies, and they were the arbiters of peace and war.

15. The most important state of Central Greece, and afterward the great rival of Sparta, was Attica, the capital of which was *Ath'ens*, in some respects the most renowned city in the world. It was the seat of learning and the arts, and may justly be considered the mother of modern civilization. Its population was of Ionian origin, although in the mythic history of Athens it is said to have been first settled by a colony from Egypt, under *Ce'crops*. Its government was until the eleventh century monarchical; but after the return of the Her'aclei'dæ, it was vested in elective magistrates, called *Archons* (*ar'kons*). The last king of Athens, *Co'drus*, in a war with the Dorians, sacrificed his life to save the city from capture.

16. Athens suffered for centuries from anarchy and misrule; but in the seventh century (624 B. C.) it adopted the laws proposed by Dra'co, which were so severe that they were said to have been written in blood. They gave place (594 B. C.) to the constitution and laws devised by *Sō'lon*. According to these, the government was vested in a Senate or Council, an assembly of the people, and a chief magistrate called *Archon*,* with eight inferior executive officers, also called by the general name of *archons*. The most venerable court of justice was the *A-re-op'a-gus*,† the members of which were inspectors of education and morals, as well as administrators of the laws.

17. The legislation of Solon laid the foundation of Athenian greatness, and though sometimes disturbed by usurpation, remained in force for more than four centuries. In 560 B. C., the government was seized by *Pi-sis'-tra-tus*,

* *Archon* means in Greek a *ruler*.

† Areopagus, *Mars' Hill*, the Court being so called from its situation on a small eminence at Athens named the "Hill of Mars."

15. What is said of Athens? Her population and government? Her last king?
16. What is said of Draco? Of Solon and his laws?
17. Who was Pisistratus? What was the character of his government? Who were his successors? How long did they reign?

who exercised a despotic sway for thirty-three years, and transmitted his authority to his two sons, Hip'pias and Hippar'chus, called the *Pīsistrat'idæ*.* He ruled with moderation, patronized literature and the arts, opened a public library, and collected, it is said, the poems of Homer. Hip'pias and Hippar'chus also governed for some years with mildness and justice; but in 514 B. C., an act of tyranny committed by Hippias caused a conspiracy to be raised against them, and Hipparchus was slain. Hippias ruled with great severity for four years longer, and then was expelled (510 B. C.) with the aid of the Spartans. He took refuge at the court of Darius, king of Persia.

18. Age of Despots. It was not in Athens alone that despotic power overturned the popular government. From 650 to 500 B. C., there were few of the Grecian cities that escaped this calamity. Hence this period has been called the *Age of Despots*. In the city of Sicyon (*sish'e-on*) a despotic dynasty lasted for more than a hundred years; and another in Cor'inth, seventy-four years. The most noted of the latter was *Per-i-an'der*, whose sway (from 625 to 585 B. C.), though oppressive and cruel, made Corinth the wealthiest and most powerful of all the commercial cities of Greece at that time. Like Pisistratus, he was a patron of literature and the arts, and was enumerated among the seven wise men of Greece.

19. After the expulsion of the tyrant Hippias from Athens, the government underwent some modifications, and a very remarkable institution was devised to prevent for the future any powerful and ambitious citizen from making himself despot. This was the famous *Ostracism*, by which any citizen could be banished for ten years, without trial or even any formal accusation; but simply by a

* *Pisistratidæ* is the plural of *Pisistratidēs*, which means *son of Pisistratus*.

18. What was the "Age of Despots?" Who was Periander?
19. What was the Ostracism? Its design and effect?

vote of the people, each citizen writing the name of the person whom he wished to banish on a shell,* and six thousand votes being required against the person to determine his condemnation. No attempt at usurpation followed the establishment of this law.

20. The Persian War. The Greek colonies in Asia Minor had been subject to Crœ'sus, but when the Lydian monarchy was overturned by Cyrus, they fell under the Persian yoke, and thus continued until 500 B. C., when an insurrection against Darius broke out at Mi-lē'tus, and spread through all the Greek cities in Asia. In this revolt assistance was rendered by the Athenians, who crossed to Asia Minor and burnt Sar'dis; but the Ionian fleet having been defeated, and the city of Miletus captured by the forces of Darius, the revolt was speedily subdued, and the Greek colonies were completely subjugated, and treated with great severity,—all the inhabitants of Miletus being either put to death or sent into captivity.

21. The aid given by Athens to the Ionians drew down the wrath of Darius upon all Greece, which he determined to subdue, being still further instigated to this by the tyrant Hippias, then a resident at his court. In pursuance of this design, he despatched an expedition under *Mar-dō'ni-us,* which proved an entire failure, the fleet being wrecked off Mount Ath'os, and a large part of the army drowned. The forces were still further weakened in a night attack made by the Thracians, and Mardonius was compelled to return (492 B. C.).

22. A second expedition, under *Dā'tis* and *Ar-ta-pher'nēs,* sailed across the Ægē'an Sea, and after reducing several islands, landed at Mar'a-thon, twenty-two miles from Athens

* Called *Ostracon*—whence the name *Ostracism.*

20. What was the cause of the Persian War? Give an account of the revolt of the Ionians. How did it result?

21. What expedition against Greece in 492 B. C.? Where is Mt. Athos? (Map No. 2.)

22. Give an account of the second expedition. What is said of the battle of Marathon? Its date?

Here they were met by a small army of Athenians, under *Mil-ti'a-dēs*, and completely routed (490 B. C.). This conflict is reckoned among the world's great battles; for had the Persians succeeded, the character of European civilization would have been entirely changed, becoming Asiatic; and besides, the extraordinary disparity of the forces (the Persians being about ten times as numerous as the Greeks), makes it a very remarkable engagement,—especially as, up to that time, the Persian conquests had scarcely known a check. The credit of this great victory belongs to the Athenians, since they had only the aid of a small band of Platæans (*pla-tē'ans*).

23. Ten years afterward, the attempt was renewed by Xerxes, who collected one of the largest armies the world has ever known, besides an immense fleet, and crossing the Hellespont by means of two bridges which he caused to be constructed, marched to the Pass of *Ther-mop'y-læ*,* where he was opposed by a small army under Le-on'i-das, a Spartan general. The defence was successful until a traitor discovered to the Persians a path across the mountains, when, seeing no hope of victory, but being forbidden by the laws of Sparta to flee from the enemy, Leonidas dismissed the forces of the allies, and fell upon the Persians with his little band of 300. After making vast slaughter, they all perished (480 B. C.).

24. The great Persian fleet came to action with the much smaller one of the Greeks in the narrow strait of *Sal'a-mis*,† and was defeated with immense loss; so much so that Xerxes, who had witnessed the fight, fled in dismay to Persia, and left the conquest of Greece to his general Mardonius (480 B. C.). The chief command of the allied fleet had been assigned to *Eu-ry-bi'a-dēs*, the Spartan; but the credit of the victory

* *Thermopylæ—Hot Gates*, so called from the hot springs there. This pass led from Thessaly into Phocis.—(See Progressive Map, No. 2.)

† Between the Island of Salamis, in the Saronic Gulf, and the mainland.—(See Map of Greece.)

23. What attempt was made by Xerxes? Describe the battle of Thermopylæ.
24. What great naval battle was fought? With what result?

was given to *The-mis'to-clēs*, the Athenian, through whose influence and sagacity the action was brought on.

25. In the meanwhile the land forces of the Persians had invaded Attica, and taken and destroyed Athens, the inhabitants unfit for war having fled to the neighboring islands for protection; but the army of Mardonius, 300,000 strong and assisted by Grecian auxiliaries, did not come to any decisive action till the next year (479 B. C.), when it was defeated and almost utterly destroyed at *Pla-tæ'a** by the allied army of the Greeks, consisting of 110,000 men, under *Pau-sa'-ni-as*, a Spartan general, assisted by the Athenian *Ar-is-ti'dēs*. On the same day the Athenians gained a

* A town in the southeastern part of Bœotia.—(Map No. 2.)

Map Questions.—In what part of Asia Minor was Asia? Galatia? Cappadocia? Pontus? Bithynia? Pamphylia? Cilicia? Where was Mysia? Caria? Phrygia? Lydia? Paphlagonia? What town was in the western part of Lydia? What town was in the southern part of Cilicia? In the eastern part? What town was in the southern part of Caria? In Ionia? In Phrygia? What river in Pamphylia? What promontory west of Caria? What island west of Mysia?

25. What happened to Athens? When and by whom was the Persian army defeated? Give an account of the battle of Mycale.

great victory over the combined land and naval forces of the Persians, at *Myc'alē*, in Asia Minor.

26. Having driven the Persians from their country, the Greeks sent a fleet under Pausanias to invade the Persian dominions. This expedition was entirely successful; the Greek cities of Cyprus were set free, and Byzantium (*bē-zan'she-um*),* after a long siege, surrendered. At this point, the Spartans, who had been the leaders in the war, lost their ascendency by the treason of Pausanias. Intoxicated by the fame and wealth which he had acquired at Platæa and by his subsequent success, and ambitious of more splendor and influence than he thought the little state of Sparta could confer upon him, he sent a letter to Xerxes, offering to deliver Greece into his power if he would give him his daughter in marriage, thus connecting him with the royal family of Persia.

27. This plot was, however, discovered before its consummation. Pausanias was recalled and put to death by order of the Ephori (471 B. C.), and the command of the allied forces was transferred to Aristides. A league was also formed among the Ionians and some of the Greek islands, under the leadership of Athens, which was called the "Confederacy of Dē'los,"† since the deputies met at that island. This great maritime alliance contributed very much to the subsequent influence of Athens. It lasted about 70 years. The well-established character of Aristides for integrity and prudence, contributed no little to this important measure. Indeed, the justice of this distinguished man had passed into a proverb. He and Themistocles, during the interval between the victory at Marathon and the invasion by Xerxes, had contended for political supremacy in the public assemblies at Athens; but Aristides

* Byzantium was on the Bosporus; it was afterward called Constantinople.
† Principal island of the Cyclades, a group in the Ægean Sea.

26. What act of treason did Pausanias commit?
27. What was his fate? What league was formed? What is said of Aristides? Who was his rival?

failing, had been banished by the Ostracism (483 B. C.). He returned, however, just in time to aid his country at the battle of Salamis.

28. The glory gained by Themistocles at Salamis, together with his great ability and prudence, gave to him at Athens unlimited influence. He caused the city to be rebuilt and strongly fortified, notwithstanding the opposition prompted by the mean jealousy of the Spartans. Being, however, accused of participating in the treason of Pausanias, he was banished by the Ostracism (471 B. C.), and took refuge in the dominions of the Persian monarch Artaxerxes, where he lived in great splendor and dignity till his death (449 B. C.). Aristides survived the banishment of his great rival only four years. He died honored by his countrymen, and with a reputation for virtue and patriotism which no one could impeach.

29. *Ci'mon*, son of Miltiades, succeeded Aristides in the leadership at Athens. He gained a splendid victory over the Persians at the Eu-rym'e-don River,* but afterward gave offence to the Athenians by favoring the Spartans, and was banished (461 B. C.), through the contrivance of his rival *Per'i-cles*, who by this means obtained the leadership at Athens, which he retained until his death, more than thirty years afterward. Pericles possessed extraordinary talents as an orator and statesman, and his administration was the most splendid the Athenians ever had. Art and literature flourished, and the city was embellished with the most magnificent edifices.

30. Cimon was, after a few years, recalled from exile, and prosecuted the war against the Persians; but died during the siege of Citium (*sish'e-um*), in Cyprus. The Athenians,

* In Pamphylia, southern part of Asia Minor.—(See Map, p. 41.)

28. What was the character of Themistocles? What caused his banishment? When did the death of Aristides occur?

29. What victory was gained by Cimon? How and when did the administration of Pericles commence? What was its character?

30. How did Cimon's death occur? When did the Persian war end? What war and truce with the Spartans?

however, gained another decisive victory over the Persians, which ended this long war (449 B. C.). In the meanwhile war had been carried on with the Spartans, with whom a truce was concluded at first for five, and afterward for thirty years. The latter truce was broken by a great conflict between Athens and Sparta, each assisted by its allied states. This was the famous "Peloponnesian War."

31. The immediate cause of the war was a difficulty between Cor'inth and Cor-cy'ra,* one of her colonies; and as Athens took sides with the latter, the Dorian Confederacy accused her of violating the terms of the thirty years' truce, and a Spartan army invaded Attica (431 B. C.). Unable, with his few allies, to contend against the superior military power of the Spartans, Pericles pursued the policy of keeping within the city, and sending his numerous fleet to ravage the enemies' coasts. A violent plague, however, broke out in Athens, and Pericles fell a victim to it, in 429 B. C.

32. The most noted events of the early part of the war were the revolt of *Les'bos*† from Athens, and the brave defence of Platæa against the Spartans. The flower of the Spartan army having been blockaded by the Athenian fleet at *Sphac-te'ri-a*, the Spartans applied to the Athenians for peace, which, through the influence of *Cle'on*, a low and noisy demagogue, who had succeeded Pericles in the leadership of the popular assemblies, was refused. Sphacteria was afterward attacked, and the Spartans compelled to surrender. The Athenians were severely defeated by the Bœotians at *De'li-um*, and a short time afterward lost their empire in Thrace by the battle of *Am-phip'o-lis*, in which *Bras'i-das*, a distinguished Spartan leader, defeated Cleon, the Athenian, both generals being slain (422 B. C.).

* A large island off the western shore of Epirus: now *Corfu*.
† A large and noted island off the western coast of Mysia, in Asia Minor. Capital, *Mit'yle'nē*. (See Map, p. 41.)

31. What was the cause of the Peloponnesian war? How and when did it commence? Policy pursued by Pericles? Cause and time of his death?
32. What were the principal events of the early part of the war? Why did the Spartans sue for peace? Who was Cleon? In what battle were the Athenians defeated? Who fell at Amphipolis? Where was Amphipolis? (See Map of Greece.)

33. The next year, through the influence of Nicias (*nish'-e-as*), who succeeded Cleon at Athens, peace was made with Sparta. Though designed to be a fifty years' truce, it lasted only a few months. *Al-ci-bī'a-dēs*, a handsome and talented, but dissolute pupil of the great philosopher *Soc'ra-tēs*, persuaded Argos to renew the war. He then induced the Athenians to send an expedition against Syracuse, to the command of which himself and Nicias were assigned. Alcibiades was, however, recalled; and being accused of committing an act of great outrage and impiety, and condemned to death, fled to Sparta. Nicias suffered a most disastrous defeat; and as the armament had been one of the finest ever sent out by the Athenians, they were greatly weakened by this event (413 B. C.).

34. Alcibiades passed from Sparta to Sardis, taking refuge with the Persian satrap, Tis-sa-pher'nes. He, however, succeeded in gaining some brilliant naval victories for the Athenians, and was recalled by them with great enthusiasm and joy, but only again to be driven into exile (407 B. C.). Athens unjustly caused six of her generals to be put to death, for alleged neglect of duty, after which the chief command was conferred upon Cō'non. Though an able officer, he allowed himself to be surprised by the Spartan general *Ly-san'der* at *Æ'gos-pot'a-mos*, on the Hellespont, and nearly all the fleet was destroyed (405 B. C.). Lysander the next year proceeded to Athens, captured the city, and thus ended this long war. For a minute account of these events we are indebted to the historians *Thu-cyd'-i-dēs* and *Xen'o-phon*.

35. Athens was thus driven to the most humiliating submission. She was compelled to destroy her port, agree to undertake no military enterprise except under the com-

---

33. What was the "Peace of Nicias?" How was the war renewed? Give an account of the expedition against Syracuse. Where is Syracuse? (See Map, No. 3.)

34. What is related further of Alcibiades? What ended the war? Historians of the war?

35. Results of the defeat of Athens? Who restored the popular government?

mand of Sparta, and also to consent to the abolition of her popular government, and to accept in its stead that of thirty magistrates, styled afterward, from their cruel and oppressive measures, the *Thirty Tyrants.* The democratical government was, however, soon restored through the patriotism and gallantry of *Thras-y-bū'lus,* by whom and his associates the tyrants were expelled (403 B. C.).

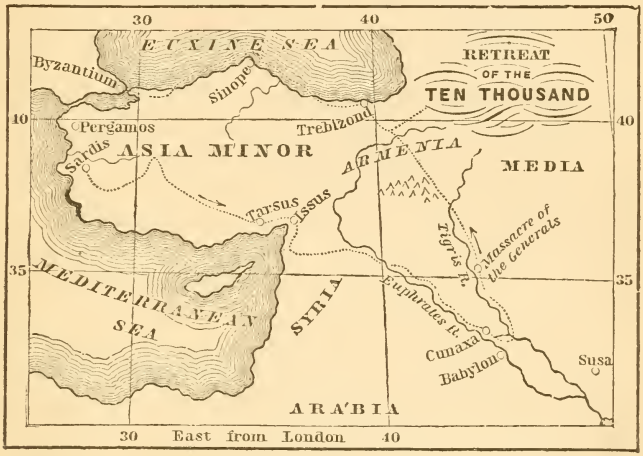
36. A few years after this, perished, by an unjust sentence of the Athenian judges, at the age of 70 years, **Socrates,** the most virtuous and illustrious of all the ancient philosophers, whose uninspired teachings make the nearest approach to the morality of the Gospel. Accused of irreligion and of corrupting the youth by false doctrine, he defended himself with great boldness, but displeased the judges by not supplicating their mercy. He spent the interval of thirty days between his condemnation and death in tranquil discourse with his disciples, and having drank the cup of hemlock with a firm and cheerful countenance, amid his weeping friends, died with perfect composure, expressing to the last his belief in an immortality beyond the grave (399 B. C.). His most eminent disciples were *Pla'to* and *Xenophon,* from whom we derive our knowledge of his doctrines, since he himself committed nothing to writing.

37. Retreat of the Ten Thousand. A short time after the close of the Peloponnesian War, the Greek soldiers being unemployed, a large number (about 14,000), under a Spartan leader, named *Cle-ar'chus,* entered into the service of Cyrus, surnamed the Younger, a Persian prince, and the brother of the reigning king, Artaxerxes II. His object was believed by them to be an attack upon the Pisidians, but the design really was to deprive his brother of the throne of Persia. They marched to *Cu-nax'a,* near Babylon,

36. Give an account of the condemnation and death of Socrates. Who were his most eminent pupils?

37. Into whose service did some of the Greek soldiers enter? For what object? What battle was fought? With what result? (Where was Cunaxa? See Map, p. 47.)

where an immense army of 900,000 Persians engaged the forces of Cyrus, consisting of 300,000 together with the Greek mercenaries. The latter gained an entire victory; but Cyrus, in a rash attempt to slay his brother, was killed, and the expedition was abandoned (401 B. C.).



38. On their retreat, the Greek generals were drawn into a conference with the Persians, and treacherously put to death. Xenophon, who had been a volunteer in the expedition, was immediately chosen commander; and the retreat was continued by the Greeks for a distance of more than 1500 miles, amid incredible hardships from cold, hunger, and the assaults of their enemies, until they at last reached the Euxine, when they found their numbers reduced to about 10,000. This celebrated expedition, as well as the retreat which closed it, forms the subject of perhaps the most interesting work of Xenophon. He afterward with the same forces entered into the service of a Thracian king, and subsequently assisted the Spartans in Asia Minor against the Persians.

38. Give an account of the retreat. What led to the election of Xenophon? At what place were the generals killed? (see Map, p. 47.)

39. In this war with the Persians, *A-ges-i-la'us*, the Spartan king, gained some important victories, but was suddenly recalled to defend his country against a powerful league, consisting of Argos, Corinth, Athens, and Thebes, formed to attack her. The confederate army was, however, defeated by Agesilaus in the battle of *Cor-o-ne'a;* but about the same time the Spartan fleet was almost entirely destroyed at Cnidus (*ni'dus*) by *Co'non*, the Athenian (394 B. C.). The Athenians by this victory regained the naval supremacy which they had lost at Ægospotamos.

40. Peace of Antalcidas. The Grecian states being thus at war with each other, each party contended for the alliance and aid of the Persians. Conon, who by means of Persian gold had been enabled to equip his fleet, and to rebuild the walls of Athens, was, through the machinations of Sparta, brought into suspicion with the Persian monarch and thrown into prison. The Spartans thus obtained the alliance of the Persians, and through their emissary, Antal'ci-das, negotiated a peace by which the Greek cities of Asia were given up to Persian rule. This disgraceful treaty was ratified by the other states (387 B. C.).

41. Theban War. The Spartans, having unjustly seized the citadel of Thebes, were expelled through the influence of *Pe-lop'i-das* and *E-pam-i-non'das*, two distinguished Theban patriots. This brought on a war between Thebes and Sparta, in which the former state gained great glory. In the noted battle of *Leuc'tra* (371 B. C.) the Spartan army was defeated by forces much inferior in number, commanded by Epaminondas and Pelopidas, and the Peloponnesus was thus thrown open to invasion. Agesilaus, however, by his vigorous measures saved Sparta from capture; and Epaminondas, after laying waste the territory of Laconia

39. What victories were gained by Agesilaus? What one by Conon? What was its effect?

40. How was peace made with the Persians?

41. What caused a war between Thebes and Sparta? What battles were fought? (Where were Leuctra and Mantinea? See Map of Greece.)

with fire and sword, retired from the peninsula. Other invasions of the Peloponnesus were afterward made by the Thebans; and in the last of these, the famous battle of *Man-ti-ne'a* was fought (362 B. C.), in which the Spartans, under Agesilaus, were again defeated by Epaminondas, but the latter was mortally wounded. [*See Note* 11, *end of Sec.*]

42. Epaminondas is justly regarded as one of the greatest heroes and patriots Greece ever produced. Wise in council, and brave and skilful in battle; an accomplished statesman and orator; and, what is still more, a man of unswerving truth and honesty, he was, during all the subsequent history of Greece, universally considered the best model for imitation. With him the influence of Thebes began and ended. His last advice was followed by his mourning countrymen, and peace was concluded before they departed from the Peloponnesus. Agesilaus died the next year, in an expedition in which he had engaged, though 80 years of age, to assist Egypt against the Persians. The subsequent history of Greece is closely connected with that of Macedonia.

Macedonian Empire.

43. Previous to the time of *Philip*, Macedo'nia occupied only an obscure position among the nations of the world, though it had existed as a kingdom for about four centuries. Being detained as a hostage at Thebes, Philip had enjoyed the benefit of a thorough education under Epaminondas; and when, at the age of 24, he ascended the throne (359 B. C.), he possessed all the accomplishments of a skilful soldier and statesman; while his great talent for artifice made him especially suited for the part of a wily politician.

44. Greece, at that time, presented an excellent field for these peculiar talents. Torn to pieces by internal dissen-

42. What was the character of Epaminondas? When did the death of Agesilaus occur?

43. What is said of the early history of Macedonia? Of the character and education of Philip?

44. What was the state of Greece at that time?

sions, possessing no national union, the states were constantly forming temporary leagues against each other, and preparing themselves for the attack of some crafty and powerful invader. Athens, distinguished for her progress in literature and art, was very much weakened by luxury; Sparta had become corrupted and enervated by the gold gained in her conquests, and though still warlike, was actuated only by the meanest sentiments of jealousy and revenge toward her sister states. The other states were only influential in promoting, by petty disputes, the general anarchy.

45. Having organized a powerful and well-trained army, Philip began his schemes by seizing *Amphipolis* and establishing a military station at *Phi-lip'pī*. Meanwhile a war broke out between Athens and her maritime allies, called the *Social War*, which having lasted about three years, ended in the defeat of Athens and secured the independence of the more important allies (355 B. C.). In the meantime another war had broken out in Greece, called the *Sacred War* (357 B. C.), caused by the Pho'cians, who instead of paying a fine imposed by the *Am-phic-ty-on'ic Council*, for having occupied and cultivated a tract of land devoted to the Delphian Apol'lo, invaded the sacred territory, and surprised and took *Del'phi** itself.

46. This brought on a general war, most of the states taking up arms against the Phocians, who, however, succeeded in forming an alliance with Athens and Sparta. After the respective parties had been weakened by several battles, Philip interfered. Having totally defeated the army of the Phocians in Thessaly, he took and destroyed *O-lyn'thus*;† and then marched into Greece, and after taking possession of Phocis, occupied Delphi. He then as-

* A town in Phocis, noted for its celebrated temple and oracle of the god Apollo.
† A celebrated city on the southern coast of Macedonia. (Map of Greece.)

45. How did Philip begin his schemes of conquest? What was the social war? Its result? What was the sacred war?
46. What part did Philip take in this war? Its result?

sembled the Amphic'tyons, and procured a decree that the towns of the Phocians should be destroyed, and that their two votes in the council, of which they were deprived, should be transferred to Macedonia. This ended the Sacred War (346 B. C.), the effect of which was to make Macedon the leading state in Greece.

47. Meanwhile the great Athenian orator, *De-mos'the-nēs*, had endeavored, by his splendid eloquence, to arouse his countrymen against the crafty designs of Philip; but although the latter persisted in his schemes of conquest, it was not until 338 B. C. that any effort was made to oppose his progress. In that year a battle was fought at *Chæ-ro-ne'a*, in which Philip disastrously defeated the combined forces of Athens and Thebes, and thus completed the subjugation of all Greece. He, however, left to the states a nominal independence in their local affairs, he himself controlling all public measures.

48. Philip next convened a congress of the Grecian states at Corinth, obtained from them a formal declaration of war against Persia, and returned home to prepare an expedition for the conquest of that country, which he had for some time meditated. Before, however, these preparations were completed, he was assassinated by Pausanias, a young Macedonian noble (336 B. C.); and Alexander, afterward called the Great, ascended the throne, being then only twenty years of age, but thoroughly educated, partly under the celebrated philosopher *Ar'is-tŏ-tle.**

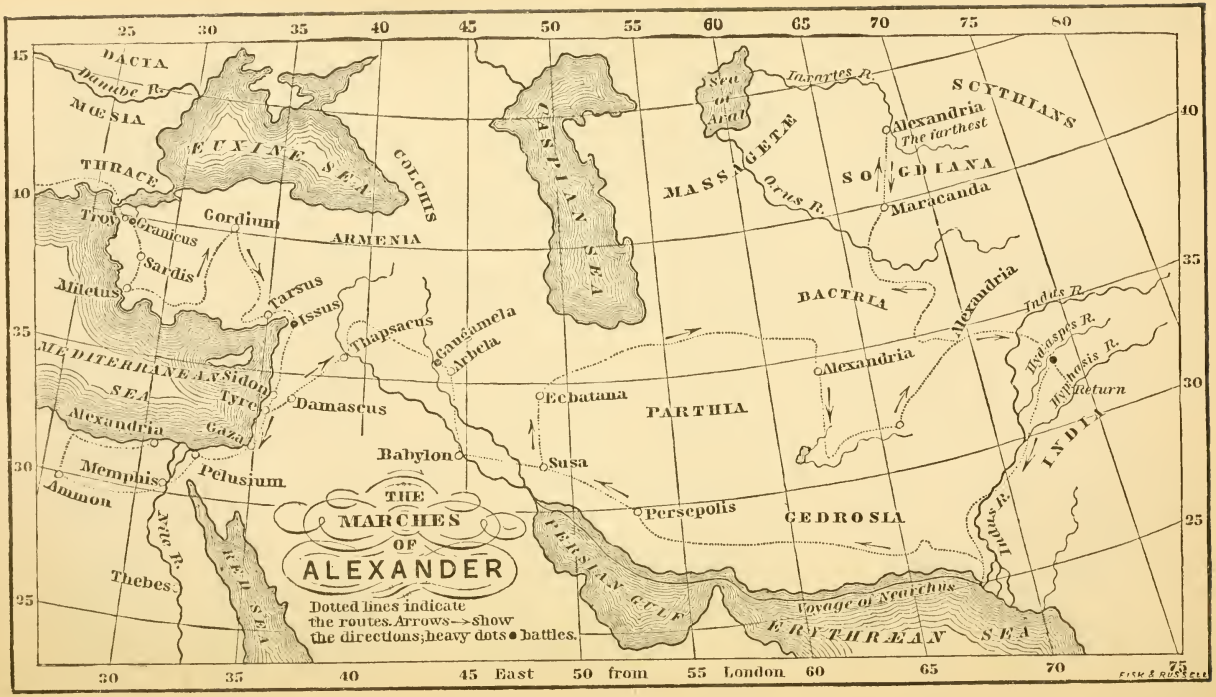
49. The Thebans having revolted, Alexander immediately marched against them, and taking their city, razed it to the ground, and sold its inhabitants, to the number of 30,000, into slavery. After this terrible example, leaving An-tip'a-ter

* *See Note* 12, *end of the Section.*

47. What is said of Demosthenes? Battle of Chæronea? Its result? Where was Chæronea? (See Progressive Map, No. 2.)

48. What measures were adopted by Philip against Persia? What caused his death? By whom was he succeeded?

49. How did Alexander suppress the revolt of Thebes? Where was his first battle with the Persians fought? What was its result? Describe the battle of Issus. What was its result? (Where was Issus? See Map, p. 52.)


THE
MARCHES
OF
ALEXANDER
Dotted lines indicate the routes. Arrows → show the directions; heavy dots ● battles.
DACIA
Danube R.
MOESIA
THRACE
EUXINE SEA
COLCHIS
CASPIAN SEA
Sea of Aral
Jaxartes R.
SCYTHIANS
MASSAGETE
SOGDIANA
Alexandria The farthest
Maracanda
Oxus R.
Troy
Granicus
Gordium
ARMENIA
Sardis
Miletus
Tarsus
Issus
Thapsacus
Gaugamela
Arbela
BACTRIA
Alexandria
Indus R.
Hydaspes R.
Hyphasis R.
Hyphasis return
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Sidon
Tyre
Damascus
Alexandria
Gaza
Ecbatana
PARTHIA
Babylon
Susa
Memphis
Pelusium
Ammon
Persepolis
GEDROSIA
INDIA
Indus R.
Nile R.
Thebes
RED SEA
PERSIAN GULF
Voyage of Nearchus
ERYTHREAN SEA
25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 65 70 75 80
15 10 35 30 25
30 35 40 45 East 50 from 55 London 60 65 70 75
FISK & RUSSELL

as regent in Macedonia, he proceeded on the expedition planned by his father (334 B. C.). Having crossed the Hellespont with an army of 35,000 men,* he advanced to the *Gra-nī'cus* river, and defeated the Persian army, 120,000 strong, assembled on its banks. He then passed through Asia Minor, all of the cities of which surrendered to him; and the next year defeated a vast army, under Darius, the Persian monarch, at *Is'sus*. So complete was the rout, that Darius fled in dismay, leaving his mother and wife to the mercy of the victor. These Alexander ordered to be treated with the greatest respect and attention.

50. He then advanced toward the south, and all the cities of Phœnicia surrendered to him, except Tyre, the siege of which delayed him seven months. He built a pier across the strait, half a mile wide, which separated the city from the main land, and thus having gained access to the walls, he battered them to pieces and took the city by storm (332 B. C.). No mercy was shown to the wretched inhabitants, eight thousand of whom are said to have been massacred, and the remainder sold into slavery.

51. In the mean while Darius solicited peace, offering to cede to Alexander the western half of the empire, and to give him his daughter in marriage. This, however, Alexander promptly refused, and continued his march toward Egypt, capturing *Gā'za* on the way. Passing through Egypt, he penetrated the Lib'yan desert, and paid a visit to the temple of *Jupiter Am'mon*. He also founded in Egypt the city of *Alexandria*,† which for many centuries after-

* *See Note* 13, *end of the Section.*

† This was the first city founded by Alexander and named after him. He subsequently founded no less than *seventeen* cities, in different parts of Asia, to each of which he gave the name of *Alexandria*. (*See Map*, p. 52.)

MAP QUESTIONS. (See Map, page 52.) Name the places on Alexander's march from the Granicus to Issus. What places did he pass from Issus to Alexandria? On his return from Alexandria to Arbela? From Arbela to Ecbatana? From Ecbatana to Maracanda? What was the most northern point reached? The most eastern? What places did he pass on going from Alexandria the Farthest to the point of return on the Hyphasis? At what points did great battles occur? Describe his return route. Which way did the fleet proceed under Nearchus?

50. How was Tyre taken? How were the inhabitants treated?

51. What offer was made by Darius? What country did Alexander next invade? What city did he found? What did Alexandria become?

ward was the first commercial city in the world, being the grand emporium of Europe, Africa, and India.

52. Turning again to the east, he crossed the Euphrates, and prepared for the battle which was to decide the fate of Persia. On the plain of Gau-ga-me'la, a few miles from *Ar-be'la*, Darius drew up his immense army, consisting of over a million Persians, which, with 40,000 foot and 7000 horse, Alexander, after a brief engagement, entirely defeated and put to flight (331 B. C.). Proceeding to Babylon, he entered that city in triumph, having made himself, at the age of twenty-five, the master of all Western Asia, together with Egypt.

53. He next advanced to *Su'sa*, a treasure-city of the Persians, which surrendered without resistance. Here were obtained gold and silver to the amount of 50,000 talents, and what was still more interesting to the Greeks, the spoils which Xerxes had carried off from Greece. *Per-sep'-o-lis*, the real capital of the Persian kings, was the next city occupied by the invader; and here, it is said, the treasure captured amounted to 120,000 talents. Darius had in the mean while fled to Ecbatana, and thither Alexander went in pursuit, which he continued with great rapidity, until he reached Bactria, where the Persian monarch had been seized and put to death by the satrap of that province.

54. Alexander, still pursuing his career of conquest, defeated the Scythians on the banks of the *I-ax'ar-tēs*, and took possession of *Mar-a-can'da* (now Samarcand), the capital of Sog-di-a'na, where he married a Bactrian princess, named *Rox-ā'na* (328 B. C.). Here too it was that, at a banquet, in a fit of anger, he murdered his friend *Cly'tus*, who had saved his life at the battle of the Granicus. He next invaded India, defeated *Po'rus*, the king of that coun-

52. What was the final engagement with Darius? Its result?
53. What other cities and countries were subdued? What was the fate of Darius?
54. What further conquests were made by Alexander? Whom did he marry? Whom did he slay in anger? Why did he at last retreat?

try, on the banks of the *Hy-das'pēs*, and after a brief rest, pushed on to the *Hyph'a-sis*, when the soldiers, worn out with their toils, positively refused to proceed any farther. He then gave orders to return.

55. Having built a fleet, he sailed down the Indus to its mouth; and then, leaving *Ne-ar'chus* to pursue the voyage of exploration, he marched through the burning desert to Persepolis, and thence by way of Susa and Ecbatana to Babylon, where he indulged in various schemes of further conquest. But, as he was about to set out on a campaign in Arabia, he was seized with a fever, said to have been occasioned by intemperance; and after eleven days' illness, he expired (323 B. C.). On his death-bed, being asked by one of his generals, to whom he desired to leave his throne, he answered: "To the worthiest among you; but I am afraid my obsequies will be celebrated with bloody hands." He, however, gave his ring to *Per-dic'cas*.

56. Of all the conquerors of antiquity Alexander was, without doubt, the most enterprising and renowned. The splendor of his military achievements should not, however, blind us to the moral depravity which could sacrifice, without a single pang of remorse, so many thousands of his fellow-creatures, merely to gratify a thirst for vain-glory. This insatiable desire seems to have been unmixed with any wish to benefit his subjects or mankind, although he founded cities which promised to be useful to him in carrying out his ambitious views, and in perpetuating his memory. In the hands of Providence, however, he was undoubtedly an instrument of good; since, by his conquests, the two continents were brought into closer communication with each other, and the language, literature, and arts of Greece were carried into the East.

---

55. In what way did he return? (Trace his route both in advance and on his return, from Map, p. 52.) What other conquests were meditated by him? When and how did his death take place? Did he leave a successor?

56. What was the character of Alexander? What was the result of his conquests? (Point out on the Map the towns founded by him, and named Alexandria.)

57. In the mean while, the Spartans, under their king *A'gis*, had made a vigorous effort, in union with most of the other states of Peloponnesus (331 B. C.), to throw off the yoke of Macedon; but they were defeated with great slaughter by *Antipater*, Agis being slain in the battle. Athens had taken no part in this struggle; but under the influence of *Pho'cion*, illustrious for the wisdom and moderation of his counsels and his stern republican simplicity and honesty, prosecuted the orators who had been active against the Macedonians, and, under a charge of bribery, drove them into exile. Among these was Demosthenes. When, however, news arrived of the death of Alexander, the city gave way to the most excessive demonstrations of joy, and Phocion's party lost all their influence.

58. The Lamian War. In an expedition under *Le-os'-the-nēs*, the Athenians and their allies gained some important victories over Antipater near *La'mi-a*;* but Antipater being joined by Crat'e-rus, with a considerable force from Asia, entirely defeated them in Thessaly, and the war was at an end (322 B. C.). Athens was compelled to give up her orators, including Demosthenes, who had been recalled from exile during the war: the latter, however, escaping, was finally compelled to take poison in order to escape from his pursuers; while the others were cruelly put to death.

59. Alexander's Successors. After Alexander's death, his half-brother Philip, and his infant son by Roxana, were declared partners of the throne, while the empire itself was parcelled out among the generals who were to rule as satraps, but Perdiccas was to act as regent. Being

* A fortified town near the southeastern border of Thessaly. (See Map of Greece.)

57. What effort did the Spartans make to regain their freedom? What course did Athens pursue? Why? Who were banished? Effect of Alexander's death at Athens?

58. The Lamian war and its result? (Where was Lamia? See Map, No. 3.)

59. How were the dominions of Alexander disposed of? What league was formed against Perdiccas? Who succeeded him as regent?

suspected of a design to place himself upon the throne, a league was formed against Perdiccas by *An-tig'o-nus, Ptol'-e-my, An-tip'a-ter,* and *Crat'e-rus;* and, in a war against them, he was assassinated (321 B. C.). Antipater was then made regent, and the empire was again divided.

60. Antipater died three years afterward, at the age of eighty, and left the regency to *Pol-y-sper'chon,* a veteran general of Alexander. This displeased *Cas-san'der,* Antipater's son, who had expected to succeed his father, and kindled a war of several years between the two generals. During this war Cassander placed the administration at Athens under *De-me'tri-us Pha-le're-us,* a distinguished Athenian orator, statesman, and writer, who ruled the city for ten years with so much popularity that the Athenians raised 360 brazen statues to his honor. War having arisen between Antigonus and the other generals, Athens surrendered to *Deme'trius Pō-li-or-cē'tēs,** the son of Antigonus; and Phalereus, who, by his dissipated habits, had lost his popularity, was compelled to flee, all his statues being thrown down except one.

61. After several years more of war, a decisive battle was fought near *Ip'sus,* in which Antigonus was slain and his army entirely defeated (301 B. C.). This led to a more permanent division of the empire, and nearly closed this long series of wars, which so fully demonstrated the prophetic sagacity of Alexander, when he said his obsequies would be bloody. It also, perhaps, still further proved the wickedness and wanton cruelty of his nature, since he took no means to prevent so dreadful a result by definitely appointing a successor. During these wars the whole of Alexander's relations, including his mother, O-lym'pi-as, and his wife and son, were successively put to death.

* Poliorcetes means, in Greek, the "Besieger of Cities."

60. Who was the successor of Antipater? What war ensued? What is said of Demetrius Phalereus? Demetrius Poliorcetes?

61. Where was Antigonus defeated? (Where was Ipsus? See Map, p. 41.) What was the result? What became of Alexander's relations?

62. In the partition of the empire which took place after the battle of Ipsus, *Cassander* obtained Greece and Macedonia; Ptolemy was confirmed in the possession of Egypt; *Ly-sim'a-chus* had the greatest part of Asia Minor; and *Se-leu'cus*, the whole country from the coast of Syria to the Euphrates. The latter founded on the river O-ron'-tes a new capital of his empire, which he named *An'tioch*, after his father, An-ti'o-chus.

63. Demetrius, the son of Antigonus, was not subdued. He retreated from Ipsus, and proceeded to Greece; but the Athenians refused to receive him. After forming an alliance with Seleucus, he again appeared before Athens, which, after a long siege, he captured, expelling the tyrannical governor whom Cassander had appointed (295 B. C.). The Athenians were greatly moved by his noble forgiveness and lenity; for instead of the dreadful punishment which they had expected, he supplied their wants, and did his best to relieve the miseries occasioned by the long siege which they had suffered. [*See Note* 14, *end of the Section.*]

64. After the death of Cassander, Demetrius possessed himself of the throne of Macedon (294 B. C.), which he occupied for seven years, when it was seized by *Pyr'rhus*, king of Epirus, and in a few months afterward by Lysimachus (287 B. C.). Thus the whole Macedonian Empire, excepting Egypt, under Ptolemy, was divided between Lysimachus and Seleucus. Demetrius died a captive at the court of the latter, 283 B. C. The throne of Macedon was filled by Lysimachus only six years, when, hostilities having arisen between him and Seleucus, he was defeated by the latter in a battle near Sardis, and slain. This gave nearly the whole empire to Seleucus, who, however, survived the conquest only one year, being treacherously

62. What partition of the empire was made? (Where was Antioch? See Progressive Map, No. 4.) By whom was it founded?

63. What was done by Demetrius? What was his conduct toward Athens?

64. By what kings was the throne of Macedon successively filled? Into whose power did nearly all the Macedonian Empire fall? In what way? What became of Demetrius? Of Seleucus?

assassinated in Thrace (280 B. C.), by *Ptolemy Ce-rau'nus*, son of Ptolemy, king of Egypt.

65. Macedonia and Thrace were the same year invaded by an immense host of Gauls, under a leader named Brennus, and Ptolemy fell in a battle which he fought to repel them. The Gauls then passed into Greece, and reached Delphi, where they were repulsed with great loss. Some of them afterward settled on the Danube; others, in Thrace; while a third part passed into Asia, and settled in the country called after them, *Ga-la'tia*.

66. After the death of Ptolemy, the throne of Macedon was occupied by *Antigonus Go-na'tas*,* son of Demetrius, who reigned till 243 B. C., exercising a severe rule over the Greeks, whose cities he governed by means of petty tyrants appointed by himself. This tyranny led to a noted confederacy, styled in history the "ACHÆAN LEAGUE," it being in fact the revival of an ancient league which had existed among the twelve chief cities of Achaia. It was soon joined by most of the important states of Greece, including Athens; and, under its wise and patriotic leader, *A-ra'tus of Sicyon* (*sish'e-on*), acquired very great influence (243 B. C.).

67. At this period three powers contended for mastery in Greece: the *A-chæ'an League*, the *Æ-to'li-an League*, and the Spartans. The Ætolian league was a confederation of tribes, which had gradually made themselves masters of Locris, Phocis, Bœotia, and some other states. The Spartans, under their celebrated kings *A'gis* and *Cle-om'e-nes*, had attempted to regain their ancient simplicity of manners and military hardihood.

* So called from *Gonni*, a town in Thessaly, where he was born.

65. Give an account of the invasion by the Gauls. Where did they settle? (What was the situation of Galatia? See Map, p. 41.)

66. What noted league was formed among the Greek states? What led to it? Who was at its head? (Where was Sicyon? See Map of Greece.)

67. What three powers were there in Greece at this time? What was the Ætolian league? What did Agis and Cleomenes attempt?

68. Aratus, in a war with the Spartans, was obliged to call in the assistance of *Antigonus Do'son*,* king of Macedon, who defeated Cleomenes and captured Sparta, which hitherto had remained unconquered (221 B. C.). Aratus afterward entered into an alliance with Philip, king of Macedon, in a war against the Ætolians, which lasted till 217 B. C.; but having displeased Philip, he was by the orders of the latter poisoned (213 B. C.).

69. *Phil-o-pœ'men*, styled "the last of the Greeks," succeeded Aratus in administering the affairs of the Achæan league. He was a man of great talents and virtue. In 207 B. C., he gained a great victory over the Spartans, notwithstanding they were assisted by the Romans; and, in the general assembly of the Greeks, was hailed as the liberator of their country. The Romans a few years after this made war upon Philip, king of Macedon, and defeated him in the famous battle of *Cyn-os-ceph'a-læ*,† in Thessaly (197 B. C.). Philip was then compelled to withdraw his garrisons from the Grecian towns, and the independence of Greece was solemnly proclaimed by the Romans.

70. The Ætolians having made war upon the Romans, were completely subdued (189 B. C.). Meanwhile Sparta joined the Achæan league; but the Messenians having revolted against it, Philopœmen, in an attempt to reduce them, was taken prisoner and barbarously put to death, at the age of seventy (183 B. C.). Mes-se'ne was, however, captured by the Achæans the next year, and the murderers of Philopœmen punished.

71. The Romans, again invading Macedonia, defeated

* *Doson* means *about to give*, and was applied to this king on account of his habit of promising but not performing.

† *Cynoscephalæ* means *dogs' heads*, and was given to a range of elevated rocks in Thessaly resembling in appearance the heads of dogs. It is sometimes written *Cynocephalæ*.

68. What befell Sparta? What caused the death of Aratus?

69. Who was Philopœmen? How did he become distinguished? Describe the battle of Cynoscephalæ and its result. (Where was Cynoscephalæ? See Map of Greece.)

70. What ended the Ætolian league? What caused the death of Philopœmen?

71. When was the battle of Pydna fought? Its consequences? Where was Pydna?—(See Map of Greece.) When and by whom was Greece finally subdued?

its last king, *Per'seŭs*, in the battle of *Pyd'na* (168 B. C.), and reduced it to a province. The Roman general, entering Greece, surrendered many of its cities to the pillage of the soldiers; and no fewer than 150,000 of the inhabitants were captured and sold as slaves. A few years later, the Romans under *Mum'mi-us* again invaded Greece, being invited by the Spartans, who had quarrelled with the Achæans. The last army of the latter surrendered at *Corinth* (146 B. C.), and Greece became a Roman province, under the name of ACHAIA.

72. Grecian Colonies.—These were very numerous and widespread. The southern part of Italy was called *Mag'na Græcia*, from the large number of Greek cities which it contained. One of the earliest was *Cu'mæ*, an Æolic colony, on the Bay of Naples; but the most prominent were *Syb'a-ris*,* noted for its effeminacy and debauchery, and *Cro'ton*, distinguished for its athletes and physicians. After the destruction of Sybaris by its rival Croton, *Taren'tum* took the lead among the cities of Magna Græcia. Sicily also contained a large number of Greek cities, of which the most noted were *Mes-sā'na*, *Syr'a-cuse*, and *Ag-rigen'tum*. Syracuse was a Corinthian colony, founded 734 B. C. Its history will be given in connection with that of Rome.

73. There was also a cluster of colonies at the western part of the Mediterranean, of which *Mas-sā'li-a* (now Marseilles), founded 600 B. C., was the chief. On the African coast, *Cy-re'nē* was established by the Spartans (630 B. C.). It afterward became the capital of *Cyrenaica* (*si-re-na'e-kah*). The Ionic cities of Asia Minor were especially noted for their enterprise; and, during the eighth and seventh centuries, *Miletus* was the first commercial city of Hellas; but *Eph'e-sus* afterward rivalled it in size and importance.

* *See Note* 15, *end of Section.*

72. What were the principal Greek colonies in Italy? In Sicily? Point them out on the Map. (See Progressive Map, No. 3.)

73. What other colonies were there? What is said of Miletus? Ephesus? Point them out. (See Map, p. 41.)

On the Propontis and the Euxine there were also numerous colonies, of which *Cyz'i-cus* and *Sin'o-pē* were the most celebrated. [*See Note* 16. *end of Section.*]

74. The Greeks were remarkable not only for keenness of intellect and delicacy of taste, but for the skill and tact with which they employed these faculties, both in the useful and in the fine arts. Architecture, painting, and sculpture were carried by them to a degree of perfection which has never been surpassed. The works of their poets and orators still remain unequalled by those of any subsequent age or country; while their various systems of philosophy show a genius for deep speculation and subtle distinction, mingled with a refinement of sentiment, to be found in those of no other people. Had their virtue and patriotism been equal to their intellectual grandeur, Greece could never have been subdued.

75. Being destitute of any political union, the Hellenic States destroyed each other by their mutual dissensions and wars. This was partly due to the traditional animosities and jealousies of the different races, and partly to the geographical character of Greece itself, which, crossed in every direction by mountain chains or divided by deep gulfs, provided those natural barriers which encourage local pride and hostility. There were, however, three institutions that gave them a certain degree of national unity:—the *Amphictyonic Council*, the *Oracles*, and the *Public Games* and other *religious festivals*.

76. The Amphictyonic Council was of very ancient origin. It consisted of deputies from the different states, and met usually twice a year,—at *Delphi* in the spring, and at *Thermopylæ* in the autumn. Its express objects were to prevent acts of aggression against its members, and to pro-

74. For what were the Greeks remarkable?
75. What caused the political disunion of the Grecian states? What gave them a certain degree of unity?
76. Describe the Amphictyonic Council. What were the Oracles? Which was the principal one? How generally was it consulted?

tect the temple of Apollo at Delphi. The Oracles were certain sacred spots where it was thought the will of the gods might be ascertained through the inspired answers of the priestesses. There were several, the most noted of which was that of Apollo at Delphi. Thither messengers came from all parts of Greece, and even from foreign countries, to consult the Oracle.

77. There were four great festivals at which the public games were celebrated, called the *Olympic, Pyth'ian, Ne-me'an,* and *Isth'mian* games. The Olympic games were celebrated at Olympia, in Elis, every fifth year, in honor of Jupiter, and drew together an immense assemblage from all parts of Greece, as well as from foreign countries. The exercises consisted of running, wrestling, boxing, chariot-racing, etc.; and to be proclaimed a victor in these games was considered the highest honor a Grecian could attain. None could contend in them but those of the Hellenic race, and all who entered into these contests were obliged to take an oath that they would use no unfair means to obtain the victory. The only prize bestowed on the victor was a simple garland of wild olive.

78. The Pythian games were celebrated in honor of Apollo, every fifth year, near *Delphi;* the Nemean and Isthmian games, once in two years: the first, at *Ne-me'a,* in honor of Jupiter; and the second, by the Corinthians on their isthmus, in honor of Neptune, the god supposed to preside over the sea. In these three festivals there were contests in poetry and music, as well as trials of strength and skill. The Olympic games were the most ancient. They were revived, it is said, by Lycurgus in 776 B. C.; and hence this date, called the *First Olympiad,* was afterward employed by the Greeks as their principal chronological era.*

* *See Note* 17, *end of Section.*

77. How many and what public games? Describe the Olympic games.
78. Describe the Pythian, Nemean, and Isthmian games. What was the origin of the Olympiads?

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

	B. C.	
Fabulous Ages.	1225.	Argonautic Expedition.
	1184.	Troy taken and burnt by the Greeks.
	1124.	Æolic migration from Thessaly.
	1104.	Return of the Heracleidæ.
8th Cent'y.	776.	**Commencement of the Olympiads.** Age of Lycurgus.
	743–23.	First Messenian War.
7th Cent'y.	685–68.	Second Messenian War.
	624.	Draco gives laws to Athens.
6th Century.	594.	Legislation of Solon.
	560–27.	Usurpation of Pisistratus.
	514.	Insurrection at Athens.—Death of Hipparchus.
	510.	Hippias expelled from Athens.
	501.	Ionian revolt in Asia Minor.
5th Century.	495.	Miletus taken and the Ionian revolt subdued.
	492.	Invasion of Europe by Mardonius.
	490.	**Battle of Marathon.**—Persians defeated.
	485.	Accession of Xerxes to the throne of Persia.
	483.	Aristides banished from Athens by the ostracism.
	481.	Themistocles the leading man at Athens.
	480.	Invasion of Greece by Xerxes.—**Battle of Salamis.**
	479.	Battle of Platæa.
	478.	Leadership transferred from Pausanias to Aristides.—Commencement of Athenian supremacy.
	471.	Themistocles banished by the ostracism.—Death of Pausanias.
	461.	Pericles at the head of public affairs at Athens.
	449.	Death of Cimon.—End of the Persian War.
	431.	Commencement of the Peloponnesian War.
	429.	Death of Pericles.—Plague at Athens.
	415.	Expedition against Sicily, under Alcibiades and Nicias.
	405.	**Battle of Ægospotamos.**
	403.	The Thirty Tyrants expelled by Thrasybulus.
	401.	Battle of Cunaxa, and Retreat of the "Ten Thousand."
	399.	Death of Socrates, at the age of 70.
	394.	Battle of Coronea, and Victory of Agesilaus.—The Spartan fleet defeated by Conon.
	387.	Peace of Antalcidas.

4th Century.

371. **Battle of Leuctra.**—The Spartans defeated by Epaminondas.
362. Battle of Mantinea.—Death of Epaminondas.
359. Accession of Philip to the throne of Macedon.
352. First Philippic of Demosthenes.
346. Philip overruns Phocis, and ends the Sacred War.
338. **Battle of Chæronea.**—The Athenians and Thebans defeated by Philip.
336. Accession of Alexander the Great.
334. Battle of the Granicus River.
333. Battle of Issus.
331. **Battle of Arbela.**
323. Death of Alexander at Babylon.—The Lamian War.
317–307. Demetrius Phalereus at Athens.
301. **Battle of Ipsus.**

3d Century.

281. Lysimachus defeated and slain by Seleucus.
280. Seleucus assassinated by Ptolemy Ceraunus.—Invasion of Greece by the Gauls.
279. The Gauls defeated at Delphi.
243. Aratus general of the Achæan league.
241. Agis (IV.), king of Sparta, put to death for attempting to reform the government.
236. Cleomenes (III.) becomes king of Sparta.
221. Sparta captured by Antigonus Doson.
213. Aratus poisoned by Philip, king of Macedon.
208. Philopœmen general of the Achæan league.

2d Century.

197. Battle of Cynoscephalæ.—Philip, king of Macedon, defeated.
183. Philopœmen put to death by the revolted Messenians.
168. **Battle of Pydna.**—End of the Macedonian monarchy.
146. Destruction of Corinth by Mummius.—Greece made a Roman province under the name of **Achaia.**

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE.
1. What conquests were made by Cyrus the Great?	31
2. What were the principal events of the reign of Cambyses?	31
3. What important expeditions were undertaken by Darius Hystaspes?	32
4. What led to the invasion of Greece?	32
5. What Persian monarch invaded Greece, and with what result?	32
6. When and in what way did the Persian Empire end?	33
7. What was the character of the Persians? Their religion?	33
8. Give a brief sketch of the geography of Greece.	33–34
9. Who were the primitive inhabitants of Greece?	34

10. What were the principal events of the legendary history? 34-35
11. What revolutions occurred in the twelfth century? 35
12. Give an account of Lycurgus 35-36
13. Describe the Messenian Wars, and their consequences 36
14. Describe the government of Sparta 36
15. Give an account of the origin of Athens, and its early history 37
16. Who were Draco and Solon? 37
17 Give an account of Pisistratus and his sons 37 38
18 What is meant in Grecian history by the "Age of Despots?" 38
19. What was the ostracism, and why was it established? 38 39
20. Mention some of the distinguished men who were banished by it 42-48
21. What led to the battle of Marathon? Its consequences? 39
22. Give an account of the invasion of Greece by Xerxes 40
23. Give a sketch of the career of Aristides 41-43
24. Also of Themistocles 41-43
25. Of Pausanias 41-42
26. Of Cimon 43
27. Give a full account of the Persian War 39-44
28. Give a full account of the Peloponnesian War 44-45
29. Give a sketch of the life and character of Socrates 46-47
30. What led to the battle of Cunaxa? 47
31. Give an account of the Retreat of the Ten Thousand 47
32. Describe the character of Agesilaus, and state the chief events of his life 48-49
33. What rendered Epaminondas illustrious? 48-49
34. Describe the character of Philip of Macedon, and state the principal events of his reign 49-51
35. What was the Sacred War? 50-51
36. What victory gave Philip control of Greece? 51
37. Give a sketch of the career of Alexander the Great 51-56
38. What victory gave him the Persian empire? 54
39. After his death, what noted generals contended for the mastery? 56-57
40. What led to the battle of Ipsus? Its consequences? 57
41. Who were Demetrius Phalereus and Demetrius Poliorcetes? 57
42. How was the Macedonian Empire divided after the battle of Ipsus? 58
43. Give a sketch of the career of Demetrius Poliorcetes 58
44. Mention some of the successors of Ptolemy Ceraunus on the throne of Macedon 59
45. Give an account of the formation of the Ætolian league 59
46. Give a sketch of the history of the Achæan league 59
47. Who was Philopœmen? What was he styled? 60
48. How did the Macedonian monarchy end? 61
49. When and by whom was Greece subdued? 61
50. Give a sketch of the Greek colonies in Asia Minor, Italy, Africa, &c 61
51. What was the character of the Greeks? 62
52. What was the Amphictyonic Council? 62
53. Describe the public games 63
54. In whose honor were they held? What was their effect? 63
55. Mention the chief events of the fabulous age, with their dates 64
56. Mention the chief events in the history of Greece, with their dates, during each succeeding century 64-65

NOTES.

1. History of Cyrus (p. 31, ¶ 1).—"It is well known that the history of Cyrus (his name signifies 'the sun,' Koresh, Churshid) has come down to us in two very different versions, that of Herodotus and that of Xenophon. No rational man in our days can look upon Xenophon's history of Cyrus in any other light than that of a romance. It was not Xenophon's intention to deceive; he did not at all intend to write a history, or to give it out as a history; but it is as clear as daylight, that his object was to write a political novel in the form of the history of a king. The account in Herodotus is very different; but were we to conclude that, whereas Xenophon's narrative is a fiction, that of Herodotus is altogether and strictly historical, the conclusion would be extremely unfortunate. The historical portion in the tradition about Cyrus, in my opinion, is, that he roused the Persians to an insurrection against the ruling Medes; and that probably not only the inhabitants of Farsistan, but more or less, all the Persian tribes, supported the insurrection. The Medes, under Astyages, were defeated in the open field; Astyages became the prisoner of his grandson, and all Media fell into the hands of Cyrus. The supreme power was thus transferred to the Persians."—*Niebuhr.—Lectures on Ancient History.*

2. The Last Battle of Cyrus (p. 31, ¶ 1).—"Tomyris, queen of the Massagetæ, when she found that Cyrus paid no heed to her advice, collected all the forces of her kingdom, and gave him battle. Of all the combats in which the barbarians have engaged among themselves, I reckon this to have been the fiercest. The following, as I understand, was the manner of it:—First, the two armies stood apart and shot their arrows at each other; then, when their quivers were empty, they closed and fought hand to hand with lances and daggers; and thus they continued fighting for a length of time, neither choosing to give ground. At length the Massagetæ prevailed. The greater part of the army of the Persians was destroyed, and Cyrus himself fell, after reigning nine and twenty years. Search was made among the slain, by order of the queen, for the body of Cyrus; and when it was found, she took a skin, and, filling it with human blood, she dipped the head of Cyrus in the gore, saying, as she thus insulted the corse, "I live and have conquered thee in fight, and yet by thee am I ruined, for thou tookest my son with guile; but thus I make good my threat, and give thee thy fill of blood."—*Rawlinson's Herodotus.*

The accounts given of Cyrus's death by other writers differ from this. According to Xenophon, he died peacefully in his bed. Ctesias says, he was mortally wounded in a battle with Derbices, and died in his camp, a short time afterward. There seems to be little reason to doubt that he died in a violent manner, but it is uncertain what enemy he was contending against at the time.

3. Zoroaster (p. 33, ¶ 6).—Zoroaster is generally believed to have been the founder of the sect called Magi; but at what time he lived is not certainly known. Some suppose him to have been contemporary with Cyrus the Great: others place him as far back as the time of Abraham. He improved upon the doctrines of the Magian tribe by bringing their religious tenets into a more consistent form. He erected a temple where he kept a fire, which he said came directly from heaven. This was distributed through the kingdom, and maintained by the priests with the greatest care. They watched it day and night, fed it with wood stripped of the bark, and never blowed it with their breath lest it might be polluted. Zoroaster taught that there are two grand principles: the one, the cause of all good; the other, the cause of all evil; the former represented by light; the latter by darkness.

The book which contains his religious tenets is called Zend-avesta, the word *avesta* meaning text or scripture, and *zend*, a translation or commentary. This is the book that contains the sacred writings of the Parsees, that is, the people of Pars, or ancient Persia. Zoroaster, among the Persians and Parsees, is called *Zerdusht*. The original meaning of the word is uncertain ; most probably it indicates the notion of high-priest or spiritual guide.

4. Solon and his Laws (p. 37, ¶ 16).—Solon in his youth was a poet. He was descended from Codrus ; and though a native of Salamis, had resided for some time at Athens, when owing to the many unsuccessful attempts that had been made to compel Salamis to return to its allegiance, the people decreed capital punishment to any citizen or magistrate who should propose any other expedition to reduce it. Feigning insanity, he shut himself up in his house, and composed a poem upon the loss of the "lovely island;" and, one day, during an assembly of the people, he ran into the market-place like one frantic, mounted the herald's stone, and recited the poem to the crowd. Some of his friends stood ready to raise a shout of applause, and the people catching the frenzy, repealed the law by acclamation. A new expedition was accordingly decreed, and the command of it was given to Solon. Under his guidance, the attempt was successful, and Salamis again acknowledged the authority of Athens.

It was the object of Solon's laws to equalize as much as possible the privileges and authority of the citizens. He repealed all the laws of Draco, except those against murder. The distinguishing feature, however, of the new constitution was the substitution of *property* for *birth*, as a title to the honors and offices of the state. He ordered that all those who took no part in public affairs should be punished; for, he said; "That is (in my opinion) the most perfect government where an injury to any *one* is the concern of *all*." These laws were inscribed upon blocks of wood made to turn on an axis. They were kept at first in the Acropolis, but afterward in the Prytaneum, or place of the General Assembly.

A factious opposition to his laws having arisen, Solon finally assembled the people, and, after acknowledging that he was not perfectly satisfied as to the excellence of all his measures, he obtained from them a pledge that they would obey his laws for ten years, while he visited those countries most distinguished for the efficiency of their government, in order that he might revise the constitution which he had framed for Athens. He then sailed for Egypt, where he abode some time. Thence he went to Cyprus, and from that island passed, by request of Crœsus, king of Lydia, to Sardis. On his return, he found that faction had been actively laboring to undo his work, and he was compelled to witness the partial overthrow of his system by the usurpation of Pisistratus. It is said that his death occurred the year after that event (B. C. 559).

5. Expedition of Xerxes (p. 40, ¶ 23).—"On this transit from Asia into Europe, Herodotus dwells with peculiar emphasis,—and well he might do so, since, when we consider the bridges, the invading number, the unmeasured hopes succeeded by no less unmeasured calamity,—it will appear not only to have been the most imposing event of his century, but to rank among the most imposing events of all history. He surrounds it with much dramatic circumstance, not only mentioning the marble throne erected for Xerxes on a hill near Abydos, from whence he surveyed both his masses of land-forces covering the shore, and his ships sailing and racing in the strait (a race in which the Phœnicians of Sidon surpassed the Greeks and all the other contingents), but also superadding to this real fact a dialogue with Artabanus, intended to set forth the internal mind of Xerxes. He further quotes certain supposed exclamations of the Abydenes [people of Abydos],

at the sight of his superhuman power. 'Why,' said one of these terror-stricken spectators, 'why dost thou, O Zeus [Jupiter], under the shape of a Persian man, and the name of Xerxes, thus bring together the whole human race for the ruin of Greece? It would have been easy for thee to accomplish *that* without so much ado.' * * 'The passage was ordered to begin at sunrise, the bridge being perfumed with frankincense and strewed with myrtle boughs, while Xerxes himself made libations into the sea with a golden censer, and offered up prayers to Helios [the sun], that he might effect without hindrance his design of conquering Europe even to its farthest extremity. Along with his libations, he cast into the Hellespont the censer itself, with a golden bowl and a Persian cimeter.' 'I do not exactly know,' adds the historian, 'whether he threw them in as a gift to Helios, or as a mark of repentance and atonement to the Hellespont for the stripes which he had inflicted upon it.' Of the two bridges, that nearest to the Euxine was devoted to the military force,—the other to the attendants, the baggage, and the beasts of burden. The ten thousand Persians, called Immortals, all wearing garlands on their heads, were the first to pass over, and Xerxes himself, with the remaining army, followed next though in an order somewhat different from that which had been observed in quitting Sardis; the monarch having reached the European shore, saw the troops crossing the bridge after him 'under the lash.' But in spite of the use of this sharp stimulus to accelerate progress, so vast were the numbers of the host, that they occupied no less than seven days and seven nights, without a moment of intermission, in the business of crossing over."—*Grote's History of Greece.*

6. Aristides the Just (p. 41, ¶ 25).—The Athenians had a peculiar way of humbling those who seemed to be too ambitious, or to possess too much power. This was called the *ostracism*—a useful institution, in some respects, but often employed to gratify envy or ill-will. At an appointed time, every citizen took a shell, and writing upon it the name of the person he considered the most obnoxious, threw it into a place inclosed for the purpose with wooden rails. The magistrates then counted the shells, and, if they amounted to six thousand, the ostracism was declared complete, and the individual whose name was found upon the greatest number of shells was banished ten years. Aristides had been commissioned to take charge of the spoils after the battle of Marathon. He discharged his trust with the most perfect fidelity. He was also distinguished for his inflexible justice in every transaction. Themistocles, envying the love and respect with which he was treated, insinuated that he was insensibly gaining the sovereign power, though without the ensigns of it. By this means the people were induced to banish the most virtuous man in the state. While the shells were being inscribed at the assembly, a peasant appeared and requested him to write the name of Aristides upon the shell. The good man, surprised at the incident, asked him, "whether Aristides had ever injured him?" "No," said he, "nor do I even know him, but it vexes me to hear him everywhere called *the just.*" Aristides made no reply, but wrote his name upon the shell, and returned it to his envious countryman.

7. Ostracism (p. 43, ¶ 28).—"There existed at Athens the same law which, in the Middle Ages, and especially in Italy, gave the people the right to banish influential persons who had raised themselves above their fellow citizens, although not guilty of any particular crime. It cannot be denied that it was a harsh law; but in small republics, where it was so easy to create a revolution, it was certainly a beneficial regulation. By this law Aristides was exiled for a period of ten years, because the people distrusted him,—because he was personally so eminent that he was deemed to be dangerous."—*Niebuhr's Ancient History.*

8. Plague at Athens (p. 44, ¶ 31).—"A dreadful plague, which, commencing in Ethiopia, had passed through Libya and crossed the Mediterranean, burst at once upon Athens. Persons apparently in perfect health were seized with extreme heat in the head and redness of the eyes. The tongue and throat then assumed a bloody appearance, a violent cough came on, with hiccoughs and spasms; inflammation ensued, and the body was rapidly covered with loathsome ulcers. As it began in the head, it proceeded through all parts of the body, and finally fixed itself in the extremities; so that those who survived lost their hands, or feet, or eyes. The patients were afflicted with intolerable thirst; many dragged themselves to the fountains and there fell down dead, with none to bury them It was mid-summer, and not only every house was fully occupied, but many families were crowded together in stifling huts, where they died in heaps. The very temples were filled with dead bodies, and every part of the city exhibited a dreadful scene of mortality and mourning. Beasts of prey, though perishing with hunger, refused to touch the carcasses of those who died of it; and birds of ill-omen flew about, and by their dismal croakings excited fearful forebodings. The Peloponnesian army had wasted the vale of Attica, and were rapidly proceeding toward the sea-coast, when, becoming alarmed by accounts of the plague, they hastened homeward, after occupying the country forty days."—*Bloss's Ancient History.*

9. Death of Socrates (p. 46, ¶ 36).—"It was usual at Athens for execution very soon to follow condemnation—commonly on the morrow; but it happened that the condemnation of Socrates took place on the eve of the day appointed for the sacred ceremony of crowning the galley which carried the annual offerings to the gods worshiped at Delos; and immemorial tradition forbade all executions till the sacred vessel's return. Thus, the death of Socrates was respited thirty days, while his friends had free access to him in the prison. Means were concerted for his escape; the jailer was bribed, a vessel prepared, and a secure retreat in Thessaly provided. No arguments, no prayers, could persuade him to use the opportunity. He had always taught the duty of obedience to the laws, and he would not furnish an example of the breach of it. To no purpose was it urged that he had been unjustly condemned—he had always held that wrong did not justify wrong. He waited with perfect composure the return of the sacred vessel, reasoned on the immortality of the soul, the advantage of virtue, the happiness derived from having made it through life his pursuit, and, with his friends about him, he took the fatal cup and died."—*Mitford's History of Greece.*

10. Xenophon (p. 47, ¶ 38).—It is impossible not to feel a peculiar interest in the life and character of that distinguished man, who as soldier, philosopher, and author stands so conspicuous in the annals of Greece. His father was an Athenian of rank and affluence. In his early life, he was the pupil and friend of Socrates. At the solicitation of Proxenus, and by the advice of the oracle, he enlisted in the army of Cyrus, the younger. He was present at the battle of Cunaxa, and was the chief instrument in effecting the retreat of the Greeks, after that disastrous engagement. During his absence, Socrates was executed; and upon his return, he found that the same party had procured a decree of banishment against himself. Thus prevented from visiting his native city, he joined the army of Agesilaus in Asia Minor, and acquired considerable wealth in those campaigns. He returned with this king to Lacedæmon, and exchanged his military life for more peaceful occupations. The Lacedæmonians gave him the little town of Scillus, on the borders of Elis, to hold under their supervision as a lordship; and there he settled with his family, consisting of a wife and two sons. With the

money he had saved, he purchased an extensive tract of land, upon which he erected a temple to Diana. This place, about twenty-five miles from Olympia, where every four years he might see such friends as he chose, formed an appropriate residence for the illustrious Athenian refugee. Here he wrote the life of Cyrus, the Memorabilia of Socrates and a continuation of Thucydides' great history. When the Arcadians made sacred Olympia the seat of war, finding his residence at Scillus unsafe, he removed to Corinth. Though a decree had been passed inviting his return to Athens, yet an absence of thirty years had so weakened his attachment to his native country, that he chose to remain upon the isthmus, where he passed, in dignified ease, the remainder of a life protracted beyond his ninetieth year.

11. Epaminondas (p. 49, ¶ 41).—"Scarcely any character in Grecian history has been judged with so much unanimity as Epaminondas. He has obtained a meed of admiration—from all, sincere and hearty—from some, enthusiastic. Cicero pronounces him to be the first man of Greece. His period of active political life comprehends sixteen years, from the resurrection of Thebes into a free community by the expulsion of the Lacedæmonian garrison and the subversion of the ruling oligarchy, to the fatal day of Mantinea. His prominent and unparalleled ascendency belongs to the last eight years, from the victory of Leuctra."—*Grote's History of Greece.*

12. Aristotle (p. 51, ¶ 48).—Aristotle was born at Stagira, an island near the Macedonian coast, B. C. 384. At the age of seventeen, he went to Athens, and devoted himself to philosophy in the school of Plato. His uncommon acuteness and indefatigable industry gained for him so high a rank, that Plato used to call him the "Mind of the School," and to say, when he was absent, "*Intellect* is not here." He lived in Athens twenty years, during which he wrote many works; thence he passed to Macedonia, where he remained in quality of tutor to Alexander eight years, and then returned to Athens. He kept up, however, a correspondence with the young king, and persuaded him to use his power and wealth in the service of philosophy. Alexander employed several thousand persons in different parts of Europe and Asia to collect animals of various kinds, to send to Aristotle, who, from the information thus afforded, wrote fifty volumes on the history of animated nature. He differed with Plato in philosophy, and established a school at Athens, in the grove called Lyceum. He delivered his lectures while walking about, and hence his followers were called *Peripatetics.* He continued his labors there fifteen years, and then retired to Chalcis, in Eubœa, to escape a fate similar to that of Socrates. There he died at the age of sixty-three.

13. Alexander the Great and Diogenes (p. 53, ¶ 49).—"A general assembly of the Greeks being held at the Isthmus of Corinth, they came to a resolution to send their quotas with Alexander against the Persians, and he was unanimously elected captain-general. Many statesmen and philosophers came to congratulate him on the occasion; and he hoped that Diogenes of Sinope, who then lived at Corinth, would be of the number. Finding, however, that he made but little account of Alexander, and that he preferred the enjoyment of his leisure in a part of the suburbs, called Cranium, the king went to see him. Diogenes happened to be lying in the sun; and at the approach of so many people, he raised himself up a little, and fixed his eyes upon Alexander. The king addressed him in an obliging manner, and asked him, 'If there was anything he could serve him in?' 'Only stand a little out of my sunshine,' said Diogenes. Alexander, we are told, was struck with such surprise at finding himself so little regarded, and saw something so great in that carelessness, that, while his courtiers

were ridiculing the philosopher as a monster, he said, 'If I were not Alexander I should wish to be Diogenes.' "—*Plutarch.*

14. Demetrius and the Athenians (p. 58, ¶ 63).—"In such a miserable condition was the city when Demetrius entered it. He ordered all the Athenians to assemble in the theater, which he surrounded with his troops; and having planted his guards on each side of the stage, he came down through the passage by which the tragedians enter. The fears of the people, on his appearance, increased, but they were entirely dissipated when he began to speak; for neither the accent of his voice was loud, nor his expression severe. He complained of them in soft and easy terms, and taking them again into favor, made them a present of a hundred thousand measures of wheat, and re-established such an administration as was most agreeable to them."—*Plutarch.*

15. Sybaris (p. 61, ¶ 72).—"Placed between two rivers, the Crathis and the Sybaris—possessing extraordinary advantages of site and climate, this celebrated colony rose with unparalleled rapidity to eminence in war and luxury in peace. So great was its population and resources, that it is said by Diodorus to have brought at one time three hundred thousand men into the field—an army which doubled that which all Greece could assemble at Platæa. The exaggeration is evident; but it still attests the belief of a populousness and power which must have rested upon no fabulous foundation. Thronged by mercantile adventurers, its trade, like that of Agrigentum, doubtless derived its sources from the oil and wine which it poured into the harbors of Africa and Gaul. As with individuals so with states, wealth easily obtained is prodigally spent, and the effeminate and voluptuous ostentation of Sybaris passed into a proverb."—*Bulwer's Athens.*

16. Greek Colonization (p. 62, ¶ 73).—"The main causes of the spread of the Greeks from their proper home in the Hellenic peninsula, over so many and such distant regions, were two in number. The race was prolific, and often found itself cramped for room, either from the mere natural increase of population, or from the pressure upon it of larger and more powerful nations. Hence arose movements which were, properly speaking, *migrations*, though the term 'colonization' has been improperly applied to them. To this class belong the Æolian, Ionian, and Dorian settlements in Asia, and the Achæan in Italy. But the more usual cause of movement was commercial or political enterprise, the state which founded a settlement being desirous of extending its influence or its trade into a new region. Such settlements were *colonies* proper; and between these and the mother country there was always, at any rate at first, a certain connection, which was absent in the case of settlements arising out of migrations. Occasionally individual caprice or political disturbance led to the foundation of a new city; but such cases were comparatively rare."—*Rawlinson's Ancient History.*

17. Olympic Games (p. 63, ¶ 78).—"The most ancient as well as the most famous of the Greek festivals was that celebrated at Olympia, on the banks of the Alpheus, in the territory of Elis, and near an ancient temple of the Olympian Jove. The origin of this festival is lost in the mythical ages. It is said to have been revived by Iphitus, king of Elis, and Lycurgus, the Spartan legislator, in the year 776 B. C.; and, accordingly, when the Greeks, at a later time, began to use the Olympic contest as a chronological era, this year was regarded as the first Olympiad. It continued to maintain its celebrity for many centuries after the extinction of Greek freedom; and it was not till A. D. 394 that it was finally abolished by the Emperor Theodosius. It was celebrated at the end of four years, and the interval which elapsed between each celebration was called an Olympiad. The festival was called by the Greeks a *Pentaëtēris*, because it was celebrated every *fifth* year, according to the ancient mode of reckoning."—*Smith's History of Greece.*

Progressive Map, No. 3

SECTION III.

Rome,

From its Foundation to the Establishment of the Empire.

1. Rome is said to have been founded in 753 B. C., but its early history for at least three and a half centuries is only a series of traditional narratives of the details of which there is no authentic evidence. According to these, its founders were two brothers named *Rom'u-lus* and *Re'mus*, of the Latin race, a people that had long inhabited that part of Italy, occupying a district called *La'ti-um*. Romulus became the first king, and was succeeded by six others, the united reigns of the whole comprising a period of about two centuries and a half. [*See Note* 1, *end of the Section.*]

2. Besides the Latins and the Greek colonies,* Italy, at the time of the foundation of Rome, was occupied by several other races, of whom the E-tru'ri-ans, living in what is now called Tuscany, were the most important and the most advanced in civilization. Romulus, it is said, arranged a plan of government for the new city, dividing the people into tribes, establishing a senate, and recognizing the two classes of Patricians, or nobles, and Plebeians, or common people.

3. *Nu'ma Pom-pil'ius*, the second king, was, according to the traditions, the founder of the religious institutions of the Romans. *Tul'lus Hos-til'i-us*, the third king, was

* *See Note* 2, *end of the Section.*

Map Questions.—(See Progressive Map, No. 3.)—Name the divisions of Italy. What was the situation of Latium? Etruria? Umbria? Samnium? Apulia? Cala'bria? Brutium? Campania? Territory of the Sabines? Cisalpine Gaul? Where was Rhe'tia? Illy'ricum? Helvetia? What river tributary to the Adriatic Sea? What branches of it are laid down? On what river was Rome? What port at its mouth? Where was the Rubicon River? The Metaurus River? Lake Trasime'nus? Where was Veii? Tarquinii? Tusculum? Clusium? Capua? Cannæ? Brundusium? What towns in Sicily? In Africa?

1. When and by whom was Rome founded? Give the early history of Rome.
2. By whom was Italy occupied at that time? What were the acts of Romulus?
3. Name the other kings of Rome. What is said of each? What ended the monarchy?

noted for the wars waged by him against the neighboring cities. *An'cus Mar'tius*, the fourth king, gained victories over the Latins and some of the other races. *Tar'quin the Elder*, the fifth king, was noted for the public buildings and other works which he caused to be constructed; among these were the Great Circus and the Great Sewer. *Ser'vi-us Tul'li-us*, the sixth king, established the census, which was taken every five years. *Tar'quin the Proud*, the seventh and last king, was by an insurrection of the people driven from the throne and city in consequence of an infamous crime committed by his son. This ended the monarchy (509 B. C.).

4. Instead of kings, two yearly magistrates, called *Consuls*, were then elected; and Junius Brutus* and Col-la-ti'nus, through whose means the Tarquins had been expelled, were appointed to this office. The duties and powers of the consuls were similar to those of the kings, and for nearly 150 years they were chosen exclusively from the patricians. As civil officers their power was nearly absolute, each ruling by turns; and they were the legally appointed generals of the army in time of war.

VICINITY OF ROME.

5. For more than twelve years after the abolition of the monarchy, the Romans were engaged in war with the adherents and friends of the Tarquins. Several of the neighboring cities raised armies to compel the Romans to reinstate their king, but they were all finally defeated, although at times they seemed to be on the point of achieving their object. The famous battle of *Re-gil'lus*, in Tus'cu-lum, ter-

* *See Note* 3, *end of the Section.*

4. What officers took the place of the kings? What were their powers and duties? Who were the first consuls?

5. What wars followed the abolition of the monarchy? Give some account of them. What is said of the battle of Lake Regillus? What was the consequence? What is said of the appointment of dictator? (See also the note.)

minated the struggle, and the Tarquins finally gave up all hope of restoration. To this period belong some of the most interesting stories of the legendary history.* It was during this period also that the first *dictator*† was appointed.

6. Although the monarchy was abolished, Rome was by no means under a free government. All political power was in the hands of the patricians, and the plebeians were kept in a condition of great social degradation. Obliged to borrow money of their rich neighbors, they were charged enormous rates of interest, and, when unable to pay, were delivered by the cruel laws to the mercy of their creditors, who entirely deprived them of their lands, and reduced them to the condition of serfs or slaves. Besides, they were compelled to perform military duty whenever called upon by the government. [*See Note* 4, *end of Section.*]

7. At length their condition became so wretched that they refused to take the field against the public enemy; but, leaving the city to the patricians, departed in a body to the Sacred Mount, about three miles distant. This compelled the nobles to make some concessions. They released the debtors from their obligations, setting free all who had been made slaves, and assented to the appointment of two magistrates, called *Trib'unes*, who were to be chosen from the ranks of the Plebeians, to hold office one year, and to have the power of annulling any law of the Senate by pronouncing the word *Veto*, which means, *I forbid it.* The people then returned to the city (494 B. C.).

8. This concession on the part of the nobles was not so great as it appears, since the Tribunes were elected by those assemblies (called the *Comitia of the Centuries*) in

* Such as the legend of Horatius, who kept the bridge against the whole Etrurian army; of Mucius Scævola, and of Castor and Pollux at Lake Regillus. (See Liddell's *History of Rome*, and Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome.*)

† A dictator was an officer vested for a limited time with an absolute and irresponsible authority. He was only appointed in times of great public peril.

6. What was the state of Rome at this time? What was the condition of the Plebeians?

7. What measure was taken by the Plebeians? Give the result.

8. How were the Tribunes elected? What were their powers?

which, according to the constitution of Servius Tullius, the Patricians could always, by means of their wealth, command a majority of votes. The Tribunes were not invested with any of the ordinary duties of magistrates, their office being simply to protect the rights of the Plebeians by their check upon the legislation of the Senate, which body was purely an aristocratic assemblage. The Tribunes were afterward increased to five, and finally, in later times, to ten.

9. Another source of difficulty was the injustice of the nobles in seizing upon the public or conquered lands, and keeping them for their exclusive use; whereas, by the constitution of Servius Tullius, they were to be divided partly among the poorer people. This kind of aggression continued to exist for centuries, and gave rise to the proposal of many exciting measures, called "Agrarian laws," the object of which was to enforce a proper division of these public lands. This was the more necessary; since, when held in large quantities by the wealthy, they were cultivated by slaves, and the small farmers and freemen were deprived of the means of existence.

10. A few years after the creation of the Tribunate (486 B. C.), *Spu'ri-us Cas'si-us*, one of the consuls, proposed the first agrarian law; but he fell a victim to the machinations of the nobles, and, on a false accusation, was put to death. The law, although passed, was not put in execution, and the contest continued until the Plebeians gained a great triumph in the passage of the "Law of Vol'e-ro," according to which the Tribunes were elected by the Plebeians themselves at the Assembly of the Tribes, not at the Assembly of the Centuries (471 B. C.). This law destroyed the power of the nobles, and made Rome a democratic state.

11. While these struggles had been going on in the city between the two Orders, there were almost constant wars

9. What were the Agrarian laws? What was their origin? Their object?
10. Who proposed the first Agrarian law? What was his fate? What was the "Law of Volero?" What was its effect?
11. Relate the legend about Coriolanus.

with the neighboring people, among whom the Æ'qui-ans and Volscians (called in Latin *Volsci*) were the most troublesome. To this period belongs the story of Co-ri-o-la'nus, a patrician general, who acquired this name by the capture of *Co-ri'o-li,* an important city of the Volscians. Having great influence at Rome in consequence of the victories which he had gained, he insisted, during a time of famine, that no corn should be given to the people unless they would relinquish their privileges. But the tribunes procured his banishment; and going over to the Volscians, he marched with an army against Rome and threatened its capture. The Senate made several attempts to dissuade him from his revengeful purpose, but in vain. At last, when his mother, wife, and children were sent to his camp to intercede for the city, he relented, and retired with his army. Shortly afterward he was put to death by the Volscians (488 B. C.).

12. To a somewhat later period belongs the interesting legend of *Cin-cin-na'tus,* who, although a patrician, lived on a small farm which he cultivated with his own hands. Twice was he called from the plough to serve his country, once as Consul and again as Dictator; and while holding the latter office, he gained a great victory over the Æquians; and then, having freed Rome from danger, immediately resigned his great office, and returned to his humble agricultural labors, followed by the applause and blessings of all his countrymen (458 B. C.). Nearly thirty years afterward, when at the age of 80, he was again called from his retirement to take the office of dictator.

13. The Romans having no written laws, ten commissioners were appointed, called *De-cem'-virs,* to arrange a code. (451 B. C.) They were invested with a very large authority, superseding the other magistrates, and ruling by turns, each for one day. The celebrated code of the *Twelve*

12. Relate the legend about Cincinnatus.
13. Who were the Decemvirs? What authority did they have? What caused the abolition of the Decemvirate?

Tables was the result of their labors; but a flagrant abuse of power on the part of *Ap'pi-us Clau'di-us,* one of their number, caused the abolition of the Decemvirate in the third year of its existence.

14. The right of intermarriage between the patricians and plebeians being forbidden, a law was introduced by one of the tribunes (445 B. C.) making such marriages legal. This, after violent opposition, was passed, and was immediately followed by a proposal to open the consulship to the plebeians. To put an end to the strife and excitement which this produced, the duties of consuls were intrusted to officers called *military tribunes,* to be elected by the Assembly of the Centuries, both patricians and plebeians being eligible to the office. The Senate, however, could order the election of consuls, instead of the Tribunes, for any year. These officers continued to be elected with various intermissions until 367 B. C., when, by the *Li-cin'-ian Law,* plebeians were admitted to the consulship.

15. The Romans having besieged *Veii* (*ve'yi*), a powerful city of E-tru'ri-a, for several years, were on the point of suffering a disastrous defeat, when *Fu'ri-us Cā-mil'lus,* being appointed Dictator, caused a mine to be dug by means of which the soldiers were admitted into the citadel, and the city was taken and destroyed (396 B. C.). Veii was a larger and more magnificent city than Rome itself, and so favorably situated that very many of the Romans were inclined to abandon their own city and migrate thither. From this, however, they were finally dissuaded by the patricians. Camillus being accused of appropriating the spoils of the conquered city to his own use, was driven into exile (391 B. C.).

16. At this period, the *Gauls,* a barbarous but very bold

14. What privilege did the plebeians acquire? What were the military tribunes? What privileges did the Licinian law give to the plebeians?

15. What was accomplished by Camillus? How did Veii compare with Rome? What danger threatened Rome? Why was Camillus banished?

16. What city was attacked by the Gauls? How did the Romans become involved?

and warlike people, had possessed themselves of nearly all Western Europe, and occupied also the north of Italy. Proceeding farther south, they (391 B. C.) attacked Clu'-si-um, an important city of Etruria, the inhabitants of which sent to Rome for assistance. Embassadors were accordingly sent to Clusium to demand of the Gauls the reason of their hostile invasion, and bid them quit a territory to which they had no claim. *Bren'nus*, their leader, answered that the "title of brave men was their swords;" whereupon a battle ensued, in which the Roman deputies, unmindful of their neutral character, took part against the Gauls.

17. The course taken by the deputies so enraged Brennus that he immediately left Clusium, and with an army of nearly 75,000 men marched toward Rome. On the banks of the *Al'li-a*, a few miles from the city, he met and defeated the Roman army; and then marching to the city itself, entered it without opposition, the inhabitants having all fled, except 80 aged senators, who awaited the enemy in the Forum, in their robes of state and seated in their ivory chairs. These venerable men were quickly massacred, and the city pillaged and burnt (390 B. C.). [*See Note* 5.]

18. The citadel, however, being built on a steep and lofty cliff, held out for seven months; and the Gauls besieging it were reduced in numbers by a pestilence which broke out among them. It is said that at one time they were on the point of taking the citadel; for having discovered a narrow path up the cliff, they had nearly reached the summit during the darkness of night, all the guards being asleep; but at that instant the sacred geese kept in the temple of Juno commenced a loud cackling, which awoke the garrison; and the Roman commander, Mar'cus Man'li-us, springing up, rushed to the edge of the rock and hurled the Gauls headlong down.

17. What defeat was sustained by the Romans? What followed the battle of Allia?

18. How was the citadel defended? Relate what is said to have occurred during the defence.

19. In the mean while, Camillus had been called from banishment and made dictator. He arrived, as the story goes, with an army just as the Romans were about to deliver to the Gauls 1000 pounds of gold which they had agreed to pay as a ransom. Exclaiming that "Rome should be ransomed only with steel," he ordered the gold to be carried away, and immediately attacking the Gauls, defeated them with great slaughter. Other, and probably more truthful, accounts state that the gold was paid, and that the Gauls peaceably retired; and it is even said that, more than four centuries afterward, some of this very gold was recovered from the Gauls of that later period. It is, however, certain that the city was left in ruins; and the public records having been destroyed, no materials for an authentic history of the events preceding this period could afterward be obtained.

20. After the departure of the invaders, the city was in a sad condition, and the people were almost in despair. They had lost their houses, their cattle, and their crops, and yet were obliged to pay taxes in order to repair the city walls and to carry on the wars which the neighboring states waged against them. They were also very much oppressed by the merciless laws against debtors. In this crisis, Marcus Manlius, the brave defender of the citadel, distinguished himself by his efforts and sacrifices to relieve the people's wants. Having by this means acquired very great popularity, he excited the suspicions of the patricians, and was accused of attempting to make himself king; of which offence being unjustly pronounced guilty, he was thrown down the very rock* from which he had repelled his country's enemies (383 B. C.).

21. During the next twenty years, frequent wars were

* Called the *Tarpeian Rock.*

19. Who defeated the Gauls? What is said of the ransom? How far is the account certain as regards the city and public records?

20. What was the fate of Manlius? Relate the events that led to his death.

21. What wars were waged during the next twenty years? What is stated of subsequent wars? Of the alliance between Rome and the Latin cities?

waged with the Volscians, Æquians, and Etrurians, in which Camillus gained great distinction, and was five times made dictator and hailed repeatedly as the Savior of Rome. In 361 B. C., the Gauls made another invasion, and ten years afterward a third, but each time were repulsed. A war of several years was also waged with the powerful Etrurian city *Tar-quin'i-i*, but it was finally brought to a successful issue, a peace of forty years being concluded. The Romans at this time had also formed an alliance with most of the Latin cities, which added greatly to their strength and safety.

22. Samnite War.—The Sam'nītes, a warlike people inhabiting central Italy, having made war upon the Campa'nians, the latter called in the aid of the Romans (343 B. C.), who entering Campania defeated the Samnites with immense slaughter, and compelled them to make peace, after the war had lasted about two years. A war with the Latin cities followed, in which the Romans were also victorious, and Latium was annexed to the Roman territory (339 B. C.).

23. In a second war with the Samnites, the Romans sustained a terrible defeat in a narrow valley called the *Cau'dīne Forks*, and were compelled by the Samnite general to pass under the yoke* in acknowledgment of their subjugation (321 B. C.). The war was, however, continued until 305 B. C., when the Samnites, having been repeatedly defeated, were compelled to acknowledge the supremacy of Rome. Seven years afterward they renewed the war, being aided by the Umbrians, Etruscans, and Gauls; but the allied army suffered a great defeat near *Sen-ti'num*, a town in Um'bria (295 B. C.). This famous victory gave the Romans the dominion of nearly all Italy. Close upon this event, followed a war with the Etrurians and Gauls,

* The yoke was made by setting two spears upright, and placing another across the top of them

22. What caused the Samnite war? What country was annexed in 340 B. C.?
23. What caused the second Samnite war? Where were the "Caudine Forks?" *Ans.* In Samnium. When were the Romans defeated? How did the war end? Describe the third Samnite war. What was the effect of the battle of Sentinum? What other war followed?

whose combined forces were also vanquished with great slaughter.

24. The inhabitants of the Greek colony Ta-ren'-tum having given offence to the Romans, the latter declared war upon them, upon which the Tarentines solicited the aid of *Pyr'rhus*, King of Epi'rus, the greatest general of his age. Complying with this request, he landed in Italy and gained a great victory over the Romans, commanded by the Consul *Læ-vi'nus* (280 B. C.). But it was a dear-bought triumph, for he lost many of his best troops and some of his ablest officers, and was probably indebted for it more to the confusion occasioned by the elephants which his army contained, and to which the Romans were not accustomed, than to the superior valor or skill of his soldiers. When, on visiting the battle-field the next day, he gazed on the Roman dead, all of whom appeared to have fallen in their ranks, and with their faces turned toward the enemy, he exclaimed: "If I had such soldiers as these, how easily could I conquer the world!"

25. Many of the Italian nations now joined Pyrrhus, and he advanced within eighteen miles from Rome, to which he sent an emissary, offering peace; but this the Roman senate refused until he should withdraw his forces from Italy. Another battle was fought the next year, in which the Romans were again defeated, but with great loss to Pyrrhus. Leaving Italy, he then proceeded to Sicily with the design of expelling the Carthaginians from that island, but in this he was not successful; and after an absence of two years he returned to Ta-ren'tum. At *Ben-e-ven'tum** he was met by the Romans under the Consul *Cu'ri-us Den-ta'tus*, and suffered a most disastrous defeat (275 B. C.), after which he retired forever from Italy. Returning to Greece, he was

* A town of Samnium, about 28 miles from Capua. (See Progressive Map, No. 3.)

24. What led to the invasion by Pyrrhus? What success did he meet with? What did he say of the Roman soldiers?

25. What were the further proceedings of Pyrrhus? Where was he defeated? Where was he killed?

proclaimed King of Macedonia, and making war upon the Spartans, he nearly took their city; but in an attack upon Argos, he was killed by a tile thrown by a woman from the roof of a house (272 B. C.).

26. After the departure of Pyrrhus, the Tarentines applied for aid to the Carthaginians, who sent a fleet for their relief; but the Romans obtained possession of Tarentum. The Samnites, Lucanians, and other tribes soon afterward submitted, thus leaving Rome *mistress of all Italy* (266 B. C.). Over this extensive domain she organized a most effective government. Some portions, which were called *Præfectures*, that is, districts governed by Præfects, she ruled by means of magistrates sent from herself. From others, the *Municipal Towns*, she only exacted military service, leaving to them the control of their own local affairs; while in very many she planted *colonies* of Roman citizens, whom she supplied with lands from the conquered territory, and placed over the subjugated inhabitants. Her rule was, however, mild and generally just, and was but little disturbed by commotion or revolt.

27. The Punic Wars.—Across the Mediterranean, on the African shore, was the great rival republic, *Carthage;* and with her the Romans were now to measure their strength.* This city, settled, as it has been stated, by the Tyrians, had been in existence about six centuries, and had grown, by means of her commerce, to be one of the wealthiest cities in the world. Her ships covered the Mediterranean, and her fleets were unequalled for numbers and efficiency. Three hundred cities in Africa paid her tribute, she had made conquests in Spain, and nearly all Sicily had submitted to her sway.

* The wars waged with Carthage were called *Punic Wars*, *Punic* being a corruption of *Phœnix*, meaning *Phœnician*, since Carthage was of Phœnician origin.

26. When and how did Rome become mistress of Italy? What is said of the government which she established? What were the præfectures? Municipal towns? Colonies?

27. What was the condition of Carthage at the commencement of the Punic wars?

28. *Syracuse*, however, still retained its independence, after repeated wars with the Carthaginians. This city was a colony of the Corinthians, established in the eighth century B. C.; and, in the fifth century, became the most populous and powerful state in the island, under a virtuous and patriotic sovereign, named *Ge'lon*. During its struggle with Athens, in which Nicias was so disastrously defeated, it was under a free government, but subsequently lost its liberties (405 B. C.), being ruled for 38 years by the famous *Di-o-nys'-i-us*, who carried on a successful war with the Carthaginians. *Ti-mo'le-on*, a Corinthian of great virtue and talents, restored it to freedom (344 B. C.); but under *A-gath'o-clēs*, the despotism was again established (317 B. C.). At the time to which we have arrived, it was under the rule of a monarch named *Hi'e-ro*, during whose reign flourished the famous mathematician Archimedes (*ar-ke-mē'deez*).

29. First Punic War.—This war commenced in 264 B. C. and lasted 23 years. It was brought on in the following manner. Agathocles, who waged long wars with Carthage, had hired a body of troops from Cam-pa'ni-a; and these, after the death of that despot, seized Messana and slaughtered the inhabitants, after which they assumed the name of *Mam'er-tines*, which means warlike men. These Hiero, king of Syracuse, marched against and defeated; whereupon they divided, and while a portion of them invoked the aid of the Romans, the others applied to the Carthaginians. Thus, by a set of mercenary murderers and robbers, were these two great republics plunged into a series of wars which lasted more than a hundred years. The real cause of the war was, however, the rivalship of these states.

30. The Romans having gained some important victories, were soon joined by many of the states of Sicily,

28. Give a sketch of the history of Syracuse.
29. What led to the first Punic war? What was the real cause of the war?
30. What victories did the Romans gain? What general was defeated, and how?

including Syracuse. They then took Ag-ri-gen'tum, defeating an immense army which the Carthaginians had sent to its assistance (262 B. C.). Seeing then the necessity of coping with their enemy on the sea, they built a fleet, and under the Consul *Du-il'li-us*, gained two great naval victories. Thus encouraged, they sent an armament under *Reg'u-lus* to attack Carthage itself; but this expedition, although at first successful, was defeated with great loss through the assistance of Xan-thip'pus, a Spartan general, who had recently entered the service of Carthage. The greater part of the Romans were slain or made prisoners, Regulus himself being among the latter (255 B. C.).

31. But subsequent misfortunes discouraged the Carthaginians; and they took Regulus from prison, and sent him to Rome, with the understanding that he should obtain favorable terms of peace, or return to Carthage (250 B. C.). He listened to the dictates of patriotism instead of consulting his own personal safety, and advised his countrymen to continue the war, assuring them that Carthage was nearly exhausted. Having, in accordance with the pledge which he had given, returned to Carthage, he was, it is said, put to death with the most dreadful tortures. The war having continued some years longer, the Carthaginians sued for peace, which was granted on condition that they should evacuate the island of Sicily, restore the Roman prisoners, and pay all the expenses of the war (241 B. C.). Sicily, with the exception of Syracuse, then became a Roman province.

32. Second Punic War.—This war commenced in 218 B. C., and lasted seventeen years. *Han'ni-bal*, the son of Ha-mil'car, a noted general in the first Punic war, had when a youth been made by his father to swear upon the altar eternal enmity to the Romans; and the Carthagin-

---

31. What is further said of Regulus? How did the war end? What became of Sicily?

32. How and when did the second Punic war begin?

ians having made considerable conquests in Spain, Hannibal laid siege to *Sa-gun'tum*, a Greek colony near the eastern coast then in alliance with Rome. The expostulations of the last-named power being treated with contempt by Hannibal, and his conduct having been approved by Carthage, preparations for war were immediately commenced.

33. Hannibal, having completed the conquest of Spain, crossed the Pyrenees and Alps, and at the river Ti-ci'nus met and defeated the Romans under their consul Scip'i-o (218 B. C.). A few days afterward, he inflicted a severe defeat upon the other consul, Sem-pro'ni-us, near the river Tre'bi-a, a short distance from the scene of the first conflict. Another great battle was fought the next year, near the lake Tras-i-mē'nus; when the Romans were again defeated, their army being almost destroyed (217 B. C.). So alarmed did the Romans become, in consequence, that they immediately appointed a dictator, *Fa'bi-us Max'i-mus* being selected for the office.

34. This general adopted the tactics of harassing the invaders as much as possible, but avoiding a direct engagement, thus wearing out their resources by delay. The Romans were thus enabled to recover somewhat from their disasters; but the next year (216 B. C.), Hannibal having advanced into Southern Italy, was opposed by a large army under the consuls *Æ-mil'i-us* and *Varro;* and at *Can'næ* a terrific battle took place, which for the fourth time resulted in a complete victory for the Carthaginians (216 B. C.). It is said that more than 50,000 Romans fell on the field, and that Hannibal sent to Carthage three bushels of gold rings, taken from the fingers of senators and knights who were found among the slain. Almost all the nations in the south of Italy at once revolted from the

33. What course did Hannibal take? What victories did he gain? To what position was Fabius Maximus elected?

34. What was the policy of Fabius? Describe the battle of Cannæ. (Where was Cannæ? See Map, No. 3.) What revolt ensued? Where did Hannibal pass the winter?

Romans; but Hannibal, instead of marching on the city, which it is thought he might have captured, went into winter-quarters at Cap'u-a, and waited for re-enforcements.

35. In the meanwhile, the Romans had sent the two Scipios into Spain, who, after having gained great advantages over the Carthaginians, were defeated in battle and slain. They were succeeded by *Pub'lius Corne'lius Scipio*, son of one of the former commanders, who, having defeated the Carthaginians in several important battles, completed the conquest of Spain (205 B. C.). Hannibal gained no important victory after that at Cannæ. His army, reduced in numbers, and impaired in strength and discipline by the pleasures and vices of Capua, was scarcely adequate to protect his Italian allies against the Romans, now under the command of *Fa'bius* and *Mar-cel'lus*, the former of whom, from his cautious policy, was called the *Shield*, and the latter, on account of his vigor and address, the *Sword* of Rome. Marcellus did important service in Sicily.

36. Hiero, king of Syracuse, having died, the Syracusans established a popular government, and declared against Rome. Marcellus therefore proceeded against the city, which he took after a siege of two years (212 B. C.). This siege is memorable for the part taken in the defence of the city by Archimedes, who exhausted his science and skill in the invention of machines to assail the besiegers. In the general massacre that followed the entrance of the Romans, the aged philosopher was slain;* the city was pillaged, and many of its magnificent works of art were carried to Rome.

37. Hannibal, despairing of succor from Carthage, at length summoned his brother As'dru-bal from Spain, who soon passed into Italy, but was intercepted by a Roman

* *See Note* 6, *end of the Section.*

35. What had the Romans done in the mean while? Who completed the conquest of Spain? What was the condition of Hannibal's army? What generals were called the *Shield* and *Sword* of Rome? Why?

36. What service did Marcellus perform in Sicily? What is said of Archimedes?

37. What measure did Hannibal adopt to obtain aid? Why did he not get the aid? Whither did the Romans now direct the war?

army, at the *Me-tau'rus River*, in Umbria; and, in the battle that ensued, he was defeated and slain (207 B. C.). Hannibal received notice of this disaster by the sight of his brother's gory head, which the consuls caused to be thrown into his camp. The Romans, under the influence of Scipio, the conqueror of Spain, resolved now to "carry the war into Africa," and Scipio was appointed to the command.

38. Having defeated the Numid'ians in a great battle, and vanquished the Carthaginians with immense slaughter, at *Uti-ca*, Scipio marched almost to the gates of their city; when the Carthaginian senate, driven to despair, recalled Hannibal to the defence of his own country. The call was at once obeyed, and landing in Africa, Hannibal drew up his forces on the plain of *Za'ma*, a town in Numidia. Seeing that his army was far inferior to that of the Romans, he obtained an interview with Scipio, and proposed a treaty of peace; but Scipio, true to Roman policy, declined the proposal. The battle therefore took place, and Hannibal was defeated with great loss (202 B. C.).

39. The battle of Zama ended the second Punic war; for although the Carthaginians were not utterly exhausted, yet, by the prudent counsel of Hannibal, who saw that it would be useless to protract the struggle, they consented to accept the terms of peace dictated by Scipio, and approved by the Roman Senate. These were very severe: Carthage was to evacuate Spain, to give up all her prisoners, surrender her fleets, pay 10,000 talents to defray the expenses of the war, and agree to undertake no future war without the consent of Rome. The treaty having been concluded, Scipio returned home, and was honored with a more splendid triumph than any Roman general had previously received. He was called thereafter SCIPIO AF-RI-CA'NUS.

40. Hannibal was for a time treated with great respect

38. What did Scipio accomplish? Where did he defeat Hannibal? What was the result?
39. On what terms was peace made? How was Scipio rewarded?
40. Relate the subsequent history of Hannibal.

by the Carthaginians, and, being placed at the head of the government, endeavored to restore the nation to its former prosperity and splendor. But the intrigues of the ancient nobility prevailed against him, and he was compelled to flee in order to save his life (196 B. C.). Taking refuge in Syria, at the court of *An-ti'o-chus the Great*, he assisted that monarch in a war against the Romans; but the latter prevailing, demanded that he should be given up to them, whereupon he fled to *Bi-tnyn'-i-a*, and there, being still pursued by the Roman emissaries, he was at last compelled to put an end to his life to avoid falling into their hands (183 B. C.). [*See Note 7, end of the Section.*]

41. In the same year died his great rival, Scipio Africanus, an exile too from his native country. For, having served with his brother Lucius Scipio in the war against Antiochus, and defeated that monarch at the battle of *Mag-ne'sia*, he and his brother were accused of embezzling some of the captured treasures. To this base and ungrateful accusation he disdained to plead; but, quitting Rome in disgust, took up his abode in Campania, where he died. Lucius Scipio, refusing to pay the fine imposed upon him, had all his property confiscated. This general, after the victory at Magnesia, was called *Scipio Asiaticus*.

42. The second Punic war was followed by a war against Philip, king of Macedonia, who was defeated in the battle of *Cyn-o-ceph'a-le*. The Ætolians having invited Antiochus into Greece, that monarch crossed over and took Eubœa. This was considered an act of interference by the Romans, and war was declared against Syria, which was ended by the battle of Magnesia, in Lydia (190 B. C.), after which Antiochus was obliged to surrender nearly the whole of Asia Minor to *At'ta-lus*, king of Per'ga-mus, who had been in alliance with the Romans during the war. Antiochus was

41. Relate the subsequent history of Scipio Africanus. Who was called *Scipio Asiaticus?* Why? Where was Magnesia? (See Map, page 41.)

42. What battle terminated the war against Philip? Against Antiochus? What was Antiochus compelled to do? Who was Antiochus?

the most powerful and enterprising of the successors of Seleucus, called the *Se-leu'ci-dæ;* and previous to this defeat had waged successful war against the Parthians, Bactrians, and other nations in the East.

43. The monarchy of Syria at this time extended as far east as the Euphrates, and was bounded on the north by the Taurus Mountains, and on the south by Arabia. *Asia Minor,* now severed entirely from the dominions of Antiochus, contained, besides the kingdom of Pergamus, the independent monarchies of *Bithyn'ia, Cap-pa-do'cia,* and *Pon'tus,* besides *Ga-la'tia,* the country occupied by the Gauls. These states, fragments of the Macedonian Empire, will be referred to in the course of the following history.

44. Pergamus was founded by a lieutenant of Lysimachus (283 B. C.), but did not acquire any prominence until the reign of *Attalus,* who distinguished himself by his alliance with the Romans in the war against Antiochus. This kingdom lasted 150 years, at the end of which its last king, *Attalus III.,* left it, with all its treasures, to the Romans (133 B. C.). The kings of Pergamus were noted for their attention to literature; and they collected an immense library, which was afterward carried to Alexandria.

45. After the death of Philip, king of Macedonia, Perseus, his successor, made an effort to free Greece and Macedon from the Roman yoke, but, after a war of three years, was utterly subdued at the battle of *Pyd'na* (168 B. C.). He was carried captive to Rome, where he and his wife and children graced the triumph of *Æ-mil'i-us Pau'lus,* his conqueror. Thus was Macedonia added to the Roman dominions, which a few years afterward were still further augmented by the conquest of Greece (146 B. C.).

---

43. What constituted Syria at this time? What did Asia Minor contain?

44. Sketch the history of Pergamus. For what were its kings noted? Where was Pergamus.—*Ans.* In Mysia, Asia Minor. (See Map, page 41.)

45. What led to the war with Perseus? Where was he defeated? What was the result? What other conquest was made in 146 B. C.?

46. Third Punic War.—In the mean time the *third Punic war* broke out, caused by the inveterate hatred of the Romans toward the Carthaginians. A pretext for the war was found in the efforts made by Carthage to repel the aggressions of *Mas-i-nis'sa*, king of Nu-mid'i-a,* whom the Romans acknowledged as their ally. Every effort was made by the Carthaginians to appease the hostility of their enemies. They complied with every demand; banishing all who had given offence to the Romans, and even surrendering their arms and military stores. But when finally told that they must leave Carthage, and permit it to be destroyed, they took courage from despair, shut the gates of the city, and put to death every Roman within its walls.

47. The most vigorous exertions were then made to supply the place of the weapons which the treachery of Rome had wrested from them. Men of every rank toiled day and night in the forges, and the women cut off their hair to furnish bow-strings for the archers. For three years did they, under their general As'dru-bal, keep the Romans at bay; but at length were obliged to yield to the skill and perseverance of Scipio Africanus the Younger, under whom the Romans scaled the walls of the city, and cut their way to the citadel. After six days of continuous slaughter, the miserable inhabitants were subdued; and the city having been set on fire, very many perished in the flames. By a subsequent order of the Roman Senate, every house that was left standing was thrown down, and the city completely destroyed (146 B. C.).

48. Thus perished this magnificent city, after it had existed seven centuries. Utica, which had submitted to the Romans, was rewarded with a portion of the Carthaginian

* A country on the northern coast of Africa, to the west of Carthage.

46. What caused the third Punic war? What course was pursued by the Carthaginians?
47. Give an account of the siege and capture of Carthage. What was the fate of the city?
48. What is said of its territory and subsequent history?

territory; but the principal part was formed into a province under the name of *Lib'ya*. Under the Emperor Augustus Carthage was rebuilt, and became, in the second century of the Christian era, one of the finest cities of the Roman empire. It was again destroyed by the Arabs in the seventh century (698 A. D.), and now only a few ruins remain to mark its site.

49. Spanish War.—Although the Carthaginians had been expelled from Spain, the inhabitants were not subdued; and they valiantly defended their liberties for a long series of years against the Romans. Among the most courageous and warlike tribes were the *Cel-ti-be'ri-ans* and *Lu-si-ta'ni-ans*.* The latter found, in their noble and patriotic chief *Vir-i-a'tus*, a leader worthy of their bravery, and able to cope with the best generals of Rome. For six years he defied every effort for his defeat and capture; and the Lusitanians were only subdued when the Romans by treachery procured his assassination (140 B. C.). The taking of *Nu-man'tia*† by Scipio completed the subjugation of Spain (133 B. C.).

50. The Gracchi.—The great conquests made by the Romans had served rather to enrich the nobles than to benefit the middle or poorer classes of the citizens; and had corrupted the government by giving undue power to the Senate. The agrarian laws, which in earlier times had been passed to protect the people against the greed of the aristocracy, were generally unobserved; and the city, as well as all Italy, was swarming with slaves, who left no occupation to the citizens except that of war. At this time a champion of the people arose, in the person of a young noble, named *Ti-be'ri-us Grac'chus*, who, being elected

* *Lusitania* corresponded very nearly with modern Portugal; *Celtiberia*, with Aragon, in the northeastern part of Spain.
† *Numantia* was in the northern part of Spain.

49. What war was waged in Spain? Who was Viriatus? What ended the Spanish war?
50. How was Rome affected by her conquests? Who was Tiberius Gracchus?

tribune, and noticing with grief and indignation the oppressions of the rich and the sufferings of the poor, determined to remove them, by reviving the Licin'ian law, which had fallen into neglect. [*See Note* 8, *end of Section.*]

51. This law provided that the public lands should be for the benefit of all classes, and that no one should occupy more than 330 acres; but the nobles had seized them, and converted them to their own use. These lands Gracchus proposed to divide according to law, but to pay the owners for the buildings which they had erected upon them. He also proposed that the treasures left to Rome by Attalus, king of Pergamus, should be laid out in implements and cattle for the poor occupants of these lands.

52. These propositions raised a great storm of indignation among the senators and other members of the aristocracy; and while an election for tribunes was going on, they rushed into the assembly to prevent the re-election of Gracchus; and in the tumult he, with 300 others, was slain (133 B. C.). Ten years afterward, his brother, *Ca'i-us Grac'chus,* distinguished for his oratory, made another attempt to vindicate the rights of the people, and check the encroachments of the Senate. But he, too, fell a victim to their violence; being slain, with 3000 of his followers, by the orders of the consul, whom the Senate had invested with the authority of a dictator (121 B. C.).

53. The Gracchi* have been unjustly represented as seditious demagogues. They were, on the contrary, virtuous and patriotic reformers; and, had the measures which they proposed been adopted, the subsequent history of Rome would have been very different. Henceforth we see the supreme power in the hands of a corrupt and insolent aristocracy, and the state a constant prey to civil dissen-

* *Gracchi* is the Latin plural of Gracchus, and means the two persons of that name.

51. How did he propose to rectify abuses? What was the Lic'nian law?
52. What course did the nobles take? What became of Tiberius Gracchus? Who succeeded him in the enterprise? What was the result?
53. What is said of the Gracchi and their measures?

sion and war; while the people are merely the instruments, wielded by one or the other military chieftain, to satisfy his ambitious designs. Conscription and massacre, as either party prevails, thin the ranks of the proud nobles, and thus avenge the wrongs, while they vindicate the wisdom and patriotism, of the two Gracchi.

54. War against Jugurtha.—The disgraceful corruption of the Senate was shown in the war against *Ju-gur'tha*, who, having murdered his two cousins, sons of Mi-cip'sa, a faithful ally of Rome, usurped the throne of Numidia. These iniquities he was enabled to perpetrate, in spite of repeated complaints made to the Roman senate, by bribing its members; and he openly boasted of the power of his gold. At last, when the people would endure the outrage no longer, war was declared against the wicked usurper (111 B. C.); but Jugurtha bribed the generals, and thus prevented its success.

55. This being discovered and punished, the conduct of the war was committed to *Me-tel'lus*, who had almost completed the subjugation of Numidia, when he was superseded in the command by his lieutenant, *Caius Mar'i-us*. This man, afterward so famous in the history of Rome, had just risen to notice at the age of 50, having been long kept in obscurity by his poverty and mean birth. He soon brought the war to a conclusion, and sent Jugurtha a captive to Rome, where he was starved to death in a dungeon (106 B. C.). [*See Note* 9, *end of Section.*]

56. Invasion of the Cimbrians and Teutons.—In the mean time, hordes of barbarians, called the *Cim'bri-ans* and *Teu'tons*, invaded Gaul, and threatened Italy. After four Roman armies had been successively defeated by them, the command was given to Marius, who attacked the Teu-

54. Who was Jugurtha, and what led to a war with him? To whom was its management committed? With what result?

55. What was done by Metellus and Marius? What is said of the latter?

56. What invasion of Italy took place? By whom were the barbarians defeated? What was Marius called?

tons near the Rhone River, and gained so decided a victory over them, that they were almost annihilated (102 B. C.). The next year, having been appointed consul for the fifth time, he marched against the Cimbrians, whom he also defeated with immense slaughter, in Cis-al'pine Gaul.* By these two great victories, the tide of barbarian inundation was turned back for centuries, and Marius was deservedly hailed as the *Savior of his Country.*

57. **Social War.**—A dreadful war broke out soon afterward (90 B. C.) between Rome and the Italian states, called the *Social War.* This was caused by the demand of the states for the rights of citizenship, which the Senate refused. After nearly two years of war, and the destruction of about 300,000 Italians, the franchise was granted to all such as laid down their arms; and tranquillity was restored.

58. **Mithridatic War.**—Mith-ri-da'tēs, king of Pontus, having made extensive conquests in Asia Minor, formed the design of entirely expelling the Romans from that country; and by his orders 80,000 Italians, in the different cities, were massacred in one night (88 B. C.). *Syl'la,* a distinguished Roman general, being sent against him, defeated him in several battles, and compelled him to sue for peace (84 B. C.).

59. The war was afterward renewed (74 B. C.), but was brought to a successful conclusion by *Pompey the Great;* and Mithridates, in despair, put an end to his life (63 B. C.). This monarch was noted for his talents and accomplishments, being, it is said, able to converse in all the different languages of his extensive dominions.† He was considered the most powerful opponent Rome had ever known, having, during his long reign of fifty-seven years, been engaged nearly twenty-five of them in war with that republic.

* *Cisalpine* means on this side of the Alps; that is, on the side towards Rome.

† *See Note* 10, *end of the Section.*

57. What is meant by the *Social War?* What was its cause? How did it end?
58. What caused the Mithridatic War? Who defeated Mithridates?
59. Who again defeated him? What is said of Mithridates?

60. Civil War of Marius and Sylla.—Marius, and Sylla, his lieutenant in the war with Jugurtha, eagerly contended for the chief command in the Mithridat'ic War; but Sylla prevailed, and compelled his rival to flee from Rome in order to save his life. After the departure of Sylla to his command, the consul *Cin'na* recalled the aged Marius, who, returning to Italy, defeated the partisans of his rival, and entering Rome in triumph, caused those who had opposed his cause to be put to death (87 B. C.). He then declared himself consul, but a short time afterward died, at the age of 71. [*See Note* 11, *end of Section.*]

61. Marius was one of the most remarkable characters to be found in history. By his great abilities he rescued his country from a danger that threatened its destruction; but his insatiable desire for power and distinction plunged it into the miseries of a civil war. Though six times made consul, and crowned with every honor his countrymen could confer, yet, at the advanced age of 70, in order to acquire office he ceased to be a patriot, and became a partisan; and when triumphant, glutted his rage against such of his fellow-citizens as had opposed him, with the most remorseless cruelty. At length, exhausted by intemperance and debauchery, he sank into the grave, "hated by his enemies, feared even by his friends."

62. Sylla, returning from Asia, entered Italy with a large army (83 B. C.); but the leaders of the Marian party had made great preparations to oppose him. A dreadful war of two years ensued, during which the Samnites took up arms against Sylla. He was, however, triumphant over all his enemies, and after gaining several great victories, entered Rome its undisputed master. His first act was to massacre 6,000 Samnite prisoners; and then commenced a

---

60. What caused a civil war at this time? Give an account of it. What became of Marius?

61. What is said of his character?

62. What took place on Sylla's return to Italy? On his entrance into Rome? What became of Sylla?

fearful slaughter of all whom he deemed his enemies. Every day he issued a new list of those who were to be put to death; and after this dreadful proscription, in which it is said 8,000 citizens perished, he declared himself *Perpetual Dictator*. Having effected some reforms in the government, he resigned, to the surprise of all, the office of dictator, which he had filled about two years, and retired to private life (79 B. C.). A short time afterward, he died of a loathsome disease, occasioned by intemperance and debauchery.

63. In this war, Marius had been opposed by the patricians; while the Senate and its partisans had been on the side of Sylla. The party of Marius was thus sustained by the people, but that of Sylla by the aristocracy. The death of these two great chiefs did not end the strife. *Ser-to'ri-us*, one of the most distinguished of the Marian leaders, had taken refuge in Spain, and there established a power which for more than ten years defied all the efforts of the Senate. Pompey was sent against him; but it was only after the assassination of Sertorius that the insurgents could be subdued (72 B. C.).

64. Servile War.—In the mean time, Rome was confronted with a terrific danger. This was a slave insurrection. *Spar'ta-cus*, a Thracian, made captive in war, and afterward kept in a training-school for Gladiators, at Capua, broke loose from his place of bondage with a number of his fellow-prisoners, and fleeing to Mount Vesuvius, was joined by a vast number of slaves and outlaws of every description. Having collected a force of over 100,000 men, he moved northward, defeated the regular army in several engagements, and threatened Rome itself. At last he was met by a large force under *Cras'sus*, and his army cut to pieces, he himself being among the slain (71 B. C.). This was the

63. Which was the popular party? The aristocratic party? Who was Sertorius? How and when was he subdued?

64. Who was Spartacus? By whom was the revolt of the slaves subdued? What other revolt is spoken of? What led to these revolts?

second great slave revolt, one having, about 60 years before, broken out in Sicily, and been reduced only after frightful massacres and ravages. These insurrections were the natural result of the dreadful slave-system pursued in the Roman conquests.

65. At this time, Pompey and Crassus were the two leading men at Rome. The former, by his conduct during the civil war, his good fortune in Spain, and the timely assistance he had rendered against Spartacus, had contrived to acquire very great popularity. Sylla had given to him, when yet a young man, the title of *Magnus*—the Great. Crassus exerted a powerful influence by means of his immense wealth, which he had craftily acquired by buying up the estates of the proscribed during the dictatorship of Sylla. Pompey being sent against the pirates of the Mediterranean, acted with so much energy and address, that in three months he entirely cleared the seas of those robbers (66 B. C.).

66. In the mean time, *Lu-cul'lus* had been winning victories over Mithridates and his son-in-law *Ti-gra'nes*, king of Armenia, but was stopped in his career of success by a mutiny of his troops. Pompey was, therefore, sent into Asia, with the powers of a despot, to bring the war to a close. This he accomplished in less than three years, subduing both the revolted kings, and reducing Pontus to a Roman province (63 B. C.). He also reduced Syria, and took Jerusalem, dethroning the reigning king of Judea, and making the kingdom tributary to Rome. Having regulated all the provinces of the east, with the authority of an absolute potentate, he returned triumphantly to Italy (61 B. C.).

67. Jewish History.—After the edict of Cyrus, the

65. What influence did Pompey and Crassus exert at this time? How had Crassus become wealthy? What was accomplished by Pompey in 66 B. C.?

66. What victories had Lucullus gained? By whom was he superseded? What did Pompey accomplish?

67. Give a brief sketch of Jewish history down to this time.

Jews remained under the dominion of Persia, till the time of Alexander; and after his death, their country became subject to Ptolemy. Subsequently, the kings of Egypt and Syria contended for it, until, in 198 B. C., Antiochus the Great defeated the Egyptians, and thus became its ruler. In consequence of the oppression of one of his successors, the Jews revolted, under the renowned *Judas Mac-ca-bē'us*, who, in a succession of victories, routed the Syrian armies and entered Jerusalem in triumph. After his death (161 B. C.), his brothers completed the work of national deliverance, and they and their successors ruled as high-priests until (in 106 B. C.) *Ar-is-to-bu'lus* assumed the crown. When Pompey invaded Asia, Aristobulus II. was on the throne; but his right was disputed by his brother, *John Hyr-ca'nus*, whom Pompey, after besieging Jerusalem three months, and taking the city, placed over the kingdom (63 B. C.). The successors of Judas Maccabeus are called the *Maccabees*, or the *As-mo-nē'an Dynasty*.

68. Conspiracy of Catiline.—While Pompey was in Asia, *Cat'i-līne*, a profligate and needy patrician, formed a conspiracy to murder the consul, and then plunder and burn the city (63 B. C.). The plot was, however, discovered in time by *Cic'e-ro*, the great orator, who denounced Catiline, and compelled him to flee from Rome. His confederates, who had been left in the city to consummate the wicked scheme, were betrayed by some Gauls whom they endeavored to gain over to their service, and being immediately apprehended were put to death, through the courage and promptitude of the consul Cicero. Catiline, at the head of a numerous force which he had succeeded in collecting, was defeated and slain (62 B. C.).

69. First Triumvirate.—In the mean time, *Ju'lius Cæ'sar* had won considerable distinction by his courage and address as a politician, and his skill as a military

68. What conspiracy was discovered at Rome? How was it suppressed?
69. How was the first triumvirate formed? What did Cæsar gain by it?

commander. Finding Pompey and Crassus hostile to each other, he succeeded in reconciling them, and in establishing an alliance by which the three were to support each other's plans and interests (60 B. C.). This secret cabal has been called the *First Tri-um'vir-ate.** By the support of his two powerful confederates, Cæsar obtained the consulship; and at its close, the Senate passed a decree by which he was assigned, as proconsul, to the government of Gaul, with the command of an army to subdue the barbarians, who had commenced hostile movements.

70. Cæsar's campaigns in Gaul lasted about eight years; and, in that period, he not only succeeded in subjugating all the warlike races of that country, but, crossing the Rhine, gained great victories over the bold and hardy Germans. He also passed into *Britain*, and defeated the fierce and warlike inhabitants, who strove with the greatest intrepidity to repel the invaders from their island (55 B. C.). By 50 B. C., his province was completely subdued; and it is computed that in these eight years of war, nearly a million of Gauls and Germans were sacrificed, Cæsar never showing the least mercy to the barbarians, while, toward his fellow-citizens, he was remarkable for mildness and humanity.

71. In the mean time, Crassus had obtained the proconsular government of Syria, and had undertaken an expedition against the *Par'thians*, an eastern race who, first appearing near the Caspian Sea, had at this time conquered the vast region extending from the Euphrates to the Indus. In this expedition Crassus was defeated and slain (53 B. C.). His lieutenant, Cassius (*kash'e-us*), however, prosecuted the war two years longer, and gaining a decided victory over the Parthians, checked their further advance westward.

* *Triumvirate* means an association consisting of three men.

70. What is said of Cæsar's campaigns in Gaul?
71. What became of Crassus? Who defeated the Parthians?

Pompey, although made proconsul of Spain, remained in Rome, governing his province by means of lieutenants.

72. Second Civil War.—One of the members of the triumvirate having been removed by death, and Pompey having become intensely jealous of Cæsar, the coalition was practically dissolved. Pompey, determining to supplant Cæsar and obtain the dictatorship, went over to the party of the Senate which he had hitherto opposed, and obtained in succession two decrees: first, that Cæsar should forthwith disband his army; and second, that, as he had not obeyed, he should be proclaimed an outlaw, Pompey himself all the while retaining his army in Spain, as well as other forces in Italy, in order to enforce his ambitious designs. Cæsar, seeing that he could only oppose violence by violence, at once broke up his camp, and crossing the river *Ru'bi-con*, the boundary of his province, entered Italy, with a small army, afterward re-enforced by detachments from Gaul. Thus was commenced the *Second Civil War*.

73. Pompey, with what forces he had, and accompanied by many of the senators and others, fled to Brundu'sium, from which port, having collected a large fleet, he sailed to Epirus. Cæsar soon overran Italy; and then proceeded to Spain, where, with consummate address, he speedily won over Pompey's generals, and annexed their forces to his own. Returning, he then crossed to Epirus to give battle to Pompey. No general engagement, however, took place till the next year; when, on the plains of *Phar-sa'li-a*, the battle was joined, and Cæsar, although with forces far inferior in number, gained a decisive victory (48 B. C.). Pompey took refuge in Egypt, but was treacherously assassinated as he was about to step ashore. [*See Note* 12, *end of Section.*]

74. Cæsar, with his characteristic promptitude, pursued

---

72. What caused the dissolution of the Triumvirate? What caused Cæsar's invasion of Italy?

73. What course did Pompey take? Cæsar? What battle decided the contest? What became of Pompey?

74. What took place on Cæsar's reaching Egypt?

Pompey to Egypt, and on arriving there was presented with the head and ring of his great rival. He turned aside with tears from the mournful and ghastly spectacle, and ordered Pompey's remains to be burnt with due honor. He caused also a monument to be erected, to commemorate the splendid fortune, as well as the sad reverse, of his former friend and associate. Having none of the ferocious and bloodthirsty malignity of Marius and Sylla, he freely pardoned all who had opposed him; and, consequently, the greater number of Pompey's partisans were soon won over to his standard.

75. The succession to the throne of Egypt was, at that time, in dispute between the young King Ptolemy and his sister, the celebrated *Cle-o-pa'tra.* Cæsar, influenced by the fascinations of the latter, decided in her favor, and thus incurred the hostility of Ptolemy's adherents, who raised a fearful insurrection against him. This, however, in a few months he reduced, and confirmed Cleopatra on the throne. During this war at Alexandria, Cæsar set fire to the Egyptian fleet, and the flames having extended to the public library, that immense collection of more than 100,000 volumes, containing all the most valuable works of ancient times, was destroyed (48 B. C.).

76. From Egypt Cæsar proceeded against *Phar-na'cēs,* son of the great Mithridates, who had risen in rebellion and seized upon Armenia and Colchis. Him Cæsar speedily defeated at *Ze'la,* in Pontus, and announced his victory to the Roman Senate in three words—*Veni, vidi, vici* (I came, I saw, I conquered). In two months all Asia was restored to tranquillity, and Cæsar then returned to Rome, to assume the office of dictator. Proceeding next to Africa, he gained a great victory at *Thap'sus* over the forces of Scipio, who, assisted by *Ju'ba,* king of Maurita'nia, still

75. What caused an insurrection at Alexandria? What was the effect of it?
76. What other important victories were gained by Cæsar? Where was Thapsus?—*Ans.* In the northern part of Africa. What became of Cato?

adhered to the senatorial party. *Ca'to*, called the Stoic,* on account of his stern virtue, seeing that all was lost, and that the Roman republic was now at an end, committed suicide at *U'ti-ca* (46 B. C.).

77. Having formed Numidia into a Roman province, Cæsar returned to Rome, where he celebrated with extraordinary magnificence four triumphs—over Gaul, Egypt, Pontus, and Numidia. A general amnesty was then declared, and the soldiers were rewarded with liberal donations. But before he could settle affairs at Rome, he was called to Spain, where the two sons of Pompey had raised an army against him. These he defeated in the severe battle of *Mun'da*, which closed the war. Having thus become master of Rome, he determined to lay aside the sword and cultivate the arts of peace. He instituted many important reforms in the laws and government, rectified the calendar, and formed plans for many other great and useful works.

78. But while meditating these, a stop was suddenly put to his magnificent career. A conspiracy having been formed against him by a large body of nobles, prominent among whom were *Brutus* and *Cassius*, the former his most intimate friend, he was attacked in the Senate house, and fell pierced with twenty-three wounds (March, 44 B. C.).† The reason alleged for his assassination was that he meditated making himself king; and Brutus, a nephew of Cato, was probably sincere in this belief; but the others seem to have been actuated by feelings rather of envy than of patriotism. Besides, the leading conspirators were guilty of base ingratitude; for they had been freely pardoned their former opposition to Cæsar's party, and placed in offices of power and

* The *Stoics* were a sect of Grecian philosophers who inculcated the doctrine that fortitude is the chief virtue, and prided themselves upon their endurance of pain, and insensibility to misfortune.

† *See Note* 13, *end of Section.*

77. What triumphs did Cæsar celebrate? What is said of the battle of Munda? Where was Munda? *Ans.* In the south of Spain. What did Cæsar accomplish as dictator?

78. How was his career closed? What was the cause of his assassination?

emolument. Cassius indeed had been one of the most active of Pompey's adherents.

79. Cæsar was probably the greatest man that Rome ever produced. He was not only an able general and a consummate statesman and politician, but a splendid orator, a fine scholar, and an elegant writer. His history of the Gallic campaigns, styled the "Commentaries," is a complete model for this kind of composition. His knowledge of human nature seems to have been almost perfect, for he swayed the minds of all who came within his influence, to an extent rarely equalled and never surpassed. His great crime was, that having acquired power he knew not how to lay it down, preferring to retain it, although in so doing he destroyed forever the liberties of his country; for the battles of Pharsalia, Thapsus, and Munda established the Roman empire, and Julius Cæsar virtually became its *first emperor*.

80. After the murder of Cæsar, the conspirators fled to the capitol, where they remained until they entered into an agreement with *Mark An'tony*, the consul, and a particular friend of Cæsar, that all his laws should remain in force, that his will should be carried into effect, and that his body should be honored with a public funeral. Accordingly it was carried into the forum; and Mark Antony pronounced over it a funeral oration, in the course of which he exposed the bleeding wounds to the people, and so worked upon their sympathies, that they arose against the conspirators and compelled them to flee from the city.

81. Antony having thus became master of Rome, produced Cæsar's will, and other papers which he represented as containing his acts and wishes. These he strenuously enforced, until he excited the opposition of the senatorial party, led by Cicero, who pronounced against Antony those severe but magnificent orations, styled, in imitation of De-

79. What was his character?
80. What events followed the murder of Cæsar? What was done by Mark Antony? What was the effect of his oration?
81. What were the Philippics? Why were they spoken? Who was Octavius?

mosthenes, the *Philippics*. In the mean while *Oc-ta'vi-us*, a young man, the nephew and adopted son of Cæsar, arrived in Rome, and immediately demanded the property left him by his adopted father.

82. **Second Triumvirate.**—Being sustained by the Senate, Octavius declared against Antony, who, defeated by the consuls in battle, fled into Gaul, and there formed a union with *Lep'i-dus*, the general who had command of that province. The two then marched to oppose Octavius, but finally entered into a negotiation with him; and the three then agreed to form a second triumvirate and, after punishing the murderers of Cæsar, to divide the empire among themselves (43 B. C.). A dreadful proscription and massacre followed the formation of this league, each of the triumvirs inserting in the list all whom he deemed hostile and wished to be put to death. Not fewer than three hundred Senators and two thousand knights were among the proscribed; and among the victims sacrificed to the hatred of Antony, was Cicero.

83. Having taken vengeance upon their enemies in Italy, the triumvirs turned their attention to Brutus and Cassius, who, with the design of restoring the liberties of their country, had succeeded in making themselves masters of all the eastern part of the empire. Antony and Octavius crossed to Macedonia, and engaged the republican forces at *Phi-lip'pī*, where Cassius and Brutus were successively defeated, each slaying himself at the close of the battle (42 B. C.). These victories left to the Triumvirate absolute control of the empire.

84. Antony being visited by Cleopatra in Asia, returned with her to Egypt, and surrendered himself to the wiles of that artful beauty.* At last, after neglecting his duty for

* *See Note* 14, *end of Section.*

82. What led to the second triumvirate? What proscriptions followed? What illustrious man was put to death?

83. Where were Brutus and Cassius defeated? What was the result of these battles? Where was Philippi? (See Map of Greece.)

84. What led to the battle of Actium? What was its result? Where was Actium? *Ans.* On the western shore of Greece.

years, he gave great offence to Octavius by divorcing his sister Octavia, in order to marry the Egyptian queen. This brought on a war between the two triumvirs, which was ended by the battle of Actium (*ak'she-um*), Antony and Cleopatra being totally defeated (31 B. C.).* Fleeing to Egypt, Antony stabbed himself, and Cleopatra put an end to her life (it is said by means of a venomous asp) in order to prevent being compelled to grace the triumph of Octavius. Her death terminated the sovereignty of the Ptolemies, which had existed about three centuries (323–31 B. C.).

85. Egypt having been made a Roman province, and plundered of its immense treasures in order to supply Octavius with funds to reward his soldiers, he returned to Rome, where he was formally invested with absolute authority by the Senate, who saluted him by the title of *Augustus*. The date of the battle of Actium is generally chosen as the era of the commencement of the Roman empire. Subsequently, the government was in fact a military despotism, under which the Romans were so hopeless of relief that they made no effort to restore their republican constitution. [*See Note* 16, *end of Section.*]

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

B. C.

753. Foundation of Rome.

509. Expulsion of the Tarquins—*Era of the Republic.*

5th Century.

494. Creation of the Tribunes.
486. First Agrarian law proposed by Cassius.
485. Coriolanus banished. Rome saved by female intercession.
471. Law of Volero. *Rome a Democracy.*
451. Appointment of Decemvirs.
445. Intermarriage of patricians and plebeians permitted.

4th Century.

391. Invasion of Italy by the Gauls.
390. Rome taken and burnt by the Gauls.
343. Commencement of the war with the Samnites.
321. Defeat of the Romans by the Samnites.
305. The Samnites subdued.

* *See Note* 15, *end of Section.*

85. What was done by Octavius? What title did he assume? What was the character of the government of Rome under him?

3d Century.

295. The Samnites, Umbrians, &c., defeated at Sentinum.
Rome Mistress of Italy.
280. The Romans defeated by Pyrrhus.
275. Pyrrhus defeated by the Romans under Curius Dentatus.
264. Commencement of the First Punic War.
255. Regulus taken prisoner by the Carthaginians.
241 End of the First Punic War.
218. Commencement of the Second Punic War. The Romans defeated by Hannibal at the Ticinus.
217. Battle of Trasimenus. The Romans defeated.
216. Battle of Cannæ.
212. Taking of Syracuse by the Romans. Death of Archimedes.
205. Conquest of Spain by Scipio.
202. Battle of Zama. Hannibal defeated by Scipio.

2d Century.

190. Antiochus defeated by the Romans at Magnesia.
146. Carthage taken and destroyed. Corinth taken.
140. Viriatus assassinated.
133. Spain completely subjugated.
132. Death of Tiberius Gracchus.
121. Caius Gracchus put to death.
106. Jugurtha taken prisoner by Marius and Sylla.
102. The Teutons defeated by Marius.
101. The Cimbrians defeated by Marius.

1st Century.

90. The Social War.
88. Commencement of the Mithridatic War. **First Civil War.**
87. Marius's proscription.
82. Sylla's proscription.
72. Assassination of Sertorius in Spain.
71. Spartacus defeated and slain.
66. Pompey clears the Mediterranean of pirates.
66. Mithridates subdued. Pontus a Roman province.
63. Conspiracy of Catiline.
60. First Triumvirate.
55. Invasion of Britain by Cæsar.
53. Crassus defeated and slain by the Parthians.
48. Battle of Pharsalia. Pompey defeated.
46. Battle of Thapsus. Death of Cato.
44. Assassination of Cæsar.
43. Second Triumvirate.
42. Battles of Philippi. Death of Brutus and Cassius.
31. Battle of Actium.
30. Death of Antony and Cleopatra.
29. Octavius emperor under the title of **Augustus.**

Cent.	B. C.	Rome.	Greece.	Other Nations.
	776		First Olympiad.	
	753	Foundation of Rome.		
	747			Era of Nabonassar.
8th.	743		First Messenian War.	
	734		Syracuse founded.	
	721			Samaria taken.
	720			Lydians in Asia Minor.
	715	Numa Pompilius.		
	685		Second Messenian War.	
	672	Tullus Hostilius.		
	640	Ancus Martius.		
7th.	625			The Medes take Nineveh
	624		Draco at Athens.	
	616	Tarquin the Elder.		
	610			Battle between the Lydians and Medes.
	594		Solon at Athens.	
	588			Jerusalem taken by Nebuchadnezzar.
	578	Servius Tullius.		
	560		Pisistratus at Athens.	
	546			Cyrus subdues Crœsus.
6th.	538			Babylon taken by Cyrus.
	534	Tarquin the Proud.		
	525			Pelusium taken by Cambyses.
	510		Hippias expelled from Athens.	
	509	Tarquins expelled.		
	495		Miletus taken by Darius.	
	494	Creation of Tribunes.		
	485	Coriolanus.		Accession of Xerxes.
5th.	471	Law of Volero.	Themistocles banished.	
	464			Death of Xerxes.
	449	Decemvirate abolished.	Death of Cimon.	
	394	Romans take Veii.	Battle of Coronea.	
	359		Accession of Philip of Macedon.	
	346		Sacred War ends.	
	343	Samnite War begins.		
4th.	323		Lamian War.	Death of Alexander the Great.
	321	Battle of Caudine Forks		
	307		Demetrius Phalereus expelled from Athens.	
	305	Samnites subdued.		
	301			Battle of Ipsus.
	280	Pyrrhus invades Italy.	Gauls invade Greece.	Seleucus assassinated.
	241	End of 1st Punic War.	Aratus.—Agis.	Sicily made a Roman province.
3d.	221		Sparta taken by Antigonus.	Kingdoms of Parthia & Bactria founded.
	218	2d Punic War begins.		
	213		Aratus poisoned.	
	212	Syracuse taken.		
	205	Scipio in Spain.	Philopœmen.	
	184	Death of Scipio Africanus.		
2d.	183		Death of Philopœmen.	Death of Hannibal.
	161			Death of Judas Maccabeus.
	146	Carthage taken by the Romans.	Corinth taken by the Romans.	

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

		PAGE
1.	Give an account of the foundation of Rome	67
2.	How long did the monarchy last?	67–68
3.	What is the character of this part of the history? Why?	67
4.	What officers afterward performed the duties of the kings?	68
5.	Give an account of the wars with the Tarquins	68
6.	What led to the creation of Tribunes?	69
7.	When and how did the people acquire a control of the government?	70
8.	What disposition was made of the conquered lands by the Romans?	70
9.	What were the *Twelve Tables?* By whom framed?	71
10.	What was the office of dictator? Name the first prominent dictator	69–71
11.	Give an account of Camillus	72
12.	Mention the events connected with the invasion of Italy by the Gauls	72–74
13.	Give the history of Marcus Manlius	73–74
14.	What wars were waged with the Samnites? Their result?	75–76
15.	Give an account of the invasion of Italy by Pyrrhus	76
16.	What rendered Rome mistress of all Italy?	77
17.	How was it governed?	77
18.	What led to the Punic wars?	77–78
19.	Give a sketch of the previous history of Carthage. Of Syracuse	77
20.	What were the principal events of the first Punic war?	78–79
21.	Give a sketch of the career of Hannibal	79–83
22.	When and how did Sicily become a Roman province?	79
23.	When and how was Syracuse finally subdued?	81
24.	What led to the battle of Magnesia? Its consequences?	83
25.	How did Pergamus become a Roman province?	84
26.	When and how were Macedonia and Greece subdued?	84
27.	Give an account of the third Punic war	85
28.	When and how were the Celtiberians and Lusitanians subdued?	86
29.	Who were the Gracchi, and what measures did they propose?	86–87
30.	Give an account of the war against Jugurtha	88
31.	What invasion by the Cimbrians and Teutons? By whom were they repelled?	88–89
32.	Give an account of the Social War	89
33.	What wars were waged against Mithridates? Principal events of them?	89
34.	What led to the first civil war? Its chief events?	90
35.	State the principal events in the life of Sylla	90–91
36.	What servile wars broke out? The principal events?	91
37.	What successes raised Pompey to distinction?	92
38.	Give an account of Catiline and his conspiracy	93
39.	What led to the first triumvirate?	93
40.	What conquests did Cæsar make while proconsul?	94
41.	What caused dissensions between him and Pompey?	95
42.	What civil war followed? Its principal events?	95–96
43.	What great victories did Cæsar gain?	96–97
44.	What office did he assume? What were his principal measures?	97
45.	How was his career terminated?	97
46.	What civil war followed? Its chief events?	98–99
47.	Who formed the second triumvirate?	99
48.	How did Octavius acquire the supreme power?	99
49.	What did Rome then become?	100

NOTES.

1. Early Roman History (p. 67, ¶ 1).—"The early history of Rome is indeed far more poetical than anything else in Latin literature. The loves of the Vestal and the God of War, the cradle laid among the reeds of Tiber, the fig-tree, the she-wolf, the shepherd's cabin, the recognition, the fratricide, the rape of the Sabines, the death of Tarpeia, the fall of Hostius Hostilius, the struggle of Metius Curtius through the marsh, the women rushing with torn raiment and disheveled hair between their fathers and their husbands, the nightly meetings of Numa and the Nymph by the well in the sacred grove, the fight of the three Romans and the three Albans, the purchase of the Sibylline books, the crime of Tullia, the simulated madness of Brutus, the ambiguous reply of the Delphian oracle to the Tarquins, the wrongs of Lucretia, the heroic actions of Horatius Cocles, of Scævola, and of Cloelia, the battle of Regillus won by the aid of Castor and Pollux, the fall of Cremera, the touching story of Coriolanus, the still more touching story of Virginia, the wild legend about the draining of the Alban lake, the combat between Valerius Corvus and the gigantic Gaul, are among the many instances which will at once suggest themselves to every reader."—*Macaulay.*

2. Greeks in Italy (p. 67, ¶ 2).—"To all appearance the Hellenic mariners were the first among the inhabitants of the Eastern basin of the Mediterranean to navigate the coasts of Italy. Of the important questions, however, as to the region from which, and as to the period at which, the Greek seafarers came thither, only the former admits of being answered with some degree of precision and fullness. The Æolian and Ionian coast of Asia Minor was the region where Hellenic maritime traffic first became developed on a large scale, and whence issued the Greeks who explored the interior of the Black Sea on the one hand and the coasts of Italy on the other. The name of the Ionian Sea, which was retained by the waters intervening between Epirus and Sicily, and that of the Ionian Gulf, the term by which the Greeks in earlier times designated the Adriatic Sea, are memorials of the fact that the southern and eastern coasts of Italy were once discovered by seafarers from Ionia. The oldest Greek settlement in Italy, Cuma, was, as its name and legend tell, founded by the town of the same name on the Anatolian coast. According to trustworthy Hellenic tradition, the Phocæans of Asia Minor were the first of the Hellenes to traverse the more remote western sea. Other Greeks soon followed in the paths which those of Asia Minor had opened up; Ionians from Naxos and from Chalcis in Eubœa, Achæans, Locrians, Rhodians, Corinthians, Megarians, Messenians, Spartans. After the discovery of America, the civilized nations of Europe vied with one another in sending out expeditions and forming settlements there; and the new settlers when located amidst barbarians recognized their common character and common interests as civilized European, more strongly than they had done in their former home. So it was with the new discovery of the Greeks."—*Mommsen's History of Rome.*

3. Lucius Junius Brutus (p. 68, ¶ 4).—This is one of the most illustrious names in Roman history. Lucius Junius was the son of Tarquinia, the second daughter of Tarquin the king. He had seen his father and brother slain by the order of the jealous tyrant, and fearing the same fate for himself, feigned idiocy, so that he might appear of no consequence—an object of pity rather than alarm to the cruel monarch. After the wicked deed of Sextus, the son of Tarquin, he threw off the mask, and incited the people by his burning words to expel the tyrant. The following legend illustrates the stern virtue of the man:—"Then king Tarquinius sent to Rome, to ask for all the goods that had belonged to him; and the Senate,

after a while, decreed that the goods should be given back. But those whom he had sent to Rome to ask for his goods, had meetings with many young men of noble birth, and a plot was laid to bring back king Tarquinius. So the young men wrote letters to Tarquinius, pledging to him their faith, and among them were Titus and Tiberius, the sons of Brutus. But a slave happened to overhear them talking together, and when he knew that the letters were to be given to the messengers of Tarquinius, he went and told all that he had heard to Brutus and to Publius Valerius. Then they came and seized the young men and their letters, and so the plot was broken up. After this there was a strange and piteous sight to behold. Brutus and Publius sat on their judgment-seats in the Forum, and the young men were brought before them. Then Brutus bade the lictors to bind his own two sons, Titus and Tiberius, together with the others, and to scourge them with rods according to the law. And after they had been scourged, the lictors struck off their heads with their axes, before the eyes of their father; and Brutus neither stirred from his seat, nor turned away his eyes from the sight; yet men saw, as they looked on him, that his heart was grieving inwardly over his children. Then they marveled at him, because he had loved justice more than his own blood, and had not spared his own children, when they had been false to their country and had offended against the law."—*Arnold's History of Rome.*

4. Fate of a Roman Debtor (p. 69, ¶ 6).—"When a Roman plebeian found himself involved in a debt which he could not pay, his best resource was to sell himself to his creditor, on the condition that unless the debt were previously discharged, the creditor, at the expiration of a stated term, should enter into possession of his purchase. This was called, in the language of the Roman law, the entering into a *nexum*, and the person who had thus conditionally sold himself, was said to be "*nexus*," that is, *bound*. When the day came, the creditor claimed possession, and the magistrates awarded it; and the debtor, thus given over to his purchaser, passed, with all that belonged to him, into his power; and as the sons were considered their father's property, they also, unless previously emancipated, were included in the sale, and went into slavery together with their father. Or if a man, resolved not by his own act to sacrifice his own and his children's liberty, refused thus to sell himself, and determined to abide in his own person the consequences of his debt, then he risked a fate still more fearful. If, within thirty days after the justice of the claim had been allowed, he was unable to discharge it, his creditor might arrest him, and bring him before the court; and if no one then offered to be his security, he was given over to his creditor, and kept by him in private custody, bound with a chain of fifteen pounds weight, and fed with a pound of corn daily. If he still could not, or would not, come to any terms with his creditor, he was thus confined during sixty days, and during this period was brought before the court in the *comitium* [public assembly], on three successive market-days, and the amount of his debt declared, in order to see whether any one would yet come forward in his behalf. On the third market-day, if no friend appeared, he was either to be put to death, or sold as a slave into a foreign land beyond the Tiber; that is, into Etruria, where there was yet no interchange of franchise with Rome, amidst a people of a different language. Or if there were several creditors, they might actually hew his body in pieces; and whether a creditor cut off a greater or smaller piece than in proportion to his debt, he incurred no penalty."—*Arnold's History of Rome.*

5. Massacre of the Roman Senators by the Gauls (p. 73, ¶ 17).—"Then, as men devoted to death, they arrayed themselves in their most solemn dress; they who had held curule offices, in their robes of white with the broad

scarlet border; they who had won triumphs, in their robes of triumph, overlaid with embroidery of many colors and with palm branches of gold, and took their seats, each on his ivory chair of magistracy, in the gateway of his house. When the Gauls saw these aged men in this array of majesty, sitting motionless amidst the confusion of the sack of the city, they at first looked upon them as more than human, and one of the soldiers drew near to M. Papirius, and began to stroke reverently his ivory-white beard. Papirius, who was a minister of the gods, could not endure the touch of profane barbarian hands, and struck the Gaul over the head with his ivory scepter. Instantly the spell of reverence was broken, and rage and the thirst of blood succeeded to it. The Gaul cut down the old Papirius with his sword; his comrades were kindled at the sight, and all the old men, according to their vow, were offered up as victims to the powers of death."—*Arnold's History of Rome.*

6. Death of Archimedes (p. 81, ¶ 36).—Archimedes was in his study, absorbed in his scientific researches, when the Romans entered; nor did he perceive that the city was taken till a soldier entered his room, and commanded him to follow him into the presence of Marcellus. Archimedes requested him to wait till he had finished his problem, upon which the soldier drew his sword and killed him. Marcellus, much grieved, ordered his body to be honorably buried, and a tomb erected to his memory. His genius for mathematics and his devotion to his favorite study were very remarkable. He was often so engaged in this study, that he neglected his meat and drink. The incident of the crown is very interesting. It seems that a jeweler had made a crown for Hiero; but the king, suspecting that it had been fraudulently alloyed with silver, set Archimedes to examine into the affair. Archimedes thought upon the subject a long time in vain. But one day in the bath perceiving that his body displaced a certain quantity of water, it occurred to him that there was a definite relation between the quantity of water displaced, and the weight of the body, and thus the principle of *specific gravity* flashed across his mind. The problem was solved; and, transported with joy, he ran out into the street, crying out *Eureka! Eureka!* "I have found it! I have found it!"

7. Death of Hannibal (p. 83, ¶ 40).—"After the loss of his last hope by the destruction of the Syrian host at Magnesia, he wandered from land to land till he found a resting-place at the court of Prusias of Bithynia. The Senate could not breathe while their great enemy lived; and Flaminius was sent to demand from Prusias the person of his illustrious guest. The king dared not say nay, and gave Hannibal to understand that he must be surrendered to Flaminius; but the great Carthaginian, to avoid falling into the hands of his implacable foes, swallowed a dose of poison, which, according to the common story, he carried with him constantly, in the hollow of a ring. He was sixty-three years of age. Life had long ceased to be valuable to him, because opposition to Rome had become hopeless. He died, as he lived, faithful to the service of that avenging deity to whom he had been bound in boyhood by his father, Hamilcar."—*Liddell's History of Rome.*

8. Tiberius Gracchus (p. 87, ¶ 50).—"The elder Gracchus, when his mind began to brood over the disasters that were fast gathering in heavy clouds round his country, was in the bloom of manhood. Sprung from an honorable family, independent, though not of the most opulent, connected with the families of the most haughty patricians by the intermarriages of his nearest kinsmen, the son of a hero who had been censor, had twice been consul, and had twice gained the honors of a triumph,—grandson of the elder Scipio, the victor of

Hannibal,—brother-in-law of the younger Scipio, the destroyer of Carthage,—he might have entered the career of ambition with every assurance of success. Endowed by the kindness of Heaven with admirable genius, he had also enjoyed an education superior to that of any of his contemporaries. His excellent mother (Cornelia), whom the unanimous testimony of antiquity declares to have been the first woman of her times, had assembled round his youth the best instructors in the arts and in letters; and what was then a rare thing in Rome, he had learned to rest his head on the bosom of the Grecian Muse. Nor were the qualities of his heart inferior to his talents and his nurture. His earliest appearance in the Roman army was in the final war against Carthage, under the command of his brother-in-law; and when Carthage was taken by storm, he, the impetuous soldier of eighteen, led the onset, and was the first to ascend the walls of the burning city. Yet he was gentle in all his dispositions; a maidenly modesty and a peaceful composure distinguished his character; his purity obtained for him in youth the unusual distinction of a seat among the augurs. His truth and his moderation were also widely celebrated."—*Bancroft.*

9. Fate of Jugurtha (p. 88, ¶ 55).—"Marius set out for Italy, and, with his legions and their captives, entered Rome in triumph,—a spectacle of which Jugurtha, in chains, and his unfortunate children, were the principal figures. When the procession was over, the captive king was led to a dungeon, under orders for his immediate execution. As he was about to be stripped of his ornaments and robes, the executioner, in haste to pluck the pendants from his ears, tore away the flesh, and thrust him naked into a dungeon below ground. He descended into this place with a smile, saying, 'What a cold bath is here!' He pined about six days, and expired."—*Ferguson's Roman Republic.*

10. Mithridates of Pontus (p. 89, ¶ 59).—"Mithridates was one of the greatest princes of antiquity. One of the Roman historians says of him, 'He was a man neither to be mentioned nor passed over without caution; most valiant in war, of surprising bravery, distinguished at one time by success, at all times by greatness of mind; a consummate general, an invincible soldier, and to the end persevering and consistent in his opposition to Rome.' The early life of Mithridates was spent in the assiduous cultivation of those talents and habits which rendered him, in the words of Pliny, the greatest prince of his time, or, in the stronger words of Cicero, the greatest monarch that ever reigned. He accustomed himself at all seasons to lie in the open air, and to depend upon his success in the chase for a precarious meal. He exposed himself to dangerous conflicts with the larger and fiercer wild animals, and exercised his speed and dexterity in pursuit of the smaller. He studied profoundly the physics and philosophy of the age, and made himself master of all the languages, or more properly perhaps of the dialects, spoken by the nations with whom he was likely to have any intercourse in peace or war, so that he could receive ambassadors and issue dispatches without the intervention of an interpreter. The language of Pontus, in his time, had become a corrupt mixture of Greek and Getic, and it is probable that different modifications of the same jargon, formed the same dialects of most of the neighboring states; but though the vernacular tongue was thus barbarous, a purer Greek appears to have been the language of the court; for the coins of Mithridates bear Greek inscriptions, and his 'Treatise on Botany' was composed in Greek."—*Encyclopædia Metropolitana.*

11. Flight and Imprisonment of Marius (p. 90, ¶ 60).—Obliged to avoid, by flight, the revenge of his cruel adversary, Marius hid himself in the marshes of Minturnæ, but being discovered, he was dragged to that town, and

there shut up. A Cimbric soldier undertook to kill him, to get the promised reward for his head. Plutarch relates that he entered the prison of Marius with a drawn sword, and it being dark, he saw the eyes of the captive warrior gleaming at him with intense brilliancy, and he heard from that dismal place a voice, which said to him, "Now, man! darest thou kill Caius Marius?" The barbarian, terror-stricken at the name, threw down his sword, and rushed from the place, exclaiming, "I dare not kill Marius."

12. Pompey's Camp at Pharsalia (p. 95, ¶ 73).—"On entering Pompey's camp, we found tables ready covered, side-boards loaded with plate, and tents adorned with branches of myrtle; that of L. Lentulus, with some others, was shaded with ivy. Everything gave proofs of the highest luxury, and an assured expectation of victory; whence it was easy to see that they little dreamed of the issue of that day, since, intent only on voluptuous refinements, they pretended, with troops immersed in luxury, to oppose Cæsar's army, accustomed to fatigue, and inured to the want of necessaries. * * * * This battle cost Cæsar no more than two hundred soldiers; but he lost thirty centurions, men of singular courage. On Pompey's side there fell about fifteen thousand, and upward of twenty-five thousand were taken prisoners."—*Cæsar's Commentaries.*

13. Assassination of Cæsar (p. 97, ¶ 78).—"Cæsar entered the Senate-house; his enemies closed in a dense mass around him, and while they led him to his chair kept off all intruders. Trebonius was especially charged to detain Antony in conversation at the door. Scarcely was the victim seated when Tellius Cimber approached with a petition for his brother's pardon. The others, as was concerted, joined in the supplication, grasping his hands and embracing his neck. Cæsar at first put them gently aside, but, as they became more importunate, repelled them with main force. Tellius seized his toga with both hands, and pulled it violently over his arms. Then Casca, who was behind, drew a weapon and grazed his shoulder with an ill-directed stroke. Cæsar disengaged one hand and, snatched at the hilt, shouting, 'Cursed Casca, what means this?' 'Help!' cried Casca, to his brother Lucius, and at the same moment the others aimed each his dagger at the devoted object. Cæsar for an instant defended himself, and even wounded one of the assailants with his stylus; but when he distinguished Brutus in the press, and saw the steel flashing in his hand also, 'What! thou too, Brutus!' he exclaimed, let go his hold of Casca, and drawing his robe over his face, made no further resistance. The assassins stabbed him through and through, for they had pledged themselves, one and all, to bathe their daggers in his blood. Brutus himself received a wound in their eagerness and trepidation. The victim reeled a few paces, propped by the blows he received on every side, till he fell dead at the foot of Pompey's statue."—*Merivale's History of the Romans.*

14. How Cleopatra visited Antony (p. 99, ¶ 84).—"When Antony first set out on his expedition against the Parthians, he sent orders to Cleopatra to meet him in Cilicia, that she might answer some accusations which had been laid against her of assisting Cassius in the war. Though she had received many pressing letters of invitation from Antony and his friends, she held him in such contempt that she by no means took the most expeditious method of traveling. She sailed along the river Cydnus in a most magnificent galley. The stern was covered with gold, the sails were of purple, and the oars were silver. These, in their motion, kept time to the music of flutes, and pipes, and harps. The queen, in the dress and character of Venus, lay under a canopy embroidered with gold, of the most exquisite workmanship, while boys, like painted cupids, stood fanning her on each side of the sofa. Her maids were of the most distinguished beauty,

and, habited like the Nereids and the Graces, assisted in the steerage and conduct of the vessel. The fragrance of burning incense was diffused along the shores, which were covered with multitudes of people. Some followed the procession; and such numbers went down from the city to see it, that Antony was at last left alone on the tribunal. A rumor was soon spread that Venus was come to feast with Bacchus, for the benefit of Asia. Antony sent to invite her to supper; but she thought it his duty to wait upon her, and to show his politeness on her arrival, he complied. He was astonished at the magnificence of the preparations; but particularly at that multitude of lights, which were raised or let down together, and disposed in such a variety of square and circular figures, that they afforded one of the most pleasing spectacles ever recorded in history."—*Plutarch.—Life of Antony.*

15. Battle of Actium (p. 100, ¶ 84).—This engagement was fought in the bay of Actium. The prows of the vessels were armed with brazen points, which it was the object of the sailors to drive against the sides of the enemy's galleys; but as Antony's ships were very large, he could not turn them readily, and one was often surrounded by two or three of Cæsar's, the men of which threw firebrands, pikes, and javelins at the crew, as though they were storming a town While the fight was going on, Cleopatra's sixty galleys hoisted their sails, and took to flight through the midst of the combatants. No sooner did Antony see her vessel under weigh, than, forgetting the brave men who were shedding their blood in his cause, he took a couple of friends with him, and rowed after her with all his might. Having overtaken her, he went on board her galley, but for three days, either through shame or resentment, did not speak to her. At last the attendants effected a reconciliation, and they proceeded together to Lydia, after Antony had stopped long enough in Greece to recommend his followers to be reconciled to Cæsar. Having sent Cleopatra forward to Alexandria, he shut himself up on a desert island and affected to act the part of Timon, the man-hater; but the strong attraction of the Egyptian siren drew him from his retreat, and, once again embarked upon the sea of dissipation, his guilty love knew neither pause nor stop till it reached its proper end—destruction.

16. Artful Policy of Octavius (p. 100, ¶ 85).—"Octavius, in a little time, when he had allured to his interest the soldiery by a profusion of largesses, the people by distributions of corn, and the minds of men in general, by the sweets of peace, showed more aspiring views. By degrees, and almost imperceptibly, he drew into his own hands the authority of the Senate, the functions of the magistrates, and the administration of the laws. To these encroachments no opposition was made. The true republicans had perished, either in the field of battle, or by the rigor of proscriptions; of the remaining nobility, the leading men were raised to wealth and honors, in proportion to the alacrity with which they courted the yoke; and all who in the distraction of the times had risen to affluence, preferred immediate ease and safety to the danger of contending for ancient freedom. The provinces acquiesced under the new establishment, weary of the mixed authority of the Senate and people,—a mode of government long distracted by contentions among the great, and in the end rendered intolerable by the avarice, of public magistrates; while the laws afforded a feeble remedy, disturbed by violence, defeated by intrigue, and undermined by bribery and corruption."—*Tacitus.*

SECTION IV.

The Roman Empire,

From its establishment under Augustus to the Fall of the Western Empire, 476 A. D.

1. Augustus.—Although Augustus ruled with absolute power, he retained the forms of the republican government, but caused all the important offices to be conferred upon himself. The Senate still held its sessions, but its deliberations and decrees had no real weight or efficacy. The long civil wars had made the Romans greatly desire tranquillity; and as Augustus ruled with equity and moderation, avoiding every appearance of royalty, all yielded cheerfully to his authority. He kept large armies and fleets stationed at various parts of the empire, to repress all opposition, and compel obedience to his commands and exactions; and instituted the *Prætorian Guards** to protect his person. The revenues of the empire probably amounted at this time to upwards of $200,000,000.

2. Augustus made some conquests in Spain; and his stepsons *Ti-be'ri-us* and *Dru'sus* succeeded in conquering *Vin-de-li'ci-a* and *Nor'i-cum*, but their efforts to subdue

* So called from *Prætorium*, the name given to the tent of the general in every Roman camp. These prætorian guards afterward became the chief instruments of usurpation and tyranny.

Map Questions. (See Progressive Map, No. 4.)—Name the divisions of the Roman Empire in the northern part of Africa. What divisions in Europe bordered on the Mediterranean? What divisions in Asia on the Mediterranean and Ægean Seas? On the Euxine Sea? What north of Italy and Illyr'icum? What south of the Danube? North of it? What east of Gallia or Gaul? North? What towns in Spain? What body of water was called Pa'lus Meō'tis? What towns on the Euphrates and Tigris rivers? What towns in Syria? What towns in Thrace? In Dalmatia? In Northern Italy?

1. How did Augustus rule? How was the empire protected? What were its revenues?

2. What conquests were made? By whom was Varus defeated? When did Augustus die? By whom was he succeeded?

Progressive Map, No. 4

Germany were thwarted by the difficulties of the country and the valor of the native population. Led by the brave and patriotic *Ar-min'i-us*, or *Her'mann*, some of the tribes that had submitted to the Romans revolted, and the proconsul *Va'rus* was surprised, and his army cut to pieces (A. D. 10). This disaster so preyed upon the emperor's mind that he died a short time after (A. D. 14), in the 76th year of his age, leaving the government to his stepson Tiberius. [*See Note* 1, *end of the Section.*]

3. Augustus and his friend and minister Mecænas (*me-se'nas*) were both liberal patrons of learning and the arts; and the literature of this period is greatly distinguished for genius and refinement. The celebrated poets *Vir'gil*, *Hor'ace*, and *Ov'id*, and the historian *Liv'y*, flourished during this reign. The most interesting event of this period was the *Birth of our Saviour*, which is supposed to have taken place 4 B. C.; that is, four years previous to the date commonly assigned for the Christian era. It occurred during the reign of Her'od the Great, king of Judea, who had been placed upon the throne by the favor of Mark Antony.

4. **Tiberius.**—In the first part of his reign, Tiberius assumed an appearance of great moderation and clemency, taking the sovereign power only after the urgent requests of the Senate, and binding himself to conform to the regulations of his predecessor. He soon, however, displayed the wickedness and cruelty of his disposition, and many of the most eminent nobles were put to death on a charge of treason. The brilliant career of his nephew and adopted son, *Ger-man'i-cus*, excited his jealousy; and recalling him from Germany, where he had gained important victories over the heroic Hermann, he sent him to the East, and there caused him to be poisoned.

3. By whom was literature encouraged? What writers flourished? When did the birth of Christ occur?

4. What was the character of Tiberius and his government? What is related of Germanicus?

5. Yielding to the persuasions of his wicked and rapacious minister, *Se-ja'nus*, he secluded himself in the island of Ca'pre-æ, where he abandoned himself to every species of licentiousness and vice; while this minister perpetrated the most enormous acts of injustice and tyranny. The latter, having been discovered at last in a plot to place himself on the throne, was executed by the order of Tiberius, who, after the death of his favorite, became still more cruel and bloodthirsty, putting to death without mercy all against whom his spies and informers excited his gloomy jealousy. At last, worn out with his vicious excesses, and feeling that his end was near, he bequeathed the empire to *Caius Cali'u-la*, son of Germanicus, and soon after died (A. D. 37). The crucifixion of our Saviour took place in Judea, in the eighteenth year of this reign (A. D. 33).

6. **Caligula.**—Caius, surnamed *Caligula*, from the soldiers' boots (*cal'i-gæ*) which he wore when in the camp in Germany, commenced his reign well; but after he had worn the purple* eight months, displayed so wanton and ferocious a disposition, that his acts seem like the wild freaks of a madman. He wasted the treasures of the state in the most foolish and expensive works. His favorite horse was kept in a stable constructed of marble, and offered golden oats in an ivory manger. Massacre seemed to be his delight, and he feasted his eyes in beholding the dying agonies of his victims. A conspiracy, led by the captain of the Prætorian Guards, at last relieved the empire from the tyranny of this monster (A. D. 41).†

7. **Claudius.**—On the death of Caligula, the Prætorian Guards chose *Clau'di-us*, his uncle, to succeed him. This

* This was the peculiar color of the emperor's robe; and, hence, to "assume the purple," signified the same as to *ascend the throne*. †*See Note 2, end of Section.*

5. Who was the minister of Tiberius? His character and fate? Who succeeded Tiberius? What interesting event occurred in his reign?

6. What was the character of Caligula? What acts of folly and cruelty did he commit? What was his end?

7. Who succeeded Caligula? What were the principal events of the reign of Claudius? What is said of Messalina and Agrippina?

emperor was fifty years old when he commenced to reign, and was remarkable for the imbecility of his character, being entirely ruled by his wives and favorites. He, however, embellished Rome with many splendid edifices, and went in person on a campaign in Britain, where his armies gained important victories, subduing all the southern part of the island, and sending the celebrated chief *Ca-rac'ta-cus* a captive to Rome. Influenced by his wicked and profligate wives *Mes-sa-li'na* and *Ag-rip-pi'na*, Claudius caused many innocent persons to be put to death, but was at last poisoned at the instigation of Agrippina, in order that her son *Ne'ro* might assume the purple (A. D. 54).

8. **Nero.**—This emperor was only seventeen years old when he commenced to reign; and as he had received an excellent education under the instruction of the philosopher *Sen'e-ca*, his acts were for a few years just and virtuous. At length he betrayed the wickedness of his character, and abandoned himself to every species of vice and cruelty. Dreading the influence of his mother, he ordered her to be murdered. He also brutally caused the death of his wife. He is said to have ordered the city of Rome to be set on fire, so that he might behold a great conflagration; but he afterward rebuilt it and erected for himself a palace of vast extent and splendor. To escape the indignation of the people, he charged the crime of firing the city upon the *Christians*, and caused multitudes of them to be put to death by the most dreadful tortures. During this persecution, the *Apostle Paul* was beheaded.

9. A conspiracy against the emperor having been discovered, many innocent persons were put to death, among them *Seneca*, and the poet *Lu'can*. The detestable reign of Nero was brought to a close by a movement of the army in Spain, who, disgusted with his wickedness and

8. How did Nero commence his reign? What cruel acts did he commit?
9. Why were Seneca and Lucan executed? What terminated the reign of Nero? What were the feelings of the common people toward him? What revolt occurred during Nero's reign?

folly, proclaimed their prætor *Gal'ba* emperor, who immediately commenced his march to Rome. Deserted by his guards, Nero was compelled to flee, and finally committed suicide to avoid being publicly executed (A. D. 68). The common people, to whom he had been profuse in his bounties, lamented his death, and decorated his tomb with flowers. He was the last of the family of the Cæsars, and probably the vilest monarch that ever lived.* In this reign (A. D. 66) a revolt of the Jews took place, and lasted through several of the succeeding reigns.

10. Galba was over 70 years of age when he commenced to reign, having served as proconsul in various parts of the empire during the four preceding reigns, and obtained a high reputation for bravery, as well as for the rigid justice of his administration. He soon, however, became unpopular, from his severity; and the soldiers, being refused their usual donative, revolted. *O'tho*, taking advantage of their discontent, induced the prætorian guards to proclaim him emperor; and Galba, attempting to quell the sedition, was slain in the streets by one of the veterans, after a brief reign of seven months.

11. Otho was no sooner in possession of the government than he gave himself up to unbridled license and debauchery; but he soon found a rival in *Vi-tel'li-us*, the commander of the army in Lower Germany, who, revolting from the authority of the new emperor, marched with his forces into Italy, where he was met, on the banks of the Po, by Otho, but gained a decided victory over him, and was at once acknowledged emperor. Otho committed suicide at the close of the battle, after a reign of only three months (A. D. 69).

12. Vitellius had been a companion of Tiberius at Capreæ, and a favorite with his infamous successors, Calig-

* *See Note 3, end of the Section.*

10. What was the character of Galba? What led to his death?
11. What was the conduct of Otho? How did his reign end?
12. Describe the character and conduct of Vitellius. By whom was he defeated?

ula, Claudius, and Nero. He was greatly addicted to gluttony and debauchery; and on his accession left the government to his favorites, while he devoted himself entirely to feasting and drunkenness, squandering in these indulgences nearly fifty millions of dollars in about four months. At length, the army, disgusted with these excesses of the emperor, revolted from him in favor of *Vespa'sian*, their general, who had acquired distinction in the war against the Jews. The forces of Vitellius being defeated at *Cre-mo'na*, he was compelled to abdicate, but the populace dragged him from the palace to the place of common execution, and put him to death with dreadful cruelty and ignominy (A. D. 69). His reign lasted about eight months.

13. Vespasian presented a striking contrast, both in talent and virtue, to those whom he succeeded. He restored the discipline of the army, revived the authority of the Senate, filling its wasted ranks with eminent and virtuous men, and in other respects reformed the political and social condition of the city and empire. He commenced the famous Col-os-se'um or Amphitheatre, the ruins of which still exist to show its ancient magnificence; and he also patronized learning and the arts. *Quintil'i-an*, the celebrated rhetorician, *Jo-se'phus*, the Jewish historian, and *Plin'y*, a noted writer and naturalist, flourished during this reign, which lasted about ten years (until A. D. 79). Its most noted event was the taking and destruction of Jerusalem by *Ti'tus*, the son of Vespasian. This was accomplished after a terrible siege of six months, during which, according to Josephus, more than a million of persons perished. The city was razed to the ground, and the inhabitants sold, or driven into banishment (A. D. 70).

14. Titus.—This emperor ruled with so much justice

13. What was the character of Vespasian? Who flourished during his reign? What noted event occurred?

14. What was the character of Titus? What interesting events occurred during his reign? By whom was he succeeded?

and beneficence that he is styled by Tacitus (*tas'e-tus*), the historian, the "Delight of Mankind." His reign was marked by many disastrous events. In the first year occurred the dreadful eruption of Vesuvius, during which the cities of Pompeii (*pom-pe'yi*) and Her-cu-la'ne-um were overwhelmed by a dense shower of black ashes, that fell burying many of the inhabitants in their dwellings. Fugitives from Campania flocked into Rome, and a terrible pestilence ensued, in which 10,000 persons died daily. This was succeeded by a great conflagration that raged for several days, and destroyed a considerable portion of the city. Titus gave liberally to relieve the sufferers, and caused the edifices which had been consumed to be rebuilt. He also completed the Colosseum, commenced by Vespasian. His death occurred soon after, in the third year of his reign (A. D. 81), and he was succeeded by his brother, *Domitian* (*do-mish'e-an*). [*See Note* 4, *end of Section.*]

15. Domitian was as remarkable for tyranny and cruelty as his brother had been distinguished for justice and humanity. He united the gloomy dissimulation of Tiberius with the wanton wickedness of Caligula and Nero. The armies under his leadership were defeated by the Dacians and other barbarous nations, with whom he made disgraceful treaties, while he demanded the triumphs usually decreed to the most splendid victories. He was very fond of solitude, amusing himself principally by catching flies and transfixing them with a bodkin. After a shameful reign of fifteen years, he was assassinated (A. D. 96). The conquest of Britain, excepting the northern part, was completed during this period (A. D. 84), by *A-gric'o-la*, who, in this and the two preceding reigns, had defeated the inhabitants in several great battles. There also occurred during this reign a second general persecution of the Christians. Domitian was the last of the emperors called

15. What was the character of Domitian? What were the events of his reign? What line of emperors ends with him?

the *twelve Cæsars* (Julius Cæsar being considered the first).

16. **The five good Emperors.—Nerva.** After the death of Domitian, the Senate decreed that his statues should be demolished and his name erased from the annals. They then unanimously elected as his successor *Ner'va*, who had been twice consul, and was then in his seventieth year. He displayed great wisdom and moderation, diminished the taxes, and introduced other reforms. A revolt of the prætorian guards caused him to adopt as his successor the virtuous *Tra'jan*, a short time after which he died, having reigned only sixteen months (A. D. 98).

17. **Trajan** was born in Spain, but is said to have been educated partly in the school of *Plu'tarch*,* whom he highly honored during the whole of his reign. He was equally great as a monarch and a general, while his many virtues entitle him to a place among the best of men. He reformed the government, and bound himself by a solemn oath to observe the laws. He conquered the Dacians, penetrating their country by means of a stupendous bridge which he caused to be built across the Danube. He also gained several victories in Armenia, Mesopotamia, and Parthia, the cities of *Se-leu'cia* and *Ctes'i-phon*† surrendering to his arms. The lofty and splendid pillar which he erected to commemorate these conquests still remains. His death took place in Cilicia (A. D. 117), after he had reigned about twenty years.

18. **Adrian,** a relative of Trajan, and the companion

* *Plutarch* was a native of Bœotia, in Greece; but he had removed to Rome and opened a school there. His biography of illustrious men is one of the most interesting works of ancient literature.

† *Seleucia* was founded by Seleucus, and became one of the most magnificent cities in the world. It was situated on the west bank of the Tigris, about forty miles from Babylon, which was partly despoiled and depopulated to enrich it. *Ctesiphon* was built by the Parthians on the east bank of the Tigris, nearly opposite Seleucia, and became the capital of the Parthian monarchy.

16. Who was the first of the "five good emperors"? What is said of Nerva?

17. What was the character of Trajan? What conquests did he make? How long did he reign?

18. Who succeeded Trajan? What is related of his character? What were the chief events of his reign? Who was his successor?

of his expeditions, was declared emperor by the army and Senate, and was distinguished for his talents and accomplishments, being not only a successful general but a mathematician and artist. He spent thirteen years in visiting the different parts of the empire, to inspect the administration of the government. Having passed through Dacia, Germany, and Gaul, he sailed to Britain; and while there, caused a wall to be constructed across the northern part of the island to prevent the inroads of the Scots.* He afterward visited the various provinces in Asia and Africa. An insurrection having broken out among the Jews, he reduced them to submission, and ordered that a Roman colony should be established at Jerusalem, changing its name to *Æ'li-a Cap-i-to-li'na*. He died in the twenty-second year of his reign (A. D. 138). The virtues of A'dri-an were not unalloyed; he severely persecuted the Jews and Christians; and in the latter part of his reign, greatly provoked public indignation by his cruelties. He adopted as his successor *An-to-ni'nus*, surnamed *the Pious*.

19. Antoninus Pius.—The reign of this emperor was one of almost uninterrupted peace, but was still more distinguished for the virtue, wisdom, and efficiency with which he administered the government. Such was his reputation for these qualities, that princes beyond the bounds of the empire made him the arbiter of their differences. He extended his dominions in Britain, and caused a wall to be built to the north of that constructed by Adrian.† He died in his 75th year, after a reign of twenty-two years (A. D. 161), and was succeeded by his adopted son, *Mar'cus Au-re'li-us Antoninus*.

20. Marcus Aurelius.—This emperor was also dis-

* This was an earthen rampart constructed between the River Tyne and the Solway Frith, and was called the *Picts' Wall*. Considerable remains of it still exist.

† Constructed between the friths of Forth and Clyde, and called afterward *Grahame's Dike*.

19. What was the character of Antoninus? What was done in Britain?

tinguished for his virtues as a monarch and a statesman, and added to them the merits of a philosopher. He took *Lu'cius Ve'rus* for his colleague in the government, assigning to him the eastern part of the empire, in which a war had broken out with the Parthians. This the lieutenants of Verus brought to a successful conclusion. War was also waged by both emperors against the Germans; and after the death of Verus, Marcus himself carried on war, during five years, against the barbarians in *Pan-no'ni-a.* In this latter war the Roman army was saved by a remarkable thunderstorm, which was imputed by some to the earnest supplications of a division of the army composed of Christians, hence called the "Thundering Legion."

21. A dreadful persecution of the Christians occurred during this reign; and *Jus'tin Mar'tyr* and *Pol'y-carp,* the venerable bishop of Smyrna, fell victims to the superstitious fury of the pagans. The Germans, pressed by vast hordes of barbarians in their rear, were compelled to invade the territories of the empire, and Aurelius marched against them. After gaining several victories, he was seized with the plague at *Vin-do-bo'na* (now Vienna), and died in a few days (A. D. 180). With him perished the glory of the empire, for few of his successors merit the praise of either virtue or ability; while the inroads of the barbarous nations who migrated from the wilds of the east and north, could only have been repelled by the most vigorous and best directed efforts. The death of Aurelius therefore marks the commencement of the "Decline of the Roman Empire."

22. Commodus, son of Marcus Aurelius, succeeded; but he possessed none of the virtues of his father, having been spoiled in his youth by the vicious precepts and example of his abandoned mother *Fau-sti'n-a.* His debaucheries,

20. What was the character of Marcus Aurelius? What were the chief events of his reign? What was the "Thundering Legion?"

21. What persecution occurred? What people invaded the empire? When and how did the death of Aurelius occur? What is said of this event?

22. What was the character of Commodus? How long did he reign?

wickedness, and cruelty were scarcely equalled by those of Nero and Caligula. Bloodthirsty, even in his sports, he roamed through the streets, wounding and slaying the unsuspecting passengers; and his chief delight was to contend as a gladiator in the public arena. After several unsuccessful conspiracies had been formed against him, Com'modus was at length strangled in his bed, in the 12th year of his detestable reign (A. D. 192). [*See Note* 5, *end of Section.*]

23. Pertinax (*per'ti-nax*), selected by the conspirators to succeed Commodus, had risen through almost every grade of society to the position of præfect of the city; but it was with reluctance that he consented to assume the purple. The prætorian guards, however, urged it, and the Senate gave their sanction; but his severity of discipline soon displeased those who had caused his elevation, and marching into the palace, they cut off his head, and carried it into the camp, after he had reigned scarcely three months.

24. The prætorians then offered the throne to the highest bidder; and *Didius Julianus*, a wealthy senator, having made the richest offer to the soldiers, was declared emperor, the Senate being compelled to ratify the election. The legions of Syria, Illyria, and Britain, however, refused to confirm it, each army choosing its own monarch. *Se-ve'rus*, who commanded in Pannonia, marched directly to Rome; and the prætorians having deserted Didius, the Senate decreed that he should be deposed and put to death; whereupon he was beheaded like a common criminal, after an uneasy reign of two months (A. D. 193). Severus was then declared emperor.

25. Septimius Severus.—The first task performed by Severus was the conquest of his rivals; and this he accomplished in about three years, one being defeated at Issus,

23. Who succeeded Commodus? What is related of him? What terminated his reign?

24. What disgraceful act was committed by the prætorians? What led to the election of Severus?

25. What were the principal acts of this emperor? Where did he die? By whom was he succeeded?

where Alexander had contended for empire with Darius, and the other, in a great battle near Lyons. His authority being thus established, he ruled with great severity, overturning even the forms of the republic, which had up to this time survived to remind the Romans of their ancient liberty. He defeated the Parthians, and took Seleucia, Ctesiphon, and Babylon; and, a war having broken out in Britain, he proceeded against the Caledonians, or Scots, drove them back into their fastnesses, and rebuilt and strengthened the wall between the Clyde and Forth rivers. A short time afterward he died at York, in the 18th year of a very successful reign (A. D. 211), leaving the throne to his two sons *Car-a-cal'la* and *Ge'ta*.

26. Caracalla.—The first act of Caracalla was to cause his virtuous brother Geta to be assassinated, even after he had taken refuge in the arms of his mother; and 20,000 persons whom he accused of being friends of Geta, shared his hapless fate. The principal part of his reign Caracalla spent in the provinces, and each one in turn was the scene of his rapine and cruelty. He ordered a general massacre of the citizens of Alexandria, on account of a lampoon which some one had published against him there. He was at length assassinated by *Ma-cri'nus*, the prætorian prefect* (A. D. 217). During this reign, all the free inhabitants of the empire were declared Roman citizens.

27. Macrinus, the murderer of Caracalla, was proclaimed emperor by the troops, but retained the dignity only about a year, being defeated and slain near Antioch in an effort to reduce the rebellious armies of Syria, who had declared for *He-li-o-gab'a-lus*, supposed to be the son of Caracalla. This battle gave the throne to the latter, who had been born at *Em'e-sa*, in Syria, and was then only 15 years of age (A. D. 218).

* This office had become, under Severus, the principal one in the empire, being next to that of the emperor himself.

26. What wicked acts did Caracalla commit? What ended his reign?
27. What is said of Macrinus? By whom was he succeeded?

28. **Heliogabalus.**—This emperor derived his name (*Heliogabalus* or *El-a-gab'a-lus*) from his office as high-priest of the sun (called *He-li-o-ga'bal* in Syria); and he attempted to introduce into Rome the effeminate manners and superstitious idolatry of the East. He built a temple to the Sun on the Palatine Hill, and celebrated the sacrifices of the god with the utmost expense and solemnity. After three years spent in the most shocking vices, among which gluttony was the most conspicuous, he was massacred by the Prætorians, and thrown into the Tiber (A. D. 222). [*See Note* 6, *end of Section.*]

29. **Alexander Severus**, cousin of the preceding emperor, succeeded him. He was a virtuous young man, of a mild and benevolent disposition, and very fond of learning; and his government was all that could have been expected from so excellent a prince.* In the fourth year of his reign, the Parthian empire was overturned by a revolt of the Persians under *Ard-e-shir'*, the founder of the famous dynasty of the *Sas-san'i-des*, who governed Persia for more than four centuries. Ardeshir attempted to extend his dominion to the Mediterranean, but was defeated by Alexander Severus in several obstinate engagements. The emperor, a short time afterward, marched against the Germans; but was assassinated (A. D. 235) by some of his troops, who declared in favor of their general, *Max'i-min*, a soldier of fortune, of gigantic stature and enormous strength, who had risen from the condition of a Thracian peasant to the chief command of the army.

30. **Maximin**, though an able general, showed in his government the ferocity of a brutal savage, putting to death with the most horrid cruelty all whom he suspected of the least disaffection. After a reign of three years,

* *See Note* 7, *end of Section.*

28. What is related of Heliogabalus? Why was he so called?
29. What was the character of Alexander Severus? What revolution occurred in the East? How did this reign end? Who succeeded Alexander?
30. What was the character of Maximin? How and when did his reign end? By whom was he succeeded?

during which he gained several victories over the barbarians, an insurrection breaking out in Italy, he marched from his camp on the Danube to suppress it; but was slain in his tent by the Prætorian guards (A. D. 238). He was succeeded by two distinguished senators (*Max'i-mus* and *Bal-bi'nus*), whom the senate had chosen as emperors. These were soon afterward put to death in a mutiny of the Prætorians; and the purple was assumed by *Gor'di-an*, a youth whom the army had compelled the senate to associate as colleague with their own chosen emperors.

31. Gordian reigned with distinction and prosperity. He gained great victories over the Persians, under their king *Sa'por*, driving them out of Syria, and compelling them to abandon Mesopotamia; but he was soon afterward assassinated in a mutiny of the army, fomented by *Philip*, an officer of the guards, who thus became his successor (A. D. 244). **Philip** reigned about five years, at the end of which he was defeated and slain in an insurrection of the Pannonian army under *De'cius* (A. D. 249).

32. Decius.—The reign of this emperor is remarkable for the dreadful persecution which he instituted against the Christians, who, throughout the empire, were dragged to execution, and subjected to the most horrid cruelties. There was also a great invasion of the *Goths*, a barbarous people from Scandinavia, who, having crossed the Danube, passed into Mœsia and Thrace. *Phil-ip-pop'o-lis* was taken by storm, and 100,000 persons are said to have been massacred. They also, a short time afterward, defeated the Roman army under Decius, in a terrific conflict in which the emperor himself perished (A. D. 251). Decius exhibited the character of a brave and active general and an accomplished monarch.

33. Valerian.—The two immediate successors of Decius

31. What were the chief events of Gordian's reign? By whom was he succeeded? Who was the successor of Philip?

32. For what is the reign of Decius remarkable? What invasion occurred? How and when did the death of Decius occur?

held the throne only about two years, when *Va-le'ri-an*, who commanded the armies of Gaul and Germany, assumed the purple. He was about sixty years of age, of noble birth, unblemished integrity, great talents, and in every respect worthy of reigning. In an expedition against the Persians he was defeated and taken prisoner (A. D. 260); and Sapor, the Persian monarch, took advantage of this victory to overrun Syria, Cilicia, and Cappadocia. The city of Antioch was surprised and pillaged, and its inhabitants put to the sword, or carried away into captivity. Valerian, it is said, was treated with great indignity and cruelty by the Persian monarch. He was compelled for seven years to bow himself down so as to serve as a stepping-stone to Sapor when he mounted his horse; and, on his death, his skin stuffed in the form of a human figure, and dyed with scarlet, was preserved in the temple of Persia.

34. Gallienus, the son of Valerian, had been associated in the government with his father; and after his defeat, continued to reign, making no effort to cause his father's release, but rather seeming to rejoice in the disaster which freed him from the authority of so strict a censor. At the time of his accession, the barbarians, encouraged by the captivity of Valerian, invaded the empire on all sides. The Germans invaded Italy, but were repulsed by the emperor, who then gave himself up to indolent amusements. This inactivity caused a number of usurpers to start up in various parts of the empire and claim the throne.

35. These usurpers have been called the *Thirty Tyrants*, but their real number was nineteen. Many of them had been the lieutenants of Valerian, and were disgusted with the imbecility of his son, especially at a time of so much

33. Who were the successors of Decius? What is said of Valerian? By whom was he defeated? How was he treated by Sapor? What countries were overrun by the Persians? What city was taken?

34. What is related of Gallienus? What invasions occurred?

35. Who were called the "Thirty Tyrants?" What is said of Odenatus and Palmyra? Of Zenobia? What became of the other pretenders? When and how did the reign of Gallienus end?

public peril and disaster. Among them was *O-den-a'tus*, a prince of Palmyra,* which had become an independent city, a short time after the death of the emperor Gordian, having revolted from the Romans on account of the exactions of the proconsul. After the defeat of Valerian Odenatus marched against the Persians; and, having defeated them with great loss, recovered Mesopotamia. For these services *Gal-li-e'nus* and the senate conferred on him and his famous queen, *Ze-no'bi-a*, the government of the East; thus converting a rival into a friend and partner. This great man was soon after murdered by some of his own family, and Zenobia succeeded him in the government. The other pretenders to the purple also died a violent death, perishing either in battle or by assassination. Gallienus was himself murdered while besieging one of his rivals in Milan (A. D. 268).

36. Claudius, a great general, and a virtuous and patriotic monarch, succeeded him. He gained a signal victory over the Goths in Mœsia, destroying one of the mightiest armaments that ever invaded the empire; but he was prematurely arrested in his career of glory by a disease which he caught in Pannonia (A. D. 270). He named *Au-re'li-an*, one of his generals, as his successor.

37. Aurelian.—This emperor's short reign was filled with the most momentous events. The *Goths* and the *Van'dals* (also a Gothic tribe) renewed their invasions, and were encountered with indecisive results by Aurelian, who finally made a peace with them, relinquishing to them the great province of *Dacia*, most of the inhabitants of which removed to the south side of the Danube (A. D. 270). He

* *Palmyra*, or *Tadmor*, was founded by Solomon in an oasis in the Syrian desert, about 140 miles east of Damascus; and being on the great route to Persia and India, it became the resting-place of the caravans, and was soon greatly enlarged, and enriched with all the treasures of the East.

36. What was the character of Claudius? What victory did he gain? Who succeeded him?

37. What terms did Aurelian make with the Goths and Vandals? What barbarous tribe did he defeat?

next defeated the *Al-le-man'i*, a German tribe, who had invaded Italy and were threatening Rome itself, which Aurelian caused to be protected by new fortifications. Various parts of the empire were still held by usurpers, some of them women, among whom was Zenobia, queen of Palmyra and several provinces of the East.

38. This queen was esteemed the most lovely and accomplished of her sex, having been instructed by the celebrated scholar and critic, *Lon-gi'nus*. After the death of Odenatus, she filled the throne of Palmyra for five years; but claiming an independent sovereignty, she gave offence to Aurelian, who, having defeated her forces in two great battles, besieged and took her capital, Palmyra. Zenobia was made a captive to grace the triumph of her conqueror, and her favorite minister Longinus was executed (A. D. 273). In an expedition against the Persians, Aurelian was assassinated by one of his generals (A. D. 275).

39. Tacitus, an aged senator, succeeded, and during a brief reign of six months, repelled an attempted invasion by the Scythians. Civil war followed between the generals who were competitors for the throne, and it lasted until A. D. 285, when *Di-o-cle'tian*, vanquishing his rival *Ca-ri'nus*, in Mœsia, obtained full possession of the empire.

40. Diocletian was a native of Dalmatia, and his parents were slaves; but he had been promoted successively to the offices of provincial governor, consul, and prætorian prefect. He was proclaimed emperor by the army in A. D. 284; and the year after, feeling that the extent of the empire, and the troubles in which it was involved, were too vast for any single mind, he made *Maxim'i-an*, a brave but unlettered soldier, his colleague. After a few years, each emperor also took an associate, or *Cæsar*,

38. What is said of Zenobia? What war did Aurelian wage against her? With what result? When and how did this reign end?
39. What is said of his successor? What followed?
40. What was the previous history of Diocletian? What colleagues were taken?

and the empire was divided among the four rulers. In this way the barbarians were kept in check, and general tranquillity was preserved.

41. During this reign the Persians were defeated by *Ga-le'ri-us*, one of the Cæsars; and Mesopotamia, together with several districts beyond the Tigris, was subdued. There also occurred the last great persecution of the Christians, from which fact the era of the commencement of Diocletian's reign (A. D. 284) is called, in the history of the Church, the "Era of Martyrs." In 305 A. D. Diocletian took the extraordinary resolution to resign the empire, and obliged Maximian to do the same. The Cæsars, *Galerius* and *Con-stan'tius*, then became emperors, choosing in their turn Cæsars to succeed them. Diocletian retired to *Sa-lo'na*, in Dalmatia, and spent the remainder of his life in the quiet pursuits of agriculture; and so well satisfied was he with the change, that when Maximian afterward urged him to resume the imperial dignity, he replied, "I wish you would come to Salona and see the cabbages I have planted; for having once visited my garden, you would never again mention to me the name of empire."*

42. **Constantine.**—Constantius having died at York, in Britain, his son *Con'stan-tine* was saluted emperor by the army; but Galerius and the two Cæsars refused to ratify the election, and civil war ensued, in which there were no less than six competitors for the throne, among them the former emperor, Maximian, and his son *Max-en'tius*. Constantine, after eighteen years of war, finally prevailed over all his rivals, and became sole monarch of the empire (A. D. 323). During this conflict, while marching against Maxentius, he saw, it is said, in the heavens a luminous cross, bearing the inscription, in Greek, "Conquer by this;" and under the standard of the cross,

* *See Note 8, end of Section.*

41. Whom did Galerius defeat? What is meant by the "era of martyrs"? What extraordinary resolution did Diocletian adopt? Was he satisfied with the change?

42. How did Constantine acquire the empire? What led to his conversion?

having defeated Maxentius, he became a convert to Christianity.

43. In order that his residence might be nearer the centre of his dominions, he removed the capital from Rome to Byzantium, which he embellished with magnificent churches, palaces, and other edifices; while gardens, parks, and private walks exhibited all the refinements of eastern luxury. The city from him received the name of *Constantinople*. During this reign (A. D. 325), the celebrated council of *Nice* (in Bithynia) was held, in which the doctrines of the Church were more clearly defined. Constantine repulsed the Goths and Sarmatians, who invaded Thrace (A. D. 332). His death occurred five years later, in the sixty-fifth year of his age (A. D. 337).

44. The three sons of Constantine succeeded him, but quarrelled among themselves, and a terrible civil war ensued. This lasted until 353, when *Constantius*, after gaining several great victories over his rival *Mag-nen'tius*, his brothers having been previously slain, became sole and undisputed master of the throne. His cousin, *Ju'li-an*, was taken as his colleague; but afterward, by his victories over the Germans and other barbarous nations, he excited the jealousy of the emperor, who, to destroy the influence of the Cæsar, recalled his best legions; but they refused to obey, and saluted Julian as emperor. Preparations for civil war immediately commenced; but the death of Constantius terminated the strife (A. D. 361), and raised Julian to the throne.

45. Julian the Apostate.—This emperor had been educated in Athens, and had imbibed a great fondness for the pagan philosophy and religion. On his accession, therefore, he determined to overthrow Christianity, and

43. What city did he make his capital? What council was held? Who were repulsed? When did his reign end?

44. What events followed the death of Constantine? How did Julian become emperor?

45. Why was Julian styled "the Apostate"? What did he attempt? How was it defeated? Where was he killed?

restore the ancient faith and worship; and hence he has been called "the Apostate." To disprove the prophecy of Christ, he attempted to rebuild the temple at Jerusalem; but the design, it is said, was frustrated by miracle, fire-balls breaking out from the foundation and driving the workmen away, so that they were obliged to abandon the attempt. Julian was afterward killed in a disastrous expedition against the Persians, after a reign of sixteen months (A. D. 363). [*See Note* 9, *end of Section.*]

46. **Jovian,** his successor, restored Christianity, but died after a reign of seven months. **Valentinian,** commander of the guards, succeeded, and divided the empire, giving to his brother **Valens** the government of the east, while he retained that of the west, making Mil'an his capital. The barbarous nations of the north still continued their incursions. The Goths, pressed in their rear by the more savage *Huns*,* entreated and obtained permission to settle on the south bank of the Danube, but were afterward driven into revolt by the treachery of a Roman governor. Valens attempting to subdue them, was defeated and slain in a great battle, near Adrianople; **Gratian,** who had succeeded Valentinian, arriving too late to prevent the disaster (A. D. 378). The empire of the east was then given to **Theodosius** (A. D. 379), who subdued the Goths, and received great numbers of them into the Roman armies.

47. **Theodosius the Great.** After the death of his associates Gratian and Valentinian II., and the defeat of the different rivals who attempted to obtain the throne, Theodosius became sole monarch (A. D. 388). He ruled with so much wisdom and ability that he has been called

* The Huns were a warlike tribe, of the Mongolian race, of uncouth and hideous aspect and dreadful ferocity. They emigrated from Central Asia.

46. What is said of Jovian? How was the empire divided by Valentinian? Where were the Goths permitted to settle? Why? What was the consequence? Who succeeded Valens? What was done by Theodosius?

47. When did Theodosius become sole monarch? Why called *the Great?* What were the prominent events of his reign? How did he divide the empire?

the Great. The complete overthrow of Paganism and the establishment of Christianity in the Roman dominions, as well as the repulse of the barbarians from every part of the frontier, were striking events of this reign,—the last that reflected any credit upon the Roman name. Theodosius at his death divided the empire between his two sons, *Ho-no'-ri-us* being placed on the throne of the West, and *Ar-ca'di-us* on that of the East (A. D. 395).

48. Honorius.—This reign had scarcely commenced, when the Goths, indignant that their subsidy had not been paid, invaded Greece under the renowned leader *Al'a-ric,* and devastated the whole country from Thermopylæ to Sparta. *Stil'i-cho,* the brave and talented minister of Honorius, by a series of masterly movements, drove out the barbarians; but the pusillanimous Arcadius made a disgraceful treaty with Alaric, which put an end to the campaign. Alaric soon after invaded Italy, and made a rapid march for Rome; but he was overtaken near Ve-ro'na and entirely defeated by Stilicho (A. D. 403). His departure from Italy was, however, purchased by the weak and timid Honorius by the payment of a large pension.

49. During the next five years, Stilicho gained several important victories over the barbarians; but the unworthy emperor, tired of his influence and jealous of his great fame, treacherously caused him to be put to death, appointing in his stead a minister of neither capacity nor worth. The latter having caused a massacre of the families of the barbarians throughout Italy, the Gothic soldiers in the Roman army revolted and joined the standard of Alaric, who immediately invaded Italy and marched to Rome. The city was soon compelled by famine to surrender, and Honorius, who held his court at Ravenna, refusing to treat for

48. What invasion took place during the reign of Honorius? What was done by Stilicho? How was Alaric induced to leave Italy?

49. What other victories were gained by Stilicho? What were the circumstances of his death? What caused another invasion by Alaric? What is said of the pillage of Rome? Of the death of Alaric?

peace, the ancient capital was given up to pillage (A. D. 410). The devastation and massacre were frightful; but Alaric, professing Christianity, spared the churches; and, unwilling utterly to destroy the city which had been the world's mistress, the sixth day after its capture he withdrew his forces. He then prepared to invade Sicily, but was seized with a mortal disease; and his remains were buried beneath the bed of a small stream, in the southern part of Italy.

50. *A-dol'phus*, the brother-in-law of Alaric, succeeded to the sovereignty of the Goths; and having married *Placid'i-a*, the sister of Honorius, he made peace with the Romans. He then retired into Spain, and founded in that country the *Kingdom of the Vis'i-goths*.* About the same time the *Vandals* settled in the central and southern parts of Spain; and the *Sue'vī* and other German tribes, in the northwestern part. Under the successors of Adolphus, the Vandals were expelled (A. D. 427), the other nations subdued, and the Gothic monarchy extended over a large part of Gaul as well as Spain. The Vandals, crossing into Africa, made themselves masters of the northern part of that country. About this time also the *Franks*, *Burgundians*, and other barbarous tribes invaded Gaul.

51. Valentinian III.—After a disgraceful reign of twenty-eight years Honorius died (A. D. 423), and was succeeded by Valentinian III., a weak prince, under the guardianship of his mother Placidia, who ruled in his name for twenty-five years. During this period the Huns, under their terrible leader *At'ti-la*, having defeated several Roman armies, ravaged the Eastern Empire from the Euxine to the Adriatic (A. D. 441–450). After extorting immense treasures from the Emperor of the East, as the

* The Goths were divided into two portions, those of the east being called the *Ostro-goths*, and those of the west the *Visigoths*.

50. Who succeeded Alaric? Why did he make peace with the Romans? Whither did he retire? What kingdoms were founded in Spain? Whither did the Vandals retire? Who invaded Gaul about this time?

51. How long did Valentinian reign? By whom was he succeeded? Who was Attila, and what is related of him? By whom was he defeated?

price of peace, Attila formed an alliance with the Franks, and marched into Gaul, where he was met and defeated with terrible slaughter by the united forces of the Romans and Goths, the former commanded by A-e'tius, the greatest general of his age, and called by some "the last of the Romans" (A. D. 451). [*See Note* 10, *end of Section.*]

52. Notwithstanding this great defeat, Attila the next year invaded Italy, and committed the most dreadful devastations, boasting that "the grass never grew on the spot where his horse had trod." Many of the most flourishing cities were taken and utterly destroyed. The people of the *Venetian* territory (the *Ven'e-ti*) took refuge in the neighboring islands; and thus was founded a maritime republic, which afterward became the great emporium of Europe. The entreaties of Leo, Bishop of Rome, and the payment of an immense sum, finally induced Attila to depart from Italy; and the next year (A. D. 453) his death relieved the empire from the terror of his arms. Aetius, in the year following, was basely murdered by order of Valentinian; and the next year the emperor himself was assassinated in revenge for the crime (A. D. 455). This was done at the instigation of a wealthy senator named *Pe-tro'ni-us Max'i-mus.*

53. Maximus was then proclaimed emperor; but *Eu-dox'i-a,* the widow of Valentinian, implored the aid of *Gen'se-ric,* king of the Vandals, to avenge his death. With a numerous fleet he set sail from Carthage, his capital; and, disembarking at *Ostia,* marched to Rome, which became a prey to the violence of his followers. The pillage of the city lasted fourteen days and nights; and the vessels of the Vandals and Moors were laden with the spoils of temples and palaces (A. D. 455). During the next twenty-one years

52. What ravages were committed by Attila in Italy? Where did the Veneti, or Venetians, take refuge? When did the death of Attila occur? Of Aetius? How did the reign of Valentinian end, and when?

53. By whom were the Vandals called into Italy, and why? What city was sacked? How many emperors reigned during the next twenty-one years? Who was the last? Who was Orestes?

eight emperors successively assumed the purple, the last of whom was *Romulus*, the son of *O-res'tes*, a Pannonian chief, who had been in the service of Attila, but afterward transferred his allegiance to the emperors of the West.

54. **Romulus Augustulus—Odoacer.** The barbarian mercenaries, demanding from Orestes a third part of Italy and being refused, revolted, and chose *Od-o-a'cer*, chief of a Gothic tribe called the *Heruli*, as their leader. Pavia was taken by storm; and Orestes having been made prisoner, was put to death. Odoacer compelled Romulus (surnamed in derision *Au-gus'tu-lus**) to resign the purple; and abolishing the title and office of Emperor of the West, he proclaimed himself *King of Italy* (A. D. 476). Thus terminated the western division of the Great Roman Empire. The eastern division continued to exist for nearly *one thousand years*. [*See Note* 11, *end of Section*.]

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

B. C.

31. Augustus (I). Army of Varus destroyed (A. D. 10). Virgil, Livy Ovid, and Horace.
4. Birth of our Saviour.

A. D.

14. Tiberius (II). Germanicus. Hermann. The wicked Sejanus.
33. Crucifixion of our Saviour.
37. Caligula (III). Dreadful cruelties perpetrated.
41. Claudius (IV). Caractacus. Wicked Messalina and Agrippina.
54. Nero (V). Seneca. Lucan. Martyrdom of St. Paul. Revolt of the Jews.
68. Galba (VI). Reign of seven months.
69. Otho (VII). Reign of three months.
69. Vitellius (VIII). Reign of eight months. [tilian. Pliny.
69. Vespasian (IX). Colosseum commenced. Josephus. Quin-
70. Destruction of Jerusalem.
79. Titus (X). Destruction of Pompeii and Herculaneum. Coleseum finished.

* *Augustulus* means, in Latin, the *Little Augustus*.

54. What led to the death of Orestes? How and when did the Western Empire end?

81. Domitian (XI). Wars with the Dacians. Conquest of Britain by Agricola.
96. Nerva (XII). Reign of sixteen months.
98. Trajan (XIII). Conquest of the Dacians. Victories in the East.
117. Adrian (XIV). General survey of the Empire. Wall built in Britain. Jews revolt and are subdued.
138. Antoninus Pius (XV).
161. Marcus Aurelius Antoninus (XVI). War with the Parthians and Germans. Persecution of the Christians.
180. Commodus (XVII). Dreadful cruelties perpetrated.
192. Pertinax (XVIII). Reign of about three months. Empire sold by auction.
193. Didius Julianus (XIX). Reign of two months.
193. Septimius Severus (XX). Abolishes the forms of the republic. Defeat of the Parthians.
211. Caracalla (XXI). Murders his brother Geta. Dreadful massacre at Alexandria.
217. Macrinus (XXII). Defeated and slain near Antioch.
218. Heliogabalus (XXIII). "Priest of the Sun." Temple to the Sun built in Rome.
222. Alexander Severus (XXIV). Foundation of the Second Persian Empire.
235. Maximin (XXV). Dreadful cruelties perpetrated. Victories over the barbarians.
238. Gordian, the Third (XXIX). Succeeds the two Gordians (XXVI and XXVII) who had been declared emperors by the army, and Maximus and Balbinus (XXVIII) elected by the Senate to rule jointly.
244. Philip (XXX). Insurrection of the army under Decius.
249. Decius (XXXI). Dreadful persecution (seventh) of the Christians. Gothic invasion.
251. Death of Decius. Brief reigns of Gallus and Æmilianus.
254. Valerian (XXXIV). Defeated and taken prisoner by the Persians.
260. Gallienus (XXXV). The empire invaded on all sides by the barbarians. The "Thirty Tyrants." Odenatus and Zenobia.
268. Claudius (XXXIV). Defeats the Goths in Mœsia.
270. Aurelian (XXXVII). Dacia given up to the Goths. Zenobia defeated and taken prisoner.
275. Tacitus (XXXVIII). Civil war; ended by Diocletian.

284. Diocletian (XLIII). Subdues his *four* rivals, each of whom had been declared emperor, and takes Maximian as his colleague. Empire divided among the two emperors and the two Cæsars. Last persecution (tenth) of the Christians.
305 Diocletian and Maximian resign the empire to the Cæsars, Galerius and Constantius.
306. Constantine (XLV). Six competitors for the throne. Maxentius defeated.
323. Constantine sole and undisputed emperor. Christianity established. Capital removed to Byzantium.
325. Council of Nice.
337. Constantine II., Constantius, and Constans (XLVI), three emperors. Civil war.
353. Constantius sole emperor. Victories over the Germans by Julian.
361. Julian the Apostate (XLVII). Re-establishes Paganism. Defeated and slain by the Persians.
363. Jovian (XLVIII). Christianity restored. Reign of seven months.
364. Valentinian I. (XLIX). Empire divided; Valens emperor of the East.
375. Gratian (L). Battle of Adrianople; Valens defeated and slain by the Goths. Theodosius emperor of the East.
383. Valentinian II. (LI). Defeat of the Goths by Theodosius.
388. Theodosius the Great (LII). Defeats his rivals, Maximus and Eugenius. Complete establishment of Christianity. Final division of the Empire.
395. Honorius (LIII). Invasion of Greece and Italy by Alaric Stilicho.
410. Rome pillaged by the Goths under Alaric.
412. Kingdom of the Vandals founded in Spain.
415. Kingdom of the Visigoths founded in Spain and Gaul.
420. The Franks, Burgundians, &c., invade Gaul.
423. Valentinian III. (LIV). The Huns under Attila invade the Empire.
451. Defeat of Attila in Gaul by Aetius.
452. Ravage of Italy by Attila. Venice founded.
454. Death of Aetius, the "Last of the Romans."
455. Maximus (LV). Sack of Rome by the Vandals.
475. Romulus Augustulus (LXIII). Last emperor of the West.
476. Odoacer founds the *Kingdom of Italy*.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

		PAGE
1.	What were the most important events of the reign of Augustus?	104-105
2.	Describe the Augustan age of Roman literature	105
3.	Give an account of Tiberius and the principal events of his reign	105-106
4.	Describe the character of Caligula	106
5	What were the principal events of the reign of Claudius?	106-107
6.	Describe the character of Nero, and his reign	107-108
7.	Give a sketch of the character of Galba, Otho, and Vitellius	108-109
8.	What events occurred during the reigns of Vespasian and Titus?	109-110
9.	Describe the character of Domitian	111
10.	Name the "five good Emperors," and state the important events of their reigns	111-113
11.	Describe the character and conduct of Commodus	113-114
12.	What events led to the accession of Septimius Severus?	114
13.	What were the most important events of his reign?	114-115
14.	Give an account of the reign of Caracalla	115
15.	In what way did Macrinus acquire the throne?	115
16.	Give an account of Heliogabalus and his reign	116
17.	What important events occurred during the reign of Alexander Severus?	116
18.	Name the four immediate successors of Severus, and describe their reigns	116-117
19.	Describe the character and reign of Decius	117
20.	How did Valerian acquire the throne, and how did he lose it?	118
21.	Give an account of Gallienus and the "Thirty Tyrants"	118-119
22.	Give an account of Zenobia	120
23.	How did Diocletian acquire the throne?	120
24.	What were the most interesting events of his reign?	120-121
25.	In what way did Constantine obtain the throne?	121
26.	Give an account of the reign of Constantine	122
27.	Describe the character and reign of Julian the Apostate	122-123
28.	What led to the accession of Theodosius the Great?	123
29.	What were the chief events of his reign?	124
30.	What important events occurred during the reign of Honorius?	124-125
31.	What were the chief events of the reign of Valentinian III.?	125-126
32.	What emperors occupied the throne after this reign?	126-127
33.	In what reigns were there persecutions of the Christians?	107-110-112-113-117-121
34.	During whose reign was Jerusalem taken?	109
35.	During whose reigns were the Britons defeated and subdued?	107-110
36.	When and how were Herculaneum and Pompeii destroyed?	110
37.	Give an account of Plutarch, the historian	111
38.	By what emperors were the Parthians defeated, and how was their empire destroyed?	111-115-116
39.	Who were the Sassanides, and how long did they reign?	116
40.	Give an account of the Goths and their invasions	119-122-123-124-125
41.	Give an account of the invasions of the Vandals	119-125-126
42.	Give an account of the invasions of the Huns	123-125-126
43.	Who was Stilicho, and what victories did he gain?	124
44.	Who was Aetius, and what victory did he gain?	126
45.	Give a brief account of Alaric, Attila, and Genseric	124-125-126
46.	What were the chief events of the first century A. D.?	127-128
47.	Relate the principal events of the second century	128
48.	Also of the third, fourth, and fifth centuries	128-129

NOTES.

1. Character of Arminius, or Hermann (p. 105, ¶ 2).—"Arminius fought with alternate vicissitudes of fortune, and fell at last by the treachery of his own relations; a man of warlike genius, and, beyond all question, the deliverer of Germany. He had not, like the kings and generals of a former day, the infancy of Rome to cope with; he had to struggle with a great and flourishing empire; he attacked the Romans in the meridian of their glory. He stood at bay for a number of years with equivocal success, sometimes victorious, often defeated, but in the issue of the war still unconquered. He died at the age of thirty-seven, after twelve years of fame and power. In the rude poetry of the Barbarians, his name is celebrated to this hour."—*Tacitus.*

2. Anecdotes of Caligula (p. 106, ¶ 6).—"The citizens refused to obey in the theater his signal to applaud or to condemn; they beheld with indifference the feats of the imperial athlete himself; the shows and games which they had regarded almost as their daily food, ceased at last to attract them; and it was probably in vexation at this sullen yet passive disobedience, which baffled both his menaces and caresses, that he uttered his well-known exclamation, accompanied no doubt with the significant gesture by which he intimated his cruel will to his headsman, "Would that the people of Rome had but one neck!" * * * * One day, at a public banquet, when the consuls were reclining by his side, he burst suddenly into a fit of laughter; and when they courteously inquired the cause of his mirth, astounded them by coolly replying that he was thinking how by one word he could cause both their heads to roll on the floor. He amused himself with similar banter even with his wife Cæsonia, for whom he seems to have had a stronger feeling than any of his former consorts. While fondling her neck he is reported to have said, "Fair as it is, how easily I could sever it!"—*Merivale.—History of the Romans.*

3. Character of Nero (p. 108, ¶ 9).—Nero was the incarnation of depravity,—the very name by which men are accustomed to express the fury of unrestrained malignity. Bad as he was, Nero was not worse than Rome. She had but her due. Nay, when he died, the rabble of the slaves crowned his statues with garlands, and scattered flowers over his grave. And why not? Nero never injured the rabble, never oppressed the slave. He murdered his mother, his brother, his wife, and was the tyrant of the wealthy, the terror of the successful. He rendered poverty sweet, for poverty alone was secure; he rendered slavery tolerable, for slaves alone, or slavish men, were promoted to power. The reign of Nero was the golden reign of the populace, and the holiday of the bondman."—*Bancroft.*

4. Character of Titus (p. 110, ¶ 14.)—"Titus took from no man, he gave to all profusely, he made a point of never sending a suitor away unsatisfied. 'No man,' he said, in answer to a prudential remonstrance, 'ought to leave the prince's presence disappointed.' Remembering one evening at supper, that he had made no present to any one since the morning, 'My friends,' he exclaimed, 'I have lost this day.' When certain nobles were detected conspiring against him, he not only pardoned, but treated them with peculiar kindness; and when they attended him in the amphitheater, gave them the swords of the gladiators to feel their edges, thus putting his life unreservedly in their power. Towards his people his demeanor was bland and affable. Caligula and Nero had abandoned themselves to the people, and forfeited the regard of the nobles; the attempts of Vespasian to concili-

ate both had been but imperfectly successful. Titus was the first who seems to have gained equal credit on either side; and we may thus account for the pre-eminent favor he enjoyed with his countrymen, which was declared by the title, extravagant as it may seem, of 'Delight of the human race.'"—*Merivale*—*History of the Romans.*

5. Commodus in the Amphitheater (p. 114, ¶ 22).—"Then were beheld, and familiarized to the eyes of the Roman mob animals as yet known to us, says Herodian, only in pictures. Whatever strange or rare animal could be drawn from the depths of India, from Siam and Pegu, or from the unvisited nooks of Ethiopia, were now brought together as subjects for the archery of the universal lord. Invitations had been scattered on this occasion profusely; not, as heretofore, to individuals or to families, but, as was in proportion to the occasion where an emperor was the chief performer, to nations. Peoples were summoned by circles of longitude and latitude to come and see the specious miracles of nature brought together from arctic and from tropic deserts, putting forth their strength, their speed, or their beauty, and glorifying by their deaths the matchless hand of the Roman king. There was beheld the lion from northern Africa, and the leopard from Hindoostan, the reindeer from Polar latitudes, the antelope from the Zaara, and the leigh, or gigantic stag, from Britain. Thither came the buffalo and the bison, the white bull of Northumberland and Galloway, the unicorn from the regions of Nepaul or Thibet, the rhinoceros and the river-horse from Senegal, with the elephant of Ceylon or Siam. The ostrich and the camelopard, the wild ass and the zebra, the chamois and the ibex of Angora,—all brought their tributes of beauty or deformity to these vast aceldamas of Rome. Their savage voices ascended in tumultuous uproar to the chambers of the capitol, a million of spectators sat around them. Standing in the center was a single statuesque figure—the imperial sagittary, beautiful as an Antinous, and majestic as a Jupiter, whose hand was so steady and whose eye so true, that he was never known to miss, and who, in this accomplishment at least, was so absolute in his excellence, that, as we are assured by a writer not disposed to flatter him, the very foremost of the Parthian archers and of the Mauritanian lancers were not able to contend with him."—*De Quincey.—The Cæsars.*

6. Depravity of Heliogabalus (p. 116, ¶ 28).—"The young emperor, corrupted by his youth, his country, and his fortune, abandoned himself to the grossest pleasures with ungoverned fury, and soon found disgust and satiety in the midst of his enjoyments. To confound the order of seasons and climates, to sport with the passions and prejudices of his subjects, and to subvert every law of nature and decency, were in the number of his most delicious amusements. Even the licentious soldiers, who had raised him to the throne, blushed at their ignominious choice, and turned with disgust from him as from a monster."—*Gibbon.*

7. Virtues of Alexander Severus (p. 116, ¶ 29).—"Alexander was distinguished by his love of learning, by his virtues, and by his laborious attention to the duties of his high office. The simple journal of his ordinary occupations exhibits a pleasing picture of an accomplished emperor. Alexander rose early; the first moments of the day were consecrated to private devotion, and his domestic chapel was filled with the images of those heroes who, by improving or reforming human life, had deserved the grateful remembrance of posterity. The greatest part of his morning hours was employed in his council, where he discussed public affairs, and determined private causes, with a patience and discretion above his years. The dryness of business was relieved by the charms of literature, and a portion of his time was always set apart for his favorite studies, poetry, history, and philosophy.

The exercises of the body succeeded to those of the mind ; and Alexander, who was tall, active, and robust, surpassed most of his equals in the gymnastic arts. Refreshed by the use of the bath and a slight dinner, he resumed, with new vigor the business of the day ; and, till the hour of supper, the principal meal of the Romans, he was attended by his secretaries, with whom he read and answered the multitude of letters, memorials, and petitions, that must have been addressed to the master of the greatest part of the world. His table was served with the most frugal simplicity ; and whenever he was at liberty to consult his own inclination, the company consisted of a few select friends, men of learning and virtue, amongst whom Ulpian was constantly invited. Their conversation was familiar and instructive ; and the pauses were occasionally enlivened by the recital of some pleasing composition, which supplied the place of the dancers, comedians, and even gladiators, so frequently summoned to the tables of the rich and luxurious Romans."—*Gibbons.*

8. Retirement of Diocletian (p. 121, ¶ 41).—"Diocletian, who, from a servile origin, had raised himself to the throne, passed the nine last years of his life in a private condition. Reason had dictated, and content seems to have accompanied his retreat, in which he enjoyed for a long time the respect of those princes to whom he had resigned the possession of the world. Diocletian had preserved, or at least he soon recovered, a taste for the most innocent as well as natural pleasures, and his leisure hours were sufficiently employed in building, planting, and gardening. His answer to Maximian is deservedly celebrated. He was solicited by that restless old man to reassume the reins of government and the imperial purple. He rejected the temptation with a smile of pity, calmly observing that, if he could show Maximian the cabbages which he had planted with his own hands at Salona, he should no longer be urged to relinquish the enjoyment of happiness for the pursuit of power. He resided in a magnificent palace, which he had erected about six miles from Salona; and we may infer, from the greatness of the work, how long he had meditated his design of abdicating the empire. It covered an extent of ground consisting of between nine and ten English acres. The form was quadrangular, flanked with sixteen towers. Two of the sides were near six hundred, and the other two near seven hundred feet in length. The whole was constructed of a beautiful freestone extracted from the neighboring quarries, and very little inferior to marble itself."—*Gibbon's Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire.*

9. Attempt to rebuild the Temple of Jerusalem (p. 123, ¶ 45).—"The desire of rebuilding the temple has in every age been the ruling passion of the children of Israel. In this propitious moment, the men forgot their avarice, and the women their delicacy; spades and pickaxes of silver were provided by the vanity of the rich, and the rubbish was transported in mantles of silk and purple. Every purse was opened in liberal contributions, every hand claimed a share in the pious labor; and the commands of a great monarch were executed by the enthusiasm of a whole people. Yet, on this occasion, the joint efforts of power and enthusiasm were unsuccessful; and the ground of the Jewish temple, which is now covered by a Mahometan mosque, still continued to exhibit the same edifying spectacle of ruin and desolation. An earthquake, a whirlwind, and a fiery eruption, which overturned and scattered the new foundations of the temple, are attested, with some variations, by contemporary and respectable evidence. Even Ammianus Marcellinus, a contemporary and a pagan, relates that 'whilst Alypius, assisted by the governor of the province, urged with vigor and diligence the execution of the work, horrible balls of fire, breaking out near the foundations, with frequent and reiterated attacks, rendered the place, from time to time,

inaccessible to the scorched and blasted workmen ; and, the victorious element continuing in this manner obstinately and resolutely bent, as it were, to drive them to a distance, the undertaking was abandoned.'"—*Gibbon.*

10. Defeat of Attila (p. 126, ¶ 51).—"When the morning broke and revealed the extent of the carnage with which the plains were heaped for miles, the successful allies saw also, and respected the resolute attitude of their antagonist. Neither were any measures taken to blockade him in his camp, and so to extort by famine that submission which it was too plainly perilous to enforce with the sword. Attila was allowed to march back the remnants of his army without molestation, and even with the semblance of success. It is probable that the crafty Aëtius was unwilling to be too victorious. He dreaded the glory which his allies, the Visigoths, had acquired, and feared that Rome might find a second Alaric in Prince Thorismund, who had signalized himself in the battle, and had been chosen on the field to succeed his father Theodoric. He persuaded the young king to return at once to his capital, and thus relieved himself, at the same time, of the presence of a dangerous friend, as well as of a formidable though beaten foe. Attila's attacks on the western empire were soon renewed, but never with such peril to the civilized world as had menaced it before his defeat at Châlons; and on his death, two years after that battle, the vast empire which his genius had founded was soon dissevered by the successful revolts of the subject nations. The name of the Huns ceased for some centuries to inspire terror in Western Europe, and their ascendency passed away with the life of the great king by whom it had been so fearfully augmented."—*Creasy.—Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World.*

11. Irruptions of the Barbarians (p. 127, ¶ 54).—"Barbarians are strangers to the refinements of civilization. They rush into war with impetuosity, and prosecute it with violence. Their sole object is to make their enemies feel the weight of their vengeance ; nor does their rage subside until it be satiated with inflicting on them every possible calamity. It was with this spirit that the fierce barbarians in the north of Europe and of Asia, fell upon the Roman empire. Wherever they marched, their route was marked with blood. They ravaged or destroyed all around them. They made no distinction between what was sacred and what was profane. They respected no age, or sex, or rank. What escaped the fury of the first inundation, perished in those which followed it. The most fertile and populous provinces were converted into deserts, in which were scattered the ruins of villages and cities, that afforded shelter to a few miserable inhabitants whom chance had preserved, or the sword of the enemy, wearied with destroying, had spared. The conquerors who first settled in the countries which they had wasted, were expelled or exterminated by new invaders, who, coming from regions farther removed from the civilized parts of the world, were still more fierce and rapacious. This brought fresh calamities upon mankind, which did not cease until the north, by pouring forth successive swarms, was drained of people, and could no longer furnish instruments of destruction. Famine and pestilence, which always march in the train of war when it ravages with such inconsiderate cruelty, raged in every part of Europe, and completed its sufferings. If a man were called to fix upon the period in the history of the world, during which the condition of the human race was most calamitous and afflicted, he would, without hesitation, name that which elapsed from the death of Theodosius the Great, to the establishment of the Lombards in Italy (A.D. 395–571). The contemporary writers who beheld that scene of desolation, labor and are at a loss for expressions to describe the horrors of it."—*Robertson.*

Progressive Map, No. 5

PART II.

MEDIÆVAL HISTORY.

SECTION I.

The Eastern Empire.

Extending from the Accession of Arcadius (395 A. D.), *to the taking of Constantinople by the Turks in* 1453.

1. The *Eastern* or *Byz'an-tine Empire*, or, as it is sometimes called, the *Greek Empire*, was founded in 395 A. D., when Theodosius, at his death, divided the Roman Empire between his two sons, Honorius and Arcadius, assigning to the latter all the portion lying between the Adriatic Sea and the Tigris River. Arcadius was a weak monarch, who left the administration of the government to ambitious and corrupt ministers, while he lived in oriental luxury, indifferent to his duties and careless of the condition of his subjects. During his reign flourished the virtuous and eloquent *Chrys'os-tom*,* archbishop of Constantinople, who was persecuted by the empress *Eu-dox'i-a*, on account of his firm adherence to the orthodox Christian faith. Arcadius died in 408.

2. The successor of Arcadius was *Theodosius II.*, during

* *Chrysostom* is a Greek word which means *golden-mouth.*

Map Questions.—(See Progressive Map, No. 5.) How far did the kingdom of the Ostrogoths extend toward the north? What people occupied Italy at the commencement of Justinian's reign? What people east of the Rhone? What kingdom comprehended France and a part of Germany? What people farther east, at the sources of the Danube? What races had settled on the Danube? What others farther to the north? What kingdom occupied Spain? What kingdom in the north of Africa? What was the extent of the Eastern Empire at that period? What empire bordered it on the east?

1. When and how was the Eastern Empire founded? What was its extent? What is said of Arcadius? Who flourished during his reign?

2. Who succeeded Arcadius? What is said of the Huns? Of Pulcheria?

whose reign the Huns under Attila invaded the empire; and, having in three battles vanquished the armies sent to oppose them, committed the most dreadful and widespread ravages. They dictated terms of peace in the suburbs of Constantinople, exacting the enormous annual tribute of 2,100 pounds of gold, and the immediate payment of 6,000 pounds. Theodosius was only the nominal sovereign, the government being really administered by his sister *Pul-che'ri-a*, who, after his death, in 450, was proclaimed empress, and reigned about three years.

3. During the reign of *Ze'no* (the third from Pulcheria), *Od-o-a'cer* having made himself master of Italy, and deposed the last emperor, Augustulus, ruled the country for 14 years, under the title of *King of Italy*. His reign was terminated by an invasion of the Ostrogoths under *The-od'o-ric* (A. D. 493), who reigned over Italy 33 years, with all the wisdom and moderation of a virtuous and enlightened prince. A large part of the Gothic nation had been transported into Italy, and after its conquest, one-third of all the lands were divided among the followers of Theodoric; and yet, such was the efficiency of his government, that peace and prosperity were everywhere prevalent, and it was a common saying, "that a purse of gold might be safely left in the fields."

4. The famous reign of *Jus-tin'i-an* over the empire of the East, commenced in 527 A. D., and lasted 38 years. It is remarkable for the code of laws which the emperor caused to be framed, and for the victories of *Bel-i-sa'ri-us* and *Nar'sēs*, the two greatest generals of the age. The former defeated the Vandals, in Africa, in two great battles, and recovered the provinces which they had subdued (A. D. 534). He next reduced Sicily, and, crossing into

3. During whose reign did Odoacer conquer Italy? How and when was Odoacer's reign terminated? What was the length of Theodoric's reign? What was its character?

4. When did the emperor Justinian's reign begin? What was its length? For what was it remarkable? What conquests were made by Belisarius?

Italy, defeated the Goths and captured their capital, Ra-ven'na (539 A. D.). In 544 A. D., the barbarians having, under their king *Tot'i-la*, again invaded and reconquered Italy, Belisarius waged war against them for five years, but with very inadequate forces, and through the jealousy and unjust suspicions of Justinian, was finally recalled.

5. After several years of retirement, Belisarius, in his old age, was called upon to defend Constantinople against the *Bul-ga'ri-ans* and *Sla-vo'ni-ans*,* who, after committing frightful ravages in various parts of the empire, threatened Constantinople. The aged hero, by his skill and valor, entirely defeated these fierce barbarians; but four years afterward, notwithstanding his great services, he was unjustly imprisoned by the emperor on a charge of treason. He was subsequently acquitted, and died in 565.

6. Meanwhile, the war had been continued against the Goths in Italy. Rome, which had been taken by Totila, and its entire destruction threatened, was recaptured by Narses, and the Goths defeated with great slaughter, their king, Totila, being slain (A. D. 552). After he had gained another great victory over the Goths the next year, and defeated the Franks and other German tribes who had ravaged the peninsula from the Alps to Otranto, Narses entered Rome as a conqueror, and was afterward appointed by Justinian *Exarch of Italy*. He fixed his court at Ravenna, and continued to govern the country till the death of Justinian, in 565, by whose successor he was recalled. He died in Rome a short time afterward, at the age, it is said, of 95.

7. During the reign of Justinian, the *A-vars'*,† a race sim-

* The *Bulgarians* were the remains of the Huns who, after the death of Attila, retreated to the Euxine and the lake Mæotis. The *Slavonians* were a barbarous race from the plains of Russia, who afterward settled in the vicinity of the Baltic Sea. † *See Note* 1, *end of the Section.*

5. Who were the Bulgarians and Slavonians? (See note.) By whom were they defeated? What further is said of Belisarius?

6. What victories were gained by Narses? To what office was he appointed? How long did he rule Italy? What was his capital? When did his death occur?

7. What is said of the Avars? The Lombards? The Gepidæ?

ilar in origin to the Huns, fleeing from the Turks, who lived at that time near the Altai Mountains, crossed the *Tan'a-is* and *Bo-rys'the-nēs* (Don and Dnieper rivers), and advanced into Poland and Germany. They then passed to the Danube, and, subduing the Bulgarians, took possession of the country which the latter had occupied (Dacia). This period is also noted for the passage to the south of the *Lombards*,* who had been invited by the emperor to enter Noricum and Pannonia, in order to check the advance of another barbarous race called the *Gep'i-dæ*. These, after a thirty years' war, were almost entirely exterminated by the Lombards, under *Al'bo-in*, assisted by the Avars, the latter of whom continued to occupy Dacia, and some of the adjacent countries, for more than two centuries.

8. In the reign of *Justin II.*, the successor of Justinian, the Lombards, under Alboin, entered Italy (A. D. 568), being invited, as it is said, by Narses, in revenge for the affront of his recall. In a short time they conquered the whole country, except a small portion which continued, under the name of the *Exarchate of Ravenna*, in possession of the Eastern Empire. The kingdom of the Lombards in Italy lasted more than two centuries, their seat of government being *Pa'via*. The famous *iron crown* of the Lombards is said to have been presented to one of their queens by the celebrated Roman pontiff, *Gregory the Great*, as a reward for converting the king to the Catholic faith (about 600 A. D.).

9. The reigns of Justinian and several of his successors were much disturbed by the encroachments of Persia, then the most extensive and powerful monarchy of the East; but the emperor *He-rac'li-us*, in the beginning of the seventh century (622–628), in three remarkable expedi-

* Or *Longobards*, meaning men with long beards.

8. When did the Lombards invade Italy? Why? What part of it did they conquer? How long did their kingdom last? What is said of the *iron crown*?
9. What is said of Persia? By whom was the Persian monarch defeated? Who overturned the Persian monarchy?

tions, in which he displayed a boldness, perseverance, and military skill never surpassed, defeated *Khos'ru*, the greatest of the Persian monarchs, and effectually broke the power of the kingdom. Eight years afterward, the last of the *Sas-sa-ni'dēs*, a dynasty which had filled the Persian throne for four centuries, was defeated by the *Sar'a-cens;* and in a few years the whole of the Persian dominions submitted to their victorious arms (A. D. 651).

10. The reign of Heraclius is also remarkable for the commencement of that succession of victories and conquests by which those enthusiastic Arabian zealots, called the *Saracens*, despoiled the Byzantine empire of the largest part of its dominions. Syria was subdued in this reign (A. D. 638), the forces of Heraclius having been defeated in several great battles; and Damascus* and Jerusalem were taken, seven centuries after Pompey had achieved the conquest of Syria, and annexed it to the dominions of the Roman republic. Egypt was conquered during the next two years, Alexandria being taken after a siege of 14 months (A. D. 640). This was the last drop of bitterness in the cup of the unfortunate Heraclius, who died seven weeks after he received intelligence of the sad event.†

11. During the next half-century, the descendants of Heraclius continued to occupy the throne, and the empire was still further despoiled of its provinces by the irresistible valor and activity of the Saracens. The conquest of all northern Africa was completed in this period; and twice did the victorious Mohammedans lay siege to Constantinople itself, and were repelled from its walls only by the effectual use of the famous *Greek fire*. This is supposed to have been a kind of bitumen or inflammable oil, and was poured

* *See Note 2, end of the Section.*

† It was on this occasion that the great Alexandrian library was burnt, the bigoted Mahometan general saying that if the books agreed with the Koran they were unnecessary; and if they contradicted it, they were pernicious. [*See Note 3, end of the Section.*]

10. For what is the reign of Heraclius noted? When was Syria subdued by the Saracens? Egypt?

11. What is said of the further conquests of the Saracens? The Greek fire?

from the ramparts, or blown through long tubes against the besiegers.

12. During the same period also, the Bulgarians, who in the previous century had been subject to the Avars, crossed the Danube, followed by various Slavonian tribes, as the *Ser'vians*, *Bos'ni-ans*, *Cro-a'tians*, etc., and having vanquished the Roman armies sent against them, founded (A. D. 680) the *Kingdom of Bulgaria*, in the country a part of which still bears this name. This kingdom was a formidable enemy of the Greek Empire till the reign of *Basil II.* (976–1025), by whom, after a war of several years, in which the most shocking cruelties were perpetrated, it was entirely subdued. It then became again a province of the empire, and so remained till 1186, when it once more regained its independence.

13. In the ninth century (A. D. 865), the *Russians*, having descended the *Bo-rys'the-nēs* (Dnieper) River, in their rude boats and sailed into the Bosporus, made an attack upon Constantinople, but were repulsed. During the next century the attempt was twice repeated; but although the armaments of the Russians were quite formidable, both from the number of the vessels and the valor of those who manned them, their expeditions were all unsuccessful. During the reign of *Zim'is-cēs* (969–976), the Russians having gained a great victory over the Bulgarians, again threatened Constantinople, but were severely defeated by the brave and warlike emperor in several battles, and finally compelled to capitulate. Thus terminated these dangerous inroads.*

14. The next formidable enemy of the empire were the *Turks*, who abandoned their ancient habitations in Central Asia; and, in the eleventh century, taking advantage of the dissensions of the Saracens, conquered Persia, capturing Bagdad in 1055. Previous to this they had carried their

* *See Note 4, end of the Section.*

12. When and how was the Kingdom of Bulgaria founded? Give a sketch of its history.

13. What is said of the incursions of the Russians?

14. Describe the invasion of the Seljuk Turks. What is said of the Kingdom of Roum?

conquering arms as far as northern India. In 1090, they had subdued Asia Minor and Syria; and their empire extended from the Hellespont to the borders of Chinese Tartary. These Turks belonged to the tribe called *Seljuks** (*sel'yooks*), and are not to be confounded with the *Ot'to-man Turks*, to be treated of hereafter. The dominions of the Seljuks were afterward divided, and a new kingdom was established by them in Asia Minor, called the *Kingdom of Roum* (*room*), which lasted about two centuries (from 1075 to 1272), during which period it waged frequent wars with the Greek Empire. Its capital was at first *Ni'ce*, in Bithynia, but in 1097 was removed to *I-co'ni-um.*†

15. In 1076, Jerusalem, which had been in the possession of the Saracens for four centuries, was taken by the Seljuk Turks, who treated the pilgrims to the sepulchre of our Saviour with such insult and cruelty, that the Christian nations of Europe were roused to indignation, and sent against them those remarkable expeditions called the *Crusades*. In the first of these, *Nice*, the capital of *Sol'i-man*, Sultan of Roum, was taken (1097), and, a short time afterward, Antioch and Jerusalem.‡ The latter of these was made the capital of a new kingdom, which soon comprehended the whole of Palestine. Most of Asia Minor was also rescued from the power of the Turks, and again annexed to the Greek Empire.

16. In the fourth of these expeditions, during the reign of a usurping emperor at Constantinople, the Crusaders (French and Venetians) were induced by the son of the lawful emperor to abandon the proper object of the expedition and attack Constantinople, with the view to restore the union of the Roman and Greek churches, which had separated on account of a difference in doctrine. The city was accord-

* *See Note* 5, *end of the Section.*
† An ancient city of Phrygia, in Asia Minor. The Kingdom of Roum (*i. e. of the Romans*) was afterward called the *Kingdom of Iconium.* ‡ *See Note* 6, *end of the Section.*

15. By whom was Jerusalem taken in 1076? What led to the Crusades? What was done in the first Crusade?
16. What led to the taking of Constantinople by the Crusaders?

ingly besieged with all their forces, and, by means of the powerful fleet of the Venetians, was taken; and the lawful emperor was restored to the throne. He being, however, the next year, by an insurrection of the inhabitants, deprived of his throne and put to death, the Crusaders again besieged the city, and took it by storm (1204).

17. Most of the dominions of the empire were then divided between the French and Venetians, who appointed *Baldwin, Count of Flanders*, emperor. He and his successors, called the *Latin Emperors*, continued to occupy the throne till 1261, when the Greeks, who in the meanwhile had held Nice as their capital, again obtained possession of Constantinople, under their emperor *Pal-œ-ol'o-gus*. This emperor expelled the Latins from the city; but some few Latin principalities continued to exist within the limits of the Empire until its final destruction.

18. Meanwhile another tremendous revolution had taken place in western Asia, occasioned by an incursion of the *Mon'gols*, a Tartar race who, in the beginning of the thirteenth century, under the renowned chief *Jen'ghis Khan*, subdued a large part of China, overturned the flourishing kingdom of *Kha-rasm* (now *Khiva*), and conquered the greater part of Persia. Populous territories, abounding in the noblest works of mankind, were made entirely desolate, so that the peaceful industry of centuries has been scarcely sufficient to repair the ravages of a few years. After the death of Jenghis (1227), the Mongols passed into Syria and Asia Minor, pillaged Aleppo and Damascus, and destroyed the kingdom of Roum, or Iconium, the last Seljuk sultan seeking a refuge among the Greeks of Constantinople (1272). The Mongols subsequently carried their victorious arms into Europe, and devastated or conquered many of its most fertile and populous countries.

17. How were the dominions of the empire divided by the Crusaders? When did the Greeks regain Constantinople? What is said of the Latins?

18. Give a sketch of the conquest of the Mongols under Jenghis Khan. When did the Seljuk kingdom of Iconium end? What is further said of the Mongols?

19. Soon after these events, and while the descendants of Palæologus still continued a feeble administration at Constantinople, there arose a power which was destined to cause the final destruction of the Byzantine Empire, and establish upon its ruins one which should rival it in extent, and far surpass it in the splendor of its conquests. This was the *Ottoman Turks*, so called from their founder *Oth'man*, *Ottoman*, or *Os'man*, who in 1299 invaded Asia Minor, and in a few years succeeded in establishing there a kingdom, the capital of which he fixed at *Pru'sa*, in Bithynia. This kingdom soon became one of the most flourishing states of the East.

20. The remaining history of the Greek Empire, during a century and a half, is but the narrative of its contests with the Ottomans, who successively wrested from it the fairest portions of its dominions. In the middle of the 14th century (1360), *Am'u-rath*, one of the successors of Othman, captured Adrianople, and made it his capital. He afterward subdued Thrace and Macedon, but fell at *Cos-so'va*, in Servia, where, however, he defeated an immense army of Christians, amounting, it is said, to 500,000 men (1390). His successor, *Baj'a-zet*, continued the tide of conquest; and for ten years besieged Constantinople, but was called away to defend his dominions against the celebrated chieftain *Ti'mour*, or *Tam'er-lane*, by whom he was afterward defeated and taken prisoner (1402).

21. This delayed the fall of the Greek Empire for some years; but Timour's empire being dismembered, the Turks resumed their encroachments, and finally, under *Mo-ham'med II.*, after a siege of fifty-three days, took Constantinople by storm (May 29, 1453). *Constantine* (*Palæologus*),

19. What power arose a short time after this? Who was the founder of the Ottomans? What kingdom was established by him?

20. What is said of the remaining history of the Greek Empire? What conquests were made by Amurath? Where did he defeat the Christians? By whom was he defeated.

21. By whom and when was Constantinople taken? What events followed? What is said of the history of the Byzantine emperors?

its last emperor, fell in the battle, and the inhabitants were either massacred, or carried into slavery. This event was soon followed by the subjugation of all the remaining dominions of the empire, which thus, after an existence of 1058 years, was brought to an end. The minute history of the dynasties and emperors which followed each other during this long period, presents probably the most shocking and disgraceful narrative of imbecility, wickedness, and crime, contained in any part of the annals of the world.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

395. Foundation of the Eastern Empire under Arcadius.
408. Accession of Theodosius II.
441. Invasion of Attila.
493. Invasion of Italy by the Ostrogoths, under Theodoric.
527. Accession of Justinian.
534. Conquest of the Vandals by Belisarius.
539. Conquest of the Goths in Italy by Belisarius.
552. Defeat of the Goths in Italy by Narses. Totila slain.
564. Death of Belisarius.
565. Death of Justinian. Recall of Narses from Italy.
568. Invasion of Italy by the Lombards.
622. Defeat of the Persians by the Emperor Heraclius.
638. Conquest of Syria by the Saracens.
640. Alexandria taken by the Saracens.
651. Conquest of Persia by the Saracens.
680. Foundation of the Kingdom of Bulgaria.
865. Constantinople attacked by the Russians.
1055. Conquest of Persia by the Seljuk Turks.
1075. Foundation of the Kingdom of Roum or Iconium.
1076. Jerusalem taken by the Seljuks.
1097. Nice, the capital of Roum, taken by the Crusaders.
1204. Constantinople taken by the Crusaders. Accession of the Latin emperors. Baldwin.
1261. Constantinople retaken by the Greeks. Palæologus emperor.
1272. Kingdom of Iconium destroyed by the Mongols.
1299. Invasion of Asia Minor by the Ottoman Turks.
1360. Capture of Adrianople by the Ottomans, under Amurath.
1453. *Constantinople taken.*—**End of the Greek Empire.**

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. Give an account of the reign of Arcadius 131
2. What important events occurred during the reign of Theodosius II.?.. 132
3. State the great events of Justinian's reign 132-133-134
4. Give an account of Belisarius 132-133
5. What victories were gained by Narses? 133
6. Who were the Bulgarians and Slavonians? 133-136
7. Give an account of the Ostrogoths under Theodoric and Totila 132-133
8. Who were the Lombards, and what monarchy did they found? 134
9. Who were the Avars, and what led to their invasion of the empire?... 133-134
10. For what events is the reign of Heraclius memorable? 134-135
11. During whose reign did the Saracens begin their conquests? 135
12. When and by whom was Constantinople attacked? 135-136-137-139
13. What was the Greek fire, and how was it used? 135
14. Give an account of the Seljuk Turks and their conquests 136 137-138
15. Relate the history of the kingdom of Roum 137-138
16. What led to the Crusades? 137
17. How did the Latin emperors acquire the throne of Constantinople, and how long did they retain it? 137
18. Who was Jenghis Khan, and what conquests did he make? 138
19. What further conquests were made by the Mongols after the death of Jenghis Khan? 138
20. Who were the Ottomans, and why were they so called? 139
21. During what periods did they attack the empire? 139
22. What conquests were made by Amurath? 139
23. Give an account of the battle of Cossova 139
24. Give an account of Timour, or Tamerlane 139
25. When and by whom was Constantinople finally taken?... 139-140
26. What was the fate of the inhabitants? 140
27. Who was the last of the Greek emperors? 140
28. How long had the Byzantine Empire lasted? 140
29. What is the general character of the internal history of this empire?.. 140
30. After whom was Constantinople named? 122
31. Who was Chrysostom, and during whose reign did he live? 131
32. When and by whom was the Alexandrian library burnt? ..... *(note)* 135
33. Give a brief sketch of the history of the kingdom of Bulgaria 136
34. What is the date of the foundation of the Eastern Empire? 140
35. Mention three important events in the history of this empire, that occurred during the fifth century 140
36. Mention seven important events of the sixth century 140
37. Mention five of the seventh century 140
38. What important event occurred during the ninth century? 140
39. Mention four important events of the eleventh century 140
40. Mention four of the thirteenth century 140
41. What is the date of the taking of Constantinople by the Ottomans?... 140
42. When did Justinian's reign commence, and what was its duration?... 140
43. When was Jerusalem taken by the Seljuks? 140
44. What was the origin of the famous *iron crown* of the Lombards? 134

NOTES.

1. The Avars (p. 133, ¶ 7).—"In the 31st year of the reign of Justinian, an embassy of the Avars appeared at Constantinople. This people, who were Tartars, and belonged, like the Huns, to the Turkish stock, had then arrived at the foot of Mount Caucasus, flying before the *Turks*, whose name now appears for the first time in history. The Avar ambassadors professed their willingness to devote themselves to the service of the emperor, and destroy all the enemies who disturbed his repose; but they claimed, as the price of their alliance and the reward of their valor, precious gifts, annual subsidies, and fruitful possessions. Justinian was now above seventy-five years; his mind, as well as his body, was feeble and languid; and the conquerer of Africa and Italy, careless of the permanent interest of his people, aspired only to end his days in the bosom of inglorious peace. In a studied oration, he imparted to the Senate his resolution to dissemble the insult and to purchase the friendship of the Avars; and the whole Senate, like the mandarins of China, applauded the incomparable wisdom and foresight of their sovereign."—*Gibbon.—Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire.*

2. Damascus (p. 135, ¶ 10).—"This renowned and beautiful city, one of the largest and most magnificent of the East, and reputed to be the oldest in the world, stood in a plain of wonderful richness and fertility, covered with groves and gardens, and bounded by an amphitheater of hills, the skirts of Mount Lebanon. A river, called by the ancients Chrysorrhea, or the stream of gold, flows through this plain, feeding the canals and water-courses of its gardens, and the fountains of the city. The commerce of the place bespoke the luxuriance of the soil; dealing in wines, silks, wool, prunes, raisins, figs of unrivaled flavor, sweet-scented waters and perfumes. The fields were covered with odoriferous flowers, and the rose of Damascus has become famous throughout the world. This is one of the few, the very few, cities famous in ancient times, which still retain a trace of ancient delights. 'The citron,' says a recent traveler, 'perfumes the air for many miles round the city; and the fig-trees are of vast size. The pomegranate and orange grow in thickets. There is the trickling of water on every hand. Wherever you go there is a trolling brook, or a full and silent stream beside the track; and you have frequently to cross from one vivid green mea low to another by fording, or by little bridges. These streams are all from the river beloved by Naaman of old. He might well ask whether the Jordan was better than Pharpar and Abana, the rivers of Damascus.' In this city, too, were invented those silken stuffs called damask from the place of their origin, and those swords and scimetars proverbial for their matchless temper."—*Irving.—Mahomet and his Successors.*

3. Destruction of the Alexandrian Library (p. 135, ¶ 10).—"In an evil hour, John the Grammarian, being encouraged by the favor shown him by the Arab general, revealed to him a treasure hitherto unnoticed, or rather unvalued by the Moslem conquerors. This was a vast collection of books or manuscripts, since renowned in history as the *Alexandrian Library*. Perceiving that in taking account of everything valuable in the city, and sealing up all its treasures, Amru had taken no notice of the books, John solicited that they might be given to him. Unfortunately, the learned zeal of the grammarian gave a consequence to the books in the eyes of Amru, and made him scrupulous of giving them away without permission of the Caliph. He forthwith wrote to Omar, stating the merits of John, and requesting to know whether the books might be given to him. The reply of Omar was laconic, but fatal: 'The contents of those books,' said he,

'are in conformity with the Koran, or they are not. If they are, the Koran is sufficient without them; if they are not, they are pernicious. Let them, therefore, be destroyed.' Amru, it is said, obeyed the order punctually. The books and manuscripts were distributed as fuel among the five thousand baths of the city; but so numerous were they that it took six months to consume them."—*Irving.—Mahomet and his Successors.*

4. Early History of the Russians (p. 136, ¶ 13).—"It is impossible for the historian to derive the Russians from any race of the continent of Asia. Whatever may have taken place in the period to which their annals do not ascend, and respecting which no clear allusions are to be found in foreign historians, to us they appear in the light of aboriginal inhabitants of the provinces which now constitute the center of the empire. From the first they present themselves with a language and character of their own; they have no community with the Tartars, or with the Goths; they were distinct from the Huns, though they may have served under the banners of Attila, in the time of his glory, and may afterwards have received among themselves the fragments of a nation whose season of power had been so short and yet so destructive. * * * The Russian, therefore, is, of all the present European peoples, the one which may lay the best grounded claims to antiquity of residence in its present abodes. In the darkness of ancient centuries, extended over vast plains, into which the genius of Greece and the arms of Rome never penetrated, this people were slowly ripening to nationality during the ages of classic splendor, when Solon gave laws to the Athenians, and Rome strove after principles of public justice and liberty."—*Bancroft.*

5. The Seljuks (p. 137, ¶ 14).—"The Seljuks were a tribe of Turcomans, followers and subjects of their great chief Seljuk, who first became distinguished in history by the conquests of the Sultan Mahmoud, who was succeeded by Alp Arslan (*The Lion*), under whom the Emperor Romanus was defeated and taken prisoner. During the negotiations for his release, Alp Arslan asked him what treatment he expected to receive, and the calm indifference of the emperor displays the freedom of his mind. 'If you are cruel,' said he, 'you will take my life; if you listen to pride, you will drag me at your chariot-wheels; if you consult your interest, you will accept a ransom, and restore me to my country.' 'And what,' continued the Sultan, 'would have been your behavior, had fortune smiled on your arms?' The reply of the Greek betrays a sentiment which prudence, and even gratitude, should have taught him to suppress. 'Had I vanquished,' he fiercely said, 'I would have inflicted on thy body many a stripe.' The Turkish conqueror smiled at the insolence of his captive; observed that the Christian law inculcated forgiveness of injuries; and nobly declared that he would not imitate an example which he condemned. After mature deliberation, Alp Arslan dictated the terms of liberty and peace,—a ransom of a million, an annual tribute of three hundred and sixty thousand pieces of gold, the marriage of the royal children, and the deliverance of all the Moslems who were in the power of the Greeks."—*Gibbon.*

6. Taking of Jerusalem by the Crusaders (p. 137, ¶ 15).—"Daily, for eight days, and barefooted, the crusaders had walked in procession round Jerusalem; which done, a general assault was made by the whole army, Godfrey's tower rolled to the walls, and on Friday, the 15th of July, 1099, at three o'clock, on the very day, and the very hour of the Passion, Godfrey of Bouillon descended from his tower on the walls of Jerusalem. The city was taken, and a fearful massacre followed; for the crusaders, in their blind fury, not taking into account the distance of time, believed that in each infidel they slew in Jerusalem, they put to death one of the executioners of Jesus Christ."—*Michelet.—History of France.*

SECTION II.

The Dark Ages,

Extending from the Invasion of Gaul by the Franks to the End of the Saracen Empire (A. D. 1258).

1. The history of the *Dark Ages*, so called from the universal ignorance and superstition that prevailed during that period, is the history of the various warlike and barbarous nations that, migrating from the north and east, overwhelmed the Roman Empire, and, occupying the different districts of Europe, laid the foundation of the present nations found in those countries. Most of these barbarous tribes have already been referred to and briefly described in connection with the history of the two divisions of the Roman Empire; but in this section there is presented a more specific account of those whose influence was especially powerful and wide-spread, and whose more durable institutions have affected the character and condition of the modern world. These are, the *Franks*, the *Saxons*, the *Saracens*, and the *Normans*.

The Franks.

2. The *Franks*,* or *Freemen*, were a confederation of German tribes living in the country near the lower part

* *See Note* 1, *end of the Section.*

Map Questions.—(See Progressive Map, No. 6.) How far did the empire of Charlemagne extend from east to west? What river was its eastern boundary? How far did it extend toward the south?—*Ans.* To *Gaeta*, in Italy. How far did it extend toward the north?—*Ans.* To the Baltic Sea. What state occupied the southeastern part of France? The southwestern part? What monarchy occupied both sides of the Lower Danube? What people dwelt in the districts of the Upper Danube? What people occupied both banks of the Oder? What race lived in the regions near the Elbe and Rhine? What monarchy occupied nearly all Spain? To what part of Spain had the Visigoths retired? What kingdom existed in the northern part of Africa? What was its capital? Where was the Caliphate of Bagdad?

1. What is said of the history of the Dark Ages? Why are they so called? Which were the most important of the barbaric nations?

2. Who were the Franks? When did Clovis invade Gaul? Who was he? What were his other chief conquests and victories? Where was Burgundy?

Progressive Map, No. 6

THE
EMPIRE OF CHARLEMAGNE
and the
CONTEMPORARY MONARCHIES.

of the Rhine, who in the third century successfully opposed the Romans, committing great devastations throughout Gaul and Spain. In the fifth century (A. D. 486), *Clo'vis*, chief of a tribe known as the *Sa'lian Franks*, invaded Gaul, and having victoriously overrun the greater part of it, founded therein a new monarchy, the capital of which he fixed at *Lu-te'tia*, or Paris.* He chose for his queen *Clo-til'da*, a Christian princess, and niece of the king of Burgundy, a country situated east of the Rhone; and through her influence he embraced Christianity. He gained several great victories over the *Al-le-man'ni*—a powerful confederation of German tribes—and defeated the Burgundians and the Visigoths, the latter of whom were deprived of nearly all their possessions in Gaul. [*See Note* 2, *end of Section.*]

3. After the death of Clovis (511), his extensive dominions were divided among his sons, and thus were formed three kingdoms: 1. *Aus-tra'sia*, east of the Rhine; 2. *Neus'tria*, north of the Loire; and 3. *Aquitaine* (*ak'we-tain*), between the Loire (*lwar*) and the Pyrenees. These were afterward united under a single monarch, and increased by the annexation of Burgundy, which was obtained by conquest. Thus the monarchy of the Franks became more powerful and extensive than any other formed by the Barbarians, and was the only one that was durable. In the history of France, Clovis and his descendants are called the *Mer-o-vin'gi-ans*, from *Mer-o-væ'us*, one of their ancestors. This dynasty lasted a little more than 250 years (486–752).

4. The immediate successors of Clovis were noted for their constant dissensions, their vices, and the dreadful crimes which they perpetrated to obtain possession of each other's dominions. Some were great warriors, like Clovis

* *Lutetia* was the name given by the Romans to the collection of huts built of mud (*lutum*), and inhabited by a Gallic tribe called the *Parisii*, from whom it was afterward called *Paris*.

3. How were the dominions of Clovis divided at his death? What is said of the monarchy of the Franks? Who were the Merovingians? How long did the dynasty last?

4. What is said of the successors of Clovis? Who were the "Mayors of the Palace?" When did Pepin d'Heristal rule?

himself; but for more than a century previous to the termination of the dynasty, they were but nominally kings [called *Fainéants* (*fa-na-ong*)—*Do-nothings*], all the royal power being exercised by the great ministers, styled *Mayors of the Palace*. This high office was made hereditary by *Pep'in d'Her-is-tal'*, who held it from 687 to 714.

5. He was succeeded by the famous *Charles Mar-tel'* (the *Hammer*), who, when the Saracens, after completing the conquest of Spain, crossed the Pyrenees, threatening not only the subjugation of France but of all Europe, met them near Tours (*toor*), and inflicted upon them so severe a defeat, that they were completely checked in their long tide of conquests (732).

6. *Pepin the Short*,* the successor of Charles Martel, having rendered important aid in repelling the Lombards from Rome, was, by the authority of Pope *Zach'ary*, placed upon the throne of the Franks, and the weak Chil'de-ric, the last of the Merovingians, was formally deposed (752). Thus commenced the *Carlovingian* dynasty. This period is also noted for the termination of the rule of the Eastern emperors in Italy, and the commencement of the temporal dominion of the Roman Pontiff, whose government of the territories previously included within the Exarchate of Ravenna, was acknowledged and sustained by Pepin.

7. At the death of Pepin (768), his two sons *Car'lo-man* and *Charles* succeeded, but the former dying, Charles [afterward known as Charlemagne (*shar'le-mahn*)—Charles the Great] became the sole monarch of the Franks, and the ruler over not only France, but a large part of Germany. He made war upon the Lombards in Italy, and having taken Pavia, their capital (774), put an end to this

* So called from his very low stature, being it is said only four and a half feet high; while his son Charlemagne was seven feet in height.

5. By whom was he succeeded? What great victory did Charles Martel gain?
6. How did Pepin the Short become king? What dynasty was commenced by him? For what is this period noted?
7. Who succeeded Pepin? What were the chief conquests of Charlemagne? What did the battle of Roncevalles give rise to?

monarchy, which had lasted about two centuries. He also, after several years of severe war, reduced the Saxons on the lower Weser (*we'zer*), and invading Spain, which was then in possession of the Saracens, conquered all that part lying north of the E'bro (778). On his return through the Pyrenees, the rearguard of his army was surprised at *Ron-ces-val'les* and defeated, its brave commander *Ro'land*, the favorite nephew of Charlemagne, being slain. This battle gave rise to many romantic stories, and formed the subject of the most popular epic poem of the Middle Ages, the famous "Song of Roland."

8. Charlemagne also gained some victories over the Avars, in Pannonia, and other eastern races; and in 800, while on a visit to Italy, the Pope (Leo III.) crowned him *Emperor of the Romans*, thus reviving the EMPIRE OF THE WEST, the capital of which Charlemagne fixed at *Aix la Chapelle* (*āks lah sha-pel'*). This monarch was not only distinguished for his military talents, but was passionately fond of learning, receiving instruction from *Al'cuin*, a Saxon, who was the most accomplished scholar of the age. He also showed the greatness as well as beneficence of his character by the many useful enterprises which he planned for the benefit of his people, and by his efforts to dispel the ignorance which universally prevailed. His death occurred in 814. [*See Note* 3, *end of the Section.*]

9. His son and successor, *Louis le Deb-on-naire'* (*the Easy*) was of too mild and unwarlike a disposition to reign over an empire so extensive, and composed of such heterogenous parts; and his own sons formed conspiracies against him. After his death, in 840, three divisions were formed, one for each of his sons; but they soon quarrelled, and the great battle of *Fon-te-naille'* was fought (841), in which, it

8. What other victories were gained by Charlemagne? What title did the Pope confer on him? What is said of his character? Who was Alcuin?

9. Who succeeded Charlemagne? What was the character of Louis? What occurred after his death? What was the result of the battle of Fontenaille? How was the empire divided in 843?

is said, so many of the bravest generals and soldiers of the empire fell, that it was afterward impossible to repel the incursions of the *Normans*, who about this time commenced their piratical attacks. Two years after this battle (843), a treaty was made by the contending parties, according to which a new distribution of the imperial dominions was made among the three sons;—Louis receiving Germany; Charles, France; and Lothaire, Italy.

10. *Charles the Fat*, a son of Louis, obtained possession of the whole in 884; but three years afterward it was finally separated, Germany alone retaining the imperial title and dignity. The other divisions were *France*, *Italy*, and *Burgundy* or *Arles* (*arl*),* this latter kingdom having regained its independence during the weak reigns of some of the preceding Carlovingian princes.

11. The Normans.—These were a bold and enterprising race from Norway and Denmark, and were sometimes called *Norsemen* or *Northmen*. They commenced their ravages during the reign of Charlemagne; but under his successors, taking advantage of the weakness of the government, they sailed up the navigable rivers, pillaged and burnt the great towns, and retired dragging away many of the inhabitants with them. During the reign of an imbecile king, named *Charles the Simple*, they ascended the Seine (*sane*), and besieged Paris; whereupon the king, unable to make any resistance, finally ceded to their ruler, *Duke Rollo*, a large district in the north of France, afterward called *Normandy* (912).† The same active race about the same time crossed the Atlantic, and established colonies in the Faroe Islands, Iceland, and Greenland; and in the next century are supposed to have visited

* So named because its dukes, or rulers, for some time made the city of *Arles* their capital.

† *See Note* 4, *end of the Section.*

10. Who afterward ruled over the whole? What was the final division? When was it made?

11. Who were the Normans? What ravages were committed by them? What took place during the reign of Charles the Simple? What other colonies were established by the Normans during this period?

the eastern shore of North America, in the latitude of New England.

12. During the reign of *Louis V.*, surnamed *Le Fainéant* (*the Do-nothing*), *Hugo*, or *Hugh Cap'et*, the most powerful of the French vassals, seized the throne, which, on account of the moderation and efficiency of his government, he was allowed by the Church and the nobles to retain He was formally crowned in 987, thus inaugurating a new line of kings, named after him the *Capetian Dynasty*.

The Saxons in Britain.

13. The *Saxons* were a German race who, as early as the third century, made their appearance in northern Germany; and, forming powerful confederations, during the reigns of Julian and Valentinian, invaded the Roman empire. At a later period, probably in the fifth century, they commenced their incursions into Gaul and Britain. After the abandonment of the latter province by the Romans, hordes of these barbarous tribes, associated with *An'gles* and *Jūtes* from Denmark, rushed with irresistible force upon the island, and completed the conquest of the whole, except the western portion, now called Wales, into which the remnant of the British population retired.

14. The story generally related to account for this revolution is, that the Britons, attacked by the Scots and Picts from the north, and being deserted by the Romans, and therefore unable to defend their country, invited the Saxons to assist them in repelling their enemies. The Saxons coming over (449) under two leaders, named *Hen'ghist* and *Hor'sa*, soon drove back the Scots and Picts, but finding the country which they had saved by their valor pleasant and fertile, determined to conquer it for themselves. This story is now generally considered mythical; the evidence

12. How and when did Hugh the Great acquire the throne? What new dynasty was commenced by him?
13. Who were the Saxons? Describe their invasion of Britain.
14. Give the mythical history of this event.

which we possess only showing that Britain was conquered by the Angles, Jutes, and Saxons in the fifth century.

15. Thus were formed during the fifth and sixth centuries, by the many inroads of these people, seven kingdoms in different parts of the island, named collectively the *Saxon Hep'tar-chy*, and consisting of: 1, *Kent;* 2, *Sussex;* 3, *Wessex;* 4, *Essex;* 5, *Northumbria;* 6, *East Anglia;* 7, *Mercia.** Various wars arose among these states, and many changes occurred in their respective territories, the final result of which was that Wessex absorbed all the others; and in 827, its king *Egbert* became the acknowledged monarch of the whole country, to which he gave the name of *England* (*Engla-land, i. e., Land of the Angles*).

16. To this period of the Saxon history belong the stories related of *King Arthur*, a famous British champion who became renowned for his many victories over the Saxon invaders; also the partial conversion of the Saxons to Christianity, which was effected by *St. Au-gus-tine'* and several monks, commissioned by Pope Gregory the Great to perform this work (597). The barbarous and ferocious manners of the age, although softened, were by no means removed, by the partial christianization thus effected.

17. During the period of the Heptarchy, the *Danes* commenced their inroads upon the Saxons.† These were Norsemen who had come from Norway to Denmark, and occupied the lands left uninhabited by the emigration of the Angles and Jutes to Britain. It is said that these Northmen were induced to make depredations on Charlemagne's dominions by the Saxon exiles, who had been driven from their homes in northern Germany by the victorious arms of the great Frankish monarch. After several years of fierce war, Charlemagne succeeded finally in subduing

* *See Note* 5, *end of the Section.* † *See Note* 6.

15. What kingdoms were formed in Britain? When and by whom were they united? What name was given to the kingdom thus formed?

16. What is related of the period of the Saxon conquest? When and how were the Saxons converted?

17. Who were the Danes? Why did they invade Charlemagne's dominions?

those heroic Germans, and taking possession of their country, dispersed them among the surrounding nations (804).

The Saracens.

18. *Sar'a-cens*—meaning *Eastern People*—was the name given to that fierce and active race, who, proceeding from Arabia in the seventh century, rapidly overran a considerable part of Western Asia and the whole of northern Africa, and made a conquest of the kingdom of the Visigoths in Spain; but were stopped in their victorious career by the valor of the Franks, under their renowned leader, Charles Martel.

19. They were followers of *Ma'ho-met*, or *Mo-ham'med*,* who was born at Mec'ca, and in the fortieth year of his age (611), pretended to have a divine mission, and a new revelation from God. The preaching of his doctrines excited great opposition at Mecca; and in 622 (July 16), he was compelled to flee from the city in order to save his life. This event, called in Arabic the *He-gi'ra*, is the epoch which the Mohammedans employ in their chronology.

20. His prophetic character being acknowledged at Me-di'na, in which city he had taken refuge, his doctrines rapidly gained general credence; and, having assumed the sword as a means of making converts, he was enabled, seven years after his flight, to re-enter Mecca in triumph, being sustained by a large army which he had collected from among the roving Arabs by large promises of plunder in this world, and everlasting bliss in the next. The whole Arabian nation, soon after the taking of Mecca, embraced his doctrines, became thorough believers in his sacred mission, and determined to extirpate all unbelievers, or compel them to assent to the cardinal principle of his creed, "*There is but one God, and Mohammed is his prophet.*"†

* *See Note 7, end of the Section.* † *See Note 8.*

18. Who were the Saracens?
19. Who was Mahomet, and what were the first effects of his preaching? When did the *Hegira* occur?
20. When did his doctrine gain credence, and what was the result?

21. The impostor had not only conquered Arabia, but had commenced the conquest of Syria, when death stopped him in his successful career, at the age of 63 (A. D. 632). He was succeeded by *A-bu'be-ker*, styled the *First Caliph* (i. e. *vicar*), who collected the fragmentary writings of Mohammed, and formed from them the sacred book called by his followers the *Ko'ran*. He also prosecuted the conquest of Syria, defeated, by means of his general, *Ca'led* (called the "Sword of God"), Heraclius, the Greek emperor, and took Damascus. Under his successor, *O'mar*, Jerusalem was taken (A. D. 637), and all Syria subdued; Egypt was conquered, and the Persians defeated in a great battle, at *Ca-de'sia*, on the Tigris River.

22. This caliph, it is said, during a reign of ten years, reduced 36,000 cities and villages, demolished 4,000 Christian churches, and erected 1500 Mohammedan temples, called *mosques*. He was succeeded by *Oth'man*, who completed the conquest of Persia and other eastern countries, extended his dominion in Africa, and published a new edition of the Koran. Cyprus and Rhodes were also taken, the Saracens at the latter place destroying the famous brazen *Co-los'sus*,* or statue of Phœ'bus, the god of the sun. The murder of Othman made Ali (*ah'le*) caliph, considered the bravest and most virtuous of the successors of Mohammed (A. D. 655).

23. The reign of Ali is noted for the schism which occurred among these fierce zealots, by which the whole Mohammedan world became divided into two parties, called the *Sun'nites* and the *Shi'ites*, the former acknowledging

* This celebrated statue was erected 300 B. C. It was formed of metal, cast in separate pieces, was about 100 feet high, and took twelve years to complete it. It was thrown down by an earthquake, about sixty years after its erection, and remained in ruins nearly nine centuries. The Saracens caused it to be broken up and sold.

21. When did Mohammed's death occur, and by whom was he succeeded? What was done by Abu-beker? What conquests were made by Caled? What was achieved under Omar?

22. How many cities, etc., were taken under Omar? By whom was he succeeded? What were the chief events of Othman's reign? Who was his successor?

23. What schism occurred while Ali was caliph? What usurpation took place, and what dynasty was founded?

the authority of all the caliphs, while the latter reject all but Ali, whom they regard as the equal of Mohammed. The Shiites also reject the *Sun'nah*, a book of traditions concerning the prophet, which the Sunnites, or orthodox Mohammedans, receive as sacred. During the reign of Ali, *Mo-a-wi'yah* usurped the government of Syria, and by the murder of Ali, became caliph. He was the first of the dynasty called the *Om-mi-ya'des*, which lasted till 752.

24. Moawiyah fixed his capital at Damascus, and, by his *A-mir-al-ma* (captain at sea; hence our word *admiral*) and his lieutenant *Ak'bah*, continued the conquest of northern Africa, founding south of Tunis the famous city of *Kairwan* (*kīre-wahn*). It was the army of this caliph that besieged Constantinople, and was repulsed by means of the Greek fire, so efficiently employed by its defenders (668–675). About forty years afterward (717) Constantinople was again attacked by an army of Saracens, said to number 120,000 men; but, after a siege of thirteen months, was relieved by the Bulgarians, who fell upon the Saracens, and defeated them with immense slaughter.

25. Carthage was taken by the Saracens in 698, and utterly destroyed, after which they encountered no opposition in Africa except from the native Berber tribes, whom they finally subdued (709) and converted. From the union of the Arabic and Berber races sprung the Moors, so noted in Saracenic history. The conquest of Africa was immediately followed by that of Spain; for *Mu'sa*, the Saracen general, dispatched his lieutenant *Ta'rik* across the strait of Gibraltar (*Gib-el-Tarik*—mountain of Tarik) with an army, which defeated *Roderick*, the last of the Visigothic kings, and thus destroyed their monarchy in Spain, after an existence of more than two centuries (711).* A remnant of

* It is said that the Saracens were invited into Spain by *Count Julian*, a Gothic noble, in revenge for an injury inflicted upon him by King Roderick. [*See Note* 9.]

24. What was the capital under Moawiyah? What were the chief events of his reign? When was Constantinople attacked, and how was it saved?

25. What account is given of the conquest of Africa? Of Spain? What became of the Goths?

the Gothic nation, however, escaped to the highlands among the Asturian mountains, where they succeeded in maintaining their independence for many centuries.

26. Crossing the Pyrenees, the victorious Saracens were still pressing on in their career of conquest when they were defeated, in a battle that lasted seven days, by the renowned Charles Martel, who by his valor and skill probably rescued Europe from the Mohammedan yoke (732). His grandson Charlemagne more than fifty years afterward drove them beyond the Ebro, and thus confined them to their dominions in Spain. The Ommiade dynasty of caliphs was, in the middle of the eighth century (752), succeeded by the *Abbas'i-dēs*, descendants of *Ab'bas*, the uncle of Mohammed; but one of the Ommiyades, escaping to Spain, founded an independent caliphate at Cor'do-va, which lasted 250 years, and was one of the largest and most splendid centres of commerce, literature, and the arts in the world.

27. *Al Mansur* (*man-soor'*), the second of the Abbasides, removed the capital to the Tigris, founding there the city of Bagdad, which was built out of the ruins of Seleucia and Ctesiphon (762). The most celebrated of the caliphs of Bagdad was *Ha'roun-al-Rasch'id* (Aaron the Just), made familiar both to young and old by the tales of the "Arabian Nights." During this reign (786–808), and several succeeding reigns, literature and science, particularly astronomy, were carried to a very high degree of perfection both at Cordova and Bagdad, while nearly all Europe was slumbering in the intellectual night of the dark ages.

28. After the reign of Haroun al Raschid, the Saracen empire became divided by the rebellion and usurpation of the provincial governors, so that, in the beginning of the

26. What stopped the Saracens in their career of conquest? When did the Ommiade dynasty cease, and by whom was it succeeded? What was established at Cordova?

27. Who founded Bagdad? What is said of Haroun al Raschid? What progress was made in literature and science by the Saracens?

28. How was the empire afterward divided? How many caliphates were there in the tenth century? Which was the most distinguished? How long did the Fatimites continue in power? By whom were they succeeded at Cairo?

10th century, there were no less than seven caliphates, all of whom acknowledged the caliph of Bagdad only as the successor of Mohammed, denying to him any temporal authority over their respective dominions. Of these independent kingdoms the most distinguished was that of the *Fat'i-mītes** in Africa, whose capital was Cairo (*ki'ro*), and who continued in power till 1171, when the last of the dynasty was succeeded by the famous *Sal'a-din.*

29. In the eleventh century (1055), Bagdad was taken by the Seljuks; but these fierce barbarians, being believers in Mohammed, acknowledged the caliphs of Bagdad as their superiors. The power, however, of the latter had been greatly diminished; and their dominions scarcely extended beyond the walls of the city. At length, in 1258, during the reign of the grandson of Jenghis Khan, Bagdad was taken and sacked by the Mongols; and the caliphate extinguished, after it had existed nearly 500 years. This is generally regarded as the termination of the Saracen empire, although, centuries before, its various parts had been but nominally connected.

The Feudal System.

30. The prevailing system by which, during the period from the 9th to the 13th century, social and political relations, including particularly the rights of property, were regulated in nearly all the countries of Europe, was called the **Feudal System,** a feudal proprietor being a person who held his lands from another, on condition of certain services which he, as a *vassal,* was bound to perform for the other, as a *suzerain* or *superior.*

* So called because they were believed to be the descendants of *Fatima,* the daughter of Mohammed.

29. By whom was Bagdad taken in the eleventh century? When and in what way did the Saracen empire terminate?

30. What was the feudal system? What was meant by a feudal proprietor?

31. With the exception of the duty of military service to their superiors, the vassals of a king practically were invested with sovereign power within their own dominions, having vassals in various degrees beneath them; and living in their fortified castles, often by means of pillage, while the peasantry were bound as serfs, or slaves, to the soil.

32. The feudal nobles and gentlemen fought on horseback, and were protected by a close-fitting armor of steel, often ornamented with gold and silver. Their principal weapons of offence were long lances, with which they rode fiercely against each other; and clubs, maces, or swords for hand-to-hand conflicts when their lances were broken, or when the combatants became unhorsed. The common soldiers fought on foot, were unprovided with protective armor, and used bows and arrows,—either long-bows or cross-bows. The Normans were skilled in the use of every species of arms, but particularly in the cross-bow; and, after the Norman invasion, the English became the most skilful archers in the world. Cannon came into use in the middle of the fourteenth century.

33. The feeble bond of union by which the different members of society were held together, led to violence, rebellion, and anarchy; and, during the middle ages, was a perfect barrier against all improvement in government, manners, or the arts of civilized life. The feudal system gradually yielded to influences which will be explained in connection with the subsequent history.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

449. Invasion of Britain by the Saxons.

486. Invasion of Gaul by Clovis.

597. Conversion of the Saxons in Britain to Christianity.

---

31. What was the condition of the vassals? Of the peasantry?

32. How did the feudal nobles and gentlemen fight? The common soldiers? What is said of the skill of the Normans? Of the English?

33. What was the condition of society during the middle ages?

611. Mohammed commences his pretended mission.
622. Flight of Mohammed from Mecca. **The Hegira.**
629. Mohammed enters Mecca in triumph.
632. Death of Mohammed.
637. Jerusalem taken by the Saracens.
661. Commencement of the Ommiyades.
687. Pepin d'Heristal, Mayor of the Palace.
698. Carthage stormed by the Saracens, and destroyed.
709. Conquest of Africa completed by the Saracens.
711. Spain conquered by the Saracens.
End of the monarchy of the Visigoths.
732. The Saracens defeated by Charles Martel
752. End of the Merovingian dynasty of the Franks, and of the Saracen dynasty of the Ommiyades.
755. The Pope made a temporal prince.
762. Bagdad founded by the Saracens.
768. Accession of Carloman and Charles, afterward styled **Charlemagne.**
774. Pavia taken by Charlemagne. End of the Kingdom of the Lombards.
786–808. Reign of Haroun al Raschid at Bagdad.
800. Charlemagne crowned "Emperor of the Romans." The Western Empire revived.
804. The Saxons in Germany subdued by Charlemagne.
814. Death of Charlemagne.
827. **England** founded by Egbert.
End of the Saxon Heptarchy.
841. Battle of Fontenaille.
843. The empire of Charlemagne divided.
884. Charles the Fat sole monarch of the Franks.
887. Final division of the Empire into France, Germany, Burgundy, and Italy.
910. Commencement of the Fatimite dynasty at Tunis.
912. The Normans settle in France, during the reign of Charles the Simple.
937. Hugh Capet becomes king of France.
End of the Carlovingian dynasty.
1055. Bagdad taken by the Seljuks.
1171. The Fatimite dynasty overturned at Cairo by Saladin.
1258. Bagdad taken by Jenghis Khan.
End of the Saracen Empire.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. What period is called the Dark Ages? ... 142
2. Give a sketch of the history of Clovis ... 143
3. During what period did the Merovingians occupy the throne of France? 143
4. Name the most celebrated of the Mayors of the Palace, and state for what they were distinguished ... 141
5. Give the history of Pepin the Short ... 141
6. Give a sketch of the history of Charlemagne ... 144-145
7. Who was Alcuin, and for what was he distinguished? ... 145
8. What was the "Song of Roland?" ... 145
9. Mention the most eminent of the successors of Charlemagne ... 145-146
10. Give a sketch of the history of the Normans ... 146
11. What led to the establishment of the Capetian Dynasty? ... 147
12. What led to the invasion of Britain by the Saxons? ... 147
13. Give a sketch of the history of the Saxon Heptarchy ... 148
14. What led to the invasion of Britain by the Danes? ... 148
15. Who was King Arthur? ... 148
16. Give a sketch of the history of Mohammed ... 149-150
17. Who were the most noted of his immediate successors? ... 150-151
18. Give an account of the conquest of Syria, Egypt, and Persia, by the Saracens ... 150-151
19. What is the origin of the name *Gibraltar?* ... 151
20. Give an account of the Ommiyades ... 151-152
21. Give the history of the Abbasides ... 152
22. Who was Haroun al Raschid, and for what was he noted? ... 152
23. Give a sketch of the history of the Caliphs of Bagdad ... 152-153
24. Give the history of the Fatimites ... 153
25. During what period did the Saracen Empire last? ... 149-153
26. State the peculiar features of the Feudal System ... 153-154
27. What were the effects of this system upon the manners and state of society of the Middle Ages? ... 154
28. Describe the mode of warfare practised during this period ... 154
29. What is the date of the Hegira? ... 149-155
30. What Saracen monarch was contemporary with Charlemagne? ... 155
31. What two important events in the tenth century were very nearly contemporaneous? ... 155
32. By whom was Bagdad taken in the eleventh century? ... 155
33. By whom was it taken in the thirteenth century? ... 155
34. Mention, in chronological order, the important events of the fifth century ... 154
35. Mention those of the seventh century ... 155
36. Mention those of the eighth century ... 155
37. What were the most important events of the ninth century? ... 155
38. What important event of French history occurred in the tenth century? 155
39. What important event in the Saracen history took place in the eleventh century? ... 155
40. What important event occurred in 732? ... 155
41. Name ten events from 732 to the death of Charlemagne ... 155
42. Name in chronological order fourteen events after the death of Charlemagne ... 155

NOTES.

1. The Franks (p. 142, ¶ 2).—"The Franks were not a people, but a confederation, which varied in its members as it fluctuated in its influence, but which must have been powerful at the close of the fourth century. At this period the Franks had indisputably large possessions in the empire. Under the name of Franks, Germans of every race composed the best troops of the imperial armies and the body-guard of the emperor. Floating between Germany and the empire, they generally declared against the other barbarians whose irruptions into Gaul succeeded theirs. They opposed, though unsuccessfully, the great invasion of the Burgundians, Suevi, and Vandals, in 406, and many of them fought against Attila. Seated in the north of France, in the northwest corner of Europe, the Franks held their ground against the pagan Saxons, the latest swarm from Germany; against the Arian Visigoths; and, finally, against the Saracens; all three equally hostile to the divinity of Jesus Christ. Therefore, it is not without reason that the French monarchs have been styled the eldest sons of the Church."—*Michelet. --History of France.*

2. Conversion of Clovis (p. 143, ¶ 2).—"Clovis's destiny was principally determined by his adopting the Christian faith. The chief agent in his conversion was his queen, Clotilda, daughter of Gundobald, King of Burgundy, his neighbor and ally. By her affectionate exhortations, the mind of her husband was disposed to Christianity, though he long hesitated to embrace a religion which imposed many restrictions. At length, in a battle with the Allemanni, Clovis, hard pressed, was induced to vow, that if he should obtain a victory, which seemed extremely doubtful, he would become a Christian. The king of the Allemanni was slain, his army discomfited, and the acquisition of his dominions greatly augmented the power of the Franks. After this conquest, Clovis adopted the Christian faith, according to his vow, and was baptized in the Cathedral at Rheims, where it has been ever since the custom to crown and consecrate the monarchs of France."—*Scott.*

3. Character of Charlemagne (p. 145, ¶ 8).—"A strong sympathy for intellectual excellence was the leading characteristic of Charlemagne, and this undoubtedly biased him in the chief political error of his conduct, that of encouraging the power and pretensions of the hierarchy. But perhaps his greatest eulogy is written in the disgrace of succeeding times, and the miseries of Europe. He stands alone like a beacon upon a waste or a rock in the broad ocean. His scepter was as the bow of Ulysses, which could not be drawn by any weaker hand. In the dark ages of European history, the reign of Charlemagne affords a solitary resting-place between two long periods of turbulence and ignominy, deriving the advantages of contrast both from that of the preceding dynasty, and of a posterity for whom he had formed an empire which they were unworthy and unequal to maintain."—*Hallam.—Europe during the Middle Ages.*

4. Rollo, Duke of Normandy (p. 146, ¶ 11).—"When the new duke was to receive investiture of Normandy from Charles, his pride was startled at the form which required him, in acknowledgment of the favor bestowed on him, to kneel to his liege lord, and kiss his foot. 'My knee shall never bend to mortal,' said the haughty Norman; 'and I will be, on no account, persuaded to kiss the foot of any one whatever.' The French counselors present suggested that this difficulty might be surmounted by Rollo, or Robert, appointing a deputy to kiss, in his name, the foot of Charles. Accordingly, the duke commanded a common soldier to perform the ceremony in his stead. The man showed the small value he attached

to the ceremony, by the careless and disrespectful manner in which he performed it. Instead of kneeling to salute the royal foot, he caught it up and performed the ceremony by lifting it to his mouth. In this awkward operation, the rude Norman well-nigh overturned the simple king, throne and all, and exposed him to the laughter of all around."—*Scott.*

5. Saxon Conquest of Britain (p. 148, ¶ 15).—"Thus was established, after a violent contest of near a hundred and fifty years, the Heptarchy, or seven Saxon kingdoms in Britain; and the whole southern part of the island, except Wales and Cornwall, had totally changed its inhabitants, language, customs, and political institutions. The Britons, under the Roman dominion, had made such advances towards arts and civil manners, that they had built twenty-eight considerable cities within their province, besides a great number of villages and country-seats; but the fierce conquerors by whom they were now subdued, threw everything back into ancient barbarity; and those few natives who were not either massacred or expelled their habitations, were reduced to the most abject slavery."—*Hume.—History of England.*

6. The Northmen, or Danes (p. 148, ¶ 17).—"The northern part of Europe, peopled by a race closely akin to the Low-Dutch, and speaking another dialect of the common Teutonic speech, now began to send forth swarms of pirates over all the seas of Europe, who from pirates often grew into conquerors. They were still heathens; and their incursions, both in Britain and on the Continent, must have been a scourge almost as frightful as the settlement of the English had been to the original Britons."—*Freeman.—History of the Norman Conquest.*

7. Mahomet, or Mohammed (p. 149, ¶ 19).—"Mahomet, or more properly Mohammed, was born at Mecca, four years after the death of Justinian, and two months after the defeat of the Abyssinians, whose victory would have introduced into the Caaba the religion of the Christians. In his early infancy, he was deprived of his father, his mother, and his grandfather; his uncles were strong and numerous; and, in the division of the inheritance, the orphan's share was reduced to five camels and an Æthiopian man-servant. At home and abroad, in peace and war, Abu Taleb, the most respectable of his uncles, was the guide and guardian of his youth. In his twenty-fifth year, he entered into the service of Cadijah, a rich and noble widow of Mecca, who soon rewarded his fidelity with the gift of her hand and fortune. By this alliance, the son of Abdallah was restored to the station of his ancestors; and the judicious matron was content with his domestic virtues, till, in the fortieth year of his age, he assumed the title of a prophet, and proclaimed the religion of the Koran."—*Gibbon.*

8. Doctrine of Mohammed (p. 149, ¶ 20).—"Mohammed inculcated the belief that there is, was, and ever will be, one only God, the creator of all things; who is single, immutable, omniscient, omnipotent, all merciful, and eternal. The unity of God was specifically and strongly urged, in contradistinction to the Trinity of the Christians. It was designated, in the profession of faith, by raising one finger, and exclaiming, 'There is no God but God,'—to which is added, 'Mohammed is the prophet of God.'"—*Irving.—Mahomet and his Successors.*

9. Roderick, the Last of the Goths (p. 151, ¶ 25).—"Amidst the general disorder, Roderick started from his car, and mounted Orelia, the fleetest of his steeds; but he escaped from a soldier's death to perish more ignobly in the waters of the Guadalquivir. His diadem, his robes, and his courser, were found on the bank; but as the body of the Gothic prince was lost in the waves, the pride and ignorance of the Caliph must have been gratified with some meaner head, which was exposed in triumph before the palace of Damascus."—*Gibbon.*

SECTION III.

England in the Middle Ages,

Extending from the Foundation of the Anglo-Saxon Monarchy under Egbert (827) *to the Accession of Henry VII.* (1485).

1. **Egbert** and his successors, the Saxon kings of England, held the throne a little over two centuries (827–1066) The most eminent among the latter was *Alfred the Great*, who was the most illustrious monarch of his age (871–901), and one of the wisest and most virtuous kings that ever reigned. Though at one time entirely overwhelmed by the *Danes*, who had long disturbed the kingdom by their irruptions, and though reduced to such an extremity that he was obliged to seek safety in an obscure part of the country, in the disguise of a peasant, he at last by his fortitude and address was enabled to defeat his enemies, and to regain his throne. The Danes being expelled, he restored tranquillity to the country, and endeavored, by judicious measures, to promote the prosperity and civilization of the people. He founded the University of Oxford, improved the laws of the kingdom, and established schools for the education of the people. [*See Note* 1, *end of the Section.*]

2. The continued struggle with the Danes forms the most prominent feature of the Saxon history of England. *Edward*, surnamed the *Elder*, the son and successor of Alfred, and Edward's successor, *Ath'el-stan*, were distin-

Map Questions.—(Map, page 158.) What cities and towns near the southern coast of England? What cities and towns near the boundary of Wales? In the northern part of England? In the eastern part? Where is Bosworth? Edge Hill? Northampton? What cities and towns in the southern part of Scotland? In the northern part? In what part of Ireland is Dublin? Drogheda? Londonderry? Galway? Cork? In what part of Wales is Milford Haven? Caernarvon?

1. How long did Egbert and his successors hold the English throne? Who was the most eminent of the Saxon kings? What was his character? The chief events of his reign?

2. What constitutes the chief feature of the Saxon history? What kings defeated the Danes? What massacre was committed? The consequence of it? How did Canute become king?

guished for the victories which they gained over these fierce and persevering invaders. During the reign of *Eth'el-red*, surnamed the *Unready*, a barbarous massacre, ordered by

the king, of all the Danes who had settled in any part of the country, so incensed *Sweyn* (*swane*), king of Denmark, that he raised an immense army, with which he invaded the kingdom, and having compelled Ethelred to flee, caused

himself to be proclaimed king of England (1013). On his death, Ethelred was restored to the throne; but his successor, *Edmund Ironside*, was defeated by an army of Danes under *Can-ūte'*, the successor of Sweyn, and compelled to surrender one-half of his dominions to the victor, who, a short time afterward, by the death of Edmund, became sole monarch of England (1017).

3. **Canute,** surnamed *the Great*, was an able and politic monarch, whose rule, although at first severe and cruel, became afterward so popular from its efficiency and moderation, that the Anglo-Saxon people forgot that they had been subjugated; and after his death (1035) Canute was as much lamented as Alfred or Athelstan. He was succeeded by his son, *Har'old Harefoot*, so called from his fondness for the chase and his swiftness in running. At his death, his brother *Hardicanute* obtained the throne, after whom the English succeeded in throwing off the Danish yoke, and the Saxon line was restored in the person of *Edward*, surnamed the *Con'fessor*, on account of his fondness for learning, his studious habits, and his distaste for active pursuits. He was canonized by the Pope, and very much revered by his people, who imputed to him the power of curing the scrofula by the touch of his hand. Hence, this disease was called the "king's evil;" and for seven centuries those afflicted with it were, at times, presented to the king to be cured in this way.

4. Edward dying without heirs, the crown was conferred by the clergy and nobles upon *Harold*, son of Earl Godwin, the most powerful nobleman of the time, whose daughter Edward had married. Harold was also, through his grandmother, a descendant of Sweyn, the Danish king. His right to the throne was, however, disputed by his brother *Tos'tig*, who, with the aid of the kings of Scotland and Norway, was enabled to raise a large army, which was

3. What was the character of Canute? What other Danish kings reigned? What is said of Edward the Confessor?

4 Who succeeded him? What victory did Harold gain?

defeated by the English forces under Harold, after a severe battle fought near the *Der'went River*, in the northern part of England (Sept. 25, 1066).

5. Three days after this battle, a more powerful competitor for the throne landed on the southeastern shore of England, with a large and finely equipped army. This was *William, Duke of Normandy,* to whom Edward had bequeathed the throne, and whose claim was sanctioned by the Pope; while Harold, who, it was said, had sacredly promised not to dispute William's claim, was viewed by many as guilty of usurpation and perjury. Harold, notwithstanding his recent conflict with the Norwegians, marched with all the forces he could collect to oppose the Normans. The battle, which was long and bloody, was fought near *Hastings,** and resulted in the entire defeat of the Saxons, Harold himself being slain (Oct. 14, 1066). This ended the Saxon dynasty, and gave the control of the kingdom to William, who, two months afterward, was formally crowned king of England in Westminster Abbey (Dec. 25, 1066). [*See Note* 2, *end of Section.*]

Norman Kings.

6. **William I.**, surnamed the *Conqueror*, was a descendant of the famous duke Rollo, to whom Charles the Simple had ceded Normandy about 150 years previously. He was not only a brave and skilful general, but an able statesman; and, after subduing all the Anglo-Saxon leaders who opposed his rule, he, by severe but judicious regulations, firmly established the government, and effectually protected the country from foreign invasions. The Saxon population was, however, reduced to a condition of abject bondage to the great Norman barons, among whom most of the lands

* On the site of the town now called *Battle*, in the southeastern part of England. (See Map.)

5. Who invaded England? On what did William base his claim to the throne? Where was Harold defeated? What followed the battle of Hastings?

6. Who was William the Conqueror? What was his character? By what measures did he complete the conquest? What was the condition of the Saxons?

were divided as a reward for their services, according to the usages of the feudal system. The laws of Edward the Confessor were not, however, abolished; and some of the Saxon nobles sat in council with the Norman counts.

7. William instituted the custom of ringing the *curfew-bell* in the evening, as a signal that the people should extinguish their lamps and fires, either to prevent conflagrations, or secret assemblies of those who were hostile to his government. One of his most useful acts was to cause the compilation of the *Domesday Book*, which was a register of all the estates in the kingdom. Hunting was his favorite amusement; and in order to make a new forest near his residence, he laid waste a tract of country extending thirty miles, driving out the inhabitants, demolishing houses and even churches, but making no compensation for the injury. To kill game in any of the forests was made a crime of greater enormity than murder. He died during an invasion of France in the twenty-third year of his reign (1087). [*See Note* 3, *end of the Section.*]

8. **William II.**, surnamed *Rufus*, the *Red*, from the color of his hair, succeeded to the throne of England, by the will of his father, while his elder brother Robert assumed the government of Normandy. William inherited the courage and much of the ability of his father, but was more cruel and unprincipled. His reign was much disturbed by quarrels with his brothers Robert and Henry, which caused him to invade Normandy. He also waged war with Malcolm, king of Scotland. During this period the *first crusade* occurred; and Robert, wishing to join it, sold to William his duchy of Normandy (1095), the latter raising the money to pay for it by forced levies upon his subjects, even compelling the convents to melt their plate in order to furnish their quota. After a reign of 13 years,

7. What was the *curfew?* The Domesday Book? The New Forest?
8. What was the character of William II.? What were the chief events of his reign? How was his death caused? Why was it considered a just retribution?

he was accidentally shot while hunting in the New Forest (1100). The people viewed this as a just retribution; for where the Conqueror had destroyed the homes of the Saxons, his son prematurely and miserably perished.*

9. Henry I. (surnamed *Beauclerk*, the *Scholar*), the younger brother of William II., succeeded him; Robert, the elder brother, being absent in the Holy Land. The latter, on his return, again received Normandy; but sometime afterward, war arising between the brothers, Robert was made prisoner, sent to England, and confined in a castle in Wales till his death. The government of Henry was characterized by severity; and so strict and impartial was he in administering the laws, that he was styled the "Lion of Justice." His private life was, however, very immoral; and he was so deceitful and treacherous that even his greatest favorites distrusted him. The latter part of his life was saddened by the loss of his only son, who was drowned on his passage from Normandy; after which event, it is said, Henry was never seen to smile. His death occurred in 1135.

10. Stephen, a nephew of Henry, succeeded him, although it had been his cherished wish that his daughter Matilda should have the throne. This princess, whose first husband was the emperor of Germany, and who afterward married *Geoffrey Plan-tag'e-net, Earl of Anjou*, raised an army, and having defeated Stephen and made him a prisoner, was declared queen of England (1141). She, however, soon disgusted all her English friends and supporters by her despotic and arrogant behavior; and Stephen was enabled to regain the throne, Matilda being compelled to flee.

11. Some years after this, *Henry Plantagenet*, her son, made another effort to dethrone Stephen, but was finally

* *See Note 4, end of the Section.*

9. Who succeeded William II.? What is said of Robert? Describe the government of Henry I. What was his character? Effect of the loss of Prince Henry?
10. Who succeeded Henry I.? What was done by Matilda?
11. What was done by Henry Plantagenet? From what did the country suffer?

reconciled to the king, being adopted by him as his son and successor; soon after which, on the death of Stephen, he became king (1154). During the reign of Stephen, on account of the weakness of the government, the country suffered greatly from the violence and rapacity of the feudal barons, each of whom occupied a fortified castle, from which, at the head of his band of mercenary ruffians, he sallied forth day and night to plunder and oppress the inhabitants. Stephen was the last of the direct Norman line.

The Plantagenets.

12. Henry II., the first of the Plantagenets,* had married *Eleanor*, duchess of Guienne (*ghe-en'*), the divorced queen of Louis VII., king of France; and thus, at his accession, he became the ruler not only of England but of the greater part of France. His first acts were to reduce the refractory nobles to obedience; and, dispossessing them of their strongholds, to compel them to discontinue their lawless violence and pillage. His next object was to reform the abuses and correct the vices of the clergy, who, being by the institutions of William the Conqueror, amenable only to ecclesiastical authority, set the common laws of the realm at defiance.

13. In this undertaking, he met with determined opposition from *Thomas à Becket*, a man of great talent and fearless courage, who, holding the highest office in the Church (that of *Archbishop of Can'ter-bu-ry*), considered it his duty to defend the authority and privileges of his order, notwithstanding he had been elevated to this great dignity by the friendship and partiality of Henry II. At a grand council held at Clarendon (1164), the king presented six-

* *Plantagenet* means, in French, *broom-plant*; and was given to this family, it is said, because one of their ancestors had done penance by scourging himself with twigs of that plant.

12. How did Henry enlarge his dominions? What did he attempt to accomplish?

13. Who opposed him? What was the character of Becket? What were the "Constitutions of Clarendon?" What was the conduct of Becket?

teen propositions, called the "Constitutions of Clarendon," one of which was that clergymen accused of any crime should be tried by the civil courts; while the others were designed to define and regulate the ecclesiastical authority, and make it subservient to the civil power. To these propositions Becket, after great resistance, reluctantly gave his assent; but, afterward attempting to evade them, he was condemned by a council especially called by the king to consider his offence.

14. He then secretly departed from England, and took refuge with the king of France, by whom, as well as by the Pope, he was encouraged and sustained. Henry at last becoming reconciled to him, he returned to England and resumed his high office; but he again opposed the royal authority; and the king was at last provoked into exclaiming, "Is there no one of my subjects who will rid me of this insolent priest?" Four knights, construing this as a command, immediately proceeded to the residence of the prelate, and, pursuing him into the cathedral, barbarously slew him before the altar (1170).

15. Henry was thrown into the greatest consternation on hearing of this event. He expressed the deepest sorrow for the words he had hastily uttered, and evinced the sincerity of his repentance by acts of the severest penance, consenting to go as a pilgrim to the tomb of the murdered prelate, now canonized as a saint and martyr, and for miles of the way walked barefoot over the flinty road, marking his steps with blood. Independently of its atrocity, nothing could have been more disastrous to the king's cause than the murder of Becket; for the Church party gained more by the death of their champion than all his best efforts could have won for them if he had lived, talented and determined as he was; and Henry only obtained pardon from the Roman

---

14. By whom was Becket supported? What led to his assassination?
15. What was its effect on Henry? On the cause of the Church?

pontiff on condition that he would submit entirely to the wishes and injunctions of the holy See.

16. Conquest of Ireland.—One of the most important events of this reign was the conquest of Ireland, which Henry completed in 1172. Ireland, anciently called *Hibernia*, was peopled by a race similar to the Britons, but little is known of them before the fourth century. Each province had its separate king, but was dependent upon the monarch who held his court at *Tara*.* In the fifth century the people were converted to Christianity, chiefly through the efforts of the renowned *St. Patrick*. From the sixth to the twelfth century, Ireland became famous for its progress in literature and art, and sent forth many learned men and missionaries from the monasteries which had been established. For three centuries it was much harassed by the Northmen or Danes; but in 1014, the latter were utterly defeated in a great battle fought at *Clon'tarf*, near Dublin.

17. Some years before the death of Becket, Henry obtained permission of the Pope to subdue the island; but it was not until 1172 that he accomplished this object. One of the five subordinate kings having been expelled from his province, and having taken refuge in England, succeeded in enlisting a force from the Anglo-Norman nobles and adventurers, with which he regained his kingdom. The English then so rapidly prosecuted the conquest of the country, that the next year Henry went there, and, having received the submission of most of the native chiefs, committed the government of the island to a viceroy whom he appointed.

18. The last sixteen years of Henry's life were embittered by family dissensions, his three oldest sons combining with Louis, king of France, to deprive him of his throne. At

* *See Notes 5 and 6, end of the Section.*

16. When was Ireland conquered? Give a sketch of its early history.
17. How was the conquest effected?
18. What embittered the close of Henry's life? Give an account of this.

the same time his French dominions were threatened by a revolt, and the northern part of England was invaded by the king of Scotland. Henry, however, triumphed over all his enemies. But these troubles were no sooner pacified than similar family discords broke out, his sons being encouraged in their disobedience and unnatural hostility by Queen Eleanor, their mother, who had become enraged against the king for his licentiousness, and particularly on account of his attachment to *Rosamond Clifford*, styled in the ballads of the time the "Fair Rosamond."

19. Eleanor, attempting to flee the kingdom, was arrested and kept in close confinement. The king's eldest son, *Henry*, died of a fever, his second son *Geoffrey* (*jef're*) was killed in a tournament in France, and *Richard*, the third son, joined the king of France in a war against his father, so that Henry was compelled to submit to a very humiliating treaty of peace. His death occurred a short time afterward (1189).* He was, undoubtedly, a very able monarch, and did much to establish the royal authority in opposition to the violence of the feudal barons, and to the exorbitant claims and pretensions of the clergy. He was a patron of learning and art, and many Gothic edifices of great splendor were erected during his reign. The simple arts of civilized life also made considerable progress during the same period. Henry was succeeded by *Richard*, afterward styled, on account of his martial courage, *Cœur de Lion*—the *Lion-hearted.*

20. Richard I., *Cœur de Lion* (*kyur duh le-ong*).—This monarch, being ambitious of military glory, embarked in the third crusade, and gained several important victories in the Holy Land over the renowned Saladin. On his return, he was arrested in Germany; and, by the order

* *See Note 7, end of the Section.*

19. What were the last events of Henry's reign? Date of his death? His character? His successor?

20. In what enterprise did Richard I. engage? What delayed his return? Who plotted against him?

of Henry VI., emperor of Germany, whom he had offended in Palestine, was confined in a dungeon, until his subjects paid a large sum of money for his deliverance (1194). During his absence, Philip, king of France, had seduced John, Richard's brother, from his allegiance; and both had plotted for the destruction of Richard, with the design of obtaining possession of his dominions.

21. The rest of Richard's reign was occupied in contention with Philip; and after much petty and indecisive war, he was mortally wounded in an attack upon a castle in France, held by a rebellious vassal (1199). The character of this monarch is one of the most romantic to be found in history, and displays a love of adventure, a military daring, and a strength and skill in feats of arms, unsurpassed in ancient or modern times. His people, oppressed by the taxes which were ruthlessly levied to carry out his useless projects, were yet proud of his fame, though he accomplished nothing for their benefit, nor advanced in any respect the prosperity of the country. He, indeed, spent but fourteen months in his kingdom during the ten years of his reign.

22. John, the brother of Richard, succeeded him, with the consent of the people, although *Arthur,* Geoffrey's son, was the rightful heir. This young prince, having fallen into the power of his uncle, was imprisoned, and, it is said, cruelly murdered by him. Philip, king of France, summoned John, as Duke of Normandy and Aquitaine (*ak-we-tain'*), to answer for this offence before a court of peers; but he refused to obey the summons, and was accordingly branded as a murderer, and adjudged to lose all his French territories, which in a few years Philip succeeded in conquering, and annexed them to his own dominions. Hence, John received the surname of *Lackland.*

---

21. When and how did his death occur? Describe his character.
22. Who succeeded Richard I.? What was the fate of Prince Arthur? What caused John to lose his French territories?

23. The Pope (Innocent III.) having caused *Stephen Langton*, a man of great talent and unblemished character, to be elected Archbishop of Canterbury, John refused to give his consent; whereupon Innocent placed the kingdom under an interdict, in consequence of which the churches were closed, the dead were refused Christian burial, and all other religious offices ceased. The king, still resisting, was formally excommunicated by Innocent, his people were absolved from their allegiance to him, and a solemn injunction was placed upon Philip of France to take possession of the kingdom. John at last submitted, and solemnly surrendered his dominions to the Pope, promising to hold them as his obedient vassal, and pay to him an annual tribute (1213). Philip, attempting to carry out his design of conquering England, sustained a great disaster in the loss of his fleet, which was attacked by the English and destroyed. This was the first naval action of importance between the English and French.

24. John's next contest was with the barons, who, under the leadership of Langton, determined to compel his assent to a series of propositions designed to diminish the royal prerogatives and secure the liberties of the subjects by established principles. This, John steadily refused, until a large army had been raised by the barons, and the city of London taken; when he finally submitted, and signed the famous **Magna Charta** (the Great Charter) at Run-ny-mede' (June 15, 1215).* One of the most important articles of this instrument was, that "no delay should take place in doing justice to every one; and no freeman should be taken or imprisoned, dispossessed of his free tenement, outlawed, or banished, *unless by the legal judgment of his peers.*" This famous charter, although granted to the

* *See Note* 8, *end of the Section.*

23. How was John compelled to submit to the Pope? What naval action with the French occurred?

24. What caused a contest with the barons? How was he compelled to sign *Magna Charta?* What important article was contained in it? How is this instrument regarded?

nobles only, protected the rights of all, and is justly regarded as the palladium of English liberty.*

25. John attempted afterward to resist the execution of this instrument, and levied an army of foreign mercenaries, by means of which he perpetrated the most atrocious cruelties, and compelled the authors and supporters of Magna Charta to flee the country. In the midst of the troubles which this excited, his death fortunately occurred, and thus saved the people from the misery and disaster of a prolonged civil war (1216). The character of John was despicable; cruelty, treachery, and cowardice being its prominent traits, unrelieved by a single redeeming virtue. He was succeeded by his son Henry, then in his tenth year.

26. Henry III.—During the first part of this reign, the country was governed by the guardians of the young king, and was much disturbed by wars with France. After attaining the age of majority, Henry had frequent disputes with the barons, who compelled him to confirm the Great Charter in the most solemn manner. They nevertheless continued to oppose the royal authority, in consequence of the unwise exactions of Henry, and his submission to the influence of foreigners, by whom the offices both of church and state were filled.

27. Through the efforts of *Simon de Mont'fort, Earl of Leicester* (*les'ter*), twenty-four barons were appointed by the great council to regulate the kingdom; and to this arrangement the king gave his assent (1258). A quarrel afterward arising between the nobles and the royalists, civil war ensued; and the king's forces were defeated at *Lew'es*, and he and his son, *Prince Edward*, were taken prisoners (1264). This placed the government mainly under the control of

* *See Notes* 9 *and* 10, *end of the Section.*

25. What was John's subsequent conduct? When did he die? What is said of his character? Who was his successor?

26. How was the government at first conducted under Henry? What led to dispute with the barons?

27. What was done through the influence of Simon de Montfort? What led to the battle of Lewes? What was its result? What did Leicester do to strengthen his influence? How is this considered?

Leicester, who, in order to strengthen his influence, summoned a council (now styled a *parliament*), and gave seats in it not only to the barons and knights, but to the *representatives of the boroughs, or towns* (1265). This is considered the first institution of the *House of Commons*—a branch of the English legislature, which, representing the will of the great body of the people, has ever proved the chief bulwark of the political and civil liberty of the country.

28. Prince Edward, having escaped from the confinement in which he had been kept by Leicester, raised an army; and, in the battle of *Eves'ham*, entirely defeated the forces of Leicester, who, with his eldest son, was among the slain (1265).* This placed Henry again on the throne; and Prince Edward having by prudent measures restored general tranquillity, by infusing a wiser and more popular spirit in the government, went on a crusade to the Holy Land. Before his return, his father died (1272), after the exceedingly long reign of fifty-six years. Henry was mild and pacific in his disposition, but possessed neither the talents nor force of character required to cope successfully with the difficulties of so disturbed a period. England, however, increased in wealth and influence during this reign, and widely extended her commercial relations with other countries.

29. Edward I.—The first important event of this reign was the conquest of Wales, which Edward undertook because *Lew-el'lyn*, prince of that country, refused to do him the homage which he owed as a vassal. The conquest was completed in 1283; Llewellyn being defeated and slain, and the government of Wales conferred upon the king's eldest son, called the "Prince of Wales"—a title ever afterward borne by the eldest son of the English sovereign. This event

* *See Note* 11, *end of the Section.*

28. How did Henry regain his throne? When did he die? What was his character? What progress was made during his reign?

29. What was the first important event of the reign of Edward I.? Why was Wales attacked? What was the result?

was followed by a cruel persecution of the Jews, who were at last, to the number of 16,000, banished from the country.

30. The wars with Scotland occupy nearly all the rest of this reign. *Alexander III.*, king of that country, having died without heirs, numerous competitors arose for the throne, the most noted of whom were *John Ba'li-ol and Robert Bruce*, the former being the *grandson* of a *second* daughter, and the latter a *son* of a *third* daughter, of David, the brother of a previous king. A furious dispute having arisen in the Scotch parliament, as to the succession, the matter was referred to the arbitration of Edward, who, in accordance with the unanimous opinion of all the great lawyers of Europe, decided in favor of Baliol, as being the most *direct* descendant, and he was accordingly placed upon the throne.

31. Edward, however, had meanly taken advantage of the circumstances to compel Baliol to take an oath of fealty to him, and thus to acknowledge himself a vassal to the English king; and he subsequently so harassed him by frequent and degrading commands, that Baliol was finally provoked into a refusal to comply, determining to make a stand for his own and his people's liberty. He was, however, unsuccessful; for Edward, invading Scotland with a large army, defeated Baliol in the battle of *Dunbar* (1296), took him prisoner, and carried him captive to England. He was afterward released, and died in obscurity, in France.

32. Scotland, although subdued for a time, soon found a noble champion in the renowned *William Wallace*, who defeated an English army of 40,000 men, near *Stirling*, and committed great ravages in the north of England (1297). The next year, however, Edward defeated Wallace, in the battle of *Fal'kirk*, and again established his government in Scotland. Wallace was never afterward able to gain a

30. What dispute led to the intervention of Edward I. in the affairs of Scotland? How was it settled?

31. What dishonorable course did Edward pursue? What led to war? What victory did the English gain? What became of Baliol?

32. What victory did Wallace gain? Where was he defeated? His fate?

decisive victory over his country's enemies; although he fought bravely for several years, until, having been betrayed by one of his own countrymen into the power of Edward, that remorseless king sent him to London; and, in order to intimidate the Scottish leaders, caused him to be executed (1305).

33. The people of Scotland, however, made another effort to regain their liberties under *Robert Bruce,* son of the competitor of Baliol, and now acknowledged the rightful heir to the throne; and the English were once more expelled from the country. But Bruce was defeated by one of Edward's generals; and the king himself marched to complete the conquest, but was suddenly taken ill, and died, at Carlisle (1307), enjoining with his last breath his son and successor, *Edward,* to prosecute the enterprise, until the Scots should be entirely subdued.

34. Edward I. had also carried on war with Philip IV. of France, who had formed an alliance with the Scottish king, Baliol. He confirmed, but with great reluctance, the Great Charter; and (in 1295) caused the deputies from the boroughs to meet the other representatives in Parliament, stating that "what concerns all should be approved by all,"—a principle that lies at the foundation of all civil and political freedom. Edward was one of the ablest and most successful monarchs that ever reigned. He was politic and warlike, popular on account of his majestic personal appearance, his military success, and his wise measures. His efforts to reform and establish the laws gained for him the appellation of the *English Justinian.*

35. Edward II., unmindful of his father's dying injunction, withdrew his forces from Scotland, and the people of that country gradually recovered their freedom. Hav-

---

33. What other attempt was made by the Scots to regain their freedom? How did Edward's reign end?

34. What were the other events of Edward's reign? His character?

35. What account is given of the battle of Bannockburn? What was the character of Edward II.? How and when did his reign end?

ing, at last, in the seventh year of his reign, invaded the country, he was disastrously defeated by Robert Bruce, in the famous battle of *Bannockburn* (1314). Of a character the very reverse of his father, Edward soon lost the respect of his people, and gave great offence to the nobles by surrendering himself to the influence of foreign favorites. Civil war finally broke out, in which *Isabella*, Edward's queen, took part against him; and being deserted by his subjects, he fell into the hands of his enemies, who kept him for some time in prison, but at last caused him to be put to death in the most shocking manner (1327). His son Edward had previously been declared king.

36. Edward III.—In consequence of the youth of the king, a council of regency was appointed to administer the government; but the real power was possessed by Isabella and her paramour (the infamous *Mor'ti-mer*, a prominent baron), both of whom had been accessory to the murder of the late king. This occasioned universal disgust and abhorrence; and the young king soon (1330) found means to punish the murderers of his father, Mortimer being seized and executed as a common criminal, and Isabella placed in confinement, where she was kept until her death.

37. Robert Bruce, who had fully achieved the independence of Scotland, left the throne to his son David, who at the time of his father's death was only five years old. Edward, taking advantage of this circumstance, endeavored to depose the young king, so as to place *Edward Baliol*, son of the former king, on the throne, he having sworn fealty to the English monarch. This the Scots resisted, but were severely defeated by Edward in the great battle of *Halidown Hill* (1333), and were again brought into subjection to the English crown, David fleeing his country, and taking refuge in France.

---

36. Mention the first events of the next reign. What was done with Mortimer and Isabella?

37. How was Scotland again subdued by the English?

38. Edward's next object of ambition was to acquire possession of the throne of France, circumstances seeming to favor that project; for *Charles IV.*, the king of that country, having died without heirs, the nation had placed his cousin *Philip VI.* on the throne. But Edward, through his mother Isabella, was a more direct descendant; and on this ground, notwithstanding that the ancient laws of France (*the Salic law—i. e.*, law of the Salian Franks) excluded females from the throne, he claimed his right to the succession, and proceeded to vindicate it by force of arms. Having destroyed the French fleet in a great naval battle (1340), he invaded France, and with forces far inferior to those of Philip, defeated him in the memorable battle of Crecy (*kres'e*). This battle is made particularly interesting, not only by the greatness of the victory, but by the fact, that in it cannon were for the first time employed by the English,* and also as the occasion on which the king's son Edward, afterward styled the *Black Prince* (from the color of his armor), commenced his brilliant military career (1346). [*See Note* 12, *end of Section.*]

39. Edward next took *Calais* (*kal'is*), after a long siege; and expelling all the inhabitants, peopled it anew with English. This city, regarded as the key of France, the English retained for nearly two centuries. While Edward was thus engaged, the Scottish people had again placed David Bruce upon the throne, who, invading England, was defeated and taken prisoner in the battle of *Neville's Cross*, near *Dur'ham* (1346). This victory was due to the activity and heroism of *Phi-lip'pa*, Edward's queen, who, previous to the action, rode through the ranks of the army, exhort-

* Firearms appear to have been used by the Chinese in 618 B. C., nearly two thousand years before the battle of Crecy. They were also used in different forms in India; and, as early as the eighth century, by the Saracens. The invention of gunpowder is generally attributed to Friar Bacon who in 1270 announced its composition; but it was not till 1320 that the proper mode of making it was understood. King Edward's cannon were only of the size of duck-guns.

38. Why did Edward III. claim the French throne? What battles were fought? What gives particular interest to the battle of Crecy?

39. What other events occurred in France and England about the same time?

ing every man to do his duty, and repel the invaders of their country. Having caused David to be lodged in the Tower, she joined her husband at Calais.

40. A truce was concluded, a short time afterward, between the French and English monarchs, which was protracted by a dreadful plague that swept away many thousands of the people, not only in England, but in most of the other countries of Europe. Philip, king of France, having been succeeded by *John* (1350), and the country being distracted by factious dissensions, Edward resolved again to attack it; and for this purpose dispatched the Black Prince, with an army, to Guienne, while he himself was to make an incursion by way of Calais. The former penetrated into the heart of France with an army of 12,000 men; but at *Poitiers* (*poi-tērz'*) found himself confronted by a splendidly equipped force of 60,000 men, commanded by John in person. Desirous to retreat, the Prince offered to restore all his conquests and give up the war; but John declining any terms but unconditional surrender, a battle ensued, which, owing to the skill and valor of the Black Prince, resulted in the entire overthrow of the French, John himself being made a prisoner (1356).

41. John, in accordance with the manners of the times, was treated by his conqueror with the most chivalric courtesy and respect; but was kept in captivity at London till ransomed by his subjects (1360), when he resumed the throne; but, not being able to fulfil the terms of his release, he returned to London, where he died the next year (1364). Under his successor, war was renewed between the two countries; but Edward gained no permanent advantage, although the Black Prince manifested all the qualities of an able and enterprising general. The latter, however, sullied his fair fame by causing an inhuman butchery of all

40. What protracted the truce? Give an account of the battle of Poitiers.
41. What further account is given of King John? What was done by the Black Prince? When did his death occur? His character? Who succeeded Edward III.?

the inhabitants of one of the French towns after it had surrendered to his arms. Worn out by incessant toil and exposure, he died (1376), universally esteemed, not only for his heroism and skill as a military commander, but for the generosity, moderation, and amiability which shed still greater lustre on his character. The king survived him only a year; and was succeeded (1377) by *Richard*, the son of the Black Prince, then only 11 years of age.

42. Edward III. was a wise and powerful monarch, popular not only for his military success and prudent administration, but for his many personal accomplishments. He took no important steps without consulting his parliament, refused to pay tribute to the Pope as a temporal prince, to which John had meanly consented; and so greatly encouraged trade, that he has been called the "Father of English commerce." Wool was the chief article of export, and an extensive trade was carried on with the ports of the Baltic. During this reign, also, commenced the FIRST ERA OF ENGLISH LITERATURE, the earliest known work in prose, the *Travels of Sir John Mandeville*, being published about 1360. The famous *John Wickliffe*, and the poets *Chaucer* (*chaw'ser*) and *Gower*, also flourished during a part of this reign.

43. Richard II.—The first part of this reign is noted for an insurrection of the lower orders of the people, occasioned by the condition of serfdom in which they were kept, and the miseries to which they were subjected by the unjust laws of the period, and by the oppressions of the wealthier classes. The immediate occasion of the outbreak was the imposition of a tax on every person above fifteen years of age, and the indignity with which a young maiden, the daughter of one *Wat Tyler* (or Wat, the tiler), was treated by the brutal tax-gatherers. This so incensed her father that he struck the officer dead with his hammer;

42. What was the character of Edward III.? What is said of his administration? Of commerce? Of literature?
43 What caused the insurrection of Wat Tyler?

and, being joined by his friends and neighbors, raised a revolt, and placed himself at the head of the insurgents.

44. The populace to the number of 100,000 men assembled at *Blackheath*, near London, broke into the city, burned the palaces and mansions of the nobles, plundered the warehouses, and murdered the archbishop and many other persons of distinction. The king having entered upon a conference with Wat Tyler, the latter, it is said, acted with so much insolence that *Wal'worth*, the Mayor of London, struck him with his sword; whereupon Tyler was immediately dispatched by others of the king's retinue. Richard, to quell the mutiny, acceded to the demands of the insurgents, and the latter dispersed; but the nobility having raised a large army, the ringleaders were apprehended and executed, and the concessions of the king were annulled (1381). This made Richard very unpopular with the common people, for their demands had been reasonable and just; the most important being that *villenage* or slavery should be abolished, the people paying a fixed rent for their lands, instead of being bound to do such services as their feudal lords might require. Serfdom, however, did not entirely cease in England until more than four centuries after the date of these events.

45. Richard, although displaying much spirit and courage in these times of disturbance, was afterward characterized by indolence and want of capacity. He quarrelled with the great officers and distinguished nobles of his court, and gave his entire confidence to unworthy favorites. He had banished his cousin Henry, son of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, for being concerned in a duel; and, on the death of the duke, proceeded to dispossess Henry of his estates and annex them to those of the crown. Henry,

---

44. What were the chief incidents of this rebellion? How was it subdued? What made Richard unpopular with the lower orders? What were their demands? How long did serfdom continue?

45. What was the character of Richard? What led to his deposition? What distinguished reformer and poet flourished during this reign?

however, taking advantage of Richard's absence in Ireland, landed with a small force in England; and so unpopular was the king, that the invader was soon joined by a force of 60,000 men. Richard was accordingly deposed (1399), and, it is said, was soon afterward murdered. During this reign Wickliffe, called by some the "morning star of the Reformation," translated the Bible. He and his doctrines were much favored by John of Gaunt.* Chaucer, styled the "Father of English poetry," also wrote his celebrated poem, "The Canterbury Tales."

46. Henry IV., the first of the house of Lancaster, had no legal right to the throne, being a descendant of the *fourth* son of Edward III., while *Edmund Mortimer* was living, who was descended from the *third* son of the same monarch; hence this reign was little else than a series of insurrections. The most formidable was that excited by the Earl of Northumberland and his son, *Harry Percy*, surnamed *Hotspur*, on account of his fiery temper. This young nobleman was distinguished for the battle which, in the previous reign, he had fought with the Scots at Otterburn (1388), and on which was founded the famous ballad of "*Chevy Chase*." He had also greatly aided Henry in his efforts to obtain possession of the kingdom; but, afterward quarrelling with him, joined his forces to those of the Scots under *Douglas* and the Welsh under *Owen Glen'dower*, with the object of placing Mortimer on the throne.

47. A terrific battle was fought near *Shrewsbury* (1403); but the rebels were defeated, and their brave leader, Percy, was slain. The king and his son took part in the battle, and signalized themselves by their feats of strength and

* Wickliffe advocated many of the reforms and doctrines afterward preached by Luther and his followers, in the 16th century. The followers of Wickliffe were called *Lollards*.

46. Why had Henry IV. no legal right to the throne? What formidable insurrection broke out? What was Percy called? For what was he distinguished? What gives interest to the battle of Otterburn?

47. Describe the battle of Shrewsbury. How did religious persecution commence? By whom was Henry IV. succeeded?

daring. Henry, in order to gain the favor of the Church, caused severe laws to be passed against the Lollards, and one of them was condemned and burnt at the stake (1401). This was the first English subject that was put to death on account of his religious opinions. Henry IV. died in 1413, and was succeeded by his son, *Henry V.*

48. **Henry V.,** during his father's life, had been distinguished for his riotous and disorderly conduct; and had, on one occasion, been committed to prison by the chief-justice, whom he had insulted for indicting one of his dissolute companions. On his accession, however, he dismissed his profligate associates and thoroughly reformed his life, retaining in office the wise ministers of his father, including the chief-justice by whom he had been so fearlessly punished. Among his first acts was the persecution of the Lollards, now a numerous party; and their leader, *Lord Cobham,* with many others, was condemned and executed.

49. Henry next made an attack upon France, which he hoped to subdue; because, during the lunacy of its king, Charles VI., it was distracted by disputes as to who should have the regency. Having taken *Har'fleur,* after a long siege, he marched against the French army, four times as numerous as his own, and totally routed it in the memorable battle of *Ag'in-court* (1415), 10,000 of the French being slain and 14,000 taken prisoners; while, it is said, the English lost only 40. After some other successes, a treaty was concluded (1420) at *Troyes* (*trwah*), by which Henry was to marry the king's daughter Catharine, and to succeed to the French throne on the death of Charles, and the two kingdoms were to be united. Two years afterward, he and his queen entered Paris with all the pageantry of a royal progress, dazzling the inhabitants with the wealth and magnificence of their future sovereigns; but in a few months

48. What was the character of Henry V.? How did he commence his reign?
49. Why did he invade France? What victory did he gain? What treaty was made? When did his death occur? Who was his successor?

death stopped short the triumphant career of Henry, and put an end to all his schemes of vainglory and ambition (1422). He left one son, *Henry*, less than a year old.

50. Henry VI., at his accession, was proclaimed, by the Parliament, King of France as well as of England; and his uncle, the *Duke of Bedford*, the most accomplished prince of his age, was appointed Protector of the kingdom, and guardian of the infant king. The French king, Charles VI., having expired a few months after the death of Henry V., his son Charles VII., an energetic prince, asserted his claim to the throne in opposition to that of the English king; and a war of several years ensued, in which the French, chiefly by the heroism of the wonderful *Joan of Arc*, were enabled to recover their country from the possession of the English, and place their own king, Charles VII., on the throne (1437).

51. Henry, on arriving at the age of majority, showed neither the capacity nor the disposition to take control of the government. He married *Margaret of Anjou*, a princess whose accomplishments and masculine energy of character were well suited to supply the defects and weaknesses of her husband.* But the incapacity of the king encouraged the rival house of York to lay claim to the throne, in behalf of *Richard, Duke of York*, the descendant of Edward's third son, who was a man of ability and valor, as well as immense wealth. In this pretension Richard was upheld by the greatest nobleman of the kingdom, the renowned *Earl of Warwick* (*war'rick*), afterward called the *King-maker*, whose means and possessions were so extensive that 30,000 retainers were constantly supported by him in his various castles and manors.† An insurrection of the lower orders,

* *See Note* 13, *end of the Section.* † *See Note* 14.

50. What led to a war with France during the regency of Bedford? How did the French regain their possessions?

51. What was Henry's character? Whom did he marry? Her character? What led to the claim of Richard, duke of York? By whom was he supported? What is said of Warwick? Give an account of Jack Cade's rebellion.

under a leader named *Jack Cade*, broke out about this time, but was soon put down, Cade being slain (1450).

52. The king's government being very unpopular, Richard raised an army, ostensibly for the redress of grievances; and in the battle of *St. Albans* (*awl'banz*) defeated the royalists (1455), and took the king prisoner. This was the first battle in that great civil war styled the "War of the Roses" (from the badges of the parties, the Lancastrians wearing a *red rose* and the Yorkists a *white rose*). This war lasted thirty years, was signalized by twelve pitched battles, and almost annihilated the ancient nobility of England. The next year after the battle of St. Albans, the king was restored to his authority; but the contest soon broke out with increased fury, and in the battle of *Northampton* the king was defeated and taken prisoner by the Earl of Warwick (1460), after which the Duke of York was proclaimed the lawful successor of Henry, and *Edward*, the son of Henry and Margaret, was excluded from the throne.

53. The queen, however, fled to Scotland, and with the aid of the northern barons raised a large army, with which, in the battle of *Wakefield*, she defeated the Duke of York, who was taken prisoner and put to death (1460). A few weeks after this, Margaret defeated the Earl of Warwick and regained possession of the king; but Edward, son of the late Duke of York, joining his forces with those of Warwick, compelled her to retreat, and, triumphantly entering London, was proclaimed king, under the title of *Edward IV.* (1461).

54. Edward IV.—Queen Margaret, however, was not subdued. She succeeded in collecting an army of 60,000 men in the northern counties, with which she encountered the forces of Edward and Warwick, in the terrific battle of

52. What led to the battle of St. Albans? Its result? What civil war was commenced by it? What is said of this war? What led to the battle of Northampton? What were its consequences?

53. What led to the battle of Wakefield? What was its result? How did Edward IV. obtain the throne?

54. What other efforts were made by Margaret? With what results?

Tow'ton; but was totally defeated (1461), and compelled, with her husband, to take refuge in Scotland. During the next three years, Margaret made but one effort to recover the lost kingdom, but was defeated and compelled to flee to France; a short time after which, Henry fell into the possession of the king, and was confined in the Tower at London.

55. Edward's vices, however, and his marriage with Elizabeth Gray, a Lancastrian knight's widow, upon whose relatives the infatuated monarch showered all his favors, so disgusted the brave and high-spirited Warwick that he deserted the cause of Edward, and formed an alliance with Margaret. So popular was this nobleman, that in a few days he raised an army of 60,000 men, compelled Edward to flee, and placed Henry again on the throne (1471). Disaster soon followed this great victory; for Edward landing in England with a small force, was soon joined by an immense army, and regaining possession of London, once more made prisoner the hapless Henry, and marched against Warwick, who had taken a position at *Bar'net,* near London.

56. The king-maker, deserted by his son-in-law, the Duke of Clarence, brother to Edward, who with a large force went over to the Yorkists, was defeated in the battle of Barnet, and slain (1471); and, a fortnight afterward, Edward gained a decisive victory over the forces of Margaret at *Tewks'bury,* the latter, with her son Edward, being among the prisoners. The young prince was cruelly put to death by the Dukes of Clarence and Gloster, brothers of Edward IV., and Margaret was imprisoned in the Tower. A few days after this battle, Henry expired in the Tower, according to general belief, by the murderous hand of the cruel and wicked Duke of Gloster. Queen Margaret afterward found a refuge in France, where she died (1482).

55. How did Edward IV. disgust the Earl of Warwick? How did Henry regain the throne? How did he again lose it?

56. Where was Warwick defeated and slain? Where was Margaret defeated? What followed the battle of Tewksbury?

57. Edward, being now secure on the throne, gave himself up to every species of vice and debauchery. He caused his brother, Duke of Clarence, to be put to death on a charge of treason, being probably instigated to this crime by his younger brother, *Richard*, Duke of Gloster, who was noted for his designing character and unrelenting ambition Edward was about to engage in a war with France, when he was seized with a distemper, of which he expired (1483). During this reign, William Caxton introduced into England the art of printing, the first printed book being "*The Game and Playe of Chesse*" (1474).

58. Edward V., the eldest son of Edward IV., a youth of twelve years, was proclaimed king; and his uncle, the Duke of Gloster, was appointed Protector. This artful and wicked prince, obtaining possession of the young king and his brother Richard, placed them in the Tower; and caused Lord Rivers, their maternal uncle, and Lord Hastings, with several other distinguished persons, to be executed on a charge of treason. He then gave out that the young princes were illegitimate; and contrived that some of his friends should solicit him to take the crown, which, with pretended reluctance, he accepted, and held under the title of *Richard III.* (1483).

59. Richard III.—The first act of this wicked usurper was to destroy the two young princes, who are supposed to have been smothered in their beds, in the Tower, by his orders. But he was not permitted quietly to enjoy the fruits of his crimes. A conspiracy was formed against him by his former friend, the Duke of Buckingham; but it failed, and Buckingham was seized and executed. The nation, however, soon found a deliverer in *Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond*, the last heir of the house of Lancaster,

57. State the other events of Edward's reign. When did his death occur? Who introduced the art of printing? What was the first book printed in England?

58. Who was the immediate successor of Edward IV.? How did Richard, Duke of Gloster, obtain the throne?

59. What was the fate of the two young princes? Of the Duke of Buckingham? How was this reign terminated? Who was proclaimed king at Bosworth?

who, landing at *Milford Haven*, in Wales, was soon joined by sufficient forces to cope with those of the usurper. An engagement took place at *Bosworth Field*, in which the forces of Richard were defeated, and he himself, fighting desperately in the conflict, was slain. Richmond was proclaimed king on the battle-field, by the title of *Henry VII.* (1485). [*See Note* 15, *end of Section.*]

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

9th Century.
- 827. **Egbert** unites the Saxon kingdoms. Commencement of the English monarchy.
- 871. Accession of **Alfred the Great.** Reigned 30 years.

11th Century.
- 1013. **Sweyn**, the first Danish king. Reigned about 6 months.
- 1017. **Canute the Great,** sole monarch of England. Reigned 19 years.
- 1042. **Edward the Confessor.** Saxon line restored. Reigned 24 years.
- 1066. **Harold** declared king. Reigned about one year.
- 1066. Battle of Hastings. Harold defeated by **William (I.) of Normandy.**
- 1087. **William II.** (Rufus). Reigned 13 years.

12th Century.
- 1100. **Henry I.** (Beauclerk). Reigned 35 years.
- 1135. **Stephen** (of Blois). Defeated by Matilda (1139).
- 1154. **Henry II.** (Plantagenet). Reigned 35 years.
- 1170. Death of Thomas à Becket.
- 1172. Conquest of Ireland.
- 1189. **Richard I.** (Cœur de Lion.) Ransomed by his subjects (1194). Reigned 10 years.
- 1199. **John** (Lackland). Reigned 17 years.

13th Century.
- 1215. *Magna Charta* signed.
- 1216. **Henry III.** Reigned 56 years.
- 1264. Battle of Lewes. Henry and Prince Edward made prisoners.
- 1265. House of Commons instituted by Leicester.
- " Battle of Evesham.
- 1272. **Edward I.** Reigned 35 years.
- 1283. Conquest of Wales. Prince Lewellyn executed.
- 1296. Battle of Dunbar; the Scots defeated.
- 1298. Battle of Falkirk; Wallace defeated.

14th Century.

1305. Wallace taken prisoner and executed.
1307. **Edward II.** Reigned 20 years.
1314. Battle of Bannockburn. Edward defeated by Robert Bruce
1327. **Edward III.** Reigned 50 years.
1333. Battle of Halidown Hill; the Scots defeated.
1346. Battle of Crecy; the French defeated by Edward III.
" Battle of Neville's Cross; Scots defeated.
1356. Battle of Poitiers; French defeated by the Black Prince.
1376. Death of the Black Prince.
1377. **Richard II.** Reigned 12 years.
1381. Insurrection of Wat Tyler.
1388. Battle of Otterburn, between Percy (Hotspur) and Douglas.
1399. **Henry IV.** Reigned 14 years.

15th Century.

1401. A Lollard clergyman burnt at the stake.
1403. Battle of Shrewsbury. Percy defeated and slain.
1413. **Henry V.** Reigned 9 years.
1415. Battle of Agincourt.
1420. Treaty of Troyes.
1422. **Henry VI.** Reigned 39 years.
1450. Jack Cade's rebellion.
1455. Battle of St. Albans; the royalists defeated.
1460. Battle of Northampton. King Henry taken prisoner.
1461. Battle of Wakefield. Duke of York captured and slain.
1461. **Edward IV.** proclaimed king. Reigned 22 years.
" Battle of Towton. Queen Margaret defeated by Edward and Warwick.
1471. Battle of Barnet. Warwick slain. King Henry assassinated.
" Battle of Tewksbury. Queen Margaret defeated, and Prince Edward assassinated.
1474. Art of Printing introduced into England.
1482. Death of Queen Margaret, in France.
1483. **Edward V.** Reigned 74 days.
1483. **Richard III.** Reigned 2 years.
1485. Battle of Bosworth. **Henry VII.** proclaimed king

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. State all you can of Alfred the Great and his successes 157–159
2. Of Edward the Elder, Athelstan, and Ethelred. 157–158–159
3. Of Sweyn, Edmund Ironside, and Canute 158–159
4. Of Harold Harefoot, Hardicanute, and Edward the Confessor 159
5. Give a history of the Danish invasions of England 147–148–157
6. State what you can of Harold and his career 159–160
7. Name, in chronological order, the most important events from the accession of Egbert to the battle of Hastings 184
8. Give an account of William I. and the events in his reign 160–161–189
9. Of William II. and the events in his reign 161–162–189
10. Of Henry I., surnamed Beauclerk, and the events in his reign 162
11. Of the contest between Stephen and Matilda 162
12. How did Henry Plantaganet get to be king of England? 162–163
13. Name the principal events in the reign of Henry II. 163–164–165–166
14. Give the narrative in relation to Thomas à Becket 163–164
15. Give the early history of Ireland 165
16. What account can you give of Queen Eleanor 166
17. Sketch the character and career of Richard Cœur de Lion 166–167
18. Of King John (Lackland) and the events in his reign 167–168–169
19. Give the history and character of Magna Charta 168–169–172
20. Sketch the character and reign of Henry III 169–170
21. Name the principal events in the reign of Edward I. 170–171–172
22. Give an account of Robert Bruce, his successes and misfortunes 172–173
23. Of Edward II. and his reign 172–173
24. Name the principal events in the reign of Edward III 173–174–175–176
25. Name, in chronological order, the principal events from the battle of Hastings to the battle of Poitiers 184–185
26. Give an account of the Wat Tyler insurrection 176–177
27. What were the other events in the reign of Richard II.? 177–178
28. Give an account of the contest between Henry IV. and Mortimer 178–179
29. Sketch the character and reign of Henry V 179–180
30. What contest for territory took place during the next reign? 180
31. Give an account of the contest 180
32. State what you can of Queen Margaret 180–181–182
33. Relate the facts in the career of the Earl of Warwick 180–181–182
34. Name, in chronological order, the principal events from the battle of Poitiers to the battle of Barnet 185
35. What battles were fought during the reign of Henry VI.? 181
36. What was the result in each of the three battles? 181
37. Give a sketch of the character of Edward IV 182–183
38. Give an account of the career of the Duke of Gloster (Richard III.) 183–184
39. Name, in chronological order, the principal events from the battle of Barnet to the battle of Bosworth 185
40. What account can you give of Jack Cade's rebellion? 180–181
41. Of the Black Prince and his career? 174–175–176
42. Of William Wallace, his success and defeat? 171
43. Of Stephen Langton, Archbishop of Canterbury? 168
44. Of the battle of Hastings, its causes and consequences? 166
45. Name, in chronological order, the important events in the history of England during the Middle Ages 184–185

NOTES.

1. Alfred the Great (p. 157, ¶ 1).—"Alfred is the most perfect character in history. He is a singular instance of a prince who has become a hero of romance, who, as such, has had countless imaginary exploits attributed to him, but to whose character romance has done no more than justice, and who appears in exactly the same light in history and in fable. No other man on record has ever so thoroughly united all the virtues both of the ruler and of the private man. In no other man on record were so many virtues disfigured by so little alloy. A saint without superstition, a scholar without ostentation, a warrior all whose wars were fought in the defense of his country, a conqueror whose laurels were never stained by cruelty, a prince never cast down by adversity, never lifted up to insolence in the day of triumph, there is no other name in history to compare with his."—*Freeman.—The Norman Conquest.*

2. Battle of Hastings (p. 160, ¶ 5).—"Perceiving that open attacks were of no avail, the Duke, after having restored order, had recourse to one of his favorite stratagems. He ordered a general attack on the positions of the English, by his whole line, but added secret instructions that, in the heat of the *melée*, his soldiers should again retreat; and on this last occasion Harold could no longer restrain the impetuosity of his troops. Of a frank and noble spirit, their ardent hope of victory carried them away. They fell into the snare. The Normans, in compact order, turned upon their pursuers, who had broken rank, and seizing the advantage, pierced their squares on all sides, and made a cruel butchery. Yet, in spite of fortune and of death, the English fled not, but throwing themselves into small squares, sustained the fierce shocks of the enemy. Other disasters, however were at hand. The Duke, in giving the signal to wheel and attack, ordered out his heavy horse and his reserve, and it was in vain that the English still fought like men who beheld the victory unjustly snatched out of their hands. Thrice with his cavalry he charged the English wings, while clouds of arrows darkened all the plain. From that moment the battle was decided, for Harold had already fallen. Towards the evening, while still unwearied by sustaining his army with his voice and hand, he was struck with an arrow through the left eye into the brain, and fell dead upon the field. His two brothers, Gurth and Leofwin, were also slain, with nearly all the nobles and knights in the battle. The old Anglo-Saxon heroism, worthy of a better fate, set in that dark eclipse; the battle-ax no longer availed against the Norman spear. Certain it is, however, that there was neither rout nor flight, so great was the despairing energy with which the English fought. King Harold's army was exterminated but not vanquished, and England lay paralyzed at the feet of the conqueror."—*Roscoe.—Lives of the Kings of England.*

3. Burial of William the Conqueror (p. 161, ¶ 7) —"They brought the body to St. Stephen's Monastery, and took orders for the royal sepulture. The grave was dug deep in the presbytery, between the altar and choir. All the bishops and abbots of Normandy assembled. After mass had been sung, Gilbert, bishop of Evreux, addressed the people; and when he had magnified the fame of the departed, he asked them all to join in prayer for the sinful soul, and that each would pardon any injury he might have received from the monarch. A loud voice was now heard from the crowd. A poor man stood up before the bier—Asceline, the son of Arthur—who forbade that William's corpse should be received into the ground he had usurped by reckless violence. The bishop forthwith instituted an inquiry into the charge. They called up witnesses, and the fact having been ascer-

tained, they treated with Asceline and paid the debt, the price of that narrow little plot of earth, the last bed of the Conqueror. Asceline withdrew his ban; but as the swollen corpse sank into the grave, it burst, filling the sacred edifice with corruption. The obsequies were hurried through, and thus was William the Conquerer gathered to his fathers, with loathing, disgust, and horror."—*Palgrave. —History of Normandy.*

4. The Death of William Rufus (p. 162, ¶ 8).—"It was almost night, when a poor charcoal burner, passing through the New Forest with his cart, came upon the solitary body of a dead man, shot with an arrow in the breast, and still bleeding. He got it into his cart. It was the body of the king. Shaken and tumbled, with its red beard all whitened with lime and clotted with blood, it was driven in the cart by the charcoal burner next day to Winchester Cathedral, where it was received and buried. * * * * * By whose hand the Red King really fell, and whether that hand dispatched the arrow to his breast by accident or design, is known only to God. Some think his brother may have caused him to be killed; but the Red King had made so many enemies, both among priests and people, that suspicion may reasonably rest upon a less unnatural murderer. Men knew no more than that he was found dead in the New Forest, which the suffering people had regarded as a doomed ground for his race."—*Dickens.*

5. Fall of Tara (p. 165, ¶ 16).—"In the reign of this monarch, the ancient Hall or Court of Tara, in which, for so many centuries, the Triennial Councils of the nation had been held, saw for the last time (A. D. 554), her kings and nobles assembled within its precincts; and the cause of the desertion of this long-honored seat of legislation shows to what an enormous height the power of the ecclesiastical order had then risen. Some fugitive criminal, who had fled for sanctuary to the monastery of St. Ruan, having been dragged forcibly from thence to Tara, and there put to death, the holy abbot and his monks cried aloud against the sacrilegious violation; and proceeding in solemn procession to the palace, pronounced a curse upon its walls. 'From that day,' says the annalist, 'no king ever sat again at Tara;' and a poet who wrote about that period, while mourning evidently over the fall of this seat of grandeur, ventures but to say, 'It is not with my will Teamor is deserted.' A striking memorial of the church's triumph on the occasion, was preserved in the name of distinction given to the monastery, which was ever after, in memory of this malediction, called 'The Monastery of the Curses of Ireland.'"—*Moore's History of Ireland.*

6. Learning in Ireland (p. 165, ¶ 16).—"In order to convey to the reader any adequate notion of the apostolical labors of that crowd of learned missionaries whom Ireland sent forth, in the course of this [the sixth] century, to all parts of Europe, it would be necessary to transport him to the scenes of their respective missions; to point out the difficulties they had to encounter, and the admirable patience and courage with which they surmounted them; to show how inestimable was the service they rendered, during that dark period, by keeping the dying embers of learning awake, and how gratefully their names are enshrined in the records of foreign lands, though but faintly, if at all, remembered in their own. It was, indeed, then, as it has been ever since, the peculiar fate of Ireland, that both in talent, and the fame that honorably rewards it, her sons prospered far more triumphantly abroad than at home; for while, of the many who confined their labors to their native land, but few have left those remembrances behind which constitute fame, those who carried the light of their talent and zeal to other lands, not only founded a lasting name for themselves, but made their country also a partaker of their renown, winning for her that noble title of the

Island of the Holy and the Learned, which throughout the night that overhung all the rest of Europe, she so long and proudly wore."—*Moore's History of Ireland.*

7. Death of Henry II. (p. 166, ¶ 19).—"When the French ambassadors were ushered into his presence, sick and bed-ridden as he was, and he inquired the name of Richard's supporters (amnesty for whom was a condition of the treaty), the first name on the list was that of his beloved John. On hearing his name, he was seized with a sort of convulsive movement; he sat up in bed, and gazing around with searching and haggard look, he exclaimed, 'Can it be true that John, my heart, the son of my choice, he whom I have doted on more than all the rest, and my love for whom has brought on me all my woes, has fallen away from me?' They replied that it was even so; that nothing could be more true. 'Well, then,' he said, falling back on his bed, and turning his face to the wall, 'henceforward let all go on as it may; I no longer care for myself or for the world.'"—*Michelet.*

8. Runnymede (p. 168, ¶ 24).—"This Holy Land of English liberty is about half way from Odiham to London, and it is a grassy plain, of about one hundred and sixty acres, on the south bank of the Thames, between Staines and Windsor. Various derivations are given for the name; that of the antiquary Leland affirms it to have been so called from the Saxon word *Rune*, or council, and to mean the Council Meadow, having been used in the old Saxon times as a place of assembly. No column or memorial marks the spot where the primary triumph of the English constitution was achieved."—*Creasy.—Rise and Progress of the English Constitution.*

9. Serfdom in England (p. 169, ¶ 24).—"Of the two millions of human beings who inhabited England in the reign of John, a very large number, probably nearly half, were in a state of slavery. Those who are disposed to listen to tales about 'Merrie England' and 'the good old times' should remember this fact. At the commencement of true English history, we start with the laborers in abject wretchedness. The narrative of the changes in their social and political positions thenceforward to modern times is certainly a history of progressive amelioration, though lamentably slow and imperfect."—*Creasy.*

10. Magna Charta (p. 169, ¶ 24).—"How is it possible that at least a third of the provisions of the Charter should have related to promises and guaranties made in behalf of the people, if the aristocracy had only aimed at obtaining that which would benefit themselves? We have only to read the Great Charter in order to be convinced that the right of all three orders of the nation (clergy, nobles, and common people), are equally respected and promoted."—*Guizot.*

11. Defeat and Death of Leicester (p. 170, ¶ 28).—"The Earl moved to a place on the Avon, called Evesham, and with great gladness saw his own banners coming over the hills from Kenilworth. These, however, turned out to be the captured standards of his son; and when he looked to other points of the compass, he saw glittering files of spears advancing in converging lines toward the position he held. Bitterly, as he saw this sight, did he cry, 'It was I who taught them the art of war.' But bitter words were of little use at such a crisis. Having put his men in array of battle, he knelt down to say a short prayer, and then took the sacrament, as pious knights always did before going to battle. The fortunes of the day went against him from the first, but he resolved to sell his life dearly. His last stand was made on the top of a hill, where he gathered round him in a solid circle some of his bravest men. When his horse was killed, he fought on foot; but the circle at length yielded to the pressure of charges from every side, and brave old Leicester, a benefactor of the English

people second to none, fell on his last field. His head and limbs were brutally chopped off, and the horrible fragments were sent as a present to the wife of his greatest foe."—*Collier.—Pictures of English History.*

12. The Black Prince at Crecy (p. 174, ¶ 38).—"The young Prince of Wales had been knighted only a month before; and Edward, who was watching the battle from a wind-mill, resolved to leave to his son the glory of victory. Although the prince was then hard pressed by the French, the king refused to send succor to his assistance, saying, 'Let the child win his spurs, and let the day be his.' * * * The whole French army took to flight, and was followed and put to the sword, without mercy, till the darkness of the night put an end to the pursuit. The king, on his return to the camp, flew into the arms of the Prince of Wales, and exclaimed, 'My brave son! persevere in your honorable course; you are my son, for valiantly have you acquitted yourself to-day, and worthy are you of a crown.' From this time the young prince became the terror of the French, by whom he was called the Black Prince, from the color of the armor which he wore on that day."—*Hume's History of England.*

13. Margaret of Anjou (p. 180, ¶ 51).—"When Henry was twenty-three years old, his council suggested that it was time he should marry; and every one foresaw that the queen, whoever she might be, would possess the control over the weak mind of her husband. The choice of Henry was directed toward Margaret the daughter of Réné, King of Sicily and Duke of Anjou. In personal beauty she was thought superior to most women, in mental capacity equal to most men of the age. The marriage was agreed on. Margaret landed at Portchester, was married to Henry at Tichfield, and crowned May 30, 1444."—*Lingard.*

14. The King-Maker (p. 180, ¶ 51).—"During the whole extent of England's history, under the Saxon, Dane, or Norman, the mightiest of her barons was the king-maker, Warwick. It was his power that made Edward king, and his that unmade him. It was his power that dethroned King Henry, and it was his that restored him. Each monarch in turn became the captive and prisoner of this great earl. With princely revenues and estates, Warwick's vassals were an army; and some notion may be formed of the force he could, at will, bring armed into the field, from the fact that he is said to have daily feasted, at his numerous manors and castles, upward of thirty thousand persons. The other nobles possessed, in their degree, the power of an armed feudal retinue, ready to follow their lord to battle in any cause of his choosing; and thus there was a baronial power of which modern England shows only the shadow. As the traveler now beholds the stately walls of Warwick Castle, he can scarce, with all the impulse given to his imagination, call up the vision of the armed hosts which, some three hundred years ago, could, at a moment's summons, be gathered there in battle array."—*Reed.—Lectures on English History.*

15. Battle of Bosworth (p. 184, ¶ 59).—"The battle which brought to a close the famous War of the Roses, was fought on Redmore Plain, about a mile to the south of Market-Bosworth in Leicestershire. From this town it received the name by which it is most generally called—the battle of Bosworth. The leaders of the war were Richard Plantagenet, a little sharp-faced man, with one shoulder somewhat higher than the other, from which slight deformity he was branded by his enemies with the name of Hunchback; and Henry Tudor, or Tydder, a gray-eyed cautious man, with long yellow hair. The former represented the House of York; the latter, the House of Lancaster."—*Collier.*

SECTION IV.

France during the Middle Ages.

Extending from the Founding of the Capetian Dynasty (987) *to the End of the Reign of Louis XI.* (1483).

1. Hugh Capet.—From the accession of Hugh Cap'et (or *ka'pet*), for about two centuries, the dominions of the French kings had but little extent, having been usurped, during the previous weak reigns, by the ambitious and turbulent nobles. The most important of these minor governments were *Brit'tany*, in the northwest; *Normandy*, in the north; *Aquitaine*, or *Guienne* (*ghe-en'*), and *Anjou* (*ahn'joo*), in the west; *Gas'cony* and *Na-varre'*, in the southwest; *Provence* (*pro-vahns'*), in the southeast; and *Bur'gundy*, *Champagne* (*sham-pan'ya*), and *Flan'ders*, in the east and northeast. So that, in fact, only a small part of what is now called France, at the period of these early Capetian (*kah-pe'she-an*) monarchs, was under their sway; and the history of the period mainly consists of an account of the wars resulting from this divided state of the country, and of the gradual consolidation of the whole into one kingdom. Hugh Capet was an active and prudent monarch; and, during his reign of nearly ten years, he succeeded in overcoming all opposition to his authority, and in enlarging his dominions. At his death (996), he left the throne to his son *Robert*.

2. Robert succeeded in annexing Burgundy to his do-

Map Questions.—(Map, page 188.) What countries east and northeast of France? What provinces in the northern part? In the eastern part? Southern part? Western part? Central part? Where is Paris? Orleans? Brest? Rochelle? Bordeaux? Avignon? Troyes? Poitiers? Tours? Rheims? Nancy?

1. What is said of the extent of France? Name the principal minor governments, with their situation. Of what does the history of France at this period consist? What is said of Hugh Capet and his reign?

2. What were the chief events in the reign of Robert? What caused a destructive pestilence? What is said of this period? By whom was Robert succeeded?

minions, but refused the kingdom of Italy and the empire of Germany, which he was invited to accept. The papal authority was exercised at this time so severely, that Robert was compelled, by excommunication, to divorce his beloved wife *Bertha*, because she was his fourth cousin. During this reign the year 1000 arrived, which had been almost universally predicted as the *millennium*—the end of

the world. This belief occasioned general neglect and idleness; and a dreadful famine and pestilence was the result, which swept away vast multitudes of people, and caused the most frightful miseries and crimes. The superstition and ignorance of the people, and the oppression and vices of the nobles, made this one of the darkest periods in

human history. Robert died in 1031, and left the throne to his son *Henry.* [*See Note* 1, *end of the Section.*]

3. Henry I.—This reign is noted for the repeated wars which Henry waged with the Duke of Normandy—*William*, afterward the Conqueror of England, who successfully defended his dominions against the attacks of the French king. This was the cause of that aversion between the English and French monarchs that occasioned so many wars during the following reigns. The power of the Church was exercised during this reign to put a check to the unceasing warfare of the nobles, and to procure some respite for the unfortunate peasantry, so that they might cultivate the lands, and thus prevent famine and pestilence. This was effected by establishing what was called the *Truce of God*—a religious injunction against all military operations, duelling, and other acts of violence, from Wednesday, at sunset, till sunrise on Monday, and on all feast and holy days. This regulation did much, eventually, to soften the ferocity of these terrible times. Henry I. was succeeded by his son Philip (1060).

4. Philip I. was a haughty and unprincipled monarch. He engaged in a war with William of Normandy, after the conquest of England by the latter, and endeavored to sow dissensions between him and his son Robert. After the death of William, he assisted Robert against William Rufus, compelling the latter to surrender Normandy to his brother. He was excommunicated by the Pope four times, for seizing by violence, and illegally marrying, the Countess of Anjou, whom he refused to deliver up to her lawful husband. During this reign Peter the Hermit preached the *First Crusade* (1095). Philip was succeeded by his son *Louis* (1108). [*See Note* 2, *end of the Section.*]

5. Louis VI., surnamed *the Fat*, was an energetic and

3. For what is the reign of Henry I. noted? What was the "Truce of God?" What led to its institution? What was the effect of it? Who succeeded Henry I.?
4. What is said of Philip I.? What were the chief events of his reign? Who was his successor?

prudent king. He did important service to France by keeping the great vassals of the crown under control, and gave to the towns their first charters, thus relieving large numbers of the lower orders from the wretched condition of serfdom, in which they had been kept by the iron hand of the aristocracy. These early municipalities were called *Communes,* or commons (afterward *the third estate*), and consisted of citizens leagued together for mutual interest and defence. Henry I., of England, having regained Normandy, Louis attempted to dispossess him; but, although he raised a large army, the great barons refused to assist him, believing that the balance of power would be destroyed if Normandy were annexed to the French king's dominions. He was succeeded by his son *Louis* (1137).

6. Louis VII., by marrying *Eleanor*, became possessed of *Guienne* and *Poitou* (*pwah-too'*); but, during the expedition which he undertook to the Holy Land, and in which he was accompanied by his queen, he was so provoked by the freedom and levity of her conduct that he divorced her, and thus lost her great possessions. These he had the mortification of seeing annexed to the dominions of Henry, Duke of Normandy, Count of Anjou and Maine, and afterward king of England (Henry II.), whom Eleanor had married after her divorce from the French king. In this way Henry II. came into possession of more extensive territories in France than those of the French king himself. Louis was succeeded by his son *Philip* (1180).

7. Philip II. (*Augustus*).—During this reign, the authority of the monarch was more generally acknowledged than it had been since the accession of Hugh Capet, and the country became more united and powerful. This was

5. What was the character of Louis VI.? How did he benefit France? What were the "Communes?" What caused a war between him and Henry I. of England? Who succeeded him?

6. How did Louis VII. extend his dominions? How were they afterward diminished? Who was his successor?

7. What is said of the reign of Philip II.? State the principal events of it. How did Philip extend his dominions? What other measures did he accomplish? Who succeeded him?

partly due to the great ability and prudence of Philip, who knew how to make himself respected and feared. He engaged in the *third Crusade* with Richard I., of England; but, becoming jealous of the English monarch's fame, he deserted him; and, returning home, basely plotted with Richard's brother John to seize his dominions. Failing in this, he afterward obtained the English provinces in France by means of the wickedness and cowardice of John. He thus added to his dominions, Normandy, Maine, Anjou, Poitou, and Louvaine; and afterward extended his sway to the Pyrenees. He greatly improved the discipline of the army, encouraged learning, and walled and paved Paris and several other towns. After a reign of 43 years, he left his kingdom in a state of tranquillity to his son *Louis* (1223).*

8. The Albigenses.—The reign of Philip II. is also noted for the persecution of the Al'bi-gen-ses,—a numerous sect of dissenters from the Church of Rome, who arose in the commencement of the 13th century, in Languedoc (*lan'ghe-doc*), and were supported by Raymond VI., Count of that province. They received their name from *Albigeois* (*al'be-zhwah*), the district in which they first appeared. During the reign of Philip Augustus (1209), Pope Innocent III. caused a crusade to be preached against them, excommunicating both them and Count Raymond; and, in the war which ensued, many of their towns were taken, and the most dreadful massacres perpetrated. Raymond was, at last, obliged to submit to the authority of the Pope.† During the war, *Simon de Montfort*, the elder,‡ took an active part against the Albigenses, and was conspicuous for his cruelty and perfidy. He was killed at the siege of Toulouse (1218).

9. Louis VIII. was a feeble monarch; but the wise

* *See Note 3, end of the Section.* † *See Note 4.*
‡ Father of the famous Earl of Leicester, who founded the English House of Commons.

8. Who were the Albigenses? Why were they so called? Give an account of the crusade against them. What is said of Simon de Montfort?
9. What was the character of Louis VIII.? What was the state of France during his reign? Describe the crusade against the Albigenses.

policy of Philip Augustus had given such an impulse to affairs, that France continued to be triumphant over the English, who, during the reign of Henry III., made repeated attacks upon the French territories. Another crusade was undertaken against the Albigenses by Louis VIII., under the authority of the Pope. With a large army, he laid siege to *Avignon* (*ah-vēn'yong*), but was kept so long under its walls that 20,000 men perished by disease and famine; and Louis himself died a short time after he received the submission of the conquered inhabitants (1226).

10. Louis IX. (*Saint Louis*), son and successor of Louis VIII., was but a youth at the time of his accession; and the government was administered by his mother, *Blanche of Castile* (*kas-teel'*), during whose regency the war against the Albigenses was closed by the complete submission of Count Raymond, and the cession, by formal treaty, of Languedoc to the crown of France (1229). The *Inquisition* was established at Toulouse (*too-loos'*), and all who refused to conform to the tenets of the Church of Rome were mercilessly punished. The remnant of the Albigenses emigrated to the east, and are lost sight of in history a short time after these events.

11. Louis, although uninstructed in letters, imbibed the most excellent principles of conduct from his mother, and strictly observed them after he attained the age of majority. He engaged in a crusade (1249) against the Sultan of Egypt, but was taken prisoner, and ransomed by his subjects for an immense sum ($1,500,000). Returning after an absence of five years, he ruled with so much candor and moderation, and with such a conscientious regard for justice and rectitude, that he was universally esteemed, and

---

10. Who succeeded Louis VIII.? Who at first administered the government? How was the war against the Albigenses closed? What followed the treaty?

11. What was the character of Louis IX. and of his government? What crusades did he undertake? When and how did his death occur? By whom was he canonized? Why?

was enabled to promote the true progress and happiness of his people. In another crusade, undertaken to check the Mohammedans in Syria, he crossed to Africa, and died of the plague near Tunis (1270). Louis, some years after his death, was formally canonized by the Pope (Boniface VIII.) for his many virtues and his efforts and sacrifices for the cause of Christianity (1297). During the troubles between Henry III. of England and his barons, Louis was chosen umpire by both parties, but his decision was disregarded. [*See N.* 5.]

12. Philip III., called the *Hardy* (because his constitution had proved strong enough to resist the pestilence that carried off his father), continued the war against the Moors; and, with the aid of his uncle, *Charles of Anjou*, king of Sicily, reduced the king of Tunis to submission. Charles, who had but recently acquired possession of Sicily, became very odious to the people by his arbitrary government and the excesses of his followers; and this discontent was encouraged by *Peter*, king of Aragon,* who claimed the island. The result was, that, on Easter day (1282), when the church-bell sounded for vespers, the Sicilians rushed on all the French they could meet with, and massacred them without mercy. About 8,000 persons perished by this dreadful event, which is known in history as the *Massacre of the Sicilian Vespers*. Peter of Aragon, by this means, succeeded in expelling Charles of Anjou from Sicily; and Philip III., taking up the cause of his uncle, made an unsuccessful invasion of Aragon, and died a short time afterward of a fever, resulting from disappointment and fatigue (1285).

13. Philip IV. (*le Bel—the Fair*) succeeded at the age

* *Aragon* was at this time an important kingdom in the northeastern part of Spain; and Peter rested his claim to Sicily on his marriage with *Constance*, daughter of a previous king of that island.

12. Who succeeded St. Louis? Why was Philip III. called *the Hardy?* How did he end the war against the Moors? What led to the "Massacre of the Sicilian Vespers?" Describe it. Why did Philip III. invade Aragon? What caused his death?

13. Who succeeded Philip III.? What is said of the reign of Philip IV.? Describe the war which he carried on with Edward I. What caused a war with the Flemings? Describe it. For what were the Flemings noted?

of 17. His reign is one of the most important in French history. He carried on a war of seven years with Edward I. of England, in order to obtain Guienne; but finally consented to a treaty relinquishing his claims to that duchy. He obtained possession of Flanders; but governed it so oppressively that the people (called *Flemings*) rose in revolt and massacred the French to the number of 3,000. Philip endeavored to reduce the Flemings to submission; but this brave people successfully defended their liberties against his assaults. The Flemings were, at this period, greatly distinguished for their skill in weaving, and in other industrial arts.

14. This reign is particularly noted for the contest which arose between the king and the Pope (Boniface VIII.), on account of the attempt of the latter to prevent the taxation of the clergy. Boniface in vain issued bull after bull, all of which were treated with contempt and defiance by Philip; who, after the death of Boniface, succeeded in placing the archbishop of Bordeaux (*bōr-do'*), under the title of *Clement V.*, on the papal throne, and transferred the seat of the papacy from Rome to *Avignon*, where it remained for about 70 years.

15. He also caused the famous order of *Knights Templars** to be condemned and abolished, for alleged corruption and immorality; and the Grand Master and many other individuals of the order were burnt to death, while others were treated with the most shocking cruelty. The motive of the king in this prosecution, was probably the desire to possess himself of a part of the immense wealth of the order; and the whole procedure was characterized by the most shameless perfidy, injustice, and cruelty. Philip died

* This celebrated religious and military order was founded at Jerusalem in the beginning of the twelfth century, for the protection of the Holy Sepulchre, and the pilgrims who journeyed thither. It afterward spread all over Europe, and became noted for its vast possessions. It was suppressed in England by Edward II. (1309).

14. What caused the contest of Philip IV. with the Pope? Describe it. What was its result?

15. Give an account of the abolition of the order of Knights Templars. What was the character of Philip IV.? What important event occurred in 1302?

a few weeks after this event (1314). His character is that of an adroit and energetic monarch, but is deeply stained with treachery and despotism. The representatives of the *Third Estate,* or, the Commons, were called to meet with the nobility and clergy in the grand council of the nation during this reign, in order to give their consent to the levy of taxes (1302).

16. Louis X., surnamed *Hutin* (disorder, or tumult), from the tumultuous conduct of the nobles and clergy, who attempted to regain from Louis the powers and privileges of which they had been deprived by his artful and despotic father. He yielded to most of their demands, and issued an ordinance enfranchising the serfs within the royal domains. During his short reign, he was under the influence of his uncle, *Charles of Valois* (*val-wah'*), who employed it to destroy *Marigny* (*mah-reen'ye*), the former prime-minister of Philip the Fair; and this distinguished man was condemned and put to death upon a malicious and absurd charge of sorcery. On the death of the king (1316), the government was administered by his brother *Philip,* as regent; and, the infant son of Louis X. having died, Philip became king (1317).

17. Philip V. (*le Long—the Tall*) assembled the States-General to pronounce upon his right to the throne, which was disputed by the daughter of Louis X.; and a decree was issued declaring that females are incapable of inheriting the crown of France. This decree being based, as it was said, upon the barbarous code of the Salian Franks, was called the *Sal'ic Law.* During this reign, France was the scene of dreadful religious persecutions, particularly of the Jews, who were put to death in *Tou-raine'* with the most dreadful barbarity. Philip, after a brief reign of five years, was succeeded by his brother *Charles* (1322).

16. Why was Louis X. called *Hutin?* What course did he pursue? What is said of Marigny? How did Philip V. become king?

17. How did Philip V. secure himself on the throne? What was the Salic law? What persecution took place? By whom was Philip V. succeeded?

18. Charles IV. became king by the operation of the Salic law, for Philip V. had left daughters but no sons. His reign is almost a blank, being only noted for his invasion of Guienne, to which he was invited by the troubles of Edward II. of England. It was in France that the wicked Queen Isabella, sister of Charles IV., plotted with Mortimer for the destruction of her unfortunate husband. Charles afterward restored Guienne to Edward III. On the death of Charles without heirs (1328), the direct line became extinct, and *Philip of Valois*, nephew of Philip the Fair, succeeded to the throne.

Branch of Valois.

19. Philip VI. soon had to contend with a competitor in the person of Edward III. of England, who laid claim to the throne of France, as being a direct descendant, through his mother, of Philip the Fair. But this claim was deemed by the French invalid by the operation of the Salic law; since, if Isabella had no right to the throne, Edward could inherit none from her. Edward, after several years, determined to enforce his claim; and having invaded France, defeated Philip in the famous battle of *Crecy* (1346), and took Calais. These victories, however, did not give Edward the object of his ambitious desires; and, a truce being agreed on, he returned to England. *Dau'phiny* was about this time annexed to France, on condition that the king's eldest son should thereafter bear the title of *Dauphin*. The *Black Plague* raged throughout France during this reign (1348–9), and carried off vast multitudes of people—50,000 in Paris alone. Philip died in 1350, and was succeeded by his son *John*. [*See Note* 6, *end of Section.*]

20. John (*le Bon—the Good*).—During this reign, the

---

18. How did Charles IV. become king? What is said of his reign? Of Isabella? Who succeeded Charles IV.? In what way?

19. What rival had Philip VI.? What is said of Edward's claim? Give an account of the war that ensued. What was the result? What is said of the Black Plague? Who succeeded Philip VI.?

English, under the Black Prince, again invaded France; and the memorable battle of Poitiers was fought, in which John was taken prisoner, and no less than 2,500 of the French nobility and chivalry were slain. The king being carried to England, his eldest son, *Charles*, became regent, and during his administration the people, under *Mar-cel'*, head of the municipality of Paris, made a desperate struggle to curb the despotic power of the monarch and obtain a share in the government. The States-General were assembled, and granted the privileges demanded; but these being afterward annulled, an insurrection broke out which raged for some time, but was terminated by the death of Marcel, and the defeat of the popular cause.

21. At the same time, a frightful insurrection of the peasantry burst forth, caused by the hopeless misery in which they had been so long kept by the nobles. This revolt is called the *Jacquerie* (*zhak'e-re*), from *Jacques Bonhomme* (*zhak bon-om*), the name derisively applied to a French peasant. The feudal castles were sacked and destroyed by the insurgents, and their inmates, of every age and sex, put to death with shocking barbarity. Being at last defeated in an attack upon one of the towns, the peasants were hunted down on all sides like wild beasts, and massacred by thousands; so that some of the rural districts were almost depopulated, and presented a ghastly scene of ruin and desolation. [*See Note 7, end of Section.*]

22. In the mean time, John, being a prisoner in England, in order to obtain his release, consented to surrender a large part of his territories; but to this the States-General would not submit; and Edward III. again invaded France, but finally made peace, consenting to release John upon more reasonable terms. The latter, after four years' captivity,

---

20. What invasion took place during John's reign? What was its result? What events occurred during the regency of Charles?

21. What was the *Jacquerie?* Describe it. How were the peasants treated?

22. How did John obtain his release? Why did he return to England? How was the ducal line of Burgundy founded?

finally returned to his kingdom, and was greeted with universal transports of joy and gratitude by his people; but his son Louis, who had been delivered to the king of England as a hostage, having escaped, John was so conscientious that he surrendered himself again to his English captors, and died a short time after his arrival in England (1364). He had previously (1363) given to his favorite son Philip the Duchy of Burgundy, in reward for his bravery at Poitiers; and thus was founded that famous ducal line of Burgundy which continued more than a century, and played so important a part in French history.

23. Charles V., surnamed *the Wise*, succeeded his father; and, by means of his prudent measures, did much to restore peace and prosperity to his kingdom. He was himself of an unwarlike disposition, being fond of study, and having a talent for statesmanship rather than for the conduct of military affairs. He raised to the office of Constable of France the famous *Du Guesclin* (*ga-klang'*) one of the greatest generals of his age. Although defeated and taken prisoner in the battle of *Nav-ar-re'te* by the Black Prince, Du Guesclin, after the death of that great leader, pursued an almost uninterrupted career of victory against the English, depriving them of nearly all their possessions in France. Charles founded the Royal Library at Paris, and was a generous patron of literature and art. He died in 1380, two months after the death of the Constable Du Guesclin.

24. Charles VI., the son and successor of Charles V., was only twelve years of age at his father's death; and accordingly his uncle, the Duke of Anjou, was made regent. Disturbances were occasioned by the efforts of the people to release themselves from the unjust and oppressive taxes which had been imposed by Philip the Fair and his suc-

23. What was accomplished by Charles the Wise? What was his character? What is said of Du Guesclin? What did Charles found? When did he die?

24. What insurrection broke out under the regency of the Duke of Anjou? What revolt? Give an account of the battle of Rosebecque.

cessors; and at Paris an insurrection occurred, which was with much difficulty subdued. An expedition was undertaken to reduce the *Flemings*, who had revolted against their ruler, Count Louis of Flanders; and the terrible battle of *Rosebecque* (*rose'bek*) was fought, in which the celebrated Flemish leader *Philip Van Artevelde* (*ar'te-veld*) was defeated and slain, and no less than 25,000 of the brave Flemings perished (1382). The French king himself was present in this battle, but his army was commanded by *Oliver Clisson* (*klees'song*), Constable of France, a man of great talents and distinction.

25. This great victory strengthened the power of the king; and the French towns, which had made resistance to the royal exactions, being obliged to submit, all their citizens who had been prominent in the popular movement were put to death without mercy. In Paris alone, 300 were led to the scaffold, martyrs to the cause of popular freedom (1382). Some years after this, Charles VI. became afflicted with insanity, from which he never entirely recovered; and while France, in consequence of this calamity, was a prey to every species of disorder, Henry V. invaded it, took *Har'fleur*, and penetrated into the country. On his retreat, he was surprised at *Agincourt;* but, though obliged to give battle at great disadvantage, he gained a decided victory (1415). This was followed by the taking of Rouen and the conquest of Normandy; when, finally, the treaty of *Troyes* was made, according to which Henry married *Catharine*, daughter of Charles VI., and was, on the death of the latter, to become king of France. This shameful treaty was ratified by the States-General, but was never carried into effect, for Henry died some months before the death of Charles VI. (1422).

26. Charles VII., *the Victorious*, was crowned at Poi-

25. What was the effect of this victory? How was the king afflicted? What invasion took place? With what result? What followed the battle of Agincourt? What is said of the treaty of Troyes? Why was it not carried into effect?

tiers; but Henry VI. of England had already been proclaimed king of France, in accordance with the treaty of Troyes. The Duke of Bedford, the English regent, gained a great victory over the army of Charles, consisting partly of Scotch and other auxiliaries (1424). This dreadful disaster to Charles was followed (1428) by the siege of *Orleans*, the last stronghold of his party, while no hope was entertained by the French of being able to repel its assailants. The deliverance of Charles was, however, effected by one of the most extraordinary occurrences recorded in history.

27. *Joan of Arc*, a simple peasant girl, had been told of a prophecy, to the effect that France could only be delivered from its enemies by a virgin; and the idea became impressed upon her mind, that to herself had been divinely committed the task of effecting this great object. She soon induced others to believe in the truth of her mission, among them the king himself and his chief officers, and was admitted into Orleans, arrayed in armor, and provided with a train of attendants (1429). Under her leadership, the French seemed to be inspired with almost superhuman courage, and soon compelled the English to raise the siege.

28. She next urged the King to march to Rheims (*reemz*), in order to assume the crown of his ancestors according to the accustomed rites; and, partly under her leadership, the French, after several victorious battles, reached the city, which the English were compelled to surrender; and the King was crowned in the great cathedral (1429). Joan then declared her mission ended, and wished to be dismissed; but her services being still demanded, she remained in the army; and a short time afterward fell into

---

26. What caused a war on the accession of Charles VII.? What disasters occurred? How was Charles delivered from his difficult situation?
27. Who was Joan of Arc? What was accomplished by her?
28. Narrate the subsequent events in the career of Joan of Arc.

the power of the English, by whom she was burnt to death at Rouen, on a charge of sorcery (1431).

29. Nothing was gained by the cruel execution of the "Maid of Orleans;" for the English continued to suffer defeat till they finally lost all their French possessions except Calais; and the Duke of Burgundy, who had previously supported them, became reconciled to Charles VII. Charles thus rightly received the surname of "Victorious;" for he had become one of the most powerful sovereigns of Europe. The last years of his life were embittered by the wicked and undutiful conduct of *Louis*, his eldest son, who repeatedly plotted against him. With such terror was he inspired from the wicked intrigues of the prince, that he was afraid to take food lest he might be poisoned; and died, it is said, from want of sustenance (1461).

30. Louis XI. The character of this king presents a strange and odious combination of dissimulation, cruelty, and superstition, and on this account he has been styled the *Tiberius of France.* Determined to enlarge the royal authority by weakening the great feudal vassals, he soon excited their opposition; and a coalition was formed against him, called the *League of the Public Good* (1465), the ruling spirit of which was *Charles the Bold*, afterward Duke of Burgundy. A war ensued, in which Louis was defeated, and compelled to grant all the concessions demanded; but these he afterward revoked, and, one by one, reduced the rebellious vassals to submission.

31. The greater part of the reign of Louis XI. is occupied with dark intrigues against his enemies, particularly against Charles the Bold, duke of Burgundy. The latter was afterward defeated, in two great battles, by the Swiss, whose country he had invaded; and the next year he suffered

29. What is further related of the reign of Charles VII.? What embittered his last years? What caused his death?

30. What is said of the character of Louis XI.? What caused the *League of the Public Good?* What was the result of the war?

31. What occupied most of this reign? What is said of Charles of Burgundy?

another defeat from the Duke of Lor-raine', at *Nan'cy*, where he was slain (1477). Louis, taking advantage of these circumstances, was enabled to re-annex Burgundy to the French dominions. The death of Charles the Bold ended the long resistance of the great French vassals to the central power of the monarchy.

32. *Mary* of *Burgundy*, the daughter and heiress of Charles the Bold, was thus deprived of the Duchy; but she still remained mistress of Flanders, and Louis desired to marry her to the Dauphin (the eldest son of the king). Disgusted with his treachery, she refused her consent, and accepted the hand of *Maximil'ian*, son of the Emperor of Germany, and Archduke of Austria (1477). This marriage laid the foundation of the greatness of the house of Austria, and led to a rivalry between France and the Empire which lasted nearly two centuries. As Louis grew old, he became very superstitious and cruel; and, at last, conscious of being universally abhorred, he shut himself up in a castle which he kept constantly defended by armed troops. His death, which occurred in 1483, is a turning point in French history, and marks the close of the *Middle Ages*.*

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

987. **Hugh Capet**, first of the Capetian dynasty. Reigned 9 years.
996. **Robert**. Reigned 35 years.
1000. Year of the predicted millennium.
1031. **Henry I.** Reigned 29 years.
1060. **Philip I.** Reigned 48 years.
1095. *First Crusade* preached.
1108. **Louis VI.**, *the Fat*. Reigned 29 years.
" Enfranchisement of the Communes.
1137. **Louis VII.**, *the Young*. Reigned 43 years. *Second Crusade.*
1180. **Philip II.**, *Augustus*. Reigned 43 years. *Third Crusade.*

---

* *See Note 8, end of the Section.*

32. What is said of Mary of Burgundy? What was the effect of her marriage with Maximilian? What is said of the close of the reign of Louis XI.? When did his death occur? Why is this an important date?

1209. Crusade against the Albigenses.
1218. Death of Simon de Montfort.
1223. **Louis VIII.** Reigned 3 years. Continued persecution of the Albigenses.
1226. **Louis IX.** (*St. Louis*). Reigned 44 years. Two Crusades undertaken.
1229. The Albigenses subdued.
1270. **Philip III.**, *the Hardy*. Reigned 15 years.
1282. The Massacre of the Sicilian Vespers.
1285. **Philip IV.**, *the Fair*. Reigned 29 years. Contest with Pope *Boniface*.
1314. **Louis X.**, *Hutin*. Reigned 2 years.
1317. **Philip V.**, *the Tall*. Regent 7 months; reigned 5 years. *Salic law* confirmed.
1322. **Charles IV.** Reigned 6 years.
1328. **Philip VI.**, *of Valois*. Reigned 22 years.
1346. *Battle of Crecy*.
1350. **John**, *the Good*. Reigned 14 years.
1356. *Battle of Poitiers*.
1364. **Charles V.**, *the Wise*. Reigned 16 years. *Constable du Guesclin*.
1380. **Charles VI.**, *the Well-beloved*. Reigned 42 years.
1415. *Battle of Agincourt*.
1422. **Charles VII.**, *the Victorious*. Reigned 39 years.
1431. Joan of Arc burnt at Rouen.
1461. **Louis XI.** Reigned 22 years. Called by some the *Tiberius of France*.
1477. Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, killed at Nancy. The duchy seized by Louis XI.
1483. Death of Louis XI.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

	PAGE
1. State all you can of Hugh Capet and his reign	147–187
2. Over what territory did Capet have dominion?	187
3. By whom was he succeeded on the throne?	187
4. State the important events of King Robert's reign	187–188
5. What is said in relation to the predicted millennium?	188–189
6. By whom was King Robert succeeded on the throne?	189
7. Name the important events of the reign of Henry I.	189
8. How was the power of the Church exercised during his reign?	189
9. By whom was Henry I. succeeded on the throne?	189
10. What were the character and acts of King Philip I.?	161–189
11. How many kings of the Capetian race were there?	187—193, 195– 196

12. Name them in the order of their succession 187–188–189–190–191–192–193–195–196
13. What was the character of Louis VI., and what were his important acts? 189–190
14. How did Louis VII. gain and lose vast territory in France?..... 190
15. State the important events in the life of Queen Eleanor?..... ... 190–163–166
16. What was the character of Philip Augustus?..... 190–191
17. Give an account of the important events of his reign..... 190–191–167–168
18. Give the history of the Albigenses..... 191–192–207
19. State what you can of Simon de Montfort..... 169–191
20. State what you can of Count Raymond 191–192
21. Give an account of the reign of Louis IX., or St. Louis..... 192–193
22. What did Philip the Hardy accomplish in Africa and Aragon?..... 193
23. Give the facts in relation to the Massacre of the Sicilian Vespers..... 193
24. Name the principal events of the reign of Philip the Fair..... 193–194
25. What can you state of Flanders and the Flemings?..... 187–194–199
26. Of Louis X., the son and successor of Philip the Fair?..... 195
27. Who was Philip the Long, and by what right did he become king?.... 195
28. Who was Charles IV., and how did he succeed to the throne?..... 195–196
29. Who was Philip of Valois, and what were the events of his reign? ... 196
30. Give the particulars of the contest between him and Edward III... 174–175–196
31. What account can you give of the Black Plague of 1348–9?. 175–196
32. Beginning with the first, name six kings of the House of Valois..... 196—201
33. Who was John the Good? Name the events of his reign..... 196–197–198
34. Give an account of the contest between him and Edward III... ... 175–197–198
35. What was the character, and what the acts of Charles the Wise?..... 198
36. Give an account of the expedition against the Flemings..... 199
37. State what the consequences were of Clisson's victory..... 199
38. What efforts did Henry V. make to subdue France?..... 179–199
39. With what success were his efforts attended?..... 179–180–199
40. What were the early events in the reign of Charles the Victorious?.... 199–200
41. Give the facts in the career of Joan of Arc..... 180–200–201
42. Give the closing events in the life of King Charles..... 201
43. Who was Louis XI., and what was his character?..... 201
44. Give an account of the events in his reign..... 201–202
45. Give the history of Mary of Burgundy..... 202
46. What is said of the closing years of Louis XI.?..... 202
47. In what year did his death occur?..... 202
48. Name, in chronological order, the important events from the accession of Hugh Capet to the Massacre of the Sicilian Vespers.... 202–203
49. Name, in chronological order, the important events from the Massacre of the Sicilian Vespers to the death of Louis XI 203
50. Name the early kings of France, with their surnames 202–203
51. Name them with the length of their reigns..... 202–203
52. Name each with the most important act of his reign. ..... 187—202
53. Which of them had the longest reign?..... 202–203
54. Which of them engaged in the Crusades?..... 202–203
55. During whose reign was the battle of Crecy fought?..... 203
56. During whose reign was the battle of Poitiers fought?..... 203
57. During whose reign was the battle of Agincourt fought?..... 203
58. Who was Maximilian?..... 202

NOTES.

1. The Year 1,000 (p. 189, ¶ 2).—"The fearful hope of the arrival of the judgment-day grew with the calamities that ushered in the year 1,000. A dreadful pestilence made Aquitaine a desert. The flesh of those who were seized by it was as if struck by fire, for it fell rotting from their bones. The high roads to the places of pilgrimage were thronged with these wretched beings. They besieged the churches, particularly that of St. Martin's at Limoges, and crowded its portals to suffocation, undeterred by the stench around it. A few years after it was still worse. From the East to Greece, Italy, France, and England, famine prevailed. The rich lost color and flesh. The poor dug up and ate the roots in the woods. Many horrible to relate, were driven by hunger to feed on their fellow creatures."—*Michelet.*

2. Peter the Hermit (p. 189, ¶ 4).—"The Hermit traversed Italy, crossed the Alps, with indefatigable restlessness went from province to province, from city to city. His appearance commanded attention, his austerity respect, his language instantaneous and vehement sympathy. He rode on a mule, with a crucifix in his hand, his head and feet bare. His dress was a long robe, girt with a cord, and a hermit's cloak of the coarsest stuff. He preached in the pulpits, in the roads, in the market-places. His eloquence was that which stirs the hearts of the people, for it came from his own—brief, figurative, full of bold apostrophes; it was mingled with his own tears, with his own groans. He beat his breast; the contagion spread throughout his audience. His preaching appealed to every passion; to valor and shame, to indignation and pity, to the pride of the warrior, the compassion of the man, the religion of the Christian, to the love of the Brethren, to the hatred of the unbeliever, aggravated by his insulting tyranny, to reverence for the Redeemer and the Saints, to the desire of expiating sin, to the hope of eternal life. His influence was extraordinary, even beyond the immediate object of his mission. Old enemies came to be reconciled; the worldliest to forswear the world; prelates to entreat the Hermit's intercession. Gifts were showered upon him; he gave them all to the poor, or as dowries for loose women, whom he provided with husbands. His wonders were repeated from mouth to mouth; all ages, both sexes, crowded to touch his garments; the very hairs which dropped from his mule were caught and treasured as relics."—*Milman.—History of Latin Christianity.*

3. Philip Augustus (p. 191, ¶ 7).—"Philip Augustus was the first sovereign of what may be called the *national monarchy* of France, who acquired a popular, brilliant, and lasting reputation. In general political ability—in the qualities of sagacity, prudence, energy, and perseverance—he was infinitely superior to his predecessors since the time of Charlemagne; and it may be questioned whether, in these essential qualifications of a ruler, he has been surpassed by any of his successors in the line of the Capetians."—*Student's France.*

4. Submission of Count Raymond (p. 191, ¶ 8).—"Raymond of Toulouse submitted at once in the amplest manner to the demands of his inexorable enemies, to the personal abasement inflicted by the Church. At a council at Montelimart he was cited to appear before the legates at Valence. Here he first surrendered, as security for his absolute submission, seven of his strong castles. He was then led, naked to the girdle, to the porch of the Abbey church, and in the presence of the legates, and not less than twenty bishops, before the holy Eucharist, before certain reliques, and the wood of the true Cross, with his hand upon the holy gospels, he acknowledged the justice of his excommunication, and swore full allegiance to the Pope and to his legate. These ceremonies ended,

the Count with a rope round his neck, and scourged, as he went, on his naked shoulders, was led up to the high altar; then, after a solemn recapitulation of the Pope's commands before it, and a reiteration of the same commands after it, he received the absolution."—*Milman.*

5. Saint Louis (p. 193, ¶ 11).—"The character of St. Louis is one of the noblest that occurs in modern history. He possessed all the virtues of his age, untarnished by its vices: he was brave without cruelty or violence, pious without bigotry or weakness. Although more the hero of the legend than of romance, he commands our admiration by his rare disinterestedness, his bold attempt to rule his actions as a monarch by the rigid maxims of private honor, and by the great good sense that tempered his devotion, and that never allowed him to sacrifice humanity or justice to the interests even of that Church which he revered."—*Crowe.—History of France.*

6. The Black Plague (p. 196, ¶ 19).—"Many died in the streets; others left alone in their houses—but the fact of their death was known by the smell. Often, husband and wife, son and father, were laid on the same bier. Large ditches had been dug, in which the corpses were heaped by hundreds, like bales in a ship's hold. Every one carried in his hand strong-smelling herbs. The air stank with the dead and dying, or with infectious drugs. Alas! how many fine houses remained empty! How many fortunes without heirs! How many lovely ladies, how many amiable young persons dined in the morning with their friends, who, when evening came, supped with their ancestors!"—*Boccaccio.*

7. The Jacquerie (p. 197, ¶ 21).—"*Jacques Bonhomme* will pay off his lord centimes of arrears. His vengeance was that of the despairing,—of the damned. God seemed to have sickened him of this world. Not only did the peasants butcher their lords, but they tried to exterminate the families of their lords, murdering their heirs. And then would these savages tuck out themselves and their wives in rich habiliments, and bedeck themselves with glittering, but bloody spoils. Yet were they not so savage as not to march with a kind of order, under banners, and led by a captain chosen from among themselves, a crafty peasant, called Guillaume Callet. These bands consisted mostly of the meaner sort, with a few rich burgesses and others. 'When they were asked,' says Froissart, 'for what reason they acted so wickedly, they replied, they knew not, but they did so because they saw others do it; and they thought by this means they should destroy all the nobles and gentlemen in the world.'"—*Michelet.*

8. Last Days of Louis XI. (p. 202, ¶ 32).—"As he felt his disorder increasing, he shut himself up in a palace near Tours, to hide from the world the knowledge of his decline. His solitude was like that of Tiberius at Capreæ, full of terror and suspicion, and deep consciousness of universal hatred. All ranks, he well knew, had their several injuries to remember: the clergy, whose liberties he had sacrificed to the See of Rome; the princes, whose blood he had poured upon the scaffold; the parliament, whose course of justice he had turned aside; the commons, who groaned under his extortions, and were plundered by his soldiery. The palace, fenced with portcullises and spikes of iron, was guarded by archers and crossbow-men, who shot at any that approached by night. Few entered his den; but to them he showed himself in magnificent apparel, contrary to his former custom, hoping thus to disguise the change of his meager body. He distrusted his friends and kindred, his daughter and his son, the last of whom he had not suffered even to read or write, lest he should too soon become his rival. No man ever so much feared death, to avert which he stooped to every meanness, and sought every remedy."—*Hallam.—Europe during the Middle Ages.*

SECTION V.

The Crusades.

From the Council of Clermont (1095) *to the Capture of Acre by the Mohammedans* (1291).

1. The *Crusades* were religious wars carried on during the Middle Ages between the Christian nations of the West and the Mohammedans of the East. From an early period, it had been deemed by the Church an act of piety to make a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, to visit the various places which the Saviour had hallowed by his presence, and to pay devotion to the sepulchre in which he had been entombed. The Saracens, who conquered Palestine in the 7th century, had respected these Christian pilgrimages, and rather assisted than opposed those who made them, allowing them to build a church and a hospital at Jerusalem. The Fatimite sultans of Egypt, on their conquest of Syria, in the 10th century, had been less generous; and Christendom, at that time, became somewhat alarmed and excited.

2. But when the Seljuk Turks took possession of Syria and captured Jerusalem (1076), the pilgrims were treated with the most shocking cruelty and insult; and the news of these atrocities excited the deepest indignation throughout Christendom. The Byzantine emperors first taking alarm, appealed to the Christian monarchs of the West; and Pope Gregory VII. had entertained the idea of sending aid to the Emperor Manuel, in accordance with his earnest supplication, as early as 1073. It was not, however, until

1. What were the crusades? What is said of the Christian pilgrimages? How were the Christian pilgrims treated by the Saracens? What alarmed Christendom in the tenth century?

2. How did the Seljuk Turks treat the Christians? What was the consequence? When were effectual measures for relief taken?

Peter the Hermit, returning from the Holy Land, depicted the dreadful sufferings of the Christians of Palestine, that any effectual measures for relief were taken.

3. This religious enthusiast was a native of Am'i-ens, in France, and animated all who listened to his preaching with the same burning zeal against the infidels as had filled his own soul on witnessing their atrocities. Pope *Urban II.* soon took up the cause; and two councils were held, at the second of which, at *Cler-mont'*, in France (1095), the Pope himself delivered an impassioned address to a vast multitude of both clergy and laymen. His exhortation was greeted with the cry of "God wills it!" which burst simultaneously from every one present. The war was, accordingly, agreed upon; and all who entered into it were directed to wear, as a badge, a cross of red stuff attached to the shoulder. Hence these wars were called *Crusades.*

4. **First Crusade.**—From all parts of Europe thousands hurried, at the summons of the Pope, to take part in the holy war; and, in the spring of 1096, no less than 275,000 men, in large part the dregs of the population, were on their way to Palestine. Peter himself commanded a great multitude; but the first detachment, under *Walter the Penniless*, was cut to pieces by the Bulgarians, only a small band reaching Constantinople, where it was joined by the forces of Peter. This undisciplined multitude engaged the army of the Turkish Sultan on the plains of Nice, but were defeated with great slaughter. A third and fourth expedition of the same kind shared a similar fate.

5. But the real crusaders soon arrived at Constantinople. These consisted of six armies of veteran soldiers, commanded by the most skilful and experienced generals of

3. Who was Peter the Hermit? What was done by Pope Urban II.? What took place at the Council of Clermont? Why were these wars called *Crusades?*
4. In what way was the first crusade commenced?
5. Who were the real Crusaders? What force had they?

the age: *Godfrey of Bouillon* (*boo-eel-yong'*), Duke of Lorraine; *Hugh the Great*, brother of Philip I., king of France; *Robert*, son of William the Conqueror of England; *Count Robert*, of Flanders; *Bo'he-mond*, Count of Tarentum, with his cousin, the noble and illustrious *Tancred;* and *Count Raymond*, of Toulouse. The whole force amounted to about 600,000 men.

6. Having defeated Sultan Sol'i-man, and captured *Nice*, his capital (1097), they proceeded to Syria, and took Antioch (1098), after a siege of seven months. During this siege, Peter the Hermit, and multitudes of others, deserted the ranks of the crusaders. After routing an immense army of Mohammedans, sent by the Persian sultan, the crusaders marched to Jerusalem, where they found their army reduced to 40,000 men. After a short siege, this city surrendered (1099), and Godfrey of Bouillon was unanimously elected king. A short time after this, he defeated the Sultan of Egypt, with an immense army, at *Ascalon*.

7. The *Kingdom of Jerusalem*, thus founded, was gradually extended till it embraced the whole of Palestine; the best part of Asia Minor was restored to the Eastern Empire, and Bohemond was made Prince of Antioch. At Jerusalem were founded the two famous orders of the *Knights Hospitallers of St. John* and the *Knights Templars*. For nearly fifty years the three Latin principalities or kingdoms of the East—*Edessa*, *Antioch*, and *Jerusalem*—maintained themselves against the Mohammedans, and increased in power and wealth.

8. Second Crusade.—This was excited by the dangers to which the Christians of Syria were exposed from the conquering arms of a Turkish Emir, who, having been appointed governor of Aleppo, had defeated the Franks at

6. What was accomplished by the crusaders? Who was made King of Jerusalem?

7. How was the kingdom of Jerusalem extended? What else was done? What orders were founded? What is said of Edessa, Antioch, and Jerusalem?

8. What excited the second crusade? By whom was it preached? Who took part in it? What caused its failure?

Antioch, had taken Edessa, and threatened the destruction of all the Christian kingdoms in Syria. It was preached by the celebrated *St. Ber'nard,* Abbot of Clairvaux (*clare-vo'*), in Champagne, who was distinguished for his learning and devotion. Two immense armies, under *Louis VII.,* king of France, and *Conrad III.,* emperor of Germany, marched for the Holy Land (1147). But, owing to the base treachery of *Manuel Com-ne'nus,* the Greek emperor, the armies met with a long series of disasters; and after a fruitless attempt to take Damascus, the expedition was abandoned, only a small remnant of the numerous host returning to Europe.

9. Third Crusade.—The taking of Jerusalem by *Sal'adin,* sultan of Egypt (1187), led to a third crusade, the chiefs of which were *Frederick Bar-ba-ros'sa,* emperor of Germany; *Philip Augustus,* king of France; and *Richard I.,* of England. The emperor set out first (1189), but died of a fever brought on by imprudently bathing in the O-ron'tēs River. His army joined the forces of the other two monarchs at *Acre;* which city, after a long siege of nearly two years, was compelled to surrender, notwithstanding every effort made by Saladin to relieve the defenders. No less than nine battles were fought, and more than 100,000 Christians perished, in battle or by disease, during the progress of this siege.

10. Richard and Philip having quarrelled, the latter returned to Europe; but the former led his forces to Ascalon, and defeated Saladin, but was compelled to retire from Jerusalem. After accomplishing prodigies of valor, which excited the admiration of the Saracens, he made a treaty with Saladin, to protect the pilgrims from injury and oppression, and set out for Europe (1192). Saladin dying the next year, the unity of his empire was destroyed. The

9. What led to the third crusade? Who were its chiefs? What befell the Emperor Frederick? What city was taken? What losses did the Christians sustain?
10. Why did Philip return home? What did Richard achieve? What ended the third crusade?

sultans of Egypt, Aleppo, and Damascus became hostile to each other; and the Franks, or Christians of Syria, were left secure in their possessions.

11. The **Fourth Crusade** was enjoined by Pope Innocent III. (1203). A vast armament was fitted out at Venice; but the expedition was diverted from its proper mission against the Mohammedans, and, under *Baldwin*, Count of Flanders, proceeded against Constantinople. This city the crusaders took (1204), and founded there the Latin dynasty of emperors, who occupied the throne for fifty-six years.

12. The **Fifth Crusade** was led by *Frederick II.*, emperor of Germany. It began in 1228, and was terminated by a treaty which the emperor made with the sultan of Egypt. In accordance with this treaty, Palestine was ceded to Frederick, and free toleration granted of both the Christian and Mohammedan faiths. Under this arrangement, the Christians lived in Jerusalem in peace and prosperity, undisturbed until the irruption of the Mongols, in the middle of the thirteenth century.

13. The **Sixth Crusade** was undertaken by Louis IX. (St. Louis), of France (1249), in consequence of the capture and pillage of Jerusalem by the barbarous Mongols. The French monarch, after having taken Damietta, was utterly defeated by the Sultan of Egypt, and taken prisoner. He was afterward ransomed by his subjects (1250).

14. The **Seventh Crusade** was undertaken by *St. Louis* in alliance with *Prince Edward* (afterward Edward I.) of England (1269), in consequence of the taking of Antioch by the Mam'e-luke* Sultan of Egypt. Louis

* The *Mamelukes* (a word meaning in Arabic, *slaves*) were of Turkish origin, and were bought by the Sultan of Egypt and placed in the army. In 1254, they had advanced to such a degree of power, that they made one of their number Sultan, and founded a dynasty which occupied the throne of Egypt for centuries.

11. Who enjoined the fourth crusade? What did it accomplish?
12. Who was at the head of the fifth crusade? What was effected by it?
13. By whom was the sixth crusade undertaken? Why? What was the result?
14. By whom was the seventh crusade undertaken? Why? What caused the death of St. Louis? What followed? What was done by Edward?

crossed to Africa, expecting to receive the King of Tunis as a convert to Christianity; but, instead of a convert, he found a determined enemy; and a pestilence having broken out, the French perished by thousands on the burning sands. St. Louis died in his tent; and his son Philip, after making a treaty with the king of Tunis, returned to France (1270). Prince Edward, however, proceeded to the Holy Land, and gained some advantages by his skill and valor; but after making a ten years' truce, he returned home to ascend the English throne.

15. This was the last of the crusades. Antioch had been taken by the sultan of Egypt, and all its inhabitants slaughtered or made slaves in 1268; the other towns of Syria, soon after fell successively into the hands of the Mohammedans, excepting Acre, which for a time was the metropolis of the Christians. This also was captured by the sultan in 1291, and its inhabitants, to the number of 60,000, put to death or sent into bondage. Soon afterward all the churches and fortifications of the Latin Christians throughout Syria were demolished.

16. Influence of the Crusades. These enterprises indirectly contributed very greatly to the political and social improvement of the nations of Europe during the Middle Ages. *They tended to break up the feudal system,* by compelling the great barons to sell their lands, in order to raise the money necessary to equip their troops and transport them to distant countries. They also aided popular freedom, by inducing kings to grant to the towns political privileges, in return for contributions of money for the same purpose.

17. *They encouraged commerce,* by employing so many ships and such vast supplies as were required to transport and sustain the vast armies which were raised and sent out

15. What events destroyed the power of the Latin Christians in Syria?
16. What was the influence of the crusades on the Feudal System? On popular freedom?
17. On commerce and navigation? What cities rose to eminence?

to so great a distance. Foreign countries were brought into communication with each other, and the advantage of a mutual exchange of products soon became apparent. Thus the arts of navigation and ship-building rapidly advanced; and many cities situated in the route of these expeditions soon acquired extraordinary influence and wealth. Of these *Gen'oa* and *Venice* are examples.

18. *They promoted the diffusion of knowledge, and the progress of science and literature.* Those who engaged in them were at first grossly ignorant and illiterate; but coming in contact with the Greek and Saracenic civilization, they soon imbibed a taste for the science and literature which constituted one of its most prominent features, and, on returning home, communicated the same spirit to their fellow countrymen.

19. They were *enterprises undertaken for a noble and unselfish purpose;* and, although blended with it, was the desire of military distinction and renown, this was to be gratified by great self-sacrifice, and personal devotion to a cause which conscience and religion approved. Hence were necessarily infused that heroic and disinterested spirit, that eagerness to succor the weak and distressed, that love of romantic adventure, and those elevated sentiments of honor, all of which went to form that remarkable feature of the manners of the Middle Ages, known as *chivalry.*

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

1076. Jerusalem taken by the Seljuk Turks.
1095. Council of Clermont.
" *First crusade* advocated by Pope Urban II.
1097. Soliman defeated and Nice taken by the Crusaders.
1098. Antioch taken by the Crusaders.
1099. Jerusalem taken, and Godfrey of Bouillon elected king.

---

18. How did they promote the diffusion of knowledge, and the progress of science and literature?
19. What is further said of their influence? How did they give rise to chivalry?

1147. *Second crusade* undertaken by Louis VII. and the Emperor Conrad.
1187. Jerusalem taken by Saladin.
1189. *Third crusade* under Philip II., Richard I., and Frederick Barbarossa.
1203. *Fourth crusade*, under Baldwin, count of Flanders.
1204. Constantinople taken by the Crusaders.
1228. *Fifth crusade*, under Frederick II., emperor of Germany.
1249. *Sixth crusade*, under St. Louis.
1269. *Seventh crusade*, under St. Louis and Prince Edward.
1270. Death of St. Louis near Tunis.
1291. Capture of Acre by the Mohammedans. Total conquest of Syria and subjugation of the Latin Christians

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

		PAGE
1.	What was the early custom in reference to making pilgrimages to the Holy Land?	205
2.	What events afterward occurred to interfere with the custom?	205
3.	Who was Peter the Hermit, and what did he do?	189–206–207
4.	What preparations were made for the first crusade?	206
5.	Give the full account of the first crusade	206–161–207
6.	State why the second crusade was undertaken	207–208
7.	Give the full account of the second crusade	207–208–190
8.	What was the immediate cause of the third crusade?	208
9.	Give the full account of the third crusade	208–209–166–191
10.	Why, and with what result, was the fourth crusade made?	209
11.	Give an account of the fifth crusade	209
12.	When and by whom was the sixth crusade undertaken?	209
13.	Give the facts in the career of Saint Louis	192–193–209–210
14.	Give the full account of the seventh crusade	209–210
15.	Give the history of Antioch	58–115–118–137–207–210
16.	What were the four important influences of the crusades	210–211
17.	In what way did they tend to destroy the feudal system	210
18.	Explain how they encouraged commerce	210–211
19.	In what way did they promote the diffusion of knowledge?	211
20.	How did they promote the spirit of heroism and disinterestedness?	211
21.	Name the most prominent persons in each of the seven crusades	206—210
22.	Name those who were most successful	206—210
23.	Name, in chronological order, important events of the 11th century	184–202–211
24.	Name those of the 12th century	184–202–212
25.	Name those of the 13th century	184–203–212
26.	Name those of the 14th century	185–202
27.	Name those of the 15th century	185–203

SECTION VI.

Central and Southern Europe during the Middle Ages.

Germany—(*From* 843 *to* 1493).

1. After the battle of Fontenaille, in which the degenerate grandsons of Charlemagne fought with each other over the territories subdued by his wisdom and valor, the empire was divided into three portions,—*France, Germany,* and *Italy;* and the second of these divisions was assigned to Louis (843). The Carlovingian race became extinct in 911; and thereafter the *Di'et,* or Great Council consisting of the provincial rulers and the chief dignitaries of the Church, assumed the right of electing the emperor, subject to confirmation by the Pope, by whom alone he could be crowned.

2. Several races at this time occupied Germany, the chief of which were the *Franks, Saxons, Ba-va'ri-ans,* and *Sua'bi-ans;* and the first choice of the Diet was *Conrad* of *Franconia.* He was succeeded (919) by five Saxon emperors, the first of whom was **Henry I.** (*the Fowler*), who bravely and successfully withstood an irruption of the *Magyars* (*mod'yars*), or *Hungarians,* whom he defeated in a great battle (934), and thus saved his country from being overrun by those barbarous hordes.* Before his death (936) he was regarded as the greatest monarch in Europe.

3. He was succeeded by his son **Otho I.** (the Great), who again saved Germany by defeating the Hungarians

* *See Note* 1, *end of the Section.*

1. When and how was the empire of Charlemagne divided? To whom was Germany assigned? When did the Carlovingian race become extinct? What followed?

2. What races occupied Germany? Who was the first choice of the electors? By whom was he succeeded? What is said of Henry the Fowler?

3. Who succeeded Henry I.? What was accomplished by Otho the Great?

(955), in a battle near *Augsburg* (*ougs'boorg*), and extended the limits of the Empire on every side. At the head of a victorious army he passed the Alps, subdued Italy, and after receiving at Mil'an the iron crown of the Lombards,* was crowned by the Pope Emperor of the West (962).

4. This great monarch died in 973, and was succeeded by his son **Otho II.**, whose reign was a constant series of wars. He defeated the Saracens in Lower Italy, and made himself master of Naples and Tarentum; but the Greek emperor having invited the Saracens again into Italy, Otho was entirely overwhelmed by them, and narrowly escaped with life. At a diet held in Ve-ro'na, he formally confirmed the privileges of the *Republic of Venice;* and was preparing a great expedition against the Greeks and Saracens, when he died at Rome (983).

5. **Otho III.** was also a great monarch. He defeated the *Slaves*,† or *Slavonians*, who had long carried on war against the Empire, and compelled their chief, *Mi-cis'las*, Duke of Poland, to do him homage. Afterward, by formally acknowledging the successor of the duke a king, he raised the Polish territories to the rank of a kingdom (995). He died at Ravenna (1002), and was succeeded by **Henry II.** who was the last of the Saxon emperors (1024).

6. Four *Franconian Emperors* followed. The first was **Conrad II.**, who annexed the kingdom of Burgundy to the Empire. **Henry III.**, his son, promulgated the *Truce of God*, extended his sway over Hungary, and repressed the insolence of the spiritual and temporal princes of Germany. He was succeeded by **Henry IV.** (1056), who had a severe contest with the famous Pope *Gregory VII.* (Hil'de-brand).

* *See Note* 2, *end of Section.*

† The *Slaves*, or *Slavonians*, anciently called Sarmatians and Scythians, originally inhabited the northern parts of Europe and Asia, and previous to the seventh century had spread themselves over a large district in Central Europe, bordering on the Baltic Sea.

4. State the principal events in the reign of Otho II. When did his death occur?

5. What was accomplished by Otho III.? How did Poland become a kingdom? Who was the last of the Saxon emperors?

6. What emperors followed? What was done by Conrad II.? By Henry III.? Who succeeded him? What caused the contest between Henry IV. and Gregory VII.? How was Henry IV. humiliated?

This talented and energetic pontiff aimed to free the Church from its abuses and make it supreme over the civil power, and therefore determined to put a stop to the corrupt sale of ecclesiastical offices by the emperor. Henry, resisting this, was excommunicated; and, in 1077, the greatest temporal monarch in the world was forced to stand barefoot on the frosty earth at Canossa (a town in Italy) for three days, waiting for admission to Gregory, to whom he finally made the most abject submission. [*See Note* 3, *end of Sec.*]

7. But he failed to keep his promises, and raised a large army, with which he defeated *Rudolf of Suabia*, whom the Pope had caused to be elected in his stead. Then passing into Italy, he took Rome (1084), and ordered the election of a pope in place of Gregory, whom he deposed and drove into exile at Salerno.* Here, this zealous and able pontiff died (1085); but, notwithstanding his misfortunes, he left the papal power greatly strengthened and improved by his efforts.† Henry IV. was succeeded by **Henry V.** (1106), who was the last of the Franconian emperors; and after the crown had been worn by *Lothaire of Saxony* (1125–1137), it passed into the possession of *Conrad of Suabia* (Conrad III.).

8. **Conrad III.**, the first of the *Suabian Emperors*, took part in the second Crusade. His reign is noted for the commencement of the civil wars between the papal and imperial parties, called, respectively, the *Guelphs* and *Ghibellines*, the contests between whom continued to harass Germany and Italy for nearly three centuries. *Frederick I.* (*Bar-ba-ros'sa—Red-Beard*), the nephew of Conrad, succeeded him (1152); and displayed, during a long reign, the character of an active and talented monarch. He engaged in a contest with the Lombard cities of Northern Italy,

* A town in Southern Italy, about thirty miles southeast of Naples, on a gulf of the same name. It is very famous in history. † *See Note* 4, *end of Section.*

7. What did he afterward do? Where did Gregory die? What was the effect of his efforts? Who succeeded Henry IV.? When did Conrad of Suabia assume the crown?

8. What is said of the reign of Conrad III.? Of Frederick Barbarossa? How did the Lombard cities acquire their independence?

which at this time emerging into power, claimed the rights of republics. Although at first defeated, they subsequently triumphed (1176) in the battle of *Legnano* (*len-yah'no*);* and, by the peace of *Constance*,† acquired their independence (1183). Frederick perished in the third Crusade (1190). [*See Note* 5, *end of Section.*]

9. The interval between the death of Frederick Barbarossa and the accession of the Hapsburg line (1190–1273), was a period of constant internal commotion and foreign war. The most eminent of the emperors of this period was **Frederick II.**, grandson of Barbarossa, and one of the ablest and most accomplished sovereigns of the Middle Ages. He was compelled, by his obligations to the pope, to undertake two expeditions to the Holy Land, in the second of which he was successful. Contests with the Italian cities and with the papacy occupied the remainder of his reign. He died in 1250.

10. The Hanseatic League.—During the reign of Frederick II., *Hamburgh* and *Lubec* formed a union, to protect their shipping against pirates, and extend their commerce. This confederacy was soon joined by *Brem'en*, *Cologne*, *Dant'zic*, and many other towns, and became very influential and celebrated, under the title of the *Hansa*, or *Han-se-at'ic League*. Its principal foreign depots were *London*, *Bru'ges*,‡ *Nov'gorod*,§ and *Ber'gen*.‖ Its deputies met every three years at Lubec. This league attained its highest prosperity and importance in the 14th century. Its last general assembly met in 1630.

---

* A town of Northern Italy, sixteen miles N. W. of Milan.

† A town in the southern part of Germany, on the northwestern shore of Lake Constance.

‡ In the Middle Ages the great emporium of Central Europe, distinguished not only for its extensive commerce, but its manufacture of cloths and tapestries.

§ A great emporium of Western Russia during the 12th, 13th, and 14th centuries; having at one time, it is said, a population of 400,000. [*See Notes* 6 *and* 7, *end of the Section.*]

‖ A commercial town in the western part of Norway.

---

9. What is said of the period following the reign of Frederick I.? What was the character of Frederick II.? What were the chief events of his reign?

10. What led to the Hanseatic League? What towns joined it? What were its principal foreign depots? Where and how often did its deputies meet? When did it reach its highest influence? When did it end?

11. Rudolf I., the first of the *Haps'burg** line, was acknowledged emperor by the Pope (Gregory X.) (1273), on condition of resigning all jurisdiction over Rome, while he retained the right of investing new bishops. He subdued *Ot'to-car* of Bohemia, and seized his dominions, including *Austria*, thus founding the present Austrian Empire. He ruled with much skill and energy; and, reducing the robber-nobles to submission, greatly increased the imperial power. On his death (1291) a contest arose as to the succession; but his son *Albert* finally prevailed (1298).

12. Albert I.—During this reign the Swiss Cantons made their memorable rising for independence, being provoked, according to the popular tradition, by the tyranny of the governor, *Gesler* (*ghes'ler*), who commanded, as the story goes, the citizens of Al'torf to bow before the ducal cap of Austria, set upon a pole in the market-place. This, *William Tell* refused to do; and was condemned to lose his life, or shoot an apple from his son's head. Although he succeeded in this trying ordeal, the governor still refused to set him at liberty; but a storm arising as he was carried in chains across the lake, he was unfettered, in order that he might render aid as a steersman; when, leaping from the vessel as it neared the shore, he escaped, and a short time after avenged himself and his country by slaying the tyrannical governor (1308).† The emperor himself was murdered the same year in Switzerland by his nephew, John of Suabia.

13. After the murder of Albert, the imperial throne was filled in succession by *Henry VII.* (1308–1313), who an-

* *Hapsburg*, meaning *Hawk's Castle*, was the name given to the stronghold built by the feudal ancestors of this race, on the Rhine. [*See Note* 8, *end of the Section.*]

† The story of William Tell is a traditionary legend, the details of which are now generally believed to be fictitious.

11. What were the principal events of the reign of Rudolf I.? Who succeeded him?

12. What interesting event occurred during the reign of Albert I.? Relate the story of William Tell. When and how did Albert's death occur?

13. Who were the next four emperors? Which annexed Bohemia to the empire? What was the Golden Bull? By whom was it issued? What followed the death of Charles IV.? When did Sigismund of Hungary ascend the throne?

nexed Bohemia to the empire; *Louis of Bavaria*, and *Frederick of Austria* (1313–1349); and *Charles IV. of Bohemia* (1349–1378); the last of whom published the *Golden Bull*, a decree by which the electors of the German Empire and the mode of election were determined (1356). The death of Charles IV. was followed by several brief reigns, after which the crown was conferred on *Sig'is-mund of Hungary*, a son of Charles IV. (1410).

14. This emperor had been king of Hungary, and attempted, with an immense army of Hungarians, French, Germans, and Poles, to relieve the Byzantine Empire, then attacked by the Ottomans; but was terribly defeated at *Nicop'olis** (1396). During his reign *John Huss* preached in Prague against the abuses of the Church, and attacked the papal supremacy. At first he was excommunicated; and then, being induced under a safe-conduct given by the Emperor Sigismund, to attend the council at *Constance*, he was apprehended, convicted of heresy, and, notwithstanding the plighted word of Sigismund, burnt at the stake (1415). His friend and disciple, *Jer'ome of Prague*, shared the same fate the next year. [*See Note* 9.]

15. This led to a furious war of sixteen years, in the first part of which the Bohemians, or *Huss'ites*, were led by the famous *John Zis'ca*, and defeated the armies of Sigismund in many battles. In 1437, a treaty was made, by which the religious liberty of the Hussites in Bohemia was acknowledged. While this war was going on, Sigismund marched against the Turks, whom he defeated in a great battle near *Nis'sa*† (1419). This checked the Ottoman conquests on the eastern frontier. Sigismund died in 1437.

16. The short reign of *Albert II.* (1437-1440), was fol-

* A town in European Turkey, on the Danube. (See Progressive Map, No. 7.)
† A town in European Turkey, south of the Danube. (See Progressive Map, No. 7.)

14. What led to the battle of Nicopolis? What account is given of John Huss? Of Jerome of Prague?
15. What is said of the war with the Hussites? Who was their leader? How was it ended? Where did Sigismund defeat the Turks? What was the effect of this defeat?

lowed by that of *Frederick III.*, who, in order to aggrandize the house of Austria, neglected the general interests of the empire, and suffered the infidel Turks to make great encroachments upon its territories. He succeeded (1477) in effecting a marriage between his son *Maximilian* and *Mary of Burgundy*, thus obtaining for the former the sovereignty of the Netherlands, which Mary had inherited from her father, Charles the Bold. Printing was invented in Germany during the reign of Frederick III. Maximilian succeeded his father on the imperial throne in 1493.

Switzerland—(*From* 1307 *to* 1476).

17. The oppression of the Swiss by Albert I. led to an insurrection; and Leopold, his son, advancing into Switzerland with a considerable army, was defeated by a small band of Swiss at the narrow pass of *Mor'gar-ten* (1315). This was followed by a league of the Cantons of *Uri* (*oo'ree*), *Schweitz* (*shwites*), and *Unterwalden* (*oon'ter-wal'den*), to which others were afterward added; and, in 1352, the confederacy included eight Cantons. The Austrians afterward renewed the war, and were again defeated at *Sem'pach* (1386), in a battle memorable for the devotion of *Arnold* of *Winkelried* (*win'kel-reed*), who, when his countrymen recoiled from the serried spears of the enemy, rushed upon them, burying them in his bosom, but making way for the Swiss host behind him. [*See Note* 10, *end of Section.*]

18. In the following century, Switzerland had gained in strength; but it was severely tried by a civil war which broke out among the Cantons in 1436. This was followed by a struggle with *Charles the Bold*, duke of Burgundy, in which the Swiss gained two decisive victories. Their inde-

---

16. What reigns followed? Relate what is said of Frederick III. What was obtained by the marriage of Maximilian and Mary of Burgundy? What invention took place? When did Maximilian succeed to the throne?

17. What led to the battle of Morgarten? By what was it followed? What took place at Sempach? What is related of Arnold of Winkelried?

18. Relate the subsequent history of Switzerland to 1499.

pendence was fully established by a peace concluded with the Emperor *Maximilian* in 1499.

Italy.

19. Northern Italy, by the defeat of the Lombards (774), passed under the rule of Charlemagne, who was, in 800, crowned at St. Peter's "Emperor of the Romans." After the battle of Fontenaille, it was assigned to his grandson Lothaire (843), whose descendants held the throne nearly fifty years (843-888). This period is noted for the invasion of *Southern Italy* by the Saracens, who carried their victorious arms even to the gates of Rome. They held possession of a large part of the country until they were expelled by the Normans in 1016.

20. Confusion and civil war followed the close of the Carlovingian dynasty in Northern Italy, occasioned by the disputes of ambitious nobles for the throne, until Otho I., of Germany, assumed the sovereignty of the country (961). From this period, the chief towns rapidly emerged into power and importance. The *Lombard League* was formed in 1167; and, in 1183, the cities secured their independence by the *Peace of Constance.* The bitter strife between the Guelphs and Ghibellines devastated the country for centuries; but, nevertheless, the republics of Northern Italy attained a high degree of splendor and prosperity.

21. Venice.—Among these, *Venice* occupied a prominent place. Its foundation dates from the invasion of Italy by Attila (452), who pillaged and destroyed the flourishing cities of the *Veneti* in Northern Italy; and many of the inhabitants, taking refuge among the islands at the head of the Adriatic, founded there a settlement which for a

---

19. What events are mentioned in the history of Northern Italy from 843 to 888? Of Southern Italy?

20. How was Northern Italy affected by the extinction of the Carlovingians? What league was formed? How did the cities secure their independence? What contest laid waste the country? What is said of the northern republics?

21. What account is given of the foundation of Venice?

time depended for its subsistence upon fishing and the manufacture of salt. It was called *Ve-ne'zi-a*, or, as we have it, *Venice*.

22. It was between two and three centuries a simple republic; but, in 697, the first *Doge* (*duke*) was elected,—an officer in whom was vested almost undivided authority. The republic was nominally subject to the Eastern Empire, and assisted it in defending the Exarchate of Ravenna from the attacks of the Lombards. During the reign of Charlemagne (809), it was attacked by the Franks, but defeated them with great loss. A short time after this, the central island, *Rialto* (*re-ahl'to*), was connected with the other islands by wooden bridges; and this city of bridges and canals, instead of streets, came to be generally known by its name *Venice*. [*See Note* 11, *end of Section*.]

23. A short time after this, the Venetians took *St. Mark* as their patron saint, having brought, as it is said, his body from Alexandria (829). During the next 250 years, the republic greatly increased in wealth, commerce, and naval power; and its territorial dominions were augmented by the acquisition of Dalmatia, and some of the neighboring provinces. In the first Crusade, the Venetians sent a fleet of more than 200 vessels to aid Godfrey of Bouillon (1099); and during the whole period of these expeditions, Venice was the great centre of commerce, and the emporium by which the silks, spices, and gems of the East were distributed to Europe.

24. Venice was a prominent member of the "League of Lombardy," against Frederick Barbarossa; and, during the contest (in 1177), gained a splendid naval victory over the Ghibellines, under Otho, Frederick's son, in defence of the Pope, who had appealed to the republic for protection. It

22. When was the first Doge elected? How was Venice connected with the Eastern Empire? Whom did it defeat in 809? What is said of the Rialto?

23. What events occurred during the next 250 years? How was Venice affected by the Crusades?

24. Of what league was Venice a member? What great victory was gained? What ceremony was instituted?

was after this victory that the ceremony of "wedding the Adriatic" was instituted, the Pope presenting the Doge with a ring for the purpose.*

25. After the taking of Constantinople by the Crusaders (1204), Venice having supplied a fleet, under the venerable doge *Dan'dō-lō*, received, as her share of the spoils, the *Mō-re'a*,† and several other territories in Europe. The doge, although blind and ninety years of age, so distinguished himself that the Crusaders, in admiration of his prowess and skill, offered him the imperial crown, which he refused. During the latter half of the 13th century and most of the 14th, Venice was engaged in almost constant war with her great rival, *Gen'o-a.*

26. In the latter part of the 13th century (1275), *Mar'co Po'lo*, the great Venetian traveller, crossed Asia, and after visiting Tartary and China, returned home by way of the East Indies and the Persian Gulf. The account given by this traveller of the East, did much to stimulate further adventure and exploration. After Genoa had passed away as an independent power (1396), Venice experienced her highest prosperity, and was the greatest maritime power in the world.

27. She acquired by conquest, in the beginning of the fifteenth century, a large domain in Northern Italy, and did important service to Europe by repelling the attacks of the Turkish fleets in the Mediterranean. Her wars, however, soon wasted her treasures, and impaired her commerce; while her government became tyrannical and corrupt. When the new route to the East, by way of the Cape

* This ceremony, performed with great pomp and festivity, consisted in casting a ring in the sea, to indicate that it was "subject to Venice as a bride is to her husband."

† The southern peninsula of Greece, anciently called the Peloponnesus.

25. How was Venice rewarded after the taking of Constantinople in 1204? What is said of Dandolo? With what other republic was Venice at war in the 13th and 14th centuries?

26. What is said of Marco Polo? What did Venice become after the fall of Genoa?

27. What is said of the history of Venice during the 15th century? In what way did she lose her power?

of Good Hope, was discovered (1497), her fate was sealed, and her glory soon departed.

28. **Southern Italy.** This part of the Peninsula, in the ninth century, was invaded by the Saracens, against whom it was for a time defended by the armies of the Byzantine Empire. In the next century, Otho II., of Germany, having defeated the Saracens, made himself master of Naples and Salerno, and finally of Tarentum. This so alarmed the Greek emperor, that he formed an alliance with the Saracens; and, in the severe battle of *Crotona*, utterly defeated Otho, who with difficulty escaped from the hands of the victors. The Saracens held many of the most important places in Southern Italy until they were expelled by the *Normans*, in the 11th and 12th centuries.

29. These were a band of adventurers from Normandy, who at first rendered aid in expelling the Saracens from Salerno (1016). Being joined by others, they soon made a lodgment in the delightful regions of Southern Italy, repeatedly defeating the vastly more numerous forces of the Eastern Empire. Their numbers were increased by constant accessions from Normandy; and, in 1060, the renowned *Robert Guis'card* (or *ghees-kar'*), was acknowledged by the pope Duke of Apu'lia and Calā'bria, and of such other lands, in Italy and Sicily, as he might rescue from the Greeks and Saracens. This Norman duke was, perhaps, the most accomplished soldier of his age; and extended his conquests throughout Southern Italy, thus putting an end to the long dominion of the Eastern emperors.

30. He subsequently raised an immense army, officered by Norman knights, and attacked the other territories of the Eastern Empire. *Durazzo* (*doo-rat'so*)* fell, after a

* A town of European Turkey, on the Adriatic; called by the Greeks *Epidamnus;* by the Romans, *Dyrrachium.*

28. Who invaded Southern Italy in the ninth century? By whom was it defended? What was done by Otho II.? What led to the battle of Crotona? How long did the Saracens continue in Southern Italy? By whom were they expelled?

29. Who were the Normans? How did they obtain a lodgment in Southern Italy? What is said of Robert Guiscard?

siege of seven months, before his invincible skill and valor; and thence he marched his army into the heart of the empire, making Constantinople itself tremble. He was, however, hastily recalled to Italy to protect Pope Gregory VII. (Hildebrand) against his inveterate foe, Henry IV. of Germany; and, raising a large army, he marched rapidly from Salerno to Rome, and compelled the German emperor to seek safety in retreat. It was with the faithful Robert Guiscard, that the illustrious pontiff at last found an asylum at Salerno.

31. *Roger I.*, the brother of Robert Guiscard, conquered Sicily from the Saracens after several years of war; and his son, *Roger II.*, ruled over the Norman possessions in both Sicily and Italy, and subjugated the free cities of *Naples* and *Amalfi** (1127); but, in the person of *William II.*, his grandson, the Norman dynasty became extinct, and the kingdom passed under the sway of the German emperors (1189).

32. Thus it remained till the reign of *Manfred*, whom *Charles of Anjou* defeated in the battle of *Beneven'to*† (1266), and thus obtained the throne of Naples and Sicily, which he retained till the dreadful massacre of the *Sicilian Vespers* (1282). By this event he lost Sicily; but transmitted Naples to his descendants, who retained the throne of that country till 1435, when it passed to the kings of Aragon, who had ruled Sicily from the time of the Sicilian Vespers.

33. **Rome**, or **Papal Italy**, has been governed since the 8th century by the Popes, who, in uninterrupted succession, have been elected to fill the chair of *St. Peter*. During a

* A town on the Gulf of Salerno, southeast of Naples, noted for its extensive trade in the Middle Ages.

† A town of Southern Italy, a few miles northeast of Naples.

30. Narrate the other principal events in the history of Robert Guiscard.

31. What is related of Roger I. and Roger II.? What ended the Norman dynasty?

32. How and when did Charles of Anjou obtain Naples and Sicily? How long did he retain Sicily? Naples?

33. What is related of Rome, or Papal Italy? What account is given of Rienzi?

period of 72 years (from 1305 to 1377) the Pope's residence was at *Avignon*. Rome, in the mean while, was the scene of constant disorder from the lawless acts of the great nobles, who prosecuted their family feuds with the utmost fury and license. Out of these struggles arose *Rienzi* (*re-en'ze*), the "Last of the Tribunes," who, in 1347, seized the chief power, and having expelled the nobles, endeavored to restore the ancient liberties of the city. A counter-revolution overturned his government after an existence of but seven months, and he was driven into exile. Rienzi was a friend of the famous poet *Pe'trarch*, and was distinguished for his learning and oratory. [*See Note* 12.]

Spain.

34. On the conquest of Spain by the Saracens, the Christians, who were the remnant of the Visigothic kingdom, took refuge in the mountainous districts of As-tu'ri-as, and founded a new kingdom under their leader, *Pe-la'yo*. For centuries they and their descendants waged an almost incessant warfare upon the Mos'lems, or Mohammedans; and new kingdoms came into existence as the country was gradually recovered. Of these, *Ar'agon* and *Castile* (*cas-teel'*) were the chief. In 1212, these different kingdoms combined their forces, and gained at *To-lo'sa** one of the greatest victories ever achieved by the Christians over their Moslem foes.

35. After this battle, the Saracen power rapidly declined, and that of Castile and Aragon steadily increased. The most celebrated of the Castilian monarchs were *Al-fon'so X.*, noted for his learning, and particularly for his love of astronomy (1252–1282); *Peter the Cruel*, a contemporary of Du Guesclin and the Black Prince; and *Henry*, his suc-

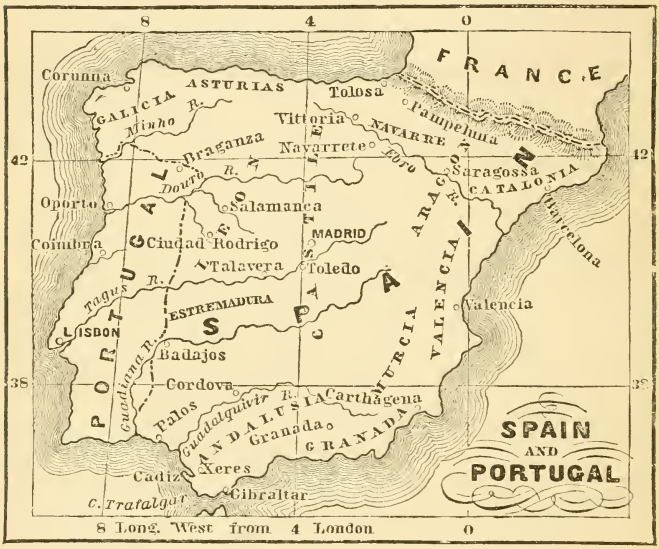
* A town in the northern part of Spain, a few miles from the port of St. Sebastian, on the Bay of Biscay. (See Map, page 226.)

34. What followed the conquest of Spain by the Saracens? What Christian kingdoms were afterward formed? What is said of the battle of To-lo'sa?

35. What was the effect of this battle? Who was the most eminent of the kings of Castile? For what was he noted? What other kings are mentioned?

cessor, who was defeated at *Navarrete* (*nah-var-ra'ta*)* by the Black Prince, and deposed.

36. The smaller kingdom of Aragon acquired extensive foreign possessions, the chief of which were Sicily, Naples, and Sardinia. Under the reign of *Ferdinand the Catholic,* who married *Isabella,* Queen of Castile, both these kingdoms were united (1479); and from this date commenced the real greatness of Spain. Ferdinand made war upon *Granada* (*grah-nah'-dah*), the last Moslem kingdom



* A town in the northern part of Spain, near the Ebro River. (See Map.)

Map Questions.—What provinces of Spain border on the Atlantic? On the Pyrenees? On the Mediterranean? In what part of Spain is Castile? Leon? Aragon? Murcia? Where is Saragossa? Toledo? Valencia? Cordova? Talavera? Granada? What cities of Portugal are on or near the Atlantic?

36. What possessions were acquired by Aragon? How were Aragon and Castile united? What was achieved by Ferdinand? For what is the year 1492 memorable?

in the Peninsula (1481); and, in 1492, after a long siege, the famous Moorish fortress, the *Al-ham'bra*, was surrendered; and the Saracen power in Spain came to an end, after an existence of 779 years. This year (1492) is also memorable for the *discovery of America by Columbus*, under the auspices of Queen Isabella.

Portugal.

37. This kingdom was originally a part of Castile; but in 1095, King *Alfonso VI.* granted it to his son-in-law, *Henry of Burgundy*, who was to rule as a vassal. Henry's son and successor, *Alfonso*, gained a great victory over the Saracens, and, throwing off his allegiance to Castile, made Portugal an independent kingdom (1139). This led to a fierce contest with Castile, which lasted for a long time; but ended in favor of the Portuguese, who were governed for more than two centuries by the descendants of Alfonso, whom they had chosen for his virtues and his valor.

38. *Alfonso III.* extended the kingdom to its present limits, by the conquest of *Al-gar've*, the most southern province, which he wrested from the Moors, after a contest of three years (1252). During the reign of John, *Prince Henry*, the *Navigator*, one of the wisest and best men of his age, planned and directed several voyages in order to explore the coast of Africa, and discover a passage around it to the Indies. Under John II., *Bartholomew Diaz* (*de'az*) reached the stormy cape at the extremity of the continent (1486), to which the king of Portugal gave the name of *Good Hope*;* and, in 1497, *Vas'co da Ga'ma* doubled this cape, and succeeded in sailing to India. This voyage and that of Columbus revolutionized the commerce of the world.

* Diaz had called it the "Cape of all the Storms," in consequence of the tempests which he had experienced before reaching it. [*See Note* 12, *end of the Section.*]

37. What was Portugal originally? How did it become independent? What did this lead to? How was Portugal governed?

38. What is said of Alphonso III.? Of Prince Henry, the navigator? By whom and when was the Cape of Good Hope discovered? By whom and when was it rounded? What was the effect of the discoveries made by Columbus and Da Gama?

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.	
843.	Empire of Germany established under Louis, grandson of Charlemagne.
934.	The Hungarians defeated by Henry the Fowler.
936–973.	**Otho the Great.** Hungarians defeated.
973–983.	**Otho II.** Republic of Venice becomes prominent.
983–1002.	**Otho III.** Kingdom of Poland begins.
1016.	Invasion of Italy by the Normans. Saracens defeated.
1056–1106.	**Henry IV.** The Papacy of **Hildebrand** (Gregory VII.).
1060.	Robert Guiscard, acknowledged Duke of Apulia, &c., by the Pope.
1077.	Submission of Henry IV. to Gregory VII.
1084.	Rome taken by Henry IV. Gregory VII. deposed.
1139	Portugal made an independent kingdom.
1176.	Battle of Legnano
1183.	Peace of Constance. Lombard cities become independent.
1190.	Death of **Frederick Barbarossa**, after a reign of 38 years.
1212.	Defeat of the Saracens at Tolosa by the Spanish Christians.
1247.	Hanseatic League formed.
1266.	Charles of Anjou becomes king of Naples and Sicily.
1273.	**Rudolf I.**, the first of the Hapsburg line.
1275.	Marco Polo, the Venetian, travels to the East.
1284.	*Alfonso the Wise*, king of Portugal.
1315.	Battle of Morgarten. Victory gained by the Swiss.
1347.	Rienzi, the "Last of the Tribunes" at Rome.
1356.	The *Golden Bull* published by Charles of Bohemia.
1386.	Battle of Sempach. Death of Arnold of Winkelried.
1396.	Sigismund of Hungary defeated by the Turks at Nicopolis.
"	Genoa ceases to exist as an independent republic.
1414–1418.	Council of Constance. John Huss and Jerome of Prague condemned and burnt for heresy.
1419.	Defeat of the Turks at Nissa by the Emperor Sigismund.
1437.	Religious freedom granted to the Bohemians.
1477.	Marriage of Maximilian with Mary of Burgundy.
1486.	Discovery of the Cape of Good Hope by Bartholomew Diaz.
1492.	Granada conquered by Ferdinand of Spain.
"	**Discovery of America** by Christopher Columbus.
1493.	Accession of Maximilian, emperor of Germany.
1497.	Cape of Good Hope doubled by Vasco da Gama.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. Give an account of the battle of Fontenaille, with its cause and consequences 145-146-213
2. How was the Carlovingian dynasty begun? 144
3. Name, in the order of their succession, six sovereigns of the Carlovingian dynasty 144-145-146
4. To what position was Conrad of Franconia raised? 213
5. By whom was Germany occupied at that time? 213
6. Name the five Saxon emperors that succeeded Conrad 213-214
7. What did Henry the Fowler achieve for his country? 213
8. Give an account of the achievements of Otho the Great 213-214
9. What events occurred during the reign of Otho II.? 214
10. What were the achievements of Otho III.? 214
11. Name the four Franconian emperors of Germany 214-215
12. What did Conrad II. and Henry III. accomplish? 214
13. Give an account of the contest between Henry IV. and Gregory VII 214-215
14. State what you can of Conrad of Suabia (or Swabia) 215
15. Of Frederick Barbarossa 215-216-208-221
16. Of Frederick II 216-209
17. Give the history of the Hanseatic League 216
18. Name, in chronological order, the most important events of the 10th century 202-228
19. Name those of the 11th century 184-202-211-228
20. Name those of the 12th century 184-202-212-228
21. Name those of the 13th century 184-203-212-228
22. Name those of the 14th century 185-203-228
23. Give the facts in the reign of Rudolf I 217
24. Give an account of the reign of Albert I 217
25. Name seven successors of Albert I 217-218-219
26. What was done by Charles IV. of Bohemia 218
27. Give an account of the life and reign of Sigismund 218
28. Give the early history of Switzerland 217-218-220
29. Give the history of Northern Italy from 774 to 1183 220
30. Give the origin and early history of Venice 220-221-222-223
31. Give an account of Marco Polo 222
32. Of the operations of Otho II. in Southern Italy 223-214
33. Of the Saracens in connection with Southern Italy 223-224
34. Of Robert Guiscard, his elevation and successes 223-224
35. Of events in Italy and Sicily which afterward occurred 224
36. State what you can of Rome, or Papal Italy 224-225
37. Of the battle of Tolosa, its causes and consequences 225
38. Give the early history of Aragon and Castile 225-226-227
39. What can you state of Queen Isabella? 226-227
40. Of King Ferdinand and his success in Granada? 226-227
41. Give the early history of Portugal 227
42. What can you state of Alfonzo III? 227
43. Of voyages made by Portuguese navigators? 227
44. Name, in chronological order, the most important events of the 15th century 185-203-228

A.D.	England.	France.	Other Nations.
732	....	Victory of Charles Martel.	Period
752	.....	End of Merov. Dynasty.	of the
768	The Saxon	Accession of Charlemagne.	Saracen Conquests.
786	Heptarchy.	....	Haroun al Raschid.
800	.....	Empire of the West resto'd	
814	.....	Death of Charlemagne.	
827	Egbert, King of England		
843	... .	Div. of Charlemagne's emp	Louis Emp. of Germany.
871	Alfred the Great.		
884	. ...	Charles the Fat.	
910	....	.....	Fatimite dynasty begins
912	.....	Normans settle in France.	
919	....	.....	Henry the Fowler.
936	....	.....	Otho the Great.
987	... .	Hugh Capet.	
996	.....	Robert.	
1013	Sweyn.		
1017	Canute the Great.....	.....	The Normans in Italy.
1031	.....	Henry I.	
1042	Edward the Confessor.		
1055	.....	....	Seljuks take Bagdad.
1056	.....	....	Henry IV. of Germany.
1060	.....	Philip I.....	Robert Guiscard.
1066	William the Conqueror.		
1076	.....	.....	Turks take Jerusalem.
1084	.....	....	Hildebrand deposed.
1087	William Rufus.		
1095	.....	First Crusade.	
1100	Henry I.		
1108	....	Louis VI.	
1137	.....	Louis VII.	
1152	.....	.....	Frederick Barbarossa.
1154	Henry II.		
1176	....	.....	Battle of Legnano.
1180	....	Philip II. (Augustus).	
1187	....	....	Saladin takes Jerusalem
1189	Richard I.		
1199	John.		
1216	Henry III.		
1223	....	Louis VIII.	
1226	....	Louis IX.	
1258	....	....	End of Saracen Empire.
1270	....	Philip III.	
1272	Edward I.	....	Mongols take Iconium.
1285	.....	Philip IV.	
1307	Edward II.		
1314	Battle of Bannockburn.	Louis X.	
1315	.....	.....	Battle of Morgarten.
1317	.....	Philip V.	
1322	....	Charles IV.	
1327	Edward III.		
1328	....	Philip VI.	
1347	....	.....	Rienzi
1350	... .	John.	
1364	....	Charles V.	
1377	Richard II.		
1380	.....	Charles VI.	
1386	....	....	Battle of Sempach.
1396	....	....	Battle of Nicopolis.
1399	Henry IV.		
1413	Henry V.		
1414	.....	.....	Council of Constance.
1419	... .	.....	Battle of Nissa.
1422	Henry VI.....	Charles VII.	
1453	....	....	Constantinople taken.
1461	Edward IV.....	Louis XI.	
1483	Edward V. Richard III.	Charles VIII.	

NOTES.

1. The Magyars, or Hungarians (p. 218, ¶ 2).—"*Magyar* is the national denomination of the Hungarians; but the Russians gave the name of Ugri, as originating from Ugria; and this name has been corrupted into Ungri and Hungarians. The consanguinity of the Hungarians and Laplanders displays the powerful energy of climate on the children of the common parent; the lively contrast between the bold adventurers who are intoxicated with the wines of the Danube, and the wretched fugitives who are immersed beneath the snows of the polar circle. The Hungarians were a nomadic race; but they were indebted to fishing as well as to the chase for a part of their subsistence. Their tents were of leather, their garments of fur; they shaved their hair and scarified their faces; and, except the merit and fame of military prowess, all that is valued by mankind appeared vile and contemptible to these barbarians, whose native fierceness was stimulated by the consciousness of numbers and freedom. In the abuse of victory they astonished Europe, yet smarting from the wounds of the Saracen and the Dane. Mercy they rarely asked, and more rarely bestowed; both sexes were accused as equally inaccessible to pity; and their appetite for raw flesh might countenance the popular tale that they drank the blood and feasted on the hearts of the slain."—*Gibbon.*

2. Iron Crown of the Lombards (p. 214, ¶ 3).—"Upon the death of Antharis without children, the Lombards devolved upon his widow Theodolinda the choice of a successor and husband. She selected Agilulf, Duke of Turin, who reigned over the Lombards for twenty-five years (A. D. 590–615). The memory of Theodolinda is dear to the Catholic Church. She converted her husband from the Arian heresy, and many of his subjects adopted the Catholic faith. Her merits were recognized by the Roman Pontiff, Gregory, who is said to have presented to her the celebrated *Iron Crown* of the Lombards. This crown does not exhibit any artistic skill on the part of the Lombard or Italian goldsmiths, and is far inferior to the crown of Agilulf, which was enriched with fifteen figures of gold, representing Christ between two angels and the twelve apostles."—[*Gibbon.*] The crown derives its name from the circle of iron, surrounding the interior, which is supposed to have been forged out of one of the nails of the Cross. It is chiefly composed of a collar of gold, adorned with precious stones and flowers of gold. This relic of the Middle Ages was, in 1859, removed by the Austrians to Mantua, and is now in Vienna.

3. Submission of Henry IV. (p. 215, ¶ 6).—"It was the fourth day on which he had borne the humiliating garb of an affected penitent, and in that sordid raiment he drew near on his bare feet to the more than imperial majesty of the Church, and prostrated himself, in more than servile deference, before the diminutive and emaciated old man, 'from the terrible glance of whose countenance,' we are told, 'the eye of every beholder recoiled as from the lightning.' Hunger, cold, nakedness, and shame had, for the moment, crushed the gallant spirit of the sufferer. He wept and cried for mercy, again and again renewing his entreaties until he had reached the lowest level of abasement to which his own enfeebled heart or the haughtiness of his great antagonist, could depress him. Then, and not till then, did the Pope condescend to revoke the anathema of the Vatican."—*Sir J. Stephen.—Essays on Ecclesiastical Biography.*

4. Death of Hildebrand (p. 215, ¶ 7).—"A voluntary exile, Gregory sought in the castle of Salerno, and under the protection of the Normans, the security he could no longer find among his own exasperated subjects. Age and

anxiety weighed heavily upon him. An unwonted lassitude depressed a frame till now incapable of fatigue. He recognized the summons of death, and his soul rose with unconquerable power to entertain that awful visitant. He summoned round his bed the bishops and cardinals who had attended his flight from Rome. He passed before them, in firm and rapid retrospect, the incidents of his eventful life. He maintained the truth of the great principles by which it had been governed from the commencement to the close. He named his three immediate successors in the Papacy. He assured his weeping friends of his intercession for them in Heaven. He forgave, and blessed, and absolved his enemies, though with the resolute exceptions of the emperor and the anti-pope. He then composed himself to die. Anxious to catch the last accents of that once oracular voice, the mourners were bending over him, when, struggling in the very grasp of death, he collected, for one last effort, his failing powers, and breathed out his spirit with the indignant exclamation, 'I have loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; and therefore I die in exile!'"—*Stephen.*

5. Frederick Barbarossa (p. 216, ¶ 8).—"On the death of Conrad, Germany with one consent, had placed the crown on the head of the great Hohenstaufen prince, his nephew, Frederick Barbarossa. If the Papacy, under Hadrian, had resumed all its haughty authority, the Empire was wielded with a terrible force which it hardly ever displayed before. Frederick was a prince of intrepid valor, consummate prudence, unmeasured ambition, justice which hardened into severity, the ferocity of a barbarian somewhat tempered with a high chivalrous gallantry,—above all, with a strength of character which subjugated alike the great temporal and ecclesiastical princes of Germany, and was prepared to assert the imperial rights in Italy to the utmost. He was to the Empire what Hildebrand and Innocent were to the Popedom."—*Milman.—History of Latin Christianity.*

6. Novgorod (p. 216, ¶ 10).—"Novgorod, on the banks of the Ilmen Lake was the glory of Russia during the Middle Ages, with its strong walls, its 250 churches and convents glittering with gilt cupolas, and its 300,000 active citizens, who soon threw off the yoke of the wrangling Russian princes, and constituted themselves into the celebrated republic. Later (after 1240), it entered the confederacy of the Hanseatic cities, and became the great emporium of Indian commerce for the north of Europe. The city had its own laws and courts of justice; the manners were still barbarous—revenge for bloodshed, ordeal by fire, awful servitude, and burning of witches. Novgorod with its free democratic institutions, its active and warlike population, its commercial wealth—then the center of the world's traffic—was the New York or the New Orleans of the Middle Ages, and made good the proverb, 'Who can resist God and the great Novgorod?' Such was the state of this remarkable city from the eleventh to the close of the fifteenth century."—*Koeppen's Middle Ages.*

7. Hanseatic League (p. 216, ¶ 10).—"While the Italians, in the south of Europe were cultivating trade with such industry and success, the commercial spirit awakened in the north towards the middle of the thirteenth century. As the nations around the Baltic were, at that time, extremely barbarous, and infested that sea with their piracies, the cities of Lubec and Hamburg, soon after they began to open some trade with these people, found it necessary to enter into a league of mutual defence. They derived such advantages from this union, that other towns acceded to their confederacy, and in a short time, eighty of the most considerable cities scattered through those extensive countries which stretch from the south of the Baltic to Cologne on the Rhine, joined in the famous Hanseatic League, which became so formidable, that its alliance was courted, and its enmity

was dreaded by the greatest monarchs. The members of this powerful association formed the first systematic plan of commerce known in the Middle Ages, and conducted it by common laws enacted in their general assemblies. They supplied the rest of Europe with naval stores, and pitched on different towns, the most eminent of which was Bruges in Flanders, where they established staples in which their commerce was regularly carried on. Hither the Lombards brought the productions of India, together with the manufactures of Italy, and exchanged them for the more bulky, but not less useful, commodities of the North. The Hanseatic merchants disposed of the cargoes which they received from the Lombards, in the ports of the Baltic, or carried them up the great rivers into the interior parts of Germany."—*Robertson's Charles the Fifth.*

8. Rudolf of Hapsburg (p. 217, ¶ 11).—"Rudolf of Hapsburg, the founder of the House of Austria, and who first opened the way to its future grandeur, was at length elected emperor, not that he might re-establish and extend the imperial authority, but because his territories and influence were so inconsiderable as to excite no jealousy in the German princes, who were willing to preserve the forms of a constitution, the power and vigor of which they had destroyed. Several of his successors were placed on the imperial throne from the same motive; and almost every remaining prerogative was rescued out of the hands of feeble princes unable to exercise or defend them."—*Robertson.*

9. John Huss (p. 218, ¶ 14).—"John Huss was born in Bohemia, in the year 1373. He studied at Prague; and, in 1402, received an appointment as pastor, having previously delivered philosophical and theological lectures. He made the writings of Wiclif and the Scriptures his peculiar study. During the violent disturbances and schisms, which then agitated the Church, Huss took part with the anti-papal party. The following passage is taken from the first volume of *Theobald's War of the Hussites.* 'When the condemned Huss, with his crown of paper, was led by the hangman from the church to the fagot, his spirits rose; and it is testified of him, even by his enemies, that he seemed as though he were going to a gladsome meal, or, as the vulgar saying is, to a dance. But when he saw his books burning in the churchyard, he stopped and smiled. As he passed along, he exhorted the people 'not to believe that he was going to be burnt for his errors; for, that some articles were charged against him on the false testimony of his deadly enemies, although he had never taught them; that others had never been proved to be false, although he had urgently requested it.' But the people who went along with him were all armed, especially the burghers, who had been called upon to attend. When they arrived at the place where he was to be burnt, Huss fell upon his knees, clasped his hands, which were not tied, looked toward Heaven, and repeated the thirtieth and fiftieth Psalms of David. And he especially repeated many times the verse, 'Into thy hands I commend my spirit; Thou hast delivered it, faithful God!'"—*Lieber's Great Events.*

10. Battle of Sempach (p. 219, ¶ 17).—The oppression of the Swiss by the German emperor led to a confederacy of several of the cantons; and at Sempach a great victory was gained by them (1386), chiefly through the patriotic devotion of Arnold of Winkelried (*Win'kel-reed*). The historian, Van Müller, thus describes the incident: "The hostile lines stood unbroken and firm. Sixty Swiss had already been slain. They feared the sudden effect of some unperceived movement by the vanguard from the rear, or of some surprise by the troops of Bonstetten. This moment of delay and indecision was terminated by a man from the canton of Unterwalden, Arnold Strutthan of Winkelried, knight. He said to his companions, 'I'll make a lane for you,' leaped from out the ranks, called with a

loud voice, 'Take care of my wife and children; faithful, dear confederates, remember my race;' rushed upon the enemy, grasped some lances with his hands, buried them in his breast, and, being a very tall and strong man, he pressed them with him to the ground, as he sank down. Instantly his companions threw themselves over his body; and all the hosts of the confederates, in succession, pressed on with the utmost force. The lines of the astonished enemy pressed one upon another to receive them; whereby, through fear, haste, horror, and heat, many lords wounded in their armor, were suffocated; while large bands, hastening from the forests, strengthened the forces of the Swiss."

11. Venice (p. 221, ¶ 23).—"After defeating Pepin, king of Italy (in 809), the Venetians made choice of the largest island, the Riva Alta—*Rialto*—in the center of the Lagoons, where they had secured their families and their wealth, and there they built the city of Venice, the capital of their republic. Some years later, they transported thither from Alexandria, in Egypt, the body of Saint Mark, the Evangelist, whom they chose patron of their State. His winged-lion figured in their arms; and under his victorious banner they afterwards raised their great colonial empire of the East."—*Koeppen's Middle Ages.*

12. Rienzi, the Last of the Tribunes (p. 225, ¶ 33).—"Never perhaps has the energy and effect of a single mind been more remarkably felt than in the sudden, though transient, reformation of Rome by the tribune, Rienzi. A den of robbers was converted to the discipline of a camp or convent: patient to hear, swift to redress, inexorable to punish, his tribunal was always accessible to the poor and stranger; nor could birth, or dignity, or the immunities of the church protect the offender or his accomplices. The privileged houses, the private sanctuaries in Rome, on which no officer could presume to trespass, were abolished; and he applied the timber and iron of their barricades in the fortifications of the capitol. . . . In this time (says the historian), the woods began to rejoice that they were no longer infested with robbers; the oxen began to plough; the pilgrims visited the sanctuaries; the roads and inns were replenished with travellers; trade, plenty, and good faith were restored in the markets; and a purse of gold might be exposed without danger in the midst of the highway. As soon as the life and property of the subject are secure, the labors and rewards of industry spontaneously revive; Rome was still the metropolis of the Christian world; and the fame and fortune of the tribune were diffused in every country by the strangers who had enjoyed the blessings of his government."—*Gibbon.*

13. Prince Henry the Navigator (p. 227, ¶ 38).—"Prince Henry died on the 13th of November, 1473, without accomplishing the great object of his ambition. It was not until many years afterwards, that Vasco de Gama, pursuing with a Portuguese fleet the track he had pointed out, realized his anticipations by doubling the Cape of Good Hope, sailing along the southern coast of India, and thus opening a highway for commerce to the opulent regions of the East. Henry, however, lived long enough to reap some of the richest rewards of a great and good mind. He beheld, through his means, his native country in a grand career of prosperity. The discoveries of the Portuguese were the wonder and admiration of the fifteenth century; and Portugal, from being one of the least among nations, suddenly rose to be one of the most important. All this was effected, not by arms, but by art; not by the stratagems of a cabinet, but by the wisdom of a college. It was the great achievement of a prince who has well been described 'full of thoughts of lofty enterprise and acts of generous spirit': one who bore for his device the magnanimous motto, 'The talent to do good,'—the only talent worthy the ambition of princes."—*Irving.—Life and Voyages of Columbus.*

PART III.

MODERN HISTORY,

Extending from the latter part of the Fifteenth Century to the present time.

1. THE epoch at which Modern History commences is the dawn of intelligence that broke upon Europe in the latter part of the 15th century. The civilization of the Greek Empire disappeared before the conquering arms of the rude and ferocious Ottomans, just as the West, emerging from the night of mediæval ignorance, began to glow with the first beams of an intellectual and social illumination. Literature, science, and art, at this auspicious era, sprang into active life; as the human mind, shaking off the chains in which feudal barbarism had bound it, resumed its activity, exulting in its new-found freedom.

2. The causes of this wonderful change have been in part shown, in connection with the history of the middle ages; but they are here more distinctly stated. The partial destruction of the feudal system had released, to some extent, the masses from the degrading condition of serfdom, and given to them some share of civil and political freedom. The great barons had been obliged to surrender their dangerous privileges to the monarchs; while the people, summoned to aid one or the other party in the struggle, had been able to wrest from both the rights of which they had been unjustly deprived.

3. *Science* had begun its wonderful reformation. The

1. When does Modern History commence? What is said of this epoch?
2. What causes are assigned for the changes which had taken place?
3. What inventions are specified among these causes?

conveniences and comforts of life were increased; the modes of warfare were revolutionized by the *use of firearms*;* the *mariner's compass* made ocean navigation possible, and thus extended commerce, and gave an impulse to exploration and adventure. The East was enabled to pour her treasures into the lap of the West; and the ends of the earth were brought into communication with each other. The *invention of printing*† gave to the modern world the intellectual riches of the ancients; and literature commenced its magnificent career. The particular events connected with each stage and phase of this mighty revolution of the world, will be narrated and explained as the history proceeds.

SECTION I.

ENGLAND.

From the Accession of Henry VII., the first of the Tudors (1485), *to the present time.*

1. Henry VII. was the son of *Edmund Tudor* and Margaret, a descendant of John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster. In order to strengthen his title to the throne, and put an end to all dissensions between the rival families, he married *Elizabeth*, the daughter of Edward IV. Being

* The process of making *granulated* gunpowder was invented by *Schwartz* in 1320, and immediately thereafter almost every state commenced the use of cannon of small size. In 1346 Edward III. used them at Crecy. Plated armor could then no longer protect the feudal tyrant against the weapon of the oppressed peasant.

† The credit of this invention is contested by the Dutch in favor of *Coster* (1426), and by the Germans on behalf of *Gutenberg* (1441). Between 1450 and 1455, the latter succeeded in printing a Bible, in quarto size, the initial letter of each chapter being executed by the pen, in colors.

MAP QUESTIONS.—(See Progressive Map, No. 7.)—What countries in Europe border on the Atlantic Ocean? On the Mediterranean Sea? On the North Sea? On the Baltic Sea? On the Black Sea? What river flows through Austria and Turkey? What cities are on it? What cities and towns are laid down on the Map in Russia? In Prussia? In Germany? In Italy? In France? In Spain? In Turkey? Where is Brussels? Amsterdam? Waterloo? Warsaw? Copenhagen?

1. Who was Henry VII.? How did he strengthen his title? Whom did he imprison?

Progressive Map, No. 7

afraid of competitors for the crown, he imprisoned in the Tower the young Earl of Warwick, son of the Duke of Clarence, and grandson of the renowned king-maker.

2. The general favor felt toward the house of York occasioned Henry much trouble, and many plots and insurrections were formed against him. A rumor having been circulated among the people that Warwick had escaped from the Tower, an attempt was made to personate him; and for this purpose a handsome youth, named *Lambert Simnel*, a baker's son, was chosen. The impostor was carried to Ireland, and was there proclaimed king under the title of Edward VI. (1487). The king prevented the insurrection from spreading in England by exhibiting in public the real Earl of Warwick; and the adherents of the impostor, having landed in England, were defeated in a decisive battle by the king's troops (1487). Simnel, being taken prisoner, was pardoned, and was afterward employed as a domestic in the king's household.

3. Five years afterward, a more formidable attempt was made by the enemies of the king to raise a pretender to the throne, by counterfeiting *Richard*, the younger of the two sons of Edward IV., who were said to have been smothered in the Tower. The person selected for this purpose was a young man named *Perkin Warbeck*; and so well did he play his part, that the Duchess of Burgundy, sister of Edward IV., acknowledged him as her nephew, and greeted him with the title of the *White Rose of England*.* James IV., king of Scotland, also acknowledged him, and gave him the noble lady Gordon in marriage, and invaded England in order to raise an insurrection in his favor.

4. The people, however, refused to receive the pretender; and, after making another attempt in Cornwall, Perkin gave

* *See Note* 1, *end of the Section.*

2. What caused the king trouble? What account is given of Lambert Simnel?
3. What led to the imposture of Perkin Warbeck? By whom was he acknowledged?
4. What ended this affair? What became of Perkin Warbeck? Of the Earl of Warwick?

himself up, and was imprisoned in the Tower (1497). There, becoming acquainted with the Earl of Warwick, he planned with him an escape, but the plot was discovered, and both were executed—Perkin being hanged at Tyburn, and the unfortunate prince beheaded on a charge of treason (1499). By this act of cruelty Henry destroyed the last male descendant of the Plantagenets.

5. During this reign, the celebrated navigators, *John* and *Sebastian Cab'ot,* set sail from Bristol under a commission from the king, and discovered the mainland of North America (1497). This was the year before Columbus made his third voyage, in which he reached the mainland of South America. Henry was a prudent monarch, and very much averse to war, because it prevented the gratification of his ruling passion, avarice. In order to increase his hoards, he resorted to the most unjust and tyrannical exactions; and two lawyers, named *Emson* and *Dudley,* gained an infamous notoriety by acting as instruments of his rapacity. His treasures amounted at his death to nearly two millions sterling—an enormous sum for that period. He died after a reign of 24 years, and was succeeded by his son *Henry* (1509).

6. Henry VIII., when he ascended the throne, was only eighteen years of age, and was handsome, affable, and popular. During the first year of his reign he married *Catharine of Aragon,* to whom he had been betrothed since his eleventh year. This princess had been previously married to his elder brother Arthur, a youth of sixteen years, who died a few months after the marriage. Henry made a special favorite of *Thomas Wolsey* (*wool'ze*), and advanced him successively to the highest honors, though he was of very humble origin, being, as it is said, the son of a butcher. Wolsey had, however, received an excellent

5. What maritime adventures occurred? For what was Henry characterized? Who were Emson and Dudley? When did the king's death occur? By whom was he succeeded?

6. What is said of Henry VIII.? Whom did he marry? What is said of Wolsey?

education, and was a man of very great talents. He was afterward made a cardinal by the Pope.

7. Henry joined the league which was formed against France by Spain, Venice, and the Pope; and, having invaded France at the head of 50,000 men, he routed the French in the celebrated *Battle of the Spurs*, so called from the rapid flight of the enemy (1513). In this campaign, the Emperor Maximilian enlisted in Henry's army, and received pay as one of his subjects and captains. In the same year, James IV., king of Scotland, having invaded England with a large army, was defeated by the Earl of Surrey in the battle of *Flodden Field;* and the king himself, with the flower of the Scottish nobility, was left dead on the field. [*See Note* 2, *end of the Section.*]

8. *Martin Luther* having caused great excitement in Europe by the promulgation of his doctrines, Henry VIII., who had been carefully educated in the Romish faith, wrote a treatise against them, and dedicated it to the Pope (Leo X.), who, as a recompense, conferred on the royal author the title of *Defender of the Faith* (1521). A few years after this, Henry applied to the Pope (Clement VII.) for a divorce from Queen Catharine, professing to have some doubts of the lawfulness of a marriage with his brother's widow; while the real reason was that he desired to marry *Anne Boleyn* (*an bul'en*), an attendant of the queen, with whom he had become enamored (1527).

9. But the Pope, who had recently suffered much in a war with the Emperor Charles V., nephew of Catharine of Aragon, was unwilling to sanction the divorce; and the king, thinking that the delay in the gratification of his wishes was due to the neglect or insincerity of Cardinal Wolsey, dismissed him from his high office, banished him

7. What led to the Battle of the Spurs? Of Flodden Field? What was the result of this battle? Where is Flodden Field? (See Map, p. 158.)

8. Why was the king styled "Defender of the Faith?" To whom and why did he apply for a divorce?

9. What caused the fall of Wolsey? How was he treated? What saying of his is quoted?

from court, and deprived him of many of his great possessions. Being resolved upon his entire ruin, the king afterward caused him to be arrested on a charge of treason; but death saved the proud cardinal from any further disgrace. Among his last words was the well-known exclamation, "Had I but served God as diligently as I have served the king, he would not have given me over in my gray hairs!"

10. By the advice of *Cranmer*, the great universities of Europe were consulted with regard to the lawfulness of Henry's marriage; and these having generally decided against it, Cranmer, who had recently been made Archbishop of Canterbury, opened a court to examine the question; but the queen refusing to appear before it, he formally annulled the marriage, and ratified that with Anne Boleyn (1533). The Pope having pronounced the judgment of Cranmer illegal, and threatened Henry with excommunication, the Parliament, under the king's influence, confirmed his marriage with Queen Anne, and formally declared him "the only supreme head on earth of the Church of England."* By this declaration and other acts of Parliament, the English Church was separated entirely from the Church of Rome (1534). The monasteries were afterward suppressed, and some modifications introduced in the doctrines and forms of religion. This event is known in history as the *English Reformation.*

11. *Sir Thomas More*, one of the most virtuous and learned men of the kingdom, who had succeeded Wolsey as chancellor, was beheaded for refusing to acknowledge the king's supremacy; and the upright *Bishop Fisher* was condemned and executed for the same offence (1535). The king indeed evinced, during the whole of his subsequent reign, a spirit of the most cruel bigotry and persecution. In abandoning his allegiance to the Pope, he by no means

* *See Note* 3, *end of the Section.*

10. How was Henry's first marriage annulled? What did the opposition of the Pope lead to? What is this change called?

11. Who were executed for denying the king's supremacy? What is said of the sentiments and conduct of the king?

became a convert to the new doctrines of Luther and others against the Romish faith; and while he plundered the churches and monasteries of their possessions, he caused those who dissented from their doctrines to be burnt without the least mercy.

12. Less than three years had elapsed from his marriage with Anne Boleyn, when he caused her to be beheaded on a charge of adultery;* but he himself proved her innocence and the wickedness of his own conduct, by immediately marrying *Jane Seymour,* to whom he had previously become attached. This queen having died a short time afterward, he, for political reasons, contracted a marriage with *Anne of Cleves;* but, on seeing her, he refused to fulfil his contract, and caused his minister *Cromwell* to be executed on a charge of treason, because he had been instrumental in arranging this unfortunate affair. His next choice was *Catharine Howard,* who, like Queen Anne, was condemned and beheaded on a charge of adultery, but was generally believed guilty. *Catharine Parr,* his sixth wife, had the sagacity and good fortune to escape his jealous cruelty, and survived him.

13. The last victim of Henry's tyranny was the accomplished *Henry Howard, Earl of Surrey,* who was beheaded on Tower Hill, being unjustly condemned for treason (1547). The king survived this event only a few days. Henry VIII. was, without doubt, one of the most remorseless despots that ever reigned; but notwithstanding his arbitrary violation of every principle of political and religious liberty, he never lost entirely the affection and esteem of his subjects. During this reign, the first complete copy of the English Bible was printed, and ordered by the king to be placed in every parish church. It was based upon the translation of *Wil-*

See Note 4, end of the Section.

12. What account is given of the subsequent marriages of the king, and the circumstances that led to them?

13. Who was the king's last victim? When did Henry VIII. die? What was his character? What translation of the Bible was made? Who were the most noted poets of this period? What children did Henry VIII. leave?

liam Tyndale, and executed by *Miles Coverdale*. The most noted poets of this period were the unfortunate Howard, Earl of Surrey, and *Sir Thomas Wyatt*. Henry left three children—*Mary*, daughter of Catharine, *Elizabeth*, daughter of Anne Boleyn, and *Edward*, son of Jane Seymour. The last succeeded him.

14. **Edward VI.** was in his 10th year on his accession; and the government was administered with great firmness by his maternal uncle, Duke of Somerset, under the title of *Protector*. During the first years of this reign, further changes were made in the established religion, and severe laws enacted against those who refused to comply with the liturgy, as contained in the *Book of Common Prayer*, compiled chiefly by *Cranmer* and *Ridley*. Some who refused obedience were committed to the flames. The Duke of Somerset was deprived of his office of Protector (1549), and finally executed, through the contrivance of the designing and ambitious Duke of Northumberland, who thus became Protector (1552). This nobleman induced Edward to set aside his sisters Mary and Elizabeth, and bequeath the crown to *Jane Grey*, great-granddaughter of Henry VII., who was married to *Lord Guilford Dudley*, a son of the Protector. A short time after this, Edward died, much lamented for his many virtues (1553).

15. **Mary**, in spite of all the efforts of Northumberland, was acknowledged queen; and the unfortunate pair, *Dudley* and *Lady Jane Grey*, suffered death upon the scaffold (1554), the queen showing no mercy notwithstanding their youth and innocence. The Lady Jane was one of the most accomplished princesses of her time, having been instructed in Latin and Greek by the celebrated *Roger As'cham*. She was also possessed of singular amiability, virtue, and piety.

14. What is said of Edward VI.? What changes in religion were made? Who compiled the Book of Common Prayer? What persecution occurred? What became of the Duke of Somerset? Who succeeded him? What did Northumberland do? When did Edward VI. die?

15. What followed the accession of Mary? What is said of Lady Jane Grey?

Her last message to her youthful husband (for neither of them was over 17 years of age) was: "Our separation will be only for a moment; we shall soon meet each other in a place where our affections will be forever united, and where misfortunes will never more disturb our eternal felicity."

16. The cherished object of Mary was to restore the Roman Catholic religion; and, in pursuance of it, she consented to marry *Philip of Spain*, son of the Emperor Charles V. Through an obsequious parliament, she then caused all the statutes of Edward VI. with regard to religion to be repealed, and the severe laws against heresy to be revived. Cardinal Pole was sent at her request to England as papal legate, and the kingdom formally restored to the Roman Church. One of the most dreadful persecutions on record then ensued; and no less than 277 persons were burnt at Smithfield, the most eminent among these martyrs being *Cranmer*, *Ridley*, and *Lat'imer*. [*See Note* 5.]

17. To please her husband, Philip, now become king of Spain, the queen engaged in a war with France; but ill success attended her efforts; and *Calais*, which the English had held for more than two centuries, fell into the hands of the French. The queen was greatly mortified at this event; and her death occurred a short time after it (1558), much to the relief of the nation, who had been disgusted with her cruelty and bigotry. During this reign, commercial intercourse was established with Russia, a passage to Archangel having been discovered during the previous reign. [*See Note* 6, *end of Section.*]

18. Elizabeth, daughter of Anne Boleyn, who succeeded Mary, had been educated in the Protestant faith, and her accession to the throne was hailed by the people with great rejoicings. The first important event of her

16. What measures did Mary adopt in reference to religion? What persecution took place?

17. What war did Mary engage in? What was its result? What is said of her death? What was established during this reign? By what means?

18. Who succeeded Mary? What measures with respect to religion were adopted?

reign was the re-enactment of the laws of King Edward, concerning religion, and the re-establishment of the new liturgy, to which all were required to conform under severe penalties. By the *Act of Supremacy* all clergymen and government officers were compelled to take an oath acknowledging the English sovereign head of the Church; and by the *Act of Conformity*, no persons were allowed to attend any other places of worship than those of the established Church. Hundreds suffered death, imprisonment, or other persecution for refusing compliance with these arbitrary statutes.

19. The reign of Elizabeth for the first eleven years was distinguished for the internal quiet and prosperity of the country. She displayed that prudence, vigilance, and activity so necessary in a sovereign, and gained the almost universal esteem and admiration of her people. Though she was urged by Parliament to enter into the married state, and many distinguished princes, both Catholic and Protestant, sought her hand, she positively declined all such offers, and expressed her determination to remain single for life. She owed much of her success in administering the government to the great statesmen whom she selected as her ministers, among whom the most prominent were *Cecil* (*ses'il*), afterward *Lord Burleigh*, and *Sir Francis Walsingham.*

20. There were at this time in the kingdom three religious parties—namely: the *Churchmen*, or those who were attached to the established Church; the *Roman Catholics*, who, supported by the great continental powers, expected to re-establish their religion; and the *Puritans*, who contended for more radical changes in religious forms and doctrines (1569). These last had imbibed their principles from those who, during the persecutions of the previous reign,

19. What is said of Elizabeth's administration? Who were her prime ministers?

20. Describe the religious parties existing at this time. What is said of the Puritans?

had taken refuge in *Geneva* and *Frankfort*; and they opposed Elizabeth's government, not only on the ground of religious differences, but on account of her assuming a prerogative and authority opposed to the civil and political rights of the people. It was not, however, until a subsequent reign that these fearless agitators were enabled to bring their principles into thorough operation.

21. England now began to distinguish herself in that splendid career of maritime enterprise which has shed such lustre upon her name. Under the auspices of *Sir Walter Raleigh* (*raw'le*), a favorite courtier of Elizabeth, voyages were made to North America, and the queen gave to the regions discovered the name of *Virginia* (1584). *Frobisher* also made explorations for a northwest passage to India; and *Sir Francis Drake* completed a voyage around the world, by way of Cape Horn and the Cape of Good Hope (1579).

22. The people of the *Netherlands* having revolted against Philip II. of Spain, in consequence of his dreadful oppressions and persecutions (1572), Elizabeth warmly espoused their cause; and Philip, therefore, made extensive preparations to invade England and conquer it, so that he might restore it to the authority of the Pope. For this purpose he equipped an immense fleet, called the *Invincible Ar-ma'da*, consisting of 150 ships, bearing 3,000 guns and 27,000 men. But this vast armament, as it sailed up the Channel, was attacked and partly destroyed by a much smaller fleet, under the command of *Lord Howard*, as admiral, assisted by those renowned captains, *Drake*, *Frobisher*, and *Hawkins*. The Spanish admiral, therefore, finding it impossible to effect a landing on the coast, or gain any advantages over the English fleet, attempted to return to Spain by sailing around Scotland; but a storm

21. What maritime expeditions were carried on with success?
22. What led to a war with Philip II. of Spain? Give an account of the Invincible Armada.

arising, nearly all his vessels were wrecked off the Orkney Islands (1588).

23. The year preceding this glorious event is memorable for the execution of the unfortunate *Mary, Queen of Scots* at Foth'er-in-gay Castle,* after an imprisonment of more than 18 years. Mary was the great-granddaughter of Henry VII., and had first married Francis II., king of France, in which country she had been educated in the Roman Catholic faith. The early death of her husband compelled her return to Scotland, where she assumed the throne, although she was much disliked by the Scots on account of her religion and her gay manners (1561).

24. A few years afterward (1565), she married her cousin, *Lord Darn'ley*, with whom she lived very unhappily, on account of his misconduct, extravagance, and vicious excesses. Becoming jealous of her secretary—one *Rizzio* (*rēt'se-o*), an Italian—Darnley, accompanied by several noblemen, rushed one evening into her apartment, where she was engaged with her secretary and others, and the unfortunate man was seized and hurried into the antechamber, where he was dispatched with fifty-six wounds (1566). Mary subsequently professed to have pardoned this atrocious outrage; but a few months afterward, Darnley's house was blown up by gunpowder, and he himself thus killed.

25. The suspicion that Mary was accessory to this crime, seemed afterward to be confirmed by her marriage with the Earl of Bothwell, a dissolute nobleman, who was generally believed to have been concerned in its perpetration. This caused an insurrection of the nobles, who, having taken

* *Fotheringay*, a parish in Northampton county, in the central part of England. The castle was razed to the ground after the accession of James I.

23. Who was executed in 1587? Who was Mary, Queen of Scots? To whom was she first married? Why was she disliked by the Scots?
24. What account is given of Lord Darnley? What is stated of Rizzio?
25. What led to Mary's imprisonment at Loch Leven? Where is Loch Leven? (See note, page 243.) What caused her flight to England?

her prisoner, compelled her to abdicate the throne, and confined her in *Loch Lev'en Castle.** She, however, escaped thence, and raised a small army, which was defeated by the Regent; whereupon she fled into England and threw herself on the protection of Elizabeth; but instead of the generous hospitality which she anticipated, she found herself a captive for life.

26. Mary had given great offence to Elizabeth, when in France, by assuming the title of Queen of England, on the ground that the marriage of Henry VIII. with Anne Boleyn was unlawful; and hence that her daughter, being illegitimate, had no right to the throne; and during Mary's whole life, the Catholic party in England favored her pretensions, many conspiracies being formed by them to place her upon the throne. In the last of these, the object of which was to take the life of Elizabeth, Mary was found guilty of being an accomplice, and sentenced to death; and the warrant for her execution having been signed by Elizabeth, she was beheaded (1587).

27. Queen Mary was one of the most beautiful and accomplished princesses of her age. Her manners were graceful and winning, and her conversation full of wit and sprightly intelligence. She was a charming singer, and could accompany herself on several instruments; and the poems which she has left attest a genius for that kind of composition. Her imprudence and want of self-control, and, it is to be feared, the absence of strong moral principles, brought upon her those great calamities which have shed a mournful interest upon her name. The signing of her death-warrant is, however, considered by some the greatest blot upon the fame of the virgin queen.

* *Loch Leven*, a small lake in the eastern part of Scotland, about twenty miles north of Edinburgh. It contains several islands, on one of which the remains of the castle still exist. This lake is not to be confounded with *Loch Leven* in the western part of Scotland, near which is the famous valley of *Glencoe*.

26. How had Mary displeased Elizabeth? What led to her execution? Where is Fotheringay? (See note, page 242.)

27. What was the character of Mary?

28. During the religious wars in France, Elizabeth gave all the aid in her power to the cause of the Protestants; and when Henry IV. had ascended the throne she sent him money, and a force under the *Earl of Essex*, to assist him in subduing his enemies (1589). Essex was a young nobleman who by his merit and accomplishments had gained very high favor with the queen; but he afterward fell into disgrace, in consequence of misconduct during an expedition against the revolted Irish (1599). Disappointed in obtaining a pardon from the queen, he entered into a plot to raise an insurrection against her, and with his accomplices was arrested, and tried for treason, convicted, and finally beheaded (1601).

29. The fate of this young nobleman, for whom she appears to have had a very deep affection, oppressed the queen's mind with a settled melancholy, which was greatly increased when she learned that a ring* which he had sent to her to recall her tenderness and incite her to clemency, had been treacherously withheld by one of his enemies. She died in the 45th year of her reign, at the age of 70 (1603), leaving a reputation for prudence, vigor, and ability unsurpassed by any sovereign that ever reigned.†

30. During this illustrious reign, flourished the poet *Spenser*, who wrote the *Faerie Queene; Sir Philip Sidney*, the author of *Arcadia;* and the immortal poet and dramatist *Shakespeare*, whose works are the especial glory of English literature. *Bacon* also commenced his splendid career as a philosopher, but disgraced himself by his virulence against Essex, from whom he had received many favors and benefits.

* This ring had been previously given to him by the queen, with the promise that whenever he should send it to her, it should not fail to remind her of their friendship, and awaken her tender regard for him. † *See Note 7, end of the Section.*

28. What was Elizabeth's course toward the French Protestants? Give an account of the Earl of Essex.

29. How was Elizabeth affected by his sad fate? When did her death occur? What is said of her reputation?

30. What eminent writers flourished during her reign? What is said of Lord Bacon?

The Stuart Family.

31. James I., the son of Mary, Queen of Scots, succeeded Elizabeth, not only by right of birth, but by the nomination of the late queen. He had been proclaimed King of Scotland under the title of *James VI.*, after the abdication of Mary (1567), being then an infant; and thus, on his accession to the English throne, the two countries became united under one monarch, although they continued for about a century to have their own separate legislatures.*

32. In the first part of this reign, a conspiracy was formed to subvert the government and place *Arabella Stuart*, the king's cousin, on the throne; and in this scheme the celebrated *Sir Walter Raleigh* was accused of being concerned, and was kept in imprisonment for several years, during which he wrote his "History of the World." Being released in order that he might point out a gold mine which he said existed in *Guiana* (*ghe-ah'nah*), and, having failed in the expedition, he was, on his return, beheaded, in pursuance of the sentence previously pronounced against him (1618). This act reflects a lasting disgrace upon James, who sacrificed this illustrious man to appease the anger of Spain, incensed by the attack which Raleigh had made upon some of the Spanish settlements in South America.

33. The Roman Catholic party, disappointed in not receiving the religious liberty which they had expected from James, arranged, in 1605, a plot to overturn the government by the destruction of the king and Parliament. For this purpose a vault below the House of Lords was hired, and thirty-six barrels of gunpowder stored therein, which, on the opening of Parliament, were to be fired by one *Guy Fawkes*, an officer in the Spanish service, brought to England for the purpose. This conspiracy, styled the "Gun-

* *See Note* 8, *end of the Section.*

31. Who succeeded Elizabeth? What countries became united?
32. What conspiracy was discovered? What account is given of Sir Walter Raleigh?
33. What account is given of the Gunpowder Plot?

powder Plot," was discovered just on the eve of its execution, and Guy Fawkes and some of his fellow-conspirators were executed.

34. James, although of a pusillanimous disposition, was very persistent in upholding the royal prerogative, being prone on all occasions to insist on the divine right of kings to rule without control. His arbitrary acts and principles, however, met with decided opposition from the Parliament of 1621, who declared their privileges to be the ancient and undoubted birthright of the English people; which declaration so incensed the king, that he sent for the Journals of the Commons, and tore the record out with his own hands. The same Parliament impeached the celebrated *Lord Bacon* for bribery; of which being found guilty, he was punished by a heavy fine, and dismissal from all his offices.

35. The king's high-handed measures, especially against those who refused to conform to the established Church, so disgusted the Puritans that they emigrated in large numbers, at first to Holland, and afterward to *New England*, where they established a settlement at *Plymouth* (1620). A settlement was effected in Virginia, during the previous part of this reign (1607), at a place named, in honor of the King, *Jamestown*.

36. One of the worst characteristics of this monarch was his proneness to attach himself to unworthy favorites, the first of whom was *Robert Carr*, a young Scotchman, on whom James for several years lavished the most profuse favors, bestowing on him the title of the *Earl of Somerset*. Carr was succeeded in the king's favor by *George Villiers* (*vil'yerz*), who was created *Duke of Buckingham*, and gained an infamous notoriety by his profligacy and arrogant conduct.

34. What were the political principles of James I.? What opposition was made by the Parliament of 1621? What is said of Lord Bacon?
35. What led to the settlement of Jamestown and Plymouth?
36. Who were the favorites of James II.? What is said of them?

37. James had been educated by the celebrated *George Bu-chan'an* of Scotland, and possessed considerable learning, of which he was passionately fond of making a display; so that, although he was excessively flattered by his courtiers, his pedantry gained him very general ridicule. The distinguished French minister, *Sully*, very aptly styled him "the wisest fool in Christendom." He was as much devoid of dignity of manners and conversation as of good sense, his unseemly familiarity being equal to his childish vanity and offensive arrogance. On his death, in 1625, he was succeeded by his eldest son *Charles*.

38. One of the most important events of the reign of James I. was a new translation of the Bible, under the patronage of the king, and by a number of learned men designated by himself. It was completed in 1611; and having superseded other versions, continues to be the *English Bible* in general use among Protestants. The charter granted to the *East India Company* by Queen Elizabeth was renewed by James in 1609; and in 1612, the first English factory was established at *Su-rat'*.

39. Charles I., on his accession, was in his 25th year; and soon afterward he married *Henrietta Maria*, daughter of the French king Henry IV. In order to prosecute a war with Spain, which had been brought on by the arrogance and misconduct of the Duke of Buckingham, he summoned a Parliament, and asked for a vote of supplies. This the Commons, under the leadership of *Sir Thomas Wentworth*, *Sir John Eliot*, and others, refused to grant, unless Charles would relinquish some of the prerogatives which had been exercised by his father, and which he still claimed as his hereditary right. Charles, therefore, dissolved the Parliament, and levied money by his own authority.

---

37. Describe the character of James II. When did his death occur?
38. What other events occurred during the reign of James II.?
39. Who succeeded James I.? Whom did Charles marry? What caused a difficulty with Parliament? Who were the popular leaders?

40. These forced loans, called *tonnage and poundage,** and *ship-money,*† gave great offence to the people, whose discontent was still further increased by the conduct of Buckingham,—particularly by the failure, through his mismanagement, of an expedition designed to assist the Huguenots, or French Protestants, in their contest with Richelieu (*reesh'e-lu*). In a succeeding Parliament, accordingly, the king met with more determined opposition; and the famous *Petition of Right*‡ was adopted, to which the king was obliged to give his assent (1628). Soon after this the Duke of Buckingham was assassinated at Portsmouth, by an officer of the army whom he had offended.

41. A fourth Parliament having been assembled (1629), and proving refractory, the king determined to rule without a parliament, and continued his illegal exactions. He also, by means principally of the court of *Star Chamber,*§ attempted to punish such of the popular leaders as had made themselves particularly obnoxious. Some of them were fined for what was called their seditious language in Parliament; but they refused to pay the fines, and Sir John Eliot died in prison. Charles, however, chose some of his ministers from among the popular leaders; one of whom, Sir Thomas Wentworth, was created *Earl of Strafford,* and became the chiefminister of the king.

42. Another cause of complaint was afforded by the policy

* *Tonnage and poundage* were duties on imported merchandise which it had been customary to allow the king to levy since the reign of Edward III. The Parliament of 1625 refused, however, to grant this privilege to the king for a longer period than one year.

† *Ship-money* was an arbitrary tax levied on the seaports for the equipment of a fleet. Charles extended it over the whole kingdom.

‡ The *Petition of Right* was an emphatic statement of the privileges of the people as conferred by previous enactments. It is regarded as the *Second Great Charter* of English liberties.

§ The Court of *Star Chamber* was of very ancient origin, and derived its name from the chamber of the king's palace at Westminster in which it used to hold its sessions, the ceiling of this apartment being decorated with stars. It had very extensive powers, both civil and criminal, and could adjudge cases without the intervention of a jury. Hence it became a formidable instrument of tyranny. It was abolished by act of Parliament in 1641.

40. What further displeased the people? What were *tonnage* and *poundage* and *ship-money?* (See note.) What did the Parliament of 1628 do? What is meant by the *Petition of Right?* (See note.)

41. What arbitrary measures did Charles afterward adopt? What was the *Star Chamber?* (See note.) Who opposed the king? Who became Earl of Strafford?

42. What other cause of complaint was given the people? What course did the Puritans pursue? What led to the Scottish Covenant? What was it?

of the king with regard to religion. Under the influence of *Archbishop Laud*, the liturgy was altered and the ritual increased by many of the ceremonial observances of the Roman Church, very much to the disgust of the great body of the English people, but particularly of the Puritans. Many of the latter, to avoid conforming to the requirements of the established Church, emigrated to New England, and founded *Massachusetts* and other colonies in that country. Charles also attempted to force this liturgy upon the Scottish people; but they rose in insurrection against it; and the famous *Covenant* was formed and signed, according to which they solemnly bound themselves to unite for their mutual defence, and to resist all religious innovations (1638).

43. The king requiring them to relinquish the covenant, a war ensued; and a Scottish army invaded England, which after defeating a detachment of the royal forces at the Tyne River, took possession of Newcastle. This compelled the king finally to call another Parliament, in order to obtain supplies. This body, memorable as the *Long Parliament*, assembled in 1640, and immediately commenced the redress of public grievances. One of its first acts was the impeachment of the Earl of Strafford, who was particularly odious to the popular leaders for his desertion of their cause, and for the aid he had given the king in carrying out his most arbitrary measures. Being tried and found guilty of treason, he was beheaded, the king having ungratefully given his assent to the execution (1641). Archbishop Laud was also impeached and imprisoned in the Tower; but his execution did not take place until four years afterward. In the same year, a dreadful insurrection broke out in Ireland against the government, and the English were massacred with every species of cruelty (1641).

44. Meanwhile, the Parliament continued its measures

43. What war ensued? When did the Long Parliament meet? What measures did it adopt? What was Strafford's fate? Laud's? What insurrection broke out?
44. What extraordinary step did the king take? What was the effect? What is said of Hampden?

of redress; and the king took a step which still further inflamed the popular indignation against him. Going with an armed retinue to the House, he demanded that five of its members should be pointed out to him in order that they might be seized. But the Speaker, *Lenthall*, refused to comply, boldly declaring that he was the servant of the House, and could only act in accordance with its directions. The king therefore retired without effecting his object, amid the low murmurs of "Privilege! privilege!" from the indignant members (1642). Among the five members thus assailed was the noted patriot *John Hampden*, who, a few years before, had gained the applause of the people by making a bold stand against the illegal levy of ship-money.

45. The king, whose conduct was characterized by great irresolution as well as rashness and imprudence, afterward apologized for this breach of the privileges of Parliament; but the latter was now determined on extreme measures, and demanded the royal assent to propositions which would have stripped him of all authority. Finding a large party in his favor, he collected what forces he could, and erected the royal standard, resolved to stake the issue upon the sword. The Parliament had also made preparations for the struggle; and thus was commenced that great civil war which raged for years between those who supported the authority of the king and those who wished to limit, or destroy it (1642).

46. The royalists, or *cavaliers* (as they were called), included the greater part of the nobility, clergy, and landed gentry, with all who were attached to the established Church, and also the Catholics. The supporters of Parliament were chiefly composed of the yeomanry of the country, the townspeople, and the dissenters, or Puritans.

45. What was the subsequent conduct of the king? Tell how and when the great civil war began.

46. Who supported the king, and what were they called? Who were the supporters of Parliament? What name was given to them? Why? By whom were the armies respectively commanded? Who was Prince Rupert? (See note, p. 251.)

These were called *Roundheads,* in derision of their custom of wearing their hair cropped short. The parliamentary forces were at first led by the *Earl of Essex,* those of the king, by the *Earl of Lindsay.* The cavalry of the latter was commanded by the famous *Prince Rupert.**

47. The first general engagement took place at *Edgehill,* and Lindsay was mortally wounded and taken prisoner; but there was no decisive victory on either side (1642). In a skirmish the next year the illustrious John Hampden was mortally wounded; and his loss was felt as a severe blow to the popular party.† Several battles were fought during the same year (1643), the most important of which was that of *Newbury.* The result was still indecisive; but the royalists lost one of their chief supporters in the brave and eloquent *Lord Falkland* (*fawk'land*), who while he had at first firmly and patriotically opposed the unjust pretensions of the king, stood by him when the attempt was made by Parliament to deprive him of his legal authority.

48. The Parliament entered into negotiations with Scotland to combine their forces against the king; and, principally through the address of *Sir Henry Vane,* who had been sent as a commissioner to Edinburgh, a "solemn league and covenant" was entered into by which the Scottish people renewed the pledges of the previous covenant, and bound themselves to assist the cause of the English Parliament. A large army was, accordingly, sent into England; but this was counterbalanced by a considerable force which the king succeeded in obtaining from Ireland (1643). *Lord Fairfax,* who commanded the parliamentary

* *Prince Rupert* was the son of Frederick, Elector-Palatine, and Elizabeth, daughter of James I.; so that the reigning king, Charles I., was his uncle. He was not only prominent in this war, but afterward acquired great distinction in the naval operations of England. Subsequently he became noted for his researches in science and the useful arts. † *See Note* 9.

47. What account is given of the battle of Edgehill? Of Newbury? Where are Edgehill and Newbury? (See Map, p. 158.) Where and when was Hampden killed? Lord Falkland? What is said of the latter?

48. What led to the "Solemn League and Covenant?" What followed? Who laid siege to York?

forces in the north, formed a junction with the Scotch, and laid siege to York.

49. The arrival of Prince Rupert with a considerable army raised the siege and led to the battle of *Marston Moor,* in which the Royalists sustained a severe defeat, principally through the activity and skill of *Oliver Cromwell,* by whom Prince Rupert's cavalry was routed and his artillery captured (1644). A short time after this, the command of the parliamentary army was transferred to *Sir Thomas Fairfax,* a man entirely under the influence of Cromwell; and the next year (1645) a very decisive victory was achieved by Fairfax over the king's forces at *Naseby* (*naze'be*), in which Cromwell especially distinguished himself by his skill and valor.

50. After other reverses, the king, despairing of success, gave himself up to the Scottish army (1646), expecting to be treated with respect and liberality; but the Scots delivered him up to the English Parliament, by whom he was kept a prisoner (1647). Soon afterward, the sect of dissenters known as *Independents,* triumphed over their rivals, the Presbyterians; and Cromwell, who belonged to the former, obtained, through his influence with the army, control of the Parliament. Finding the Presbyterian members hostile to his views, he caused the house to be surrounded by two regiments under Colonel Pride, one of his trusty officers, and excluded all but the most determined of the Independents. This invasion of the Parliament was called, in derision, "Colonel Pride's Purge" (1648).

51. Meanwhile, the king had offered important concessions, which the Presbyterians were disposed to accept; but which the Independents, who now constituted Parliament,

49. Give an account of the battle of Marston Moor. Where is Marston Moor? (See Map, p. 158.) What is said of Oliver Cromwell? To whom was the command of the Parliamentary army transferred? Describe the battle of Naseby. Where is Naseby? (See Map, p. 158.)

50. How did the king fall into the hands of the Parliament? How did Cromwell obtain control of the Parliament? What was "Colonel Pride's Purge?"

voted to be unsatisfactory, Cromwell and the other generals who were controlled by him desiring the entire subversion of the government, and the establishment of a republic. Accordingly a vote was passed that the king had been guilty of treason in levying war against his Parliament; and a court was organized to try him. This court was presided over by *Bradshaw*, and consisted of 133 members, among whom were the chief officers of the army; and, although the king refused to acknowledge its authority, he was found guilty, and three days after his condemnation was beheaded (Jan. 30, 1649).

52. The Scots had protested against this whole proceeding, and foreign nations interceded in the king's behalf. The Prince of Wales, anxious to save his father's life, sent a blank sheet of paper, subscribed with his name and sealed with his arms, on which the judges might write what conditions they pleased as the price of the king's release; but these men could not be moved from their purpose. A few days after the death of Charles, the Commons abolished the House of Lords, and formally proclaimed the establishment of the *Commonwealth*, declaring it high treason to acknowledge Charles, the Prince of Wales, King of England.

53. The character of Charles I. was in many respects worthy of commendation. In his private relations his conduct was quite exemplary, being entirely free from those vices which so often sully the character of kings. As a monarch, his principal fault was insincerity, by which he lost the confidence of his people; for he gave his assent to measures of reform which he subsequently endeavored to evade. His arbitrary conduct finds some apology in the fact that his predecessors had exercised the same powers which he claimed; but his prudence and moderation were not sufficient to convince him that the great change which

51. What led to the trial and execution of the king?
52. What was done to obtain the king's release? How was the Commonwealth established?
53. What is said of the character and conduct of Charles I.?

had taken place in the sentiments of the people necessitated a corresponding change in the royal pretensions; since the influence of authority can never prevail over that of public opinion.

54. The Commonwealth.—Cromwell, as Lord Lieutenant, having entirely subdued the insurrection which had broken out in Ireland, was next sent by the Parliament to Scotland, where the Covenanters had proclaimed Charles II. king, and had raised a large army for his support. They were entirely defeated by Cromwell in the battle of *Dunbar* (1650); after which Charles determined to march into England, expecting to obtain large accessions to his army. But in this he was disappointed; and being promptly pursued by Cromwell, was defeated at *Worcester* (*woos'ter*), where the whole Scottish army were either killed or taken prisoners (1651). Charles escaped from England with great difficulty, being obliged to travel for two months in the disguise of a peasant. At one time, he concealed himself for twenty-four hours in a large oak-tree, while his pursuers passed on. This tree was afterward known as the *Royal Oak.*

55. The affairs of the English republic, under the administration of the Parliament, continued to be prosperous. The Portuguese were humbled by *Admiral Blake;* Ireland was reduced to submission by *Ire'ton,* one of Cromwell's generals; and Scotland was entirely subjugated by *General Monk,* whom Cromwell had left to complete the work commenced by the battle of Dunbar. Being offended by the haughty behavior of the Dutch republic, the Parliament passed the famous "Navigation Act," which prohibited all nations from importing any merchandise into England or her colonies except in English ships, or in the ships of the

54. What led to the battle of Dunbar? The battle of Worcester? Where are Dunbar and Worcester? (See Map, p. 158.) How did Charles II. escape?

55. What victories were gained by the English during the administration of the Parliament? What was the "Navigation Act?" What did it lead to? What victories were gained by Blake?

country where the goods were produced. The Dutch being at this time the principal commercial nation of Europe, a war was brought on, in which Blake gained several splendid victories over the Dutch fleets, commanded by *Van Tromp* and *De Ruy'ter* (1652–3).

56. Meanwhile, Cromwell perceiving that the Parliament had become jealous of his power, determined to dissolve it. Accordingly, going to the House with 300 soldiers, he loaded the members with the vilest reproaches, and bade them "to be gone and give place to honester men." Then commanding the soldiers to clear the hall, he ordered the doors to be locked; and putting the keys in his pocket, departed to his lodgings (1653). Thus, being supported by the army, he obtained the supreme power of the government. Desiring, however, to preserve some of the forms of the republic, he issued writs for the election of 140 persons, who were to constitute a parliament.

57. These, by his management, consisted of the meanest and most fanatical of the citizens; one of whom, a leather-seller named *Praise-God Barebone*, having made himself conspicuous by his sanctimonious cant and long prayers, the Parliament was called, in derision, *Barebone's Parliament.* Another name for it was the "Little Parliament." Cromwell, however, soon dissolved this ridiculous assembly, and caused himself to be appointed "Lord Protector." He was to be assisted by a Council of State, and was bound to summon a parliament every three years (December, 1653).

58. A short time previously, *Van Tromp*, the distinguished Dutch admiral, had been shot in an action with the English under Blake; and the Dutch, terrified by their losses and overwhelmed with the expense of the war, solicited peace. This was at last signed by Cromwell, and a de-

56. How did Cromwell disperse the Parliament? What was his next step?
57. Give an account of Barebone's Parliament? Why was it so called? What office did Cromwell assume?
58. When and in what way was peace made with the Dutch? What is said of Cromwell's administration?

fensive league was established between the two republics, the honor of the flag being yielded to the English (1654). The administration of Cromwell was characterized by great vigor and ability. He boasted that he would make the name of *Englishman* as much feared and respected as had been that of *Roman;* and the uniform success of his naval and military enterprises went far to realize this saying.

59. Under Blake, the English fleets achieved an uninterrupted series of victories. He subdued the Barbary Powers (1655), and defeated the Spaniards in several important actions (1656–7). His death occurred in 1657. Blake was an inflexible republican; but he disapproved of the usurpations of Cromwell, notwithstanding the honors which the latter heaped upon him. During the war waged with Spain, the island of *Jamaica* was captured by an English squadron under Admirals Penn and Venables (1655); and *Dunkirk* was captured from the Spaniards by the combined forces of France and England (1658).

60. Cromwell, although prosperous abroad, was at home involved in very great difficulties. He had called two Parliaments successively; but not finding them subservient to his views, he had promptly dissolved them (1654–1656). He was threatened with conspiracies against his government; and, after reading a book published by one *Colonel Titus,* and entitled "Killing no Murder," he became afraid of assassination, and constantly wore armor under his clothes, and carried pistols in his pockets. At last the dreadful anxiety of his mind brought on a fever, of which he expired (Sept. 3, 1658),—the anniversary of the day on which he had gained the victories of Dunbar and Worcester.

61. Cromwell was in his sixtieth year when he died. He was of a robust frame of body, and of a manly, though not

59. What was accomplished by Blake? When did he die? What was his character? What conquests were made from Spain? Where is Dunkirk? (See Map of France, p. 188.)

60. What difficulties had Cromwell to contend with? How and when did his death occur?

61. What is said of the character and conduct of Cromwell?

an agreeable aspect. His character had very many traits of greatness. No one can gainsay the splendid talents which he displayed, both as a general and a statesman; and, had he rightfully possessed the sovereign power, he would undoubtedly have compared favorably with any monarch that ever reigned, both for ability and uprightness. But his perverted ambition, not content with redressing the grievances, and establishing the liberties, of his country, prompted him "to wade through slaughter to a throne;" and, therefore, instead of receiving the benedictions of his countrymen, he was execrated and abhorred.

62. Richard Cromwell succeeded his father in the office of Protector; but his want of capacity for so difficult a position was soon manifest, notwithstanding he was supported by General Monk, who commanded the army in Scotland, and by his brother Henry, as Lord Lieutenant of Ireland. A Parliament was called, but it having given offence to the army officers, the latter compelled Richard to dissolve it (1659). Soon after this he signed his own abdication, and thus left the supreme authority to the army, who then ruled by a council of officers. The country being threatened with anarchy and civil war, General Monk marched his army into England, and subdued the contending factions. A Parliament was then called, and *Charles II.* was proclaimed king (May 29, 1660). This event is known in English history as the **Restoration.**

63. Charles II. came to the throne with the universal rejoicings of the people. At the commencement of his reign, an act was passed pardoning all who had taken part in the *Great Rebellion,* except the regicide judges, some of whom were tried and executed. On the anniversary of the

62. Who succeeded Oliver Cromwell? What was Richard Cromwell's character? What led to his abdication? How was the Restoration effected?
63. What is said of Charles's accession? What punishment was inflicted upon the late rebels? Who became prime minister?

late king's death, the bodies of Cromwell, Ireton, and Bradshaw were disinterred, hanged on the gallows, then decapitated, and their heads fixed on Westminster Hall. With this exception the king showed great moderation and clemency, and admitted into his council both Royalists and Presbyterians. *Sir Edward Hyde* was created Earl of Clarendon, and made prime minister.

64. The most remarkable feature of this period was the entire change which took place in the sentiments of the people. During the reign of Charles I. they manifested the most intense zeal for liberty; but now they seemed eager to evince an equally extravagant spirit of submission. Under the control of the Puritans, they seemed to think that religion consisted in gloom, austerity, and the sacrifice of all social gayety and pleasure; but, going to the opposite extreme, they now plunged into riot and dissipation. Every thing religious or serious was ridiculed; and nothing but scenes of gallantry and festivity occupied the general attention. The monarch set the example, and indulged himself in mirth and festivity, while those who had suffered in his father's cause were left in wretchedness and neglect.

65. After a short time, however, the king's profusion and reckless self-indulgence considerably abated the people's loyalty, and they could not forbear making comparisons between this slothful and licentious monarch and the great Protector who had made the name of England so glorious throughout the world by his careful and vigorous administration. *Dunkirk*, which had been acquired during that splendid period, was now sold to the French to supply means for the king's extravagant pleasures (1664).

66. The same year (1664), war was commenced against the Dutch; and the English took possession of *New Netherlands* in North America, and captured some of the Dutch

64. Describe the change that had occurred in the popular sentiments.
65. What disgusted the people with Charles II.?
66. What important events occurred during the Dutch war? Who took sides with the Dutch? What terrible naval action ensued?

settlements in Africa. De Ruyter retaliated by attacking Barbadoes and some of the other English dependencies. A great naval battle was fought off the eastern coast of England, in which *James, Duke of York*, brother of the king, defeated the Dutch fleet with immense loss (1665). France then took sides with the Dutch republic; but the combined fleets of the allies, commanded by the great admiral De Ruyter and the Duke of Beaufort, were defeated by the English under the *Duke of Al-be-marle'* (previously General Monk) and Prince Rupert. This battle lasted four days, and was one of the most terrific naval engagements ever fought (1666).

67. Meanwhile the *Great Plague* had broken out in London; and such was its virulence, that the deaths in the city alone were estimated at not less than 100,000 during the year (1665). Close upon this calamity followed the *Great Fire*, which raged for three days, and destroyed 13,200 dwelling-houses, besides 90 churches (1666). The desire of Charles to save expense, in order that he might have means for his extravagant indulgences, led to neglect in keeping up the naval force of the kingdom; and the Dutch, taking advantage of this, defiantly entered the harbors, and did immense havoc to the shipping. They even sailed up the Thames, extending their ravages as far as London Bridge (1667). Peace was, however, declared the same year.

68. The disgraceful close of this war, together with the previous measures, made the government very unpopular; and *Clarendon* was impeached and banished. Five ministers, called afterward the *Cabal*, were then chosen, who adopted the policy of restraining the French king *Louis XIV.* in his ambitious scheme of seizing the *Spanish Netherlands*.* A league was formed with Holland and

* That part of Netherlands which remained in possession of Spain after the Dutch provinces had revolted and achieved their independence. It included the present kingdom of Belgium.

67. What calamitous events occurred in London? Describe each. What were the Dutch enabled to do? When was peace made?

68. What caused Clarendon's fall? What was the Triple Alliance? What led to it? What treaty did Charles II. make with France?

Sweden, called the *Triple Alliance;* and Louis was compelled to abandon his enterprise (1668). Charles afterward became dissatisfied with the alliance and concluded a disgraceful treaty with Louis, in which he agreed to assist the latter in subjugating Holland, and also consented to make a public profession of the Catholic faith. For this he was to receive as a compensation an immense sum of money yearly from the French coffers (1770).

69. Shortly afterward (1672), England joined France in a war against the Dutch; and while the fleets of the latter contended with those of the English, commanded by the Duke of York, the French army invaded the territory of the republic, captured many of its cities, and drove it to the extreme measure of opening the sluices and inundating the country. In these perilous circumstances the Dutch forces were commanded by *William, Prince of Orange,* who gained great distinction by his determined courage and patriotism. The war continued till 1674; when it had become so unpopular, that the king was compelled to make a treaty of peace with the Dutch provinces.*

70. While this war was in progress, the *Test Act* had been passed by Parliament, obliging all government officers to take the oaths of allegiance and supremacy, and to abjure the Romish doctrines. The Duke of York, therefore, who had made a public profession of Romanism, resigned his office as admiral, and was succeeded in the command by Prince Rupert. Much excitement was occasioned by an alleged conspiracy (called the "Popish Plot") on the part of the Catholics to set fire to the city of London, assassinate the king, and betray the country to the French. The principal witness in this absurd accusation was one

* The Dutch Republic was called the "Republic of the Seven United Provinces." It included the present kingdom of Holland.

69. What war was waged with the Dutch? To what extremity were they reduced? Who commanded their forces? When and how did the war end?

70. What was the Test Act? What course was pursued by the Duke of York? What was the so-called "Popish Plot?" Who was the chief witness? Who suffered death?

Titus Oates, who was afterward proved to be of a most infamous character. Before the imposture was discovered, many innocent persons suffered death, among them the aged and illustrious *Earl of Stafford* (1680).

71. In the year 1679, was passed the famous *Ha'be-as Cor'pus** act, securing all subjects from imprisonment, except where it can be shown to be justified by law. This was designed to check the illegal and arbitrary arrests made by the authority of the king, who in every respect exercised the most despotic sway. He deprived many of the cities, London included, of their charters, in order to extort money for their restoration; and no one felt himself secure from the numerous gang of spies and informers who were employed by the court. This state of things led to a conspiracy, called the *Rye-House Plot* (1683).

72. The members of this plot were, *Lord William Russell, Algernon Sidney, John Hampden* (grandson of the great patriot), the *Duke of Monmouth* (the king's natural son), and others. The object was to restore the liberties of the country by dethroning its present arbitrary monarch; but the conspirators did not agree as to the mode of accomplishing it. Monmouth expected the throne himself, Russell wished simply reform, and Sidney was enthusiastic for the restoration of the republic. The plot having been discovered, Russell and Sidney were beheaded (1683); but Monmouth, who at first had fled, was afterward pardoned. The death of Charles occurred a short time afterward (1685); and his brother, the Duke of York, succeeded, under the title of *James II.* [*See Note* 10.]

73. In the first part of the reign of Charles II. (1667),

* *Habeas Corpus*, means "have the body." The writ, or order of the court of justice, was so called because it enjoins any person restraining another's liberty, to *have his body*, that is, to produce the prisoner, before the court, so that the cause of his detention may be known.

71. When and why was the Habeas Corpus Act passed? What is meant by Habeas Corpus? (See note.) What infamous measures were resorted to by Charles? To what did they lead?

72. Who were engaged in the conspiracy? With what designs? What was the result? When did the king's death occur? Who succeeded him?

the celebrated poet, *John Milton*, published his greatest work, "Paradise Lost." This illustrious man had been Foreign Secretary under Cromwell, and had distinguished himself by his writings in defence of the commonwelth.* His principal contemporaries in the field of literature were *John Bunyan*, the author of "Pilgrim's Progress;" *Samuel Butler*, who wrote "Hudibras," a burlesque poem on the Puritans and the Civil War; and *John Locke*, the author of the immortal "Essay on the Human Understanding." *Dryden* also wrote several of his finest poems, and was made poet-laureate. The drama received many talented contributions from *Ot'way*, *Wych'er-ly*, and others; but, taking its character from the court, it was shamefully immoral. *Sir Matthew Hale*, the just judge and pious writer, also flourished during this period.

74. James II., notwithstanding the glory he had acquired as a naval commander, was very unpopular on account of his religion, to which he showed the greatest attachment. The Duke of Monmouth, who had fled to Holland during the preceding reign, now set up a claim to the throne, and landing in England, was soon joined by a considerable force. He was however completely defeated at *Sedge'moor*,† and being apprehended after the battle, was tried and executed (1685). The most dreadful persecution followed of those who were implicated in the rebellion. Trials were held under the infamous *Judge Jef'fries;* and many innocent persons were condemned and executed. This wicked judge boasted of the large number of persons (more than 300) whom he had caused to be hanged.

75. The imprudent zeal of the king in promoting the Roman Catholics to power, occasioned great excitement and

* *See Note* II, *end of the Section.*

† *Sedgemoor*, a wild tract of country in the southwestern part of England, not far from Bristol Channel.

73. What is said of John Milton? What other eminent writers are referred to? What was the character of the Drama?

74. What made James II. unpopular? Give an account of Monmouth's rebellion. What was the conduct of Judge Jeffries?

75. What led to the imprisonment of the bishops by James II.?

dissatisfaction. Having issued a proclamation allowing liberty of conscience, and declaring that non-conformity to the established religion should no longer be punished, he required that this declaration should be read in all the churches. This the clergy refused to obey; and a petition was presented against it by seven bishops, including *Sancroft*, the primate. James, exasperated at this opposition, caused the bishops to be arrested and imprisoned in the Tower (1688).

76. The popular excitement produced by this act of the king was intense. Crowds attended the bishops as they were conducted to the Tower, and signified their sympathy and veneration in every possible way. The acquittal of the bishops after their trial at Westminster Hall, still further increased the commotion, even the soldiers whom James had collected for his protection taking part against him. A few months afterward, *William, Prince of Orange*,* who had married *Mary*, the daughter of James II., taking advantage of the popular indignation against the king, set sail from Holland with a large fleet and army, and proceeded to England. Having effected a landing at *Torbay*, he marched toward London; whereupon, James, finding himself without support, fled to France.

77. A convention of representatives was immediately assembled (Jan. 1689); and the crown was bestowed on *William* and *Mary* for their lives, the succession being settled on the *Princess Anne*, second daughter of James II., who had married Prince George of Denmark. The convention annexed to this settlement a *Declaration of Rights*, definitely fixing the extent of the king's prerogative, and more precisely stating the constitutional principles of the

* William was the son of *Mary*, eldest daughter of Charles I., and consequently was a *nephew* of James II.; and Mary, his wife, was his first cousin. Setting aside the family of James II. William was thus the next lawful heir to the throne.

76. What excitement did it produce? What caused the flight of the king?
77. What was done by the Convention? What was the Declaration of Rights? What were its chief articles? What did they afterward constitute?

government. Among these the chief articles were: 1. The king cannot suspend the laws or their execution; 2. He cannot levy money without the consent of Parliament; 3. The subjects have a right to petition the crown; 4. A standing army cannot be kept in time of peace without the consent of Parliament; 5. Elections and parliamentary debates must be free, and Parliaments must be frequently assembled. These acts of the convention were afterward confirmed by a Parliament regularly summoned, in an enactment called the *Bill of Rights*, and constituted what is called in English history the *Glorious Revolution of* 1688.*

78. William and Mary.—Although the crown had been conferred jointly upon William and Mary, the administration of the government was exclusively intrusted to the former. James II. having received a considerable naval force from the French king, Louis XIV., proceeded to Ireland, where the people were generally favorable to his cause. He was received with great demonstrations of joy, and a large army was soon collected for his support. He was, however, entirely defeated by William in the celebrated *Battle of the Boyne*, and was again compelled to take refuge in France. The next year Ireland was entirely subdued; and the Scottish Highlanders, who had taken up arms in favor of James, were induced to submit to the government. In connection with the pacification of the Highlands, occurred the dreadful *Massacre of Glencoe*† (1692).

79. The war with France still continued; and, in 1692,

* So called, although it took place in 1689 (January); because, until 1752, the English commenced the year on the 25th of March.

† *McIan of Glencoe*, Chief of the McDonalds, had delayed taking the oath of allegiance to the king; and the enemies of the clan, taking advantage of this circumstance, obtained an order for its military execution. Accordingly, a body of soldiers entered the valley of Glencoe, and cruelly put to the sword all who failed to escape, including men, women, and children. The signing of this order has subjected King William to very severe censure. *Glencoe* is situated at Loch Leven, in the western part of Scotland.

78. Who now administered the government? What led to the battle of the Boyne? What were its results? Where is the Boyne River? (See Map, p. 158.) What massacre occurred in Scotland? Where is Glencoe? (See note.)

79. Give an account of the battle of La Hogue? What was its effect? Where is Cape La Hogue? (See note, p. 265.) When and how did the war end? When did Mary die? What title did William take? What was his character? What is said of Mary?

the French fleet was defeated by the combined English and Dutch fleets, under the command of *Admiral Russell,* in the famous battle of *La Hogue* (*hōg*).* This disastrous defeat decided the fate of James, and destroyed his hopes of ever regaining the English throne. The war, however was not formally terminated until the treaty of *Rys'wick* (1697).† William, by the death of Mary, in 1694, became sole ruler, under the title of **William III.** His own death occurred in 1702. He was a man of great abilities, both for war and statesmanship, and a most excellent sovereign; but the austerity of his manners made him unpopular. The character of Mary was very amiable and exemplary.

80. **Anne.**—This reign is almost wholly occupied by the "War of the Spanish Succession,"—so called because it was waged against Louis XIV. of France, who, in the prosecution of his ambitious schemes, attempted to obtain the control of Spain by placing one of his own relatives on the throne of that country. This had led, in 1701, to the formation of a league, called the *Grand Alliance,* between England, Holland, and Germany, the object of which was to check the encroachments of the French king. Louis XIV. had given additional cause of complaint to William by acknowledging, on the death of James II., the son of the latter King of England (1701). War, for which preparations had been already made, was formally declared against France shortly after the accession of Queen Anne; and the chief command of the army was conferred on the *Duke of Marl'borough* (1702).

81. During the first campaign, Marlborough made some conquests in Flanders; and in the next, he defeated the

* *Cape La Hogue* is in the northern part of France, a short distance east of Cherbourg, and is not to be confounded with *Cape La Hague*, to the west of Cherbourg.

† *Ryswick* is a small town in the western part of Holland, 35 miles southwest from Amsterdam.

80. With what was Queen Anne's reign chiefly occupied? What caused the war of the Spanish Succession? On whom was the chief command conferred?

81. What victories were gained by Marlborough? Who commanded the imperial forces? Where is Blenheim? (See note, p. 266.) Where is Ramillies? (See Map, p. 188.) What fortress was taken by the English? What victory was gained at Turin? Where is Turin? (See Progressive Map, No. 7.)

French and Bavarians, in the memorable battle of *Blenheim** (*blen'hīme*) (1704). The celebrated *Prince Eugene* commanded the imperial troops in this battle. During the same year, the English fleet captured Gibraltar; and this strong fortress has ever since remained in the possession of Great Britain. In 1706, Marlborough gained another brilliant victory over the French at *Ramillies* (*ram'e-leez*), and by means of it made almost an entire conquest of Flanders. The French also received the same year a terrible overthrow from Prince Eugene, at *Tu'rin*.

82. The year 1708 was signalized by another great victory over the French at *Ou'den-arde*, which was followed, the next year, by the terrific battle of *Malplaquet* (*mal-plah'ka*), in which the allied army, under Marlborough, routed the French, but with the dreadful loss of 20,000 men. This decided victory finished the campaign in Flanders (1709). Shortly afterward, Marlborough being accused of dishonest practices in connection with the army contracts and accounts, was dismissed by the queen from all his appointments. The parliament also having passed a vote of censure of his conduct, he retired from England in disgust, and took up his abode in the Netherlands. Peace was concluded with France by the treaty of Utrecht (*u'trekt*), in 1713. The following year the queen died. She was very popular, receiving the title of the "Good Queen Anne;" but, according to some authorities, she was full of prejudices, easily influenced by flattery, and blindly guided by her female favorites.

83. Her reign was not only distinguished for military achievements, but was characterized to such an extent for

* *Blenheim* is a small village in Bavaria, on the Danube, 23 miles W. N. W. of Augsburg. (See Progressive Map, No. 7.)

82. What other victories were gained by Marlborough? What led to his fall? Where are Oudenarde and Malplaquet? (See Map, p. 188.) What treaty was made with France? Where is Utrecht? (See Map, p. 188.) When did the queen's death occur? What is said of her character?

83. What is said of the literature of this period? What union was effected? What line ended with Queen Anne?

progress in science and literature, that it has been called the "Augustan Age of England." *Addison, Steele, Pope, Bolingbroke,* and *Swift* were the most eminent writers of this period. The chief political event was the "Constitutional Union of England and Scotland," in 1707. These two countries, since the accession of James I., had acknowledged one sovereign, each having its own separate legislature; but, since the union of 1707, they have both sent representatives to the same Parliament. Queen Anne was the last sovereign of the *House of Stuart.*

House of Brunswick.

84. George I. was the son of the Duke of Brunswick, Elector of Hanover, and of *Sophia,* granddaughter of James I. To this king England seemed always a foreign country, for the people and institutions of which he had very little sympathy or affection. He was fifty-four years of age when he commenced to reign. Those who favored the cause of the Stuarts, called *Jac'o-bītes,* excited an insurrection in Scotland in order to place *James,* the Pretender, son of James II.,* on the throne (1715). The rebels, under the *Earl of Mar,* were defeated and compelled to surrender; and many of the leaders of the rebellion, among them the *Earl of Derwentwater,* were executed. The Earl of Mar and the Pretender both escaped to France.

85. One of the most noted occurrences of this reign was the *South Sea Scheme.* This was the project of a corporation, called the South Sea Company, to pay off the national debt, then about £53,000,000, by profitable mercantile enterprises with the Spaniards in South America. The government gave its consent to the scheme, and allowed its

* James, the Pretender, was frequently styled the *Chevalier of St. George.*

84. Who was the first of the House of Brunswick? Who was George I.? What is said of him? Who were the Jacobites? Give an account of the insurrection in Scotland, and its result.

85. Give an account of the South Sea Scheme and its consequences. When did Marlborough die? What is said of him? When did the king's death occur?

stock to be exchanged for the company's stock, which, in consequence of the rage for speculation pervading all classes of the people, reached the extraordinary premium of 900 per cent. The bubble, however, soon burst, and occasioned, for a time, wide-spread embarrassment and ruin (1720). The Duke of Marlborough, who had been restored to his office of captain-general, died in 1722. This great general is said to have been so illiterate that he could not write his native language correctly. Avarice was the greatest blemish in his character. George I. died of apoplexy while on a visit to his native country (1727).

86. **George II.** succeeded his father at the age of forty-four years. *Sir Robert Walpole*, who had been prime minister during a large part of the previous reign, was continued in office, and administered the government, in a manner conducive to the peace and prosperity of the country, till his resignation, in 1742. A difficulty occurred with Spain during his administration, partly on account of a dispute with respect to the boundary of the American colony *Georgia*, which had been settled by General Oglethorpe in 1733, and named after the king. Admiral Vernon, who was sent out with a fleet to attack the Spanish settlements, captured *Porto Bello*, on the Isthmus of Darien (1739).

87. The next year, with a large naval and land force, he attacked *Car-tha-ge'na*,* the strongest Spanish settlement in America; but, after destroying most of its forts, he was compelled to retire. Another squadron, under *Commodore Anson*, took and destroyed one of the Spanish cities in Peru, and, together with other prizes, captured an East India galleon, laden with gold and silver. Anson's expedition lasted nearly four years, he having returned by way of

* *Carthagena*, or *Cartagena*, is a considerable town on the northern coast of South America, now in the *United States of Colombia*.

86. Who succeeded George I.? What celebrated man was prime minister? What led to a difficulty with Spain? What place was taken by Admiral Vernon?
87. What important place was taken the next year? Give an account of Anson's expedition.

the Cape of Good Hope, thus completing the circumnavigation of the globe (1740–1744).

88. Meanwhile, England had become involved in a continental war. On the death of Charles VI., Emperor of Germany (1740), Louis XV., king of France, setting aside the hereditary claims of *Maria Theresa* (*te-re'zah*), the Emperor's daughter, had caused the Elector of Ba-va'ri-a to be raised to the imperial throne, and had raised a large army for his defence. Maria Theresa taking refuge among the Hungarians, was acknowledged by them as their queen; while England, supporting the claims of the Austrian princess, was involved in a war with France. This is called in history the "War of the Austrian Succession."

89. The most important events of this war were the defeat of the French at *Dettingen* (*det'ting-en*)* by an allied army of the English and Germans, partly under the command of George II. in person (1743); and the defeat of the allies (England, Holland, and Austria) under the Duke of Cumberland, by the French, under *Marshal Saxe* (*sax*) (1745), in the memorable battle of *Fontenoy*† (*fon-ta-nwah'*). The operations of the war also extended to the American colonies; and *Louisburg*, an important French fortress, called, from its strength, the "Gibraltar of America," was captured (1745). While these events were in progress, an unsuccessful attempt had been made by *Prince Charles*, the *Pretender*, grandson of James II., to invade England, with a considerable army under Marshal Saxe (1744). After the battle of Fontenoy, Charles succeeded in landing in Scotland, though without any military support (1745). [*See Note* 12, *end of the Section.*]

90. Being joined by a small army of Highlanders, he defeated the royal forces; and, having taken Edinburgh and

* *Dettingen* is a village of Bavaria, on the Main River, east of Frankfort.

† *Fontenoy* is a village of Belgium, 43 miles southwest from Brussels, about half way between Oudenarde and Malplaquet. (See Map, p. 183.)

88. Explain the causes that led to the "war of the Austrian Succession."

89. What were the chief events of the war? What conquest was made in America? What was done by Prince Charles, the Pretender, in 1744 and 1745?

some other cities, he caused his father to be proclaimed King of Scotland, under the title of *James VIII.* He next marched into England, but was soon compelled to retreat, being pursued by the royal army, under the *Duke of Cumberland,* second son of George II. The two armies at length met at *Cul-lo'den;* and a battle was fought, in which the Pretender and his adherents were entirely defeated (1746) This was the last battle fought on the soil of Great Britain, and closed the struggle made by the Stuarts to regain their lost throne. Prince Charles wandered in disguise through the country for five months; but, at length, succeeded in effecting his escape to France.

91. A treaty of peace was made with France at Aix-la-Chapelle, in 1748, by which Maria Theresa's claim to the throne was confirmed; but the war was soon after renewed in consequence of disputes respecting the boundary of the French and English territories in America. In 1755, *General Braddock* was defeated by the French in an expedition against *Fort du Quesne* (*doo-kane'*); but General Johnson gained a victory over the French and Indians at the head of Lake George, Baron Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*), their commander, being wounded and taken prisoner. An expedition under *Colonel Monckton* (*monk'tun*), the same year, drove the French from Nova Scotia. In 1759, *General Wolfe* succeeded in reaching the "Plains of Abraham" with his army, and defeated the French forces under the *Marquis of Montcalm* (*mont-kam'*). Both generals were killed. Quebec capitulated after this victory, which virtually gave to the English possession of Canada.

92. Meanwhile, England had taken part in the famous *Seven Years' War,* brought on by a coalition of France and

90. Give a further account of the Pretender. Where was he finally defeated? For what is the battle of Culloden noted? Where is Culloden? (See Map, p. 158.) How did Charles escape?

91. What treaty closed the war with France? When and why was it renewed? What events occurred in 1755? When and how was Quebec taken?

92. What was the "Seven Years' War?" Why did the English engage in it? Who was prime minister? What caused the retirement of the Duke of Cumberland? Who gained victories in India? When did George II. die?

several of the other European states, against Frederick the Great of Prussia. Principally with the object of defending the Electorate of Hanover, England formed an alliance with the Prussian monarch; and, under the able administration of *William Pitt*, afterward Earl of Chatham,* the government displayed great vigor and enterprise. The want of success, however, of the Duke of Cumberland enabled the French to overrun Hanover (1757), at which the king was so indignant that he treated his son with the greatest coldness. Offended by this treatment, the victor of Culloden resigned all his offices, and went into retirement. Hanover was recovered the next year after its conquest, and important advantages were gained by Frederick. *Lord Clive* also won a series of splendid victories over the French in India, achieving the conquest of Bengal. Before the war was brought to a close, the king died, and was succeeded by his grandson, under the title of George III. (1760).†

93. George III. was twenty-two years old when he ascended the throne, and was the first king of the House of Brunswick that was born in England. Pitt soon afterward retired from the government, and was succeeded by *Lord Bute*, a man of indifferent merit, but an especial favorite of the king. The arms of Great Britain and her allies continued to be successful in Europe, notwithstanding her enemies were strengthened by the accession of Spain; but the government desired peace, which was finally attained by the Treaty of Paris, made in 1763. The most important conquests made by the English during this long war were those in North America and India. In the latter country, the genius of Clive had laid the foundation of the British power so firmly, that the French could never afterward regain their influence. [*See Note* 14.]

94. Shortly after this peace, the famous *Stamp Act* was

* *See Note* 13, *end of the Section.* † *See Note* 15.

93. What is said of George III.? Who succeeded Pitt? What treaty was made in 1763? What conquests had been made during the war?

94. What caused a war with the American Colonies?

passed, for the purpose of raising a revenue in America (1765). The colonies resisted the measure, on the ground that they were not represented in the English Parliament, and that "taxation and representation" are, by the British Constitution, inseparable. The measure was greatly opposed in Parliament by the Earl of Chatham and others, as impolitic and unjust; but the government insisted on their right to tax the colonies; and the latter, after a resistance of ten years, were finally driven into the War of the Revolution, which commenced at *Lexington*, Massachusetts (April 19, 1775). [*See Note* 16.]

95. The next year, the *thirteen Colonies*, through their representatives in Congress, declared their independence (July 4), which, after a determined struggle of nearly seven years, they successfully achieved, the British general *Cornwallis* being compelled to surrender his army to *George Washington*, at Yorktown (Oct. 19, 1781). Previous to this event, the Americans under *General Gates* had compelled the surrender of a British army under Burgoyne, at Saratoga (1777); and the French king, *Louis XVI.*, taking advantage of this success, had acknowledged the independence of the colonies. A war, therefore, ensued between England and France, which continued until 1783, when a treaty of peace was concluded at Paris, one of the conditions of which was, that the independence of the American colonies should be acknowledged.

96. During this period, important advantages had been gained by the British in India under *Warren Hastings;* but the measures which he adopted to obtain money, in order to make the large remittances expected by the East India Company, were characterized by great oppression and injustice against the natives and their rulers. On his

95. What measure was adopted by the Colonies? How was their independence achieved? What victory led to an alliance with France? What treaty closed the war with France and the Colonies?

96. What led to the impeachment of Warren Hastings? Give an account of his trial. What distinguished orators took part in it?

return to England, articles of impeachment were presented against him in Parliament by the celebrated *Edmund Burke*, and the trial that ensued is one of the most memorable in history. It commenced in 1788, and lasted till 1795, resulting in the acquittal of Hastings. This trial is not only remarkable for its length, but for the brilliant displays of oratory to which it gave occasion, on the part of the managers of the impeachment, *Burke*, *Sheridan*, *Fox*, *Windham*, and others,—a galaxy of great men unsurpassed for splendor in the annals of Great Britain. [*See Note* 17.]

97. Meanwhile, the great French revolution had broken out (1789), and in its progress all Europe was convulsed. The British government, under the administration of *William Pitt*, son of the Earl of Chatham, took an active part against the revolutionists in France, whose dreadful excesses had disgusted and alarmed every civilized nation of Europe. After the execution of the French king, Louis XVI., in 1793, Great Britain, Holland, Russia, and Spain formed a coalition to restore the monarchy in France. Few victories were, however, gained over the French armies; but the English fleets, under *Nelson* and others, acquired great glory. In 1798, Nelson fought the "Battle of the Nile,"* in which he destroyed the ships that had conveyed Napoleon and his army to Egypt; and in 1801 he fought the battle of Copenhagen, and partially destroyed the Danish fleet. This had the effect to prevent a threatened alliance of the Northern powers against Great Britain. [*See Note* 18.]

98. An important victory was gained (1801) by *Sir Ralph Abercrombie* over the French forces left by Napoleon in Egypt to menace the power of Great Britain in the East; after which a treaty of peace was concluded at *Amiens* (*am'e-enz*) with the French government, then under the

* In Aboukir Bay, northern part of Egypt. (See Progressive Map, No. 7.)

97. When did the French revolution commence? What course did Great Britain take? Into what coalition did she enter? What victories were gained by Nelson?
98. What victory was gained by Sir Ralph Abercrombie? What peace was concluded? What union was effected in 1801?

control of Napoleon as *First Consul* (1802). Previous to this, Ireland was constitutionally united to Great Britain, its separate legislature being abolished (1801).

99. The year after the conclusion of the "Peace of Amiens," war again broke out between England and France; and England was threatened with an invasion by Napoleon, but it was too strongly defended by its powerful fleets to render such an undertaking practicable. During this war, Nelson gained his most splendid victory, defeating the combined French and Spanish fleets off *Cape Traf-al-gar';* but it was dearly bought by the English, for their great admiral fell mortally wounded in the action (1805).*

100. In 1808, the "Peninsular war" was commenced, being caused by the unjust attempt of Napoleon, then emperor of France, to place his brother Joseph on the throne of Spain, in opposition to the wishes of the people of that country. *Sir Arthur Wellesley,* afterward created *Duke of Wellington,* was sent with an army to prevent the consummation of this project; and he defeated the French (1808) in the decisive battle of *Vimeira* (*ve-ma'e-rah*).† *Sir John Moore,* who had been sent to co-operate with the Spaniards against the French, was compelled to retreat, receiving no aid from the inhabitants. He afterward fell in the battle which took place at *Co-run'na,* where the French were repulsed; and the English troops made their escape from the country, with the assistance of the fleet (1809).

101. Under Wellington, the war was continued in the Peninsula until 1814; and the victories at *Ta-la-ve'ra* (1809), at *Sa-la-man'ca* (1812) and *Vit-to'ri-a* (1813) re-

* *See Note* 19, *end of the Section*

† *Vimeira* is a small town near the western coast of Portugal, about 30 miles northwest from Lisbon. (See Progressive Map No. 7.)

99. When did the war with France recommence? What was threatened? What brilliant victory was gained by Nelson? Where is Cape Trafalgar? (See Map, p. 226.)

100. What caused the "Peninsular War?" Give an account of the battles of Vimeira and Corunna. Who fell in the latter? Where is Vimeira? (See note.) Where is Corunna? (See Map, p. 226.)

101. What victories were gained by Wellington? Point out the places on the Map (p. 226). What part did Great Britain take in the resistance made to Napoleon? What other war was waged? What caused it? When was peace made?

flected great glory on the British general's name. Meanwhile, Great Britain had been active in the opposition made by the great European powers against the ambitious schemes of the Emperor Napoleon; and, both by her counsels and pecuniary as well as military aid, contributed not a little to his downfall in 1814. During this period war had also been waged with the United States, brought on principally by the unjust claims of Great Britain to the right of searching American vessels for deserters and British seamen, in order that she might seize them or impress them into her service. This war was formally closed by the *Treaty of Ghent** (Dec. 24, 1814).

102. Napoleon, escaping from Elba, to which he had been banished, and resuming the throne of France, again aroused the European nations against him. This led to the memorable battle of *Waterloo*, in which Wellington gained his most splendid victory (June 18, 1815). Thus was ended the great struggle which for nearly 25 years had been made by Great Britain, to check the conquests of the French, and preserve the "balance of power" in Europe. To accomplish this end immense sacrifices of men and money had been made, the national debt having been increased to nearly 900 millions sterling.

103. George III. died in 1820, after a reign of sixty years,—the longest in English history. It was distinguished not only for its remarkable military events, but for its progress in commerce, science, and the useful arts, for the general diffusion of knowledge, and for its splendid productions of literary genius. The greatest name in the first part of this reign is that of *Samuel Johnson*, the author of the English Dictionary, and also renowned for his talents as a

* *Ghent* is a noted city in the western part of Belgium.

102. What led to the battle of Waterloo? What was the result of it? Where is Waterloo? (See Map, p. 188.) What had these wars cost Great Britain?
103. When did the death of George III. occur? What is said of this reign? What celebrated writers flourished during it? What was the character of George III.?

poet, critic, and essayist. *Gibbon* and *Hume* stand prominent as historians; and *Young, Gray, Burns,* and *Cowper* as poets. The closing portion of the reign is illumined by the names of *Byron, Shel'ly, Words'worth, Cōle'ridge, Scott,* and a host of others, whose works have been the especial glory of the present century. The private character of George III., in every relation of life, was worthy of esteem; but his moderate abilities, narrow views, and obstinacy as a king, have subjected his name to considerable obloquy, if not contempt.

104. George IV., who succeeded his father at the age of 58, had been noted for his profligacy and extravagance in the previous part of his life. He was a man of polished manners, but was perfectly unprincipled and heartless. As Prince Regent he had been virtually king for ten years before his accession, George III. having become incapable of governing on account of insanity. Almost the first act of the new monarch was an attempt to obtain a divorce from his wife, *Caroline of Brunswick.* The accusations brought against her were believed to be unfounded, and popular sympathy was strongly in her favor; so that when, on account of the able defence of her by Henry Brougham [afterward *Lord Brougham* (*broo'am*)], the king failed in his object, the public joy was so great that there was a general illumination. She died a short time afterward.

105. The Greeks having for some years struggled to throw off the Turkish yoke, finally secured the aid of England, France, and Russia, whose combined fleets defeated and destroyed the Turkish and Egyptian fleet in the battle of *Navarino* (*nah-vah-re'no*) (1827). By this event the independence of Greece was achieved; after which it was erected into a separate kingdom, the crown being conferred

---

104. What is said of George IV.? Give an account of the trial of Queen Caroline.

105. How did the Greeks obtain their independence? Where is Navarino? (See Prog. Map, No 7.) Who became king of Greece? What is said of Byron? What important measure was adopted? Who aided in bringing this about?

upon *Prince Otho*, of Bavaria. During this contest *Lord Byron* went to Greece to render aid to the oppressed inhabitants; but he did not live to witness the triumph of the cause, dying at *Mis-so-lon'ghi* (*-ghe*) in 1824. Another important event of this reign was the removal of civil and political disabilities from the Roman Catholics, a measure greatly aided by the efforts of the celebrated Irish orator and patriot, *Daniel O'Connell*. George IV. died in 1830.

106. William IV., late Duke of Clarence, and brother of George IV., succeeded to the throne on the death of the latter. A short time after his accession, measures of Parliamentary reform were loudly called for by the people; and a *Reform Bill* was brought in by *Lord John Russell*, which passed in 1832. The effect of this law was to extend the right of suffrage, and distribute the representation more equitably among the different parts of the kingdom. The year 1834 is memorable for the *abolition of slavery* throughout all the British colonies. The sum of £20,000,000 was awarded by Parliament to the planters as a compensation for the loss of the slaves emancipated; and nearly three-fourths of a million of human beings were set free. William's reign was terminated by his death in 1837; but, brief as it was, it was replete with beneficent measures which have made it dear to the memory of the English people.

107. Victoria, daughter of the Duke of Kent, and niece of William IV., succeeded the latter on the throne, which she has continued to occupy up to the present time. The connection between Great Britain and Hanover, which had lasted 123 years, was dissolved on her accession, since the laws of the latter country exclude females from the throne. Her uncle, the Duke of Cumberland, accordingly succeeded William IV. as King of Hanover. In 1837, an insurrection

106. By whom was George IV. succeeded? Give an account of the Reform Bill. What other important measure was adopted? When did William IV. die? What was the character of his reign?

107. Who succeeded William IV.? What country was separated from Great Britain? Give an account of the Chartists.

broke out in Lower Canada, on account of the discontent of the people toward the government; but tranquillity was soon restored, Upper and Lower Canada being united into one province. Disturbances were also caused by the *Chartists*, an association of radical reformers, who demanded a "new charter," embodying universal suffrage, vote by ballot, and the entire abolition of the property qualification of members of Parliament. Great mass meetings of the people were held, at one of which as many as 200,000 persons were computed to have been present. The demands of the Chartists being refused, riots ensued, which, however, were soon put down (1839).

108. In 1840, Queen Victoria was married to *Prince Albert* of Saxe-Co'burg-Go'tha (one of the German states). An insurrection in *Cabul* (*kah-bool'*) expelled the English from Af-ghan-is-tan'; and the retreating army, of 17,000 men, nearly all perished from cold, famine, and the attacks of the Afghans (1841). Under *Lord El'len-bor-ough*, Cabul was retaken, and its fortifications destroyed; but Afghanistan was abandoned (1842). The reduction of *Scinde* (*sind*), a district on the lower Indus, by *Sir Charles Na'pi-er*, was the next event of importance (1843), which was soon followed by a war with the *Sikhs* of the Pun-jab', who, after several severe conflicts, were obliged to yield to the skill and valor of the British. The conquest of these districts gave the British government control of the whole peninsula of Hin-dos-tan' (1849).

109. The most important measure of Parliament was the *Repeal of the Corn Laws*, thus opening the country to the free importation of foreign grain (1846). The Russians having seized upon the Danubian principalities, *Wal-la'chi-a* and *Mol-da'vi-a*, England formed an alliance

108. When and to whom was Victoria married? What account is given of the Afghan War? Of the conquest of Scinde? Of the Punjab? Where is the Punjab? (*Ans.* In the northwestern part of Hindostan.)

109. What laws were repealed in 1846? What led to the war with Russia? What battles were fought in the Crimea? How and when was Sebastopol taken? When did the war end?

with France, to protect Turkey from the encroachments of the Czar (1853). This led to the *Crim'e-an War*, during which the allied fleets blockaded the harbor of *Se-bas'to-pol*,* and, after a siege of eleven months, captured the city (1855). During this siege, were fought the celebrated battles of *Al'ma*, *Bal-ak-la'va*, and *Ink'er-mann*,† in the second of which the "Six Hundred" made their famous charge. The fortifications defending the city were of immense extent and strength, and the French greatly distinguished themselves by the vigor and gallantry of their assaults. The *Malakoff* and *Redan*, two of the strongest works, were stormed by them, after the English troops had failed in the attempt. Peace was signed with Russia in 1856.

110. The next year (1857) is remarkable for the *Indian Mutiny*, occasioned by the introduction of Enfield rifles, for which greased cartridges were used. The native soldiers being forbidden by their religion to taste animal food, rebelled, because in loading the rifles it was necessary to bite off the ends of the cartridges. After the outbreak of the rebellion in *Mee'rut*,‡ the Sepoys (native troops) seized *Delhi* (*del'le*), which was besieged for more than two months by the British, and only taken after the most desperate fighting (Sept. 20, 1857).

111. *Cawn'pore* and *Luck'now*§ were the scene of other insurrections. At the former place the English were massacred with frightful atrocity by the Sepoys, under *Nena Sahib* (*sah'eeb*), who was afterward defeated by *General Havelock* and *Sir Col'in Campbell*. These two officers showed the greatest courage and skill in their operations

* *Sebastopol*, a strongly fortified seaport in the Crimea—a peninsula in the southern part of Russia.

† *Alma* is a small river in the Crimea; *Balaklava*, a town on the Black Sea, southwest from Sebastopol; *Inkermann*, a seaport near Balaklava.

‡ *Meerut* is situated about 35 miles northeast from *Delhi*, a noted city of Hindostan, on the Jumna, an affluent of the Ganges.

§ *Cawnpore* and *Lucknow* are important towns in Hindoostan, the former on the Ganges, the latter on a tributary to it. They are some distance east of Delhi.

110. What led to the Indian mutiny? How and when did it begin?

111. What other events occurred? What generals distinguished themselves? When did the rebellion end? What atrocities were perpetrated?

against the rebellion, which was finally crushed in 1859. The dreadful outrages on men, women, and children, perpetrated during this war by the native troops, and the horrible punishments afterward inflicted upon the latter by the British, scarcely find a parallel in history.

112. Meanwhile, wars had been waged with the Chinese. The *first* was caused by the seizure of opium imported into China, contrary to her laws, by British merchants. At the close of this war China was compelled to cede *Hong Kong** to Great Britain, and open five seaports to British commerce, besides paying $21,000,000 as indemnity for the expenses of the war (1842). In 1857, hostilities were resumed; and, Canton having been stormed and some of the forts near Pekin taken, the Chinese submitted to the demands of the English, one of which was that a British minister should be allowed to reside at Pe'kin (1860).

113. The other most interesting events of this reign are, the death of Prince Albert, in 1861; the laying of the *Atlantic Cable*, in 1866; the passage of the *Second Reform Bill*, in 1867, by which bill the elective franchise was greatly extended by diminishing the property qualifications of voters for members of parliament; the expedition to Abyssinia, in which King Theodore was defeated (1868); the disestablishment of the Irish church (1871); the settlement of the Alabama claims (1872); the passage of the *Ballot Act*, by which members of parliament are elected by secret ballot (1872); and the Ashantee war (1872–3), which resulted in the defeat of the barbarous king of that country, and the capture and burning of his capital, Coomassie.

114. The progress made in science and the useful arts during this reign has been beyond precedent. The coun-

* *Hong Kong* is an island at the mouth of the estuary which leads to Canton, in the southeastern part of China.

112. What led to wars with China? What were their results?
113. What other interesting events occurred during this reign? What is said of the Ashantee War?
114. Describe the progress made in science and the useful arts. What inventions have been made?

try has been crossed in every direction by railroads of the very best construction; *ocean steam-vessels* have revolutionized commerce and navigation; the *electric telegraph* has brought every part of the kingdom into instant communication with all other parts of the civilized world; while the building of *iron-clad war-steamers* has rendered obsolete all former achievements in naval architecture, and changed entirely the character of maritime warfare.

115. The *steam printing-press* has greatly facilitated the spread of intelligence, and increased the number of journals and periodicals of all kinds circulated among the people. The literature of the period is enriched by the productions of *Ten'ny-son*, the poet-laureate; *Thack'e-ray*, *Dickens*, and *Bul'wer*, among novelists; and *Ma-cau'lay*, *Carlyle*, *Buckle*, *De Quincey*, and many others, historians, essayists, etc., who, in every department of prose and poetry, have shed lustre upon the language and literature of their country.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

1485. **Henry VII.** First of the Tudors. Reign of 24 years.
1509. **Henry VIII.** Reign of 38 years.
1513. Battle of the Spurs. Battle of Flodden Field.
1534. Separation of the English Church from that of Rome.
1547. **Edward VI.** Reign of 6 years.
1553. **Mary.** Reign of 5 years.
1558. **Elizabeth.** Reign of 44 years.
1579. Completion of a voyage round the world by Sir Francis Drake.
1587. Execution of Mary, Queen of Scots.
1588. Destruction of the "Invincible Armada."
1601. Execution of the Earl of Essex.
1603. **James I.** First of the Stuarts. Reign of 22 years.
1605. Gunpowder plot.
1611. Translation of the Bible.

---

115. What has been the effect of the application of steam to printing? Mention some of the most prominent writers of the period.

1618. Sir Walter Raleigh beheaded.
1625. **Charles I.** Reign of 24 years.
1628. Petition of Right granted.
1638. The Covenant signed by the Scots.
1641. Execution of the Earl of Strafford.
1642. Commencement of the Civil War. Battle of Edgehill.
1643. Battle of Newbury. Death of Lord Falkland.
1644. Battle of Marston Moor. Defeat of the Royalists.
1645. Battle of Naseby. The royalists defeated by Cromwell.
1649. Execution of Charles I. The **Commonwealth** declared.
1650. The Scottish Covenanters defeated at Dunbar by Cromwell.
1651. Battle of Worcester. Charles II. defeated by Cromwell.
" Navigation Act passed.
1653. The Long Parliament dispersed.
" **Cromwell** made "Protector."
1658. Death of Oliver Cromwell. **Richard Cromwell** Protector.
1660. **Charles II.** restored. Reign of 25 years.
1665. Defeat of the Dutch by James, Duke of York.
" Great Plague in England.
1680. Supposed Popish plot. Earl of Stafford executed.
1683. Execution of Lord William Russell and Algernon Sidney.
1685. **James II.** Reign of 4 years.
1689. **William III.** and **Mary.** Reign of 13 years.
" "Revolution of 1688" (Jan. 1688–89).
1690. Battle of the Boyne. James II. defeated.
1697. Treaty of Ryswick.
1702. **Anne.** Reign of 12 years.
1704. Battle of Blenheim. The French defeated by Marlborough and Prince Eugene.
1706. Battle of Ramillies. The French defeated by Marlborough.
1708. Victories of Marlborough at Oudenarde and Malplaquet.
1713. Treaty of Utrecht.
1714. **George I.** Reign of 13 years.
1727. **George II.** Reign of 33 years.
1743. Battle of Dettingen. The French defeated by George II.
1745. Marshal Saxe victorious at Fontenoy.
1746. Battle of Culloden.
1748. Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.
1759. Capture of Quebec, and death of General Wolfe.
1760. **George III.** Reign of 60 years.
1783. The Independence of the American colonies acknowledged by Great Britain.

1788. Trial of Warren Hastings, lasting till 1795.
1798. The French fleet defeated by Nelson in the Battle of the Nile.
1801. Legislative union of Great Britain and Ireland.
1805. Battle of Trafalgar. Death of Lord Nelson.
1809. Battle of Corunna. Death of Sir John Moore.
" Battle of Talavera.
1814. Treaty of Ghent. Peace declared with the United States.
1815. Battle of Waterloo. Victory of Wellington over Napoleon.
1820. **George IV.** Reign of 10 years.
1827. Battle of Navarino. Independence of Greece declared.
1830. **William IV.** Reign of 7 years.
1834. Slavery abolished in all the British colonies.
1837. **Victoria.**
1841. Afghan War. Cabul taken and dismantled. Chinese War.
1843 Conquest of Scinde by Sir Charles Napier.
1846. Corn Laws repealed.
1853. Commencement of the Crimean War.
1855. Sebastopol taken by the forces of Great Britain and France.
1857. Indian Mutiny. Delhi taken. Chinese War.
1861. Death of Prince Albert.
1873. End of Ashantee War.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE
1. Give an account of Henry VII. and his reign..... 183-184-232-233-234
2. How many wives did Henry VIII. have? Give their names..... 234-236-237
3. Give the history of his contest with Pope Clement II..... 235-236
4. State all you can in relation to Cardinal Wolsey..... 234-235-236
5. Give an account of Edward VI. and his reign..... 238
6. Who was Queen Mary? and give the events of her reign..... 238-239
7. Who was Queen Elizabeth, and how long did she reign?..... 238-239-244
8. Name the most important events in the early part of her reign..... 239-240
9. What important voyages were made during her reign?..... 241
10. Give the particulars in relation to the great Armada..... 241-242
11. State all you can in relation to Mary, Queen of Scots..... 242-243
12. Give the facts, as far as you can, in relation to the Earl of Essex..... 244
13. What authors of note lived during the time of Queen Elizabeth?..... 244
14. Give the history of James I. to the time of his becoming king of England. 245
15. Give what you can of the history of Sir Walter Raleigh..... 241-245
16. Give a full account of the Gunpowder Plot..... 245-246
17. Name the important acts of the reign of James I..... 245-246-247
18. What was the length of the reign of James I.?..... 245-247
19. What troubles did Charles I. have with his first Parliament?..... 247
20. Give an account of Buckingham and his acts..... 246-247-248
21. Of the difficulties between Charles I. and his fourth Parliament..... 248

22. Of the Earl of Strafford and his fate 248-249
23. Of the difficulties which led to the civil war 249-250
24. Of the principal events in that war 251-252
25. Of the closing acts of Charles I., his fate, and character 252-253
26. Of events during the rule of Oliver Cromwell 254-255-256
27. Of the Covenant and Covenanters 249-251-254
28. Of Richard Cromwell and his administration. 257
29. Of the Puritans 240-241-246-249-250-251-258
30. What event is known in English history as the Restoration? 257
31. Name the principal events in the reign of Charles II ..... 257—262
32. Give an account of the war with the Dutch. 258-259
33. Of the next war with the Dutch, in which France joined 260
34. Of the Triple Alliance, its objects and consequences 259-260
35. Of the Test Act, its object and consequences 260-261
36. Of the Habeas Corpus Act, its design and consequences 261
37. Of the Rye-House Plot, its cause, object, and result 261
38. What noted authors lived during that period? 262
39. By whom was Charles II. succeeded on the throne? 261
40. Give the history of James II. previous to his accession 259-260
41. Give a sketch of his reign and subsequent career ..... 262—265
42. By whom was James succeeded on the throne? 263-264
43. How was the succession made and the king's power restricted? 263-264
44. Give a sketch of the reign of William and Mary 264-265
45. What was the Grand Alliance of 1701, its origin and object? 265
46. Name the principal events of Queen Anne's reign 265-266-267
47. Narrate the facts in relation to the Duke of Marlborough 265-266-268
48. What authors of note lived during the reign of Queen Anne? 267
49. Give the history of Scotland to that period 171-172-173-174-242-245-267
50. By whom was Queen Anne succeeded on the throne? 267
51. Give an account of George's struggle to retain his crown 267
52. Name the principal acts in the reign of George II 268-269-270-272
53. Give the facts relating to the "War of the Austrian Succession" 269-270
54. The facts relating to the contest for territory in America 270
55. Those relating to the famous Seven Years' War 270-271-272
56. Those relating to the War of the American Revolution 271-272
57. Relating to the war which ended in the peace of Amiens 273
58. Give the history of Ireland to 1801 165-244-254-274
59. Give an account of the "Peninsular War" 274
60. Of the struggle ending in the battle of Waterloo 275
61. What authors of note lived during the reign of George III.? 275-276
62. Give the principal events in the reign of George IV 276-277
63. Give those in the reign of William IV 277
64. Mention those in the reign of Victoria 277-278-279-280-281
65. What noted authors lived during Victoria's reign? 281
66. Name, in chronological order, the most important events from the time of Henry IV. to the time of Cromwell 281-282
67. From the time of Cromwell to the reign of George I 282
68. From that of George I. through Victoria's reign 282-283
69. Who were the three kings of England named George? 267-268-271-276
70. Who were the four, named William? 160-161-265-277
71. The six, named Edward? 170-172-173-181-183-238
72. The eight, named Henry? 162-163-169-179-180-232-234

NOTES.

1. Margaret, Duchess of Burgundy (p. 233, ¶ 3).—"Margaret was second sister to King Edward the Fourth, and had been second wife to Charles surnamed the Hardy, Duke of Burgundy, by whom having no children of her own she did with singular care and tenderness intend the education of Philip and Margaret, grandchildren to her former husband; which won her great love and authority among the Dutch. This princess (having the spirit of a man and the malice of a woman), abounding in treasure by the greatness of her dower and her provident government, and being childless and without any nearer cares, made it her design and enterprise to see the Majesty Royal of England once again replaced in her house; and had set up King Henry as a mark at whose overthrow all her actions should aim and shoot; insomuch as all the counsels of his succeeding troubles came chiefly out of that quiver."—*Bacon.—Reign of Henry VII.*

2. Battle of Flodden Field (p. 235, ¶ 7).—A short time after his accession, Henry VIII. commenced war against Louis XII., King of France, and invading the country, gained a decided victory over the French in a brief conflict styled the "Battle of the Spurs." In the meantime, King James of Scotland, who had formed an alliance with Louis, made an invasion into England with a brave but tumultuous army of above fifty thousand men; but was met at Flodden, near the Cheviot Hills, by the Earl of Surrey, with an army of about half that number of men, and totally defeated (1513). The battle was long and bloody, and at its close the king and the flower of the Scottish nobility lay dead on the field. The Scots would not believe that their king was slain, asserting that the body which was taken to London and interred as his, was in reality that of one Elphinston, who, to deceive the English, was arrayed in arms resembling the king's during the battle. Hence, the populace entertained the opinion that James was still alive, having secretly gone on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, and that he would return and take possession of the throne. To this fond conceit they clung for many years.

3. Coronation of Anne Boleyn (p. 236, ¶ 10).—"On entering the abbey, she was led to the coronation chair, where she sat while the train fell into their places, and the preliminaries of the ceremonial were dispatched. Then she was conducted up to the high altar, and anointed Queen of England, and she received from the hands of Cranmer, fresh come in haste from Dunstable, with the last words of his sentence upon Catherine scarcely silent upon his lips, the golden scepter, and St. Edward's crown. Did any tinge of remorse, any pang of painful recollection, pierce at that moment the incense of glory which she was inhaling? Did any vision flit across her of a sad, mourning figure which once had stood where she was standing, now desolate, neglected, sinking into the darkening twilight of a life cut short by sorrow? Who can tell? At such a time, that figure would have weighed heavily upon a noble mind; and a wise mind would have been taught by the thought of it, that, although life be fleeting as a dream, it is long enough to experience strange vicissitudes of fortune. But Anne Boleyn was not noble and was not wise,—too probably she felt nothing but the delicious, all-absorbing, all-intoxicating present; and if that plain, suffering face presented itself to her memory at all, we fear it was rather as a foil to her own surpassing loveliness."—*Froude.—History of England.*

4. Execution of Anne Boleyn (p. 237, ¶ 12).—"The high resolve with

which she had nerved herself to go through the awful scene that awaited her, as became a queen, had doubtless recalled the luster to her eyes, and flushed her faded cheek with hues of feverish brightness; for she came forth in fearful beauty. 'Never,' says an eye-witness of the tragedy, 'had the queen looked so beautiful before.' She was attended by the four maids of honor who had waited upon her in prison. One of her ladies covered her eyes with a bandage; and then they withdrew themselves some little space, and knelt down over against the scaffold, bewailing bitterly and shedding many tears. And thus, and without more to say or do, was her head struck off; she making no confession of her fault, but saying, 'O Lord God, have pity on my soul!' She died with great resolution. Her eyes and lips were observed to move when the head was held up by the executioner. It is also said that before those beautiful eyes sunk in the dimness of death, they seemed for an instant mournfully to regard her bleeding body as it fell on the scaffold."—*Agnes Strickland.—Queens of England.*

5. Execution of Cranmer (p. 239, ¶ 16).—"At length the fatal day arrived. At the appointed hour, the procession set forward, and, on account of the rain, halted at the church of St. Mary, where the sermon was preached by Dr. Cole. Cranmer stood on a platform opposite the pulpit. At the conclusion of the sermon, he began to read a paper, and was heard for a time with profound silence. But when he recalled his former recantations, rejected the papal authority, and confirmed the doctrines contained in his book, he was interrupted by the murmurs and agitations of the audience. As soon as order could be restored, he was conducted to the stake, declaring that he had never changed his belief; and that his recantations had been wrung from him by the hope of life; and that, as his hand had offended by writing contrary to his heart, it should be the first to receive its punishment. When the fire was kindled, to the surprise of the spectators, he thrust his hand into the flame, exclaiming, 'This hath offended.' His sufferings were short; the flames rapidly ascended above his head, and he expired in a few moments."—*Lingard.—History of England.*

6. English Voyage to Archangel (p. 239, ¶ 17).—"In the year 1553, the English sent forth three ships for the discovery of a northeastern passage to Cathay, or China. Two of these were wrecked; the third, commanded by Richard Chancellor, proceeded to 'an unknown part of the world,' and reached a place where there was 'no night at all but a continual light and brightness of the sun shining clearly upon the huge and mighty sea.' At length they came to a bay, and the mouth of the Dwina, and report having announced them to the terrified natives as men of 'a strange nation, of singular gentleness and courtesy,' Chancellor was able to travel into the interior. He found that the country was called Russia, or Muscovy, and that Ivan Vassilievitch II., 'ruled and governed far and wide.' This was 'the discovery of Russia,' of which the fame spread through Spain the belief 'of the discovery of New Indies,' and in England gave immediate impulse to mercantile adventure."—*Bancroft.—Studies in History.*

7. Death of Queen Elizabeth (p. 244, ¶ 29).—"Ten days and nights she lay upon the carpet, leaning on cushions which her maids brought her; and her physicians could not persuade her to allow herself to be put to bed, much less to make trial of any remedies which they prescribed to her. Her anxious mind at last had so long preyed on her frail body, that her end was visibly approaching, and the council, being assembled, sent the keeper, admiral, and secretary to know her will with regard to her successor. She answered with a faint voice, that as she had held a regal scepter, she desired no other than a royal successor. Cecil requesting her to explain herself more particularly, she subjoined that she

would have a king succeed her; and who should that be but her nearest kinsman, the King of Scots? Being then advised by the Archbishop of Canterbury to fix her thoughts upon God, she replied that she did so, nor did her mind in the least wander from him. Her voice soon after left her, her senses failed, she fell into a lethargic slumber, which continued some hours, and she expired gently, without farther struggle or convulsion (March 24, 1603), in the seventieth year of her age, and the forty-fifth of her reign."—*Hume.—History of England.*

8. Scotland united with England (p. 245, ¶ 31).—"Scotland, in becoming a part of the British monarchy, preserved all her dignity. Having, during many generations, courageously withstood the English arms, she was now joined to her stronger neighbor on the most honorable terms. She gave a king instead of receiving one. She retained her own constitution and laws. Her tribunals and parliaments remained entirely independent of the tribunals and parliaments which sate at Westminster. The administration of Scotland was in Scottish hands; for no Englishman had any motive to emigrate northward, and to contend with the shrewdest and most pertinacious of all races for what was to be scraped together in the poorest of all treasuries. Meanwhile, Scottish adventurers poured southward, and obtained, in all the walks of life, a prosperity which excited much envy, but which was, in general, only the just reward of prudence and industry. Nevertheless, Scotland by no means escaped the fate ordained for every country which is connected, but not incorporated, with another country of greater resources. Though in name an independent kingdom, she was, during more than a century, really treated, in many respects, as a subject province."—*Macaulay.—History of England.*

9. Death of John Hampden (p. 251, ¶ 47).—"The news of Hampden's death produced as great a consternation in his party, according to Clarendon, as if their whole army had been cut off. The journals of the time amply prove that the parliament and all its friends were filled with grief and dismay. Lord Nugent has quoted a remarkable passage from the next *Weekly Intelligencer*. 'The loss of Colonel Hampden goeth near the heart of every man that loves the good of his king and country; and makes some conceive little content to be at the army now that he has gone. The memory of this deceased colonel is such that in no age to come but it will more and more be had in honor and esteem;—a man so religious, and of that prudence, judgment, temper, valor, and integrity, that he hath left few his like behind him.'"—*Macaulay.—Miscellaneous Essays.*

10. Character of Charles II. (p. 261, ¶ 72).—"Charles II. was in society the most amiable and engaging of men. This, indeed, is the most shining part of his character; and he seems to have been sensible of it, for he was fond of dropping the formality of state, and of relapsing every moment into the companion. His relations with the other sex were in the highest degree immoral, and hence his court became a school of vice and profligacy. Yet he was a friendly brother, an indulgent father, and a good-natured master. As a sovereign, his character was dangerous to his people and dishonorable to himself. Negligent of the interests of the nation, careless of its glory, averse to its religion, jealous of its liberty, lavish of its treasure, sparing only of its blood, he exposed it by his measures, which, however, were often the result of mere indolence, to the danger of a furious civil war, and even to the ruin and ignominy of a foreign conquest. It has been remarked of Charles that he never said a foolish thing, nor ever did a wise one; which he explained by observing that his discourse was his own, his actions were the ministry's."—*Hume.—History of England.*

11. John Milton (p. 262, ¶ 73).—"In the character of Milton the noblest

qualities of every party were combined in harmonious union. From the parliament and from the court, from the conventicle and from the Gothic cloister, from the gloomy and sepulchral circles of the Roundheads and from the Christmas revel of the hospitable cavalier, his nature selected and drew to itself whatever was great and good, while it rejected all the base and pernicious ingredients by which those fine elements were defiled. Like the Puritans, he lived

'As ever in his great Taskmaster's eye.'

Like them, he kept his mind continually fixed on an Almighty Judge and an eternal reward; and hence he acquired their contempt of external circumstances, their fortitude, their tranquillity, their inflexible resolution."—*Macaulay.*

12. Prince Charles, the Pretender (p. 269, ¶ 89).—"Charles Edward Stuart is one of those characters that cannot be portrayed at a single sketch, but have so greatly altered, as to require a new delineation at different periods. View him in his later years, and we behold the ruins of intemperance—as wasted but not as venerable as those of time; we find him in his anticipated age a besotted drunkard, a peevish husband, a tyrannical master; his understanding debased and his temper soured. But not such was the Charles Stuart of 1745! Not such was the gallant prince full of youth, of hope, of courage, who, landing with seven men in the wilds of Moidart, could rally a kingdom round his banner, and scatter his foes before him at Preston and at Falkirk! Not such was the gay and courtly host of Holyrood! Not such was he whose endurance of fatigue and eagerness for battle shone pre-eminent even amongst Highland chiefs; while fairer critics proclaimed him the most winning in conversation, the most graceful in the dance. Can we think lowly of one who could acquire such unbounded popularity in so few months, and over so noble a nation as the Scots; who could so deeply stamp his image on their hearts that, even thirty or forty years after his departure, his name, as we are told, always awakened the most ardent praises from all who had known him? The most rugged hearts were seen to melt at his remembrance, and tears to steal down the furrowed cheeks of the veteran."—*Lord Mahon.—History of England.*

13. William Pitt, Earl of Chatham (p. 271, ¶ 92).—"He had received from nature a tall and striking figure, aquiline and noble features, and a glance of fire. Lord Waldegrave, after eulogizing the clearness of his style, observes that his eye was as significant as his words. In debates, his single look could sometimes disconcert an orator opposed to him. His voice most happily combined sweetness and strength. It had all that silvery clearness which at the present day delights us in Sir William Follett's, and even when it sank to a whisper it was distinctly heard; while its higher tones, like the swell of some majestic organ, could peal and thrill above every other earthly sound. His most elaborate speeches were his worst; but when, without forethought, or any other preparation than those talents which nature had supplied and education cultivated, Chatham rose—stirred to anger by some sudden subterfuge of corruption or device of tyranny, then was heard an eloquence never surpassed either in ancient or in modern times. It was the highest power of expression ministering to the highest power of thought. Dr. Franklin declares that, in the course of his life, he had seen sometimes eloquence without wisdom, and often wisdom without eloquence; in Lord Chatham alone had he seen both united."—*Lord Mahon.*

14. Lord Clive (p. 271, ¶ 92).—"Clive was indeed, as Chatham once called him, a 'Heaven-born general,' who with no military training, had shown consummate military genius. With nearly as little study of politics, he displayed nearly as great abilities for government. Energy,—which perhaps, of all human qualities

is the one most conducive to success,—energy and fearlessness, were peculiarly his own. Whatever gratitude Spain owes to her Cortes, or Portugal to her Albuquerque, this, and in its results more than this, is due from England to Clive. Had he never been born, I do not believe that we should, at least in that generation, have conquered Hindostan; had he lived longer, I doubt if we should, at least in that generation, have lost North America."—*Lord Mahon.*

Clive's conduct in India, a short time after his return to England, in 1767, was brought under parliamentary censure, and, smarting with disgrace, he committed suicide (1774).

15. George I. and George II. (p. 271, ¶ 92).—"It must be considered as a most fortunate circumstance, that after the death of Anne, the throne should be occupied for nearly fifty years by two princes, aliens in manners and in country, of whom one spoke our language but indifferently, and the other knew it not at all. The immediate predecessors of George III. were, indeed, of so sluggish a disposition, and were so profoundly ignorant of the people they undertook to govern, that, notwithstanding their arbitrary temper, there was no danger of their organizing a party to extend the boundaries of the royal prerogative. And as they were foreigners, they never had sufficient sympathy with the English Church to induce them to aid the clergy in their natural desire to recover their former power. Besides this, the fractious and disloyal conduct of many of the hierarchy, must have tended to alienate the regard of the sovereign, as it had already cost them the affection of the people."—*Buckle's History of Civilization.*

16. War of the American Revolution (p. 272, ¶ 94).—"In order to enforce the monstrous claim of taxing a whole people without their consent, there was waged against America a war ill-conducted, unsuccessful, and what is far worse, accompanied by cruelties disgraceful to a civilized nation. To this may be added, that an immense trade was nearly annihilated; every branch of commerce was thrown into confusion; we were disgraced in the eyes of Europe; we incurred an expense of £140,000,000; and we lost by far the most valuable colonies any nation has ever possessed."—*Buckle.*

17. Acquittal of Warren Hastings (p. 273, ¶ 96).—"At length, in the spring of 1795, the decision was pronounced, nearly eight years after Hastings had been brought by the Sergeant-at-arms of the Commons to the bar of the Lords. On the last day of this great procedure, the public curiosity, long suspended, seemed to be revived. Anxiety about the judgment there could be none; for it had been fully ascertained that there was a great majority for the defendant. But many wished to see the pageant, and the hall was as much crowded as on the first day. But those who, having been present on the first day, now bore a part in the proceedings of the last, were few, and most of those were altered men. As Hastings himself said, the arraignment had taken place before one generation, and the judgment was pronounced by another. Only twenty-nine peers voted. Of these only six found Hastings guilty on the charges relating to Cheyte Sing and to the Begums; on other charges the majority in his favor was still greater. On some he was unanimously absolved. He was then called to the bar, informed from the woolsack [the seat of the Lord Chancellor] that the Lords had acquitted him, and solemnly discharged. He bowed respectfully, and retired."—*Macaulay.*

Hastings lived twenty-four years after his acquittal. His death occurred on the 22d of August, 1819, in the eighty-sixth year of his age.

18. Nelson at the Battle of Copenhagen (p. 273, ¶ 97).—"In the midst of the terrific cannonade, Nelson was rapidly walking the quarter-deck. A shot through the mainmast scattered splinters around. He observed to one of

his officers, with a smile, 'This is warm work, and this day may be the last to any of us in a moment; but mark me, I would not be elsewhere for thousands.' About this time the signal-lieutenant called out that the signal for discontinuing the action had been thrown out by the commander-in-chief, and asked if he should repeat it. 'No,' he replied; 'acknowledge it.' He then continued walking about in great emotion; and, meeting Captain Foley, said, 'What think you, Foley, the admiral has hung out No. 39 [the signal for discontinuing action]. You know I have only one eye; I have a right to be blind sometimes;' and then putting the glass to his blind eye, he exclaimed, 'I really don't see the signal. Keep mine for closer battle still flying. That's the way I answer such signals. Nail mine to the mast.' . . . The rapidity and precision of the British fire was irresistible. At one o'clock the cannonade of the Danish fleet began to slacken; loud cheers from the English sailors announced every successive vessel which struck; and before two, the whole front line, consisting of six sail of the line and eleven huge floating batteries, was all either taken, sunk, burned, or destroyed. In this desperate battle, the loss on board the British fleet was very severe, amounting to no less than 1,200, a greater proportion to the number of seamen engaged than in any other general action during the whole war. . . . Thus terminated this murderous battle, one of the most obstinately contested ever fought by the British navy. Nelson said, he had been in above a hundred engagements, but that of Copenhagen was the most terrible of them all."—*Alison.—History of Europe.*

19. Death of Nelson (p. 274, ¶ 99.—"As Nelson was walking on the quarter-deck, he was pierced by a shot from one of the French marksmen, not more than fifteen yards distant. 'They have done for me at last, Hardy,' said he. 'I hope not,' said Hardy. 'Yes,' he replied, 'my backbone is shot through.' He was immediately carried below; but even then, such was his presence of mind, that he directed the tiller-rope, which had been shot away, to be replaced, and taking out his handkerchief, covered his face and stars, lest the crew should be discouraged by the sight. The cockpit was crowded with wounded and dying men; he insisted that the surgeon should leave him, and attend to those to whom he might be useful; 'for to me,' he said, 'you can do nothing.' All that could be done was to fan him with paper, and give him lemonade to assuage his burning thirst. As the action continued, however, several ships of the enemy began to strike; and as the crew of the Victory [Nelson's ship] cheered as each successive flag was lowered, at every hurra a gleam of joy illuminated the countenance of the dying hero . . . Hardy, taking Nelson by the hand, congratulated him, even in the arms of death, on his glorious victory; adding that fourteen or fifteen of the enemy were taken. 'That's well,' replied Nelson; 'but I bargained for twenty;' and then, in a stronger voice, added, 'Anchor, Hardy, anchor. Do *you* make the signal. Kiss me, Hardy,' said he. Hardy knelt down and kissed his cheek. 'Now I am satisfied,' said Nelson. 'Thank God, I have done my duty.' His articulation now became difficult; but he was repeatedly heard to say, 'Thank God, I have done my duty,' and expired at half-past four without a groan, leaving a name unrivaled, even in the glorious annals of the English navy. . . . His whole career, from his first entrance into the navy to the battle of Trafalgar, exhibited a pattern of every manly virtue. Bold in conception, cautious in construction, firm in execution, cool in danger, he was the most successful, because the most profound and intrepid of leaders." The most triumphant death is that of the martyr; the most splendid, that of the hero in the hour of victory; and if the chariot and horses of fire had been vouchsafed for Nelson's translation, he could scarcely have departed in a brighter blaze of glory.—*Alison.*

SECTION II.

France,

From the Accession of Charles VIII. (1483) *to the present Time.*

1. Charles VIII., the son and successor of Louis XI., was only thirteen years of age when he commenced to reign. He was, moreover, feeble both in body and mind, and very ignorant. A dispute arising as to who should have the guardianship of the young king, the question was referred to the States-General, a meeting of that body being called for the purpose (1484). This assembly of the States is noted for the ineffectual attempt made by the Third Estate (*i. e.*, the Commons) to obtain a redress of grievances, and to acquire some influence in the government. Charles, by his marriage with *Anne, Duchess of Brittany*, acquired possession of that country; and thus was destroyed the last stronghold of feudal independence and rebellion.

2. By this marriage, Charles gave offence to Maximilian of Austria, to whom Anne had been previously betrothed; and that monarch was joined by Henry VII. of England and Ferdinand of Spain in a league against Charles; but the latter succeeded, by means of concessions of territory and the payment of large sums of money, in effecting a peaceful accommodation (1493). The next year he invaded Italy with a large army to recover Naples, then in possession of Alfonso II., a prince of Aragon, who, on the approach of Charles, abdicated the throne, and the French

1. What is said of Charles VIII.? Why were the States-General called? For what is this meeting noted? How did Charles acquire Brittany?

2. To what hostilities did this marriage lead? How were they settled? Give an account of the invasion of Italy and its result. What was the conduct of Charles after this? When and how did his death occur? What line ended with him?

monarch entered the city in triumph. A league being formed against him by Venice, Milan, and other states of Northern Italy, he retreated; but, on the confines of Lombardy, gained a brilliant victory over a much superior army of the allies, thus securing his retreat to France. Naples a short time afterward was abandoned by the French; so that Charles, who had been desirous of winning the glory of Alexander or Charlemagne, had the mortification of seeing his expedition prove a total failure. He afterward gave himself up to every species of vicious indulgence, and thus ruined his health. His death, which happened soon after, was, however, the result of an accident (1498). Charles VIII. was the last of the family of Valois.

3. **Louis XII.**—Charles VIII. dying without heirs, *Louis, Duke of Orleans,* succeeded to the throne, with the title of *Louis XII.* He was the great-grandson of Charles V., and commenced his reign by the exercise of a noble forbearance and moderation which gained for him the esteem of all classes. Those who had opposed and injured him during the previous reign were freely forgiven, the king saying that "it did not become the King of France to resent the injuries of the Duke of Orleans." Desiring to marry Anne of Brittany, the widow of Charles VIII., he applied to the Pope (Alexander VI.) for a divorce from his wife, who, though distinguished for her talents and virtue, was deformed in person. The divorce being granted, his marriage with Anne was solemnized with great splendor.

4. Most of this reign was occupied by wars undertaken by Louis to acquire possession of territories in Italy. His first conquest was that of Milan (1500), after which, in alliance with Ferdinand of Aragon, he took Naples; but a dispute arising between the allies as to the partition of the conquered territory, the French were defeated by the

3. Who succeeded Charles VIII.? What is said of the conduct of Louis XII.? How and why did he obtain a divorce from his wife?
4. What conquests did he make in Italy? What disasters did he suffer?

Spanish forces under *Gon-zal'vo of Cordova*, called the "Great Captain," and Ferdinand thus gained almost exclusive possession of the Neapolitan States (1503). Louis attempted to retrieve his loss; but Gonzalvo inflicted upon the French one of the severest disasters that ever befell their arms (Dec., 1503).

5. Louis, some time afterward, entered into the celebrated *League of Cambray*, formed by France, Germany, Spain, the Pope (Julius II.), and the minor states of Italy, in order to check the power of Venice, then at the height of its glory and influence. Under the command of the illustrious *Chevalier Bāy'ard*, the French completely defeated the Venetians in the battle of *Agnadello* (*an-yah-del'lo*); and the other allies were also successful (1509). But the intrigues of Julius II. soon afterward diverted the force of the alliance from Venice and turned it against France, with the view to deprive the latter of all its possessions in Italy. In this way the "Holy League," consisting of the Pope, Ferdinand of Spain, and the Venetian Republic, was formed (1511); but the French, under the command of the renowned *Gaston de Foix* (*fwah*), gained two brilliant victories over the allies. That heroic general having fallen in one of these battles (1512), Louis was soon afterward obliged to succumb to the power of the League, and surrender all his Italian acquisitions in Northern Italy.

6. Louis then formed an alliance with Venice to recover these possessions (1513), and, at first, gained some successes; but was finally defeated with severe loss by the Swiss, who had been hired by the Italians for their defence. This disaster encouraged the enemies of France to attack it; and while it was threatened by Ferdinand of Spain, the Swiss invaded it from the west, and Henry VIII. landed with a large army at Calais. The latter a short time afterward fought the noted "Battle of the Spurs," in which

5. What was the League of Cambray? What was its result? What was the Holy League? What victory was gained by the French? What followed?
6. What other disasters befell Louis in Italy and France? When did he die?

several of the French officers, including Bayard, were taken prisoners (1513). Louis, wearied with these harassing wars, shortly afterward succeeded in making a treaty of peace with his enemies, but survived it only a few months. His virtues had made him exceedingly popular, and he died universally regretted by his subjects (1515).

7. **Francis I.**, *Duke of Angoulême* (*ang-go-lām*), and cousin of Louis XII., succeeded to the throne, at the age of 21 years. He was of a very chivalrous disposition, and was eager to distinguish himself by military achievements. His first enterprise was to recover Milan, which had been lost during the previous reign; and, at the head of 40,000 men, commanded by Bayard, the Constable Bour'bon, and other illustrious generals, he invaded Italy. There, in the battle of *Marignano* (*mah-reen-yah'no*), he totally defeated the Swiss mercenaries, 10,000 of whom were left dead upon the field (1515). Milan, therefore, surrendered; and Francis wisely augmented his influence by establishing a lasting alliance with the Swiss Republic (1516).

8. On the death of Maximilian, Emperor of Germany, Francis became a competitor with Charles, of Spain, for the vacant throne. The election of the latter excited the anger of Francis, and gave rise to a series of wars that lasted nearly twenty-five years, between him and his great rival, afterward so illustrious as *Charles V. of Germany.* Both parties sought the alliance of Henry VIII. of England; and, on the occasion of the interview which took place between the English and French monarchs, *fêtes* of such extraordinary splendor were given, that the place of the interview was called the "Field of the Cloth of Gold." Owing, however, to the intrigues of Wolsey, Henry declared in favor of the Emperor.

9. Francis unwisely quarrelled with his great general,

7. Who succeeded Louis XII.? What was his character? What led to the battle of Marignano? What were its consequences?

8. What led to wars with Charles V. of Germany? What course was pursued by Henry VIII.? How was this brought about?

the Constable of Bourbon, and the latter was gladly taken into the service of the emperor. The first step of the French king was to invade Italy; but his army was under the command of an incompetent general, and Bourbon soon drove it into a disastrous retreat, during which the gallant and chivalrous Bayard was killed. Francis then conducted the army in person; but, at *Pa'via,* suffered a dreadful defeat, all his most distinguished generals being slain, and he himself made prisoner (1525). [*See Note* 1.]

10. He remained in captivity more than a year, during which he suffered considerable indignity from the emperor, who extorted from him an assent to the most humiliating conditions before he would grant his release. These, on regaining his liberty, he refused to fulfil; and the war was renewed, Francis having effected an alliance with Venice and the Pope. Bourbon accordingly marched to Rome, with a large army, consisting partly of German troops, whose minds had been excited by the new doctrines of Luther, and partly also composed of a multitude of adventurers and bandits, ferocious as the Huns or Vandals.

11. Bourbon was slain in the first assault; but Rome was taken, and for seven months became a scene of the most remorseless violence and pillage, the Pope being kept a prisoner, and treated with the grossest indignities (1527).* This led to an alliance between the kings of France and England; and Charles, embarrassed by the movements of the German Protestants, and threatened by the Turks under their great sultan, *Soliman the Magnificent,* consented to a treaty of peace with Francis (1529).

12. Twice, however, was the war renewed; and Francis degraded himself and shocked Christendom by forming an alliance with the Turkish sultan. In 1544, he wiped out

* *See Note* 2, *end of the Section.*

9. With whom did Francis quarrel? What led to the battle of Pavia? What was its result? Where is Pavia? (See Prog. Map, No 7.)
10 How did Francis obtain his release? What led to the taking of Rome?
11. Give an account of the sack of Rome? To what did it lead?
12. What were the subsequent events of this reign? When did it end?

the disgrace of his defeat at Pavia, by a splendid victory in Italy over the Imperial army; but Charles formed an alliance with Henry VIII., both monarchs engaging to invade France, capture Paris, and divide the French dominions between them. The French king successfully defended his capital against the invading armies of these two powerful foes, and finally succeeded in making peace with both. His death occurred the next year (1547).

13. Francis I. was a liberal patron of literature and the arts, both of which made very great progress during his reign. He was possessed of considerable talents, unbounded ambition, and very extraordinary courage, activity, and enterprise; but his private vices, his acquiescence in the ir fluence of incapable favorites, and his want of prudence and self-control, brought upon his people great misfortunes and miseries.

14. Henry II., on his accession to the throne, was in the twenty-ninth year of his age. He was slothful and luxurious in his disposition, and possessed but few of the talents of his father. Before he commenced to reign, he married *Catharine de' Medici* (*med'e-che*), a descendant of the illustrious Lorenzo de' Medici, of the Florentine Republic, who, on account of his accomplishments and his liberal patronage of learning and art, was styled the "Magnificent." Pope Leo X. was a son of Lorenzo, and Clement VII. a nephew; and when, through the influence of the latter and Charles V., Florence lost her liberty, a member of this celebrated family was made the first *Duke of Florence* (1529); and its descendants, for a century afterward, continued to occupy the ducal throne of Tuscany.

15. Hostilities between France and Charles V. were re-

---

13. What was the character of Francis I.?

14. What is said of Henry II.? Whom did he marry? Who was Catharine de' Medici?

15. What war was continued? What led to the treaty of Passau? What were its terms? What victory was gained by Francis, Duke of Guise?

sumed soon after the commencement of Henry's reign; and the latter allied himself with the great Protestant champion, *Maurice, Elector of Saxony,* who at once declared against the emperor as the enemy of the civil and religious liberty of Germany. Charles V., prudently yielding to the force of so powerful a combination, concluded with the Germans the treaty of *Passau,* conceding to the Protestants freedom of worship (1552). Henry II., however, having refused to be included in the treaty, the imperial army was repulsed with severe loss at *Metz,* defended by the French under *Francis, Duke of Guise* (*gweez*).

16. Charles V. having resigned his throne to his son Philip, the French king embraced the occasion to invade the Netherlands and Italy; but sustained severe disasters in each of these enterprises. In the former, the Constable *Montmorency* sustained a total defeat at *St. Quen'tin,* where the flower of his army were either slain or taken prisoners (1557).* Queen Mary of England had given assistance to her husband Philip; and, through the energy of Guise, the French gained possession of Calais (1558). This was soon followed by a treaty of peace between the contending parties, and by the king's death, which was occasioned by a wound received at a tournament (1559).

17. Francis II., a youth of sixteen years, succeeded to the throne. The year before, he married Mary, Queen of Scots; and, being of feeble intellect, he was entirely ruled by his fascinating queen, who herself was under the control of her uncles, the Duke of Guise and his brother, Cardinal of Lorraine. These two noblemen thus acquired the supreme power in the government; which they proceeded to employ for the destruction of the Protestants, or *Huguenots,* the persecution of whom had commenced in the previous reign. The Huguenots had, nevertheless,

* *See Note 3, end of the Section.*

16. What countries did Henry III. invade? What were the results? Why did the French take Calais? When and how did Henry's death occur?

17. Who succeeded Henry II.? What was his character? Who was his queen? Who obtained the control of the government? What is said of the Protestants?

rapidly increased in number and influence, and now included within their ranks the King of Navarre, his brother Louis, Prince of Condé (*kon'da*), Admiral Coligny (*ko-leen-ye'*), with many others of high rank and great ability.

18. On account of the tyrannical administration of the Guises, a conspiracy was formed, under Condé; which proving unsuccessful, the Duke of Guise took the opportunity of executing a dreadful vengeance on those who had been concerned in it, executing upward of 1200 persons with the most revolting cruelty (1560). This was soon followed by the arrest of the King of Navarre and the Prince of Condé, the latter of whom was convicted of high treason and sentenced to be executed; but the king's death taking place soon afterward, he was released. The reign of Francis II. lasted less than eighteen months; and he was succeeded by his brother *Charles*, a youth ten years and a half old (1560).

19. Charles IX.—The government was now administered by the Queen-mother, Catharine de' Medici, who had previously selected for her chief friend and adviser the moderate and virtuous *Chancellor de l'Hopital* (*lo'pe-tal*); and the leaders of both religious parties were placed in the great offices of state. The States-General were assembled, and proclaimed entire freedom of religion, which was afterward confirmed by a royal edict. These excellent measures, however, proved ineffectual, in consequence of the excesses and bitter feelings of both parties; and the country was soon plunged into the miseries of a civil war.

20. The Prince of Condé at first assumed the command of the Protestants, who were assisted by the English Queen Elizabeth, while the government was aided by Philip of

18. What conspiracy was formed? What was its result? Who succeeded Francis II.?

19. Who administered the government under Charles IX.? What measures were adopted? With what results?

20. Give an account of the war that ensued. How did it end?

Spain. This war was carried on with great fury, and with various successes on both sides, till 1570, when Catharine obtained peace by granting to the Huguenots the free exercise of their religion in all parts of France, except Paris, placing in their power, as a guarantee, four cities, one of which was *Rochelle* (*ro-shel'*). While this arrangement gave great dissatisfaction to the Catholic party, it did not restore confidence to the Protestants, who entertained a mistrust of the sincerity of Catharine, by whose counsels and intrigues the king was entirely controlled.

21. Admiral Coligny and the other Protestant leaders finally repaired to the court; and the former gained so much influence over Charles, that the Queen-mother entered into a conspiracy to remove him by assassination, and thus arouse the vengeance of the Huguenots, so that a pretext might be found for their destruction. Coligny was, however, but slightly wounded, and the plot failed. Catharine and her accomplices next wrung from the king his consent to the death of Coligny and the other principal members of the Protestant faction. The dreadful "Massacre of St. Bartholomew's Day" followed, in which the Huguenots throughout France were butchered, without distinction of age or sex. Coligny was the first victim, and the number of those that fell in Paris is estimated at 10,000; the whole number slaughtered in different parts of the kingdom amounting to 30,000 (August 24, 1572).

22. The Huguenots were not, however, destroyed. They successfully repelled the attacks made on their stronghold, *Rochelle*, and succeeded in obtaining very favorable terms of peace from the government. Charles soon afterward died (1574), having suffered on his death-bed the most poignant remorse for the crimes and atrocities which had been perpetrated with his sanction. His imbecility has, however,

21. What led to the Massacre of "St. Bartholomew's Day?" Give an account of it.

22. What was its effect on the Huguenots? When did the king die? What is said of him?

saved his name from most of this guilt, resting, as it does, upon Catharine de' Medici, and her associates in the dark intrigues by means of which those acts of cruelty were committed.

23. Henry III., brother of the late king, succeeded to the throne; although, in the preceding year, he had been elected King of Poland. He was a weak and dissolute man, neglecting his duties to indulge in the most infamous debauchery. The Huguenots, under the leadership of *Henry of Navarre*, and the *Prince of Condé*, became very powerful; and the king and Catharine were compelled to make the most humiliating concessions (1576). This led to the "Holy League," formed by the Catholic party to extirpate the Huguenots, overturn the government, and place one of the Guises on the throne.

24. The contest that followed has been styled the "War of the Three Henries"—Henry, the king, Henry of Guise, and Henry of Navarre. It was commenced in 1587; and the king, in union with the Leaguers, gained some advantages over their opponents. At last, disgusted and enraged at finding himself at the mercy of the Guises, and being treated with considerable indignity by them, he caused them to be assassinated. This crime excited a violent outbreak of popular fury against the king, who, in order to resist the opposition which he had created, allied himself to Henry of Navarre and the Huguenots. A few months after this, he was assassinated by a Dominican Monk, named Clement, who was prompted to the deed by feelings of religious enthusiasm (1589). Thus ended the royal dynasty of Valois, the throne passing to the House of Bourbon, in the person of *Henry III., King of Navarre*, who now assumed the title of Henry IV.

---

23. Who succeeded Charles IX.? What is said of him? What caused the Holy League?

24. What was the War of the Three Henries? What is said of it? What crime was committed by the king? How did his death occur? What line ended? By whom was Henry III. succeeded?

House of Bourbon.

25. Henry IV. was in his 36th year when he came to the throne, from which the Catholic nobles at first attempted to exclude him, except on condition of his renouncing his religion, which he refused to do; but he promised to give security to the Catholics and their religion, and to abide the decision of a national Council. This not being satisfactory to the League, now commanded by the *Duke of May-enne'*, brother of the late Duke of Guise, a war ensued, in which Henry defeated his enemies in the famous battle of *Ivry* (*eev're*) (1590); but the fruits of this victory were afterward lost, and the Duke of Mayenne entered Paris in triumph.

26. The war was continued for some time with varied success, Henry being aided by the English troops under the *Earl of Essex*. At last, the States-General were called; and Henry, to satisfy the prevailing party, and to secure a recognition of his right to the throne, abjured Protestantism and declared himself satisfied of the truth of the Catholic faith (1593). Though injurious to his personal reputation, this act of the king's delivered France from a condition of the most dreadful anarchy; and, for patriotic reasons, it was approved by many of the Huguenots themselves. On moral and religious grounds, it cannot, of course, be at all justified.

27. The next five years were occupied in securing his possession of the throne, and in a war which was carried on with Philip of Spain. This was closed by a treaty in 1598, a year memorable for the grant by the king of the celebrated **Edict of Nantes** (*nantz*), in which he confirmed the rights and privileges of the Huguenots, conferred

25. What course was pursued by Henry and the Catholic nobles? What led to the battle of Ivry? What was its result? Where is Ivry? (See Map, p. 188.)

26. What were the other events of the war? What course did Henry pursue with respect to his religion? What is said of it?

27. What were the chief events of the next five years? What was the Edict of Nantes? Where is Nantes? (See Map, p. 188.)

upon them entire liberty of conscience, and admitted them to all offices of honor and emolument.

28. He next directed his attention to the internal condition of the kingdom, which, on account of the long continuance of civil war, had become entirely disorganized. By the construction of roads and canals, he brought all parts of the country into ready communication, encouraged traffic and commerce, and thus opened new sources of wealth and intelligence to the people. Manufactures, mining, and every other department of industry were fostered by his beneficent measures, in devising which he was greatly aided by the wise and upright *Duke of Sul'ly.* The latter reorganized the finances; and, although many of the taxes were remitted, the national debt was almost entirely liquidated. [*See Note* 4, *end of the Section.*]

29. In the latter part of his reign, Henry IV. formed a project to rearrange the various states of Europe, and form them into an association, so as more completely to secure the balance of power, and to diminish the influence of the imperial house of Austria. A dispute having arisen between the emperor and some of the Protestant princes of Germany, Henry took sides with the latter, and thus gave great offence to his Catholic subjects. He was on the point of setting out to commence the war, when he was assassinated (1610) in the streets of Paris by a half-insane fanatic, named *Ravaillac* (*rah-val-yak'*). The death of the king, who was the idol of the people, occasioned the utmost grief and indignation; and his murderer was put to death with every refinement of torture. Henry was possessed of great abilities and force of character; and, as a monarch, was deserving of very high praise; but his private life was sullied with very great vices and immoralities.

30. Louis XIII. succeeded his father at the age of nine

28. What wise measures were adopted by the king? Who was his minister?
29. What scheme was planned by Henry IV.? How did he offend his Catholic subjects? How was his death caused? What was his character?

years, under the regency of his mother, *Mary de' Medici*. Sully, the great minister of Henry IV., becoming disgusted with the injudicious measures of the regent, and particularly with her attention to Italian favorites, resigned his offices, and went into retirement. An assembly of the States-General, in 1614, is noted for the first great occasion on which the celebrated Richelieu (*reesh'e-lu*) made display of his extraordinary talents. He was made a cardinal in 1622; and, two years afterward, he became the chief adviser of the king.

31. Richelieu's first object was to subdue the Huguenots, who for some time had been in rebellion against the government. Rochelle, their chief city, was besieged; and, although Charles I. of England sent a considerable force to its assistance, it was compelled, after a vigorous defence of fifteen months, to surrender (1628). Richelieu himself took a very active part in this siege. The other towns in the possession of the Huguenots were shortly after obliged to submit; and the cause of Protestantism in France was entirely prostrated.

32. Richelieu's next object was to humble the power of the imperial house of Austria, to effect which he took part in the "Thirty Years' War," on the side of the Protestants (then commanded by the great Swedish monarch *Gustavus Adolphus*), against Spain and the Empire. After the death of that hero at *Lut'zen*, the French suffered some reverses, the imperialists invading France, devastating the country, and penetrating within three days' march of the capital. The persevering energy of Richelieu, however, finally triumphed over all his enemies; and the French armies made conquest of Alsace and other territories.

33. The vigor of Richelieu's government excited much

---

30. Who succeeded Henry IV.? Who became Regent? What is said of the States-General? To what offices was Richelieu promoted?

31. Give an account of the war waged by Richelieu against the Huguenots. Where is Rochelle? (See Map, p. 188.)

32. What was the next object of Richelieu? How did he carry it out?

opposition on the part of the princes and nobles of France, and many conspiracies were formed to destroy him. All these schemes he was enabled to thwart by his consummate vigilance and address, and several of those who had engaged in them he caused to be executed. The most conspicuous among his enemies were *Mary de' Medici*, the queen-mother; *Gaston, Duke of Orleans*, the brother of the king; and the *Duke of Montmorency*. The last was executed, having been taken prisoner in a conflict with the government forces.

34. Notwithstanding these difficulties, Richelieu sustained the influence of France, and made its power respected by every foreign state. In no period of its history, has its glory shone forth with more splendor than during the administration of this talented and ambitious cardinal, beneath whose comprehensive genius and indefatigable energy the king himself became a mere cipher. Richelieu was also a patron of science and literature; and to him France owes the foundation of the French Academy. His death occurred in 1642, and was followed the next year by that of the king.

35. Louis XIV. was scarcely five years of age when his father died; and the regency was intrusted to his mother, *Anne of Austria*, who selected as her prime minister *Cardinal Maz'a-rin*, a former disciple and associate of Richelieu. France was again drawn into the "Thirty Years' War," by the renewal of hostilities on the part of the house of Austria; but several splendid victories were gained by the French army, under the Prince of Condé, afterward so illustrious as the "Great Condé," and by the celebrated *Marshal Tu-renne'*. This long war was closed by the "Treaty of Westphalia," in 1648, by which the boundaries of France were settled, nearly as they exist at present.

---

33. What conspiracies were formed against him? With what results?
34. What is said of the administration of Richelieu? What did he found? When did his death occur? When did the king die?
35. By whom was Louis XIII. succeeded? What is said of Louis XIV.? Who became Regent? What minister did she choose? In what war was France involved? With what result? What is said of the Peace of Westphalia?

36. Meantime, the *civil war of the Fronde** had broken out (1648), caused by the resistance of the people, represented in the parliament of Paris, to the unjust and oppressive measures of taxation adopted by the government, and probably incited by the rebellion of the English against their king, Charles I., which had just been brought to a successful issue. In these commotions, the court was opposed by many of the nobles; and, during the latter part of the war, the Great Condé also took sides against the government. The principal leader of the revolt, however, was *Cardinal de Retz* (*rāts*). With much difficulty it was subdued in 1653, having lasted about five years.

37. The death of Mazarin, who had accumulated enormous wealth, occurred in 1661, after which date Louis XIV., from whom, on account of his neglected education, little had been expected, suddenly assumed the reins of government. He at once exhibited great sagacity and talent as a ruler; and during his subsequent reign, which lasted more than half a century, the vastness of his military enterprises, the grandeur of his plans for the internal improvement of his kingdom, his magnificent court ceremonial, and his enlightened patronage of literature and the arts and sciences, obtained for him the title of the "Great King." His government was, however, a complete despotism, its fundamental principle being comprehended in his famous saying, "I am the state."

38. The prosperity of France was, at this time, greatly promoted by the wise financial measures of *Colbert* (*kōl-bāre'*), and by the able administration of foreign affairs, conducted by the prime minister *Louvois* (*loo-vwah'*). The first

* The members of the political faction opposed to the government were called, in derision *Frondeurs*, that is, *Slingers;* being compared to the vagrant boys (*gamins*) of Paris who fought with slings (*fronde*).

36. What caused the war of the Fronde? Give an account of it. Why called the Fronde? (See note.)

37. When did Mazzarin's death occur? What is said of the conduct and character of Louis XIV.?

38. By whom was the prosperity of France promoted? What caused the Triple Alliance? The war with the Dutch? Where is Franche Comté? (See Map, p. 188.)

military enterprise of Louis was the seizure of *Flanders* and *Franche Comté* (*fransh kong'ta*); but the "Triple Alliance" (England, Holland, and Sweden) arrested his career of conquest (1668). This excited the anger of Louis against Holland; and, having bribed Charles II. of England to aid him, and obtained promises of neutrality from the other great powers of Europe, he directed his armies, commanded by Turenne and Condé, against that republic.

39. At first, the affairs of the Dutch appeared to be desperate, as they were weakened by the dissensions between the adherents of *William of Orange* and the democratic party under *De Witt*. The latter having been overthrown by a popular insurrection, William, Prince of Orange, then a young man in his 23d year, became stadtholder (president) of the republic. Through his genius and patriotism the country was successfully defended, the progress of the enemy being at first arrested by opening the vast sluices, and laying the whole district surrounding Amsterdam under water (1672).

40. This war lasted six years longer, the Prince of Orange having succeeded in forming an alliance with the Emperor of Germany. The French fleets gained important victories in the Mediterranean over those of Holland under *De Ruyter*, who was slain in one of these battles. Peace was made, in 1678, between France and Holland. The former gained nothing of importance by this severe war; but Louis had lost his great general Turenne; and Condé, enfeebled by age, had fought his last campaign. The free city of *Stras'burg* was captured by the French a short time afterward (1681); and, through the engineering skill of the celebrated *Vauban* (*vo-bahng'*), it was made an impregnable bulwark of France on the eastern frontier.

---

39. What weakened the Dutch? Who became stadtholder? What measures did he adopt?

40. What other events of the war are mentioned? What were its results? When and how was Strasburg taken? Where is Strasburg? (See Progressive Map, No. 7.)

41. By the advice of the celebrated *Madame de Main'-te-non* (*-nong*), Louis adopted the impolitic measure of revoking the *Edict of Nantes* (1685); after which a fierce persecution of the Huguenots ensued, which drove upward of 500,000 of the most industrious of the citizens of France from their country. The flight of James II. from England involved the French monarch in another war, in which he had to cope with the combined forces of the "Grand Alliance," consisting of all the great powers of Europe (1689). For over seven years was this mighty struggle maintained by sea and land; and, France being utterly exhausted, Louis was compelled to assent to the Treaty of Ryswick, and thus submit to humiliating conditions of peace (1689).

42. A few years afterward, followed the great "War of the Spanish Succession" (1701). On the death of Charles II. of Spain, Louis claimed the throne of that country for his grandson *Philip V.*, whilst the emperor supported the claim of his son, afterward the Emperor Charles VI. This led to an alliance between Holland and Germany against the French king; which was joined by William of Orange, Louis having recognized the son of James II. king of England. The war was carried on in Spain, Belgium, Germany, and Italy; and the French experienced a series of disastrous defeats, having to contend against the genius of Marlborough and Prince Eugene. The Treaty of Utrecht closed the war (1713), according to which Louis gave up some of his American possessions to England, but obtained the recognition of Philip V. as King of Spain. [*See Note* 5.]

43. The condition of France was now most deplorable, through the ambition, pride, and bigotry of her despotic monarch. He sustained, however, his haughty mien and pompous state ceremonial to the last, notwithstanding he

41. What impolitic act did Louis XIV. commit? What was the result? Give an account of the Grand Alliance and the events that followed it.
42. Give an account of the war of the Spanish Succession. What was its result?
43. What was now the condition of France? What is said of Louis XIV.? When did his death occur? Who succeeded him? What writings did he leave? What is the period of his reign called?

had lost by death, his son, the Dauphin, his eldest grandson, and many others of his kindred. He died in 1715, after a reign of more than 72 years, and was succeeded by *Louis,* his great-grandson. Louis XIV. left several volumes of writings, containing his "Instructions to his Sons," and his letters, which give valuable information respecting the events of his reign. This period is regarded as the *Augustan age of French literature.* [*See Note* 6.]

44. Louis XV. was only five years of age on his accession, and the Regency fell into the hands of the dissolute Duke of Orleans, who was controlled by his shameless and unprincipled minister, the infamous *Abbé Dubois* (*du-bwah'*). The education of the young king was intrusted to the *Abbé de Fleu'ry,* noted for his virtues and accomplishments, and for his work on the History of the Church. *Cardinal Fleury* succeeded him in 1722. During the regency occurred the famous "Mississippi Scheme," devised by a Scotch adventurer named John Law, who proposed to issue paper money on the security of certain gold and diamond mines said to exist near the Mississippi River, in Louisiana, and in this way to extinguish the vast debt of the country. Such was the rage for speculation excited by this project, that the shares sold for forty times their par value. Thousands were ultimately ruined by this scheme, as in England by the "South Sea Bubble."

45. Cardinal Fleury was made prime minister in 1726, in the 72d year of his age; and the country greatly prospered under his prudent and skilful administration, which lasted seventeen years. His policy was peaceful; but the marriage of Louis XV. with the daughter of the dethroned King of Poland, involved him in a war with Russia, Austria, and Denmark, to reinstate his father-in-law, *Stan'is-las,* on

44. What was the age of Louis XV.? Who became Regent and minister? Who were the instructors of the king? Give an account of the Mississippi scheme.

45. When did Cardinal Fleury become minister? What is said of his administration? What caused war with Russia, Austria, and Denmark? What was its result? What war followed? What victory was gained? What treaty ended the war? What followed?

the throne; but in this object he was unsuccessful. The "War of the Austrian Succession" followed soon after, during which Fleury died (1743). The most important victory gained by the French during this war was that of *Fontenoy*, under Marshal Saxe (1745). The *Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle* gave a brief rest to Europe, which was broken by the "Seven Years' War" in 1756.

46. During this struggle France lost Canada, and some of her West Indian possessions; and her army was severely defeated at *Min'den*, by the English and Hanoverians, commanded by the Duke of Brunswick (1759). The *Treaty of Paris* deprived France of many important possessions, and left her heavily laden with taxes (1763). The year 1769 is remarkable for the conquest of *Corsica*, after a brave struggle for its independence, under *Paoli*. During the same year was born on this island, *Napoleon Bonaparte*, destined to play so great a part in the subsequent history of France. Louis XV. died in 1774, after having, by a long course of tyranny, debauchery, and reckless profusion, disgusted his subjects, and plunged the country into anarchy and ruin.

47. Louis XVI. succeeded his grandfather at the age of 20 years. His character presented a striking contrast to that of the preceding king, being beneficent and upright; and he commenced his reign with the sincere desire to ameliorate the condition of his suffering people, by redressing their grievances, and restoring the financial prosperity of the kingdom. He was, however, deficient in judgment and decision; and, although he selected for his ministers the patriotic *Turgot* (*toor-go'*) and *Malsherbes* (*mal-zārb'*), he soon became involved in great difficulties on account of the irreparable confusion of the finances. These were still

---

46. What did France lose during the Seven Years' War? What took place at Minden? What was lost by the Treaty of Paris? For what is the year 1769 noted? When did Louis XV. die? What was the effect of his reign?

47. Who succeeded to the throne? At what age? What was his character? What minister did he select? What caused difficulties? Who was the queen?

further deranged by the extravagant habits of the Court, presided over by the young and fascinating queen, *Marie Antoinette* (*an-twah-net'*), daughter of Maria Theresa.*

48. Various ministers of well-established reputation for financial skill were selected,—among them the celebrated *Neck'er*, a banker of Geneva; but the national difficulties increased. A war with England, caused by the interference of France in the struggle of the English colonies of America for independence, still further embarrassed the government of Louis XVI., by compelling a new levy of taxes, greatly to the discontent of the people, who complained loudly of the extravagance of the Court and Marie Antoinette. At length an assembly of the States-General was vehemently demanded, a meeting of which had not been called since 1614. To this Louis gave his assent (1789). [*See Note* 8.]

49. By the advice of Necker, it had been decreed that the representatives of the Third Estate, or Commons, should be equal in number to those of the nobility and clergy together; and, on their assemblage at Ver-sāilles' (May 5, 1789), a dispute arose as to the mode in which the votes should be taken in deciding questions,—whether the three Orders should vote as separate bodies, or, all being assembled in one body, the votes should be taken numerically. The latter mode was advocated by the Third Estate; and, after contending for several weeks, against the opposition of the two other orders, they finally resolved themselves into a distinct body, under the title of the **National Assembly,** and claimed to be the legitimate representatives of the French people (June 17). They were soon joined by many of the clergy.

50. Thus was inaugurated the great **French Revolution,** which in its progress not only convulsed France, but

* *See Note* 7, *end of the Section.*

48. What financial ministers were selected? What increased the troubles? What measure was finally resolved on?

49. How had the number of representatives been arranged? What disputes arose? What was the course of the Third Estate? By whom were they joined?

50. What did these proceedings inaugurate? What causes led to the Revolution?

threw the whole civilized world into violent commotion, uprooting institutions which had withstood the assaults of ages. For this mighty outbreak many circumstances had prepared the way, the chief of which were the following: 1. The despotism, recklessness, and profligacy of the government of France during the three preceding reigns; 2. The oppressions to which the lower classes were subjected from the unjust laws which favored the nobility and clergy, by exempting them from their due share in the weight of taxation; 3. The dissemination of knowledge among the people, and the spread of infidelity, occasioned by the writings of Vol-taire′, and others; 4. The notions and feelings in favor of popular freedom inspired by the success of the American Revolution, in which so many of the French nation had borne a distinguished part.

51. The king and his ministers, dismayed at the determination shown by the Commons, and desiring to check their proceedings, attempted to exclude them from their hall, and thus suspend their sittings. But the Assembly, through the energy of their president *Bail'ly* (or *bahl-ye′*), and the eloquence of their great leader *Mirabeau* (*me-rah-bo′*), thwarted this attempt; and the king showed his indecision by afterward sanctioning their measures, and requesting all the deputies of the clergy and nobility to join with the Third Estate.

52. By the advice of the queen, large bodies of troops were collected to overawe the Assembly, and Necker was dismissed. This excited an insurrection of the populace in Paris, and the *Bastile* (*bas-teel′*), a noted prison, was stormed and captured by the mob (July 14, 1789). The excited populace then proceeded to Versailles, and demanded that the king and royal family should return to Paris; and Louis felt himself obliged to comply. *Lafay-*

51. What course did the king take? The Assembly?
52. What led to an insurrection? What acts did the populace commit? Who was made commandant of the National Guard? With whom did it sympathize?

ette (*lah-fā-et'*) was then placed at the head of the militia, called the *National Guard*, the members of which sympathized with the popular movements, so that the king was without any support except from the Swiss and German mercenaries.

53. The violence of the Parisian mob, inflamed by the political writings which were circulated among the people, soon became ungovernable; and several obnoxious individuals were seized and put to death with great cruelty. The Assembly energetically prosecuted its measures of reform, and decreed the entire abolition of the principles and practices of the former government. They subsequently agreed upon a constitution, limiting the power of the king and securing popular rights; and then passed a resolution by which the National Assembly (now called the *Constituent Assembly*) was dissolved, and a new body authorized to be summoned, entitled the *Legislative Assembly*, to which none of the members of the National Assembly were eligible (1791).

54. Meanwhile, several insurrections had taken place in Paris; and the king and his family had been treated with the greatest indignity by the infuriated mob, whose passions were particularly excited against the unfortunate queen. Attempting flight, they were pursued, arrested, and brought back to Paris. The Legislative Assembly met in 1791; and, although the king had accepted the constitution and promised to abide by its requirements, a large party were hostile to the monarchy, desiring to destroy it, and establish a republican form of government. These views were fostered by the political clubs which had been formed in Paris a short time after the commencement of the Revolution, among which the famous *Jac'obin Club* had attained the complete control of the Assembly.

53. What was the conduct of the Parisian mob? Of the National Assembly? What body succeeded it?

54. What had taken place in Paris? Against whom were the populace excited? Who desired a republic? By whom were these sentiments fostered?

55. The king repeatedly made concessions to the republicans, while he cherished schemes for escaping from their control; but each month added to his humiliations and to the boldness of his enemies. Foreign nations looked on with alarm, and sympathized with the royal family. Austria and Prussia declared war upon the French, in order to rescue the hapless monarch. This still further excited the Parisian mob. They rushed to the Tuileries (*tweel're*), the palace in which the king resided, took it by storm, massacred the brave Swiss soldiers who defended it, and obliged the king to take refuge in the Assembly, by whose orders he and his family were imprisoned (August 10, 1792).

56. The supreme authority being now seized by the municipality of Paris, a special criminal tribunal was instituted; and all persons suspected of hostility to the revolution were dragged before it, condemned, and massacred in the most shocking manner. Lafayette being at the head of the army, refused to recognize the authority of the Assembly, but, he not being sustained by the troops, retired from the country. The Legislative Assembly was dissolved; and having been reorganized as the **National Convention**, it formally abolished the monarchy, and declared France a republic (September 1792). The next month, the revolutionists were emboldened by the victory gained by the French General *Dumourier* (*du-moo-re-a'*) over the Austrian army at *Jemeppe* (*zha-mep'*), in Belgium.

57. The Convention, now composed of strict republicans, was divided into two parties, bitterly hostile to each other, one called the *Mountain Party* and the other the *Girondists* (*zhe-rond'ists*). Of the former, the leaders were *Ro-*

55. What was done by the king? Who declared war upon France? To what did this lead?

56. What followed the imprisonment of the king? What succeeded the Legislative Assembly? What measures were taken by the National Convention? What emboldened the revolutionists?

57. Into what parties was the Convention divided? Who were the leaders of the Mountain Party? What distinguished orator belonged to the Girondists? Give an account of the trial of the king. When did the execution take place? What nobleman voted against the king?

bespierre (*ro-bes-pe-āre'*),* *Dan'ton*, and *Marat* (*mah-rah'*), noted for their wickedness and cruelty. One of the most eminent of the Girondists was *Vergniaud* (*vārn-yo'*), distinguished for his eloquence. One of the first acts of the Convention was the trial of the king, who was charged with conspiring against the liberties of France; and, notwithstanding the eloquent and unanswerable defence made by his advocate, *Desèze* (*dŭh-sāz'*), he was found guilty of the charges, with very few dissenting votes, and condemned to death. The sentence was executed by the guillotine, one week afterward (January 21, 1793). Among those who voted for the king's condemnation was the infamous *Duke of Orleans*, who took part in the popular excesses, abandoning his title and taking the name of *Philip E-gal'i-té* (*equality*).

58. The Mountain Party having triumphed in the Convention, the Girondist leaders were guillotined. The **Reign of Terror** was then inaugurated, during which the Revolutionary Tribunal, controlled by Robespierre, Danton, and others, caused thousands to be seized and hurried to the guillotine. Among these victims was the unfortunate Marie Antoinette (Oct. 1793), who, during her imprisonment, had been subjected to every indignity and insult which could be devised by her relentless jailers. Similar deeds of cruelty were perpetrated in other parts of France, the number guillotined being estimated at more than 18,000. [*See Note* 10, *end of the Section.*]

59. The cruel and wicked men concerned in these atrocities almost invariably met with a violent death. Marat was assassinated by *Charlotte Cor'day*. The faction of Robespierre,† triumphing over that of Danton, caused him and his adherents to be guillotined; and a few months

* *See Note* 9, *end of the Section.* † *See Note* 11.

58. What was the fate of Marat? What party triumphed in the Convention? What followed? What was the fate of Marie Antoinette? What occurred in other parts of France?

59. What closed the Reign of Terror? What change took place in the government? What brought Napoleon Bonaparte into notice?

afterward, this dreadful period closed by the execution of Robespierre himself (1794).* A new constitution was then adopted by the Convention, the executive authority being intrusted to a *Directory*, consisting of five members. This constitution being opposed by several of the Parisian Sections (divisions of the city), who threatened an insurrection, *Napoleon Bonaparte*, a young officer, who had previously distinguished himself at the siege of Tou-lon', was selected to conduct the military operations against the insurgents. Planting his cannon adroitly, he opened fire upon the populace, and dispersed them without difficulty (1795).

59. The service rendered by Napoleon on the "Day of the Sections," was soon afterward rewarded by conferring upon him the command of the *Army of Italy*, designed to operate against the Austrians (1796). In two campaigns he achieved a succession of the most brilliant victories over the Austrian armies;† and, entering the Venetian territory, in consequence of hostilities committed against the French, he captured Venice itself, and overturned her ancient government (1797). The emperor was at length compelled to assent to the terms of the treaty of *Cam'po For'mi-o*, by which an independent commonwealth was established in Northern Italy, called the "Cisalpine Republic," and the city of Venice was ceded to Austria.

61. Bonaparte, after considerable persuasion, induced the Directory to consent to an expedition designed to conquer Egypt, as a means of attacking the commerce and power of England in the East. Landing there with an immense army, he captured Alexandria, and then marched toward Cairo (*ki'ro*), which, after defeating the Mamelukes in the noted "Battle of the Pyramids," he entered (1798).‡ This gave him possession of the country; but a few days after-

* *See Note* 12, *end of Section.* † *See Note* 13. ‡ *See Note* 14.

60. What command was bestowed on Napoleon? Describe the campaigns in Italy. How did they end? What was the *Cisalpine Republic?*
61. What account is given of Napoleon's expedition to Egypt?

ward, Nelson destroyed his fleet, in the memorable "Battle of the Nile," and thus cut off the retreat of the invaders.

62. The Turkish empire having declared war against France, Bonaparte at once invaded Syria, captured *Jaf'fa* by assault, and cruelly caused 1200 Turkish prisoners to be put to death. He then laid siege to *Acre* (*a'ker*), but failed to capture it; although he defeated the Turks with great slaughter at *Mount Ta'bor*. Returning to Egypt, he attacked and almost annihilated a considerable army of Turks at Aboukir (*ab-oo-keer'*), *General Murat* (*mu-rah'*), at the head of the French cavalry, particularly distinguishing himself in this obstinate battle (1799). Leaving his army with General Kleber (*kla-bār'*), he then returned to France, and was received with unbounded enthusiasm by the people.

63. Meanwhile, a new coalition of the great powers of Europe had been formed against France, and the Russians under *Su-war'row* had gained several important victories in Italy. This made the Directory very unpopular, and Bonaparte took the opportunity of overturning the government at the point of the bayonet. A new constitution was then formed, and accepted by the people, according to which the executive power was vested in three Consuls, elected for ten years. Bonaparte was appointed *First Consul* (1799), and by his vigor and address introduced reforms in every department of the government.

64. The military operations were conducted with splendid ability and success. The Austrians were defeated by *General Moreau* (*mo-ro'*) in the battle of *Ho-hen-lin'den;* while Napoleon himself gained new laurels by his daring passage of the Alps, and by his brilliant victory over the Austrians at *Ma-ren'go* (1800). This compelled the empe-

62. What account is given of the Syrian expedition? What victory was gained over the Turks? Whom did Napoleon leave in Egypt?

63. What made the Directory unpopular? How was a change in the government effected? What did Napoleon become?

64. What victory was gained by Moreau? By Napoleon? What treaties were then made? To what office was Napoleon elected? When and how was he made emperor?

ror to conclude the *Treaty of Lune'ville* (1801), which was followed by the *Treaty of Amiens*, in which peace was made with England (1802). Bonaparte was next elected *Consul for life;* and, various conspiracies being formed against him, he determined still further to augment his power, and caused himself to be declared by the Legislature *Emperor of the French* (1804).

65. A short time after this, *Moreau* was banished for being concerned in a conspiracy against the government, and eleven of the other conspirators were put to death. Napoleon received the crown of France from the hands of the Pope; and subsequently caused himself to be crowned *King of Italy*, with the famous "iron crown" of the Lombards (1805). These assumptions of power led to another coalition against him, on the part of England, Austria, Russia, Sweden, and Prussia; but Napoleon, with his accustomed promptitude, marched against the Austrians, and succeeded in capturing a large army at *Ulm* (1805). This was soon followed by the decisive battle of *Aus'ter-litz*, in which the combined army of the Austrians and Russians were routed with overwhelming loss. The emperors of France, Austria, and Russia were present at this battle, and the conditions of peace were at once agreed upon. The treaty was afterward concluded at *Presburg*, Austria making great sacrifices of territory.

66. Napoleon now took possession of Naples, and conferred the crown upon his brother *Joseph*. His brother *Louis* was made king of Holland; and various principalities and duchies were bestowed upon his most eminent generals and ministers. He next formed a union of several states of Germany, which was styled the "Confederation of the Rhine," and placed under his own control. This

65. Who was banished? What other crown did Napoleon obtain? What coalition was formed? What victories were gained by Napoleon? What is said of the battle of Austerlitz? What treaty was then made?

66. What crowns were bestowed by Napoleon upon his relatives and others? What was the "Confederation of the Rhine?" What title did the emperor of Germany assume?

was practically a dissolution of the empire of Germany; and the emperor, accordingly, assumed the title of *Emperor of Austria*, relinquishing that of "Emperor of Germany and King of the Romans," which he had hitherto possessed.

67. These encroachments and usurpations led to a *fourth coalition*, consisting of Prussia, Russia, Austria, Great Britain, and Sweden, against the French empire. The Prussian monarch raised an immense army of 150,000 men, and commenced hostilities; but Napoleon, with wonderful skill and promptitude, attacked and utterly defeated the Prussians, in the sanguinary battle of *Je'na* (1806). So complete was the victory, that the kingdom of Prussia lay at the mercy of the victor, who a few weeks afterward entered Ber-lin' in triumph. There, he issued his celebrated decree, declaring the British Isles in a state of blockade, and forbidding all commercial intercourse, on the part of any nation, with Great Britain or her colonies.

68. During the winter, he attacked the Russians at *Eilau* (*i'low*); but his army was repulsed with tremendous slaughter (January, 1807). Six months later, with an army of 200,000 men, he gained a victory over the Russians at *Fried'land;* and thus was enabled to dictate terms of peace to the Russian emperor *Alexander*, at *Til'sit*. Peace was also made with Prussia, on condition that she should give up the territory between the Rhine and Elbe rivers, which Napoleon bestowed on his brother *Jerome*, with the title of *King of Westphalia* (1807).

69. Napoleon's commercial restrictions, as declared in the Berlin decree (called the *Continental System*), were not obeyed by Portugal, into which country British merchandise was freely admitted, and thence transported into Spain. He therefore ordered *General Junot* to invade Portugal and

67. What was the fourth coalition? Give an account of the battle of Jena? What were the consequences? What decree was issued by Napoleon?

68. What battles were fought with the Russians? To what treaty did the victory of Friedland lead? What was given to Jerome Bonaparte?

69. What country was invaded by the French? Why? What followed? What measures did Napoleon adopt in regard to Spain?

take possession of Lisbon; and the prince regent was compelled to seek refuge with the British fleet in the Tagus, whence he sailed to Brazil, and fixed the seat of his government in that country. Portugal was then declared a province of the French empire. Napoleon next determined to take possession of Spain; and, after compelling its lawful king to resign the crown, he conferred it upon his brother, Joseph Bonaparte, whom he had transferred from the throne of Naples. The latter throne he conferred on *Murat*, who had married his sister (1808).

70. The people of Portugal and Spain were aroused to insurrection by these arbitrary measures; and the British government resolved to aid them in their efforts to expel the invaders. The "Peninsular War" followed, which lasted nearly five years, and in which *Wellington* gained those resplendent victories which have already been referred to in the history of England. Meanwhile, hostilities were again resumed on the part of Austria, with armies which amounted, in the aggregate, to about 500,000 men. Napoleon, notwithstanding his inferior forces, defeated the Austrians, under the *Archduke Charles*, at *Eck'muhl* (1809), but was compelled to fall back from his position after the bloody battle of *As'pern*. A week afterward, he gained a decisive victory at *Wagram* (*wah'gram*); after which the Austrian emperor was obliged to submit to terms of peace dictated by the victor (1809).

71. While these events were in progress, Napoleon deposed the Pope (Pius VII.), and caused him to be imprisoned in France, on account of his refusal to concur in the Continental System, and to recognize Murat as king of Naples. Having divorced his faithful and virtuous wife *Josephine*, he next haughtily demanded the Austrian princess *Maria Louisa* in marriage; and so thoroughly had the Emperor

70. To what war did the seizure of Spain lead? What battles were fought by Napoleon with the Austrians? What followed the victory at Wagram?

71. What were the next measures of Napoleon? What cities and territory were seized?

Francis been subdued at Wagram, that he was compelled to give his assent; and the nuptials, accordingly, took place a short time afterward (1810). In order the more effectually to carry out his policy of commercial prohibition, he, in the same year, seized the Hanse towns, Hamburg, Bremen, and Lubec, and annexed the northern coast of Germany to the French empire.

72. Difficulties having arisen with Sweden and Russia, in consequence of the French emperor's arbitrary demands in the carrying out of the Continental System, the latter determined to invade Russia with an overwhelming force. Accordingly, in June, 1812, he set out with a splendidly equipped army of nearly 500,000 men, crossed the Niemen, and directed his march to *Mos'cow*, the ancient capital of the Russian empire. Arriving at *Smo-lensk'*, he captured the city after a tremendous conflict, which closed with the retreat of the Russians. About two weeks after this, he fought a desperate battle with the Russian army at *Bor-o-di'no* (*i* like *e*); but, although 45,000 of the enemy were either killed or wounded, he failed to destroy their army, and gained no decisive victory. His own losses had been immense (September 7).

73. Unable to defend Moscow, the Russians abandoned it, and the French entered it in triumph ten days after the battle of Borodino. But the city had been set on fire by the Russians, and the French vainly attempted to stop the conflagration. Nine-tenths of the whole city became a prey to the flames. This disconcerted the plans of Napoleon, who had designed to pass the winter at Moscow; and as the Russians were menacing his communications with Smolensk, where his magazines and reserves had been left, he determined to retreat (October 19).

74. But the dreadful Russian winter soon commenced,

72. What led to the invasion of Russia? When was it commenced? What battles were fought with the Russians?

73. What city was entered by the French? What compelled Napoleon to retreat?

and the French soldiers perished by thousands, of cold and famine.* To add to their sufferings, they were constantly harassed by the Russian army, with which they had several severe conflicts before reaching the *Ber-e-si'na River*, where their passage was disputed by the Russians in strong force. The loss of life was frightful. Multitudes fell by the sabres of the Russians, but still larger numbers perished in the icy waters of the river; so that only 20,000 men remained to Napoleon of the splendid army with which he had set out. During these terrific scenes and conflicts, *Marshal Ney* (*nā*) had won for himself the appellation of the "Bravest of the Brave."†

75. After the dreadful passage of the Beresina, Napoleon abandoned the army, and fled in disguise to Paris, where his arrival restored public confidence and courage; and such were his extraordinary energy and the resources of the French nation, that, in the beginning of the next year (1813), he was enabled to resume operations with an army of 350,000 men, exclusive of his forces in Spain. Europe was once more allied against him; but, on the famous battle-ground of *Lut'zen*, he defeated the army of the allies, and triumphantly entered the city of Dresden. Two other battles were fought with indecisive results, after which he consented to an armistice.

76. But operations were soon resumed by the allies with an immense army; and they attacked the French at Dresden, but were repulsed with severe loss. *Moreau*, fighting on the side of the allies, was here mortally wounded (July 26). In October, the allies, with large re-enforcements, threatened Napoleon's communications, and compelled his retreat to *Leip'sic*, where the greatest conflict of the war ensued, the allied army amounting to about 250,000

* *See Note* 16, *end of the Section.* † *See Note* 17.

74. Describe the retreat of the French. The passage of the Beresina. How many were left of Napoleon's grand army? What was Marshal Ney called?

75. What did Napoleon next do? What army did he raise? What battles were fought?

76. Where were the French attacked? With what result? Give an account of the battle of Leipsic and its consequences.

men; while that of Napoleon contained less than 150,000. This has been called the "Battle of the Nations." After a desperate struggle the French were compelled to retreat; and Napoleon's great conquests were at once lost.

77. Against the immense forces of the allies, Napoleon could now make no effectual resistance. Having defeated every army sent to impede their progress, they at last penetrated into France, and entered Paris (March 31, 1814). Napoleon, who had fled from the city, was obliged to abdicate the throne of France as well as of Italy, and to retire to the island of *El'ba*, of which he was to have the sovereignty. **Louis XVII.** having died a prisoner in the Temple, during the Reign of Terror, his uncle was declared king, under the title of **Louis XVIII.** (May 3, 1814).

78. The next year, while a Congress of the European powers was assembled at Vienna, to arrange and settle the affairs of Europe, they were suddenly surprised by the escape of Napoleon from Elba. Landing on the southern shore of France (*at Cannes* [*kan*]), he was at once received with enthusiasm by the troops; and Marshal Ney, who had been sent to oppose his progress, having deserted to him, he once more entered Paris in triumph, and was greeted with acclamations of joy by all classes (March 20, 1815). Louis XVIII. having fled, Napoleon found himself again on the throne of France; and in less than two months, an army was organized of over 200,000 men, exclusive of the National Guards.

79. Meantime, the allies had prepared for the impending conflict. Three vast armies were collected; the first consisting of Austrians, under Prince Schwartz'en-berg; the second, of British, Germans, and Prussians, under Wellington and Blu'cher (*bloo'ker*); and the third, of Russians,

---

77. What led to Napoleon's abdication? Where was he sent? Who was placed on the throne?

78. What Congress was held? What was accomplished by Napoleon?

79. What armies were collected to oppose him? What battle was fought? What was the result? To whom did Napoleon surrender?

under the Emperor Alexander. Operations commenced on the 15th of June; and, on the 18th, was fought the memorable battle of *Wa'ter-loo,* in which the army under Wellington repulsed the French, and drove them into irretrievable retreat and ruin.* Napoleon fled to Paris; but finding that no further effort could be made to retrieve his ruined fortunes, he surrendered himself to the commander of a British vessel of war, and was carried to England.

80. By agreement of the allied sovereigns, he was sent a captive to the little island of *St. He-le'na,* where he arrived in October, 1815, and where he continued to reside as a prisoner until his death, in 1821, at the age of 52 years. Such was the termination of this extraordinary career of ambition and conquest—the most extraordinary in the world's annals. From the ranks of private life, and a condition of total obscurity, this wonderful man, by his genius and force of character, lifted himself above the greatest potentates on earth, to whom he gave laws as to his lowliest subjects. No one can read the details of his brilliant career without being dazzled by his achievements; but, at the same time, all must be shocked at his entire indifference to human suffering. With the talents to have enabled him to confer the greatest blessings on his race, he chose to be its scourge, and sacrificed to his selfish schemes every principle of benevolence and rectitude. However mournful, therefore, his fall may appear, it must be regarded as a just retribution for his crimes; while it affords an impressive lesson on the vanity and instability of all human glory. In 1840, Napoleon's remains were transported from St. Helena to Paris, and there entombed with every possible circumstance of splendor and solemnity.

81. Louis XVIII.—Soon after the battle of Waterloo, Paris was entered by the allies, and the greater part of the

* *See Note* 18, *end of the Section.*

80. What disposition was made of him? When did he die? What is said of his character and conduct?

81. What measures were adopted by the Allies? Who were executed? What were the chief events of the reign of Louis XVIII.? Who succeeded him?

French territory was occupied by foreign armies. Louis XVIII. was restored, and Marshal Ney, who had deserted to Napoleon, was shot as a traitor. The same year *Murat*, having made a rash attempt to regain the throne of Naples, was seized and put to death. The measures of the restored Bourbon dynasties of Spain and Italy, had been so tyrannical that insurrections broke out in those countries. In Spain, the army, under *General O'Donnell*, supported the liberal constitution, and *Ferdinand*, the king, was obliged to submit. Louis XVIII., by the persuasions of the allied sovereigns of Russia, Austria, and Prussia, sent an army into Spain, to restore the supreme authority to Ferdinand; and the constitutionalists having been defeated, the liberal government was overturned (1823). Louis XVIII. died the next year (1824), and was succeeded by his brother *Charles, Count of Artois* (*ar'twah*).

82. Charles X.—During this reign, the contests between the ultra-royalist and liberal parties in the Chamber of Deputies, as the legislature was called, became very violent; and Charles, taking sides with the former, adopted very arbitrary measures to enforce his views. The liberal party having secured a majority in the Chamber, the king caused the latter to be dissolved, altered the law of elections, and suspended the liberty of the press. In consequence of these despotic measures, the people rose in insurrection; and, after a contest of "three days," dispersed the royal guards and sacked the Tuileries. Lafayette was then appointed general of the National Guards; and the Chamber of Deputies, declaring the throne vacant, summoned Lou'is Phil'ippe (or *loo'e fil-leep'*) to occupy it (1830). Charles took refuge in England.

83. Louis Philippe was the son of the infamous Duke of Orleans, who, as *Philip Egalité*, had shared in the ex-

82. Into what parties was the Chamber of Deputies divided? Give an account of the Second Revolution. What followed?
83. What is related of the career of Louis Philippe?

cesses of the Revolution, and had become one of its many victims. The new king, since that dreadful period, had suffered every variety of fortune, being an exile from his native land, and in a condition of privation and distress travelling or sojourning in foreign countries. He had spent some years in the United States. Now, by a strange revulsion of fortune, he was called to ascend the throne of his native country, from which he had been previously banished.

84. A charter of rights was agreed upon by the Chamber of Deputies, and accepted by the newly-elected king. His reign was, for several years, quite prosperous; and the country advanced in education, commerce, and internal improvements. Louis Philippe, however, was very odious to the extreme republicans, and several attempts were made upon his life. He afterward became generally unpopular, by his opposition to the reforms which were demanded in the government, as well as by his avarice and his selfish concern for the aggrandizement of his family.

85. An attempt to repress, by arbitrary prohibition, a reform banquet appointed on Washington's birthday (February 22, 1848), excited an insurrection of the people, with whom the troops fraternized; and Louis Philippe was compelled to flee. With much difficulty, he made his escape to England, where he died about two years afterward. One of the most important events of this reign was the conquest of *Algeria* (1847), after a long and sanguinary struggle on the part of the native tribes, under their leader *Abd-el Ka'der.*

86. After the flight of the king, a provisional government was instituted, consisting of seven members, among whom were *La-mar-tine'* and *Ar'a-go*, distinguished for their attainments in literature and science. France was

84. What were the first events of his reign? What made him odious to the republicans? How did he become generally unpopular?
85. What caused the flight of Louis Philippe? What conquest had been made?
86. What followed the flight of the king? Who was elected president?

declared a republic, with the motto, "Liberty, Equality, and Fraternity;" hereditary titles and distinctions of nobility were abolished, and a national assembly was called for the purpose of framing a constitution. The constitution afterward adopted vested the government in a president, to be elected for four years, and a national assembly, to consist of 750 members. By the election which followed, *Louis Napoleon* was chosen, by an immense majority, first president of France (1848).

87. Louis Napoleon is the nephew of the Great Napoleon, being the son of *Louis Bonaparte* and *Hortense Beauharnais* (*bo-ar-na'*), daughter of the Empress Josephine. During the reign of Louis Philippe, he had become noted for two attempts to obtain possession of the government by endeavoring to raise a revolt in his favor among the troops. One of these was at Strasburg, in 1836; and the other at Boulogne (*boo-lone'*), in 1840. For the second he was condemned to perpetual imprisonment, but succeeded in making his escape in 1846. These rash enterprises subjected him to considerable ridicule.

88. In the first year of his presidency, a revolution broke out in Rome, and the Pope (Pius IX.) fled to Gaeta (*gah-a'-tah*). Louis Napoleon having sent an army under *General Oudinot* (*oo'de-no*) to restore him to his government, the republicans under *Gar-i-bal'di* were entirely defeated, and Pius IX. returned to Rome the next year. Revolutions broke out in other parts of Italy, with similar want of success.

89. Difficulties arising between the president and the Assembly, the former determined to overturn the existing form of government, so as to obtain an increase of power. His measures were devised and executed with great adroitness. Having gained over the military, he seized and im-

87. Who is Louis Napoleon? How had he made himself notorious?
88. What events took place in Italy during his presidency?
89. What caused the overthrow of the government?

prisoned such of the members of the Assembly as were hostile to his views, as well as other distinguished citizens from whom he apprehended opposition. He then suppressed the newspapers, and proclaimed a dissolution of the Assembly and Council of State (Dec., 1851).

90. A despotic constitution sketched by Louis Napoleon was accepted by the people, and he was elected president for a term of ten years. A short time after this, he obtained the passage of a decree by the Senate, declaring him hereditary Emperor; and this decree was ratified by the popular suffrages. Napoleon Bonaparte's son by Maria Louisa (*Napoleon II.*) having died, Louis Napoleon assumed the title of *Napoleon III.* Thus was effected one of the most disgraceful usurpations recorded in history, by means of a dishonorable stratagem which has been dignified by the name of *coup d'état* (*koo-detah'*)—i. e. *stroke of state policy.*

91. In 1854, the French united with the English in the Russian War, and under Marshal *Pelissier* (*pa-lis-se-a'*) acquired the glory of the final storming of the tremendous fortresses of Sebastopol. In 1859, war having arisen between Austria and Sardinia, the French emperor formed an alliance with the latter, and took the field in person in Northern Italy. Austria suffered disastrous defeats at *Maen'ta and Sol-fer-i'no* (*i* like *e*), and by the treaty of Vil'lafran'ca was obliged to relinquish possession of Lombardy.

In 1862, a French army occupied Mexico; and, on the invitation of Napoleon, Archduke Maximilian, of Austria, took the throne as emperor of that country. His government was, however, soon overturned, and he himself was shot by the insurgent general (1867).

92. The preservation of the Papal power in Italy from the attacks of Garibaldi and his republican associates,

---

90. In what way did Louis Napoleon become emperor of France? What title did he assume? Why? What is called the *coup d'état?*

91. What were the chief events of Napoleon III.'s reign?

92. What else is remarked of his policy? What progress has been made by France during his reign?

was a striking feature of the Emperor's policy, which in its general character was strongly on the side of absolutism as opposed to the spread of liberal principles and the establishment of democratic governments. Under his sway, France, though kept under severe restraint by the imperial power, made great and rapid strides in every department of national well-being; and her internal improvements and progress in commerce and manufactures, were unsurpassed by those of any of the great nations of the civilized world.

93. In 1870, war was declared by France against Germany; and the French armies, under Marshals McMahon and Bazaine, marched to the Rhine. But the States of the North German Confederation, as well as the South German States, with perfect unanimity, joined all their forces under King William of Prussia, to repel the invaders; and immense armies, splendid in discipline and equipment, were promptly concentrated near the east bank of the Rhine, under the Prussian monarch, aided by Von Moltke and other generals.

94. In the first conflicts, McMahon was defeated and driven into retreat; but he took up a strong position at Sedan. Here was fought a great and decisive battle, on the 1st of September; and the French, driven from their position and surrounded, were compelled to surrender. More than 80,000 men laid down their arms, and Napoleon himself became a prisoner. While a part of the German army marched on Paris, and invested that city, Bazaine was shut up in Metz, where, on the 21st of October, he surrendered his army of 173,000 men prisoners of war.

95. Paris held out until January 28, 1871, when it yielded, and was occupied by the German forces. Meanwhile, Napoleon being a prisoner, the French Republic had been declared, and Thiers was elected president. Soon

afterward an insurrection broke out in Paris, supported by the Commune, which lasted several months, during which the insurgents committed many acts of atrocity and violence. It was put down in May, 1871. On this, finding it impossible to reconcile the hostile factions, Thiers resigned in May, 1873; and Marshal McMahon was elected president in his stead. The death of Napoleon occurred in the commencement of that year (January 9).

96. During the same year, occurred also the trial of Marshal Bazaine (from October 6 to December 10), upon charges based on his surrender of the army at Metz. It resulted in his conviction, and he was sentenced to degradation from his rank as general, and death. But he was recommended to mercy by his judges, and President McMahon commuted the sentence of death to twenty years' seclusion. Numerous parties in France, opposed to the Republic, favor the re-establishment of the monarchy under the Count de Chambord, who represents the legitimate Bourbon succession; others, the placing of Louis Philippe, Count de Paris, and heir of the Orleans dynasty, on the throne.

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

1483. **Charles VIII.** Reigned 15 years.
1498. **Louis XII.**, *Duke of Orleans.* Reigned 17 years.
1508. League of Cambray.
1515. **Francis I.** Reigned 32 years.
1525. Battle of Pavia. Francis I. taken prisoner.
1547. **Henry II.** Reigned 12 years.
1559. **Francis II.** Reigned 17 months. Shortest reign in French history.
1560. **Charles IX.** Reigned 14 years.
1572. Massacre of St. Bartholomew's Day.
1574. **Henry III.** Reigned 15 years.
1589 **Henry IV.** Reigned 21 years.

1590. Battle of Ivry.
1598. Edict of Nantes published by Henry IV.
1610. **Louis XIII.** Reigned 33 years.
1624. Richelieu made minister to the king.
1628. Capitulation of Rochelle.
1642. Death of Richelieu.
1643. **Louis XIV.** Reigned 72 years. Longest reign on record.
1661. Death of Cardinal Mazarin.
1685. Revocation of the Edict of Nantes.
1715. **Louis XV.** Reigned 59 years.
1759. Battle of Minden.
1769. Conquest of Corsica. Birth of Napoleon Bonaparte.
1774. **Louis XVI.** Reigned 19 years.
1789. Commencement of the Great Revolution.
" Bastile stormed.
1793. Execution of Louis XVI. Marie Antoinette guillotined.
1794. Fall of Robespierre. End of the Reign of Terror.
1796. Napoleon in command of the Army of Italy.
1798. Battle of the Pyramids. Cairo taken by the French.
1799 Napoleon First Consul. 1800. Battle of Marengo.
1804. Napoleon Emperor of the French.
1805. Battle of Austerlitz.
1806. Battle of Jena.
1807. Battles of Eilau and Friedland. Peace of Westphalia.
1809. Battles of Eckmuhl, Aspern, and Wagram.
1810. Divorce of Josephine, and marriage of Napoleon and Maria Louisa.
1812. Invasion of Russia. Battles of Smolensk and Borodino.
1813. Battles of Lutzen, Dresden, and Leipsic.
1814. Paris taken by the allied armies. Abdication of Napoleon.
" **Louis XVIII.** Reigned 10 years.
1815. Battle of Waterloo. Final defeat of Napoleon.
1821. Death of Napoleon Bonaparte at St. Helena.
1824. **Charles X.** Reigned 6 years.
1830. Second French Revolution. Charles X. dethroned.
" **Louis Philippe.** Reigned 18 years.
1847. Conquest of Algeria.
1848. Third French Revolution. Louis Philippe dethroned.
" Louis Napoleon elected President.
1851. *Coup d'état* of Louis Napoleon.
1852. Louis Napoleon emperor, with the title of *Napoleon III.*
1859. Battles of Magenta and Solferino.
1870. Battle of Sedan, Napoleon a prisoner.
1871. French Republic under Thiers.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. By whom was Louis XI. succeeded on the throne of France?..... 285
2. State what you can of Charles and the events of his reign..... 285–286
3. By whom was Charles VIII. succeeded on the throne?..... 286
4. Name the most important events in the reign of Louis XII..... 286–287–288
5. By whom was Louis XII. succeeded on the throne?..... 288
6. Name the important events of the reign of Francis I..... 288–289–290
7. Who was the successor of Francis I. and what was his character?..... 290
8. Name the important events occurring during the reign of Henry II.... 290–291
9. Who was the successor of Henry II., and what was his character?..... 290–291
10. Name the principal events of the reign of Francis II..... 291–292
11. By whom was Francis II. succeeded as king of France?..... 292
12. What were the principal events of the reign of Charles IX.?..... 292–293–294
13. Give an account of the Huguenot struggle..... 292–293–294–295–296–297–248
14. Who was Henry III. of France, and what his character?..... 294
15. Name the important events of the reign of Henry III..... 294
16. Who was Henry IV. of France, and what was his character?..... 294–296
17. Name the principal events of the reign of Henry IV..... 295–296
18. By whom was Henry IV. succeeded on the throne?..... 296
19. Give an account of Richelieu, his character, acts, and death..... 297–298
20. Who was Louis XIV., and what was his character?..... 298–299–301
21. Name the important events of the reign of Louis XIV.....298—302
22. Who was Louis XV., and what was his character?..... 302–303
23. What were the principal events in his reign?..... 302–303
24. Who was Louis XVI., and what was his character?..... 303
25. Relate the events which led to the French Revolution..... 304
26. State, in detail, the causes of the rebellion..... 305
27. Relate the events to the time of the execution of the king..... 305–306–307–308
28. Give an account of the Reign of Terror..... 308–309
29. Of further events to the establishment of the Cisalpine Republic..... 309
30. Of the two expeditions against Egypt..... 309–310
31. Of further events till Bonaparte was declared emperor..... 310–311
32. Of subsequent events to the fourth coalition..... 311–312
33. Of further events to the beginning of the "Peninsular War"..... 312–313
34. To the retirement of Bonaparte to the Island of Elba..... 313–314–315–316
35. Of further events to the death of Bonaparte..... 316–317
36. Who was Louis XVIII., and what were the events of his reign?.... 316–317–318
37. Who was Charles X., and what were the events of his reign?..... 318
38. Who was Louis Philippe? and give his early history..... 318–319
39. Give an account of his reign, flight from France, and death..... 319
40. What events followed the flight of Louis Philippe?..... 319–320
41. Who is Louis Napoleon? and give his early history..... 320
42. Describe the steps by which he became emperor of France. 320–321
43. Give the cause and particulars of the Russian War..... 278–279–321
44. How many of the kings of France were named Louis?..... 323
45. State, as far as you can, who each one was.....145—323
46. How many of the kings of France were named Charles?..... 323
47. State, as far as you can, who each one was.....144—323
48. How many of the kings of France were named Henry?..... 322
49. State, as far as you can, who each one was..... 189–290–294–295
50. Which of the kings of France were executed?..... 142—323

NOTES.

1. Defeat of Francis I. at Pavia (p. 289, ¶ 9).—"The rout became universal; and resistance ceased in almost every part, but where the king was in person, who fought now not for fame or victory, but for safety. Though wounded in several places, and thrown from his horse, which was killed under him, Francis defended himself on foot with an heroic courage. Many of his bravest officers gathering around him, and endeavoring to save his life at the expense of their own, fell at his feet. Among these was Bonnivet, the author of this great calamity, who alone died unlamented. The king, exhausted with fatigue, and scarcely capable of further resistance, was left almost alone, exposed to the fury of some Spanish soldiers, strangers to his rank, and enraged at his obstinacy. At that moment came up Pomperant, a French gentleman, who had entered together with Bourbon into the emperor's service, and placing himself by the side of the monarch against whom he had rebelled, assisted in protecting him from the violence of the soldiers; at the same time beseeching him to surrender to Bourbon, who was not far distant. Imminent as the danger was which now surrounded Francis, he rejected with indignation the thought of an action which would have afforded such matter of triumph to his traitorous subject, and calling for Lannoy, who happened likewise to be near at hand, gave up his sword to him, which he, kneeling to kiss the king's hand, received with profound respect; and taking his own sword from his side, presented it to him, saying, 'That it did not become so great a monarch to remain disarmed in the presence of one of the emperor's subjects.' Ten thousand men fell on this day, one of the most fatal France had ever seen. Among these were many noblemen of the highest distinction, who chose rather to perish than to turn their backs with dishonor. Not a few were taken prisoners, of whom the most illustrious was Henry d'Albret, the unfortunate King of Navarre. A small body of the rearguard made its escape, under the command of the Duke of Alençon. The feeble garrison of Milan, on the first news of the defeat, retired without being pursued, by another road; and in two weeks after the battle, not a Frenchman remained in Italy."—*Robertson's Charles the Fifth.*

2. Sack of Rome by the Imperialists (p. 289, ¶ 11).—"It is impossible to describe, or even to imagine, the misery and horror of the scenes which followed. Whatever a city taken by storm can dread from military rage unrestrained by discipline; whatever excesses the ferocity of the Germans, the avarice of the Spaniards, or the licentiousness of the Italians could commit, these the wretched inhabitants were obliged to suffer. Churches, palaces, and the houses of private persons, were plundered without distinction. No age, or character, or sex was exempt from injury. Cardinals, nobles, priests, matrons, virgins, were all the prey of soldiers, and at the mercy of men deaf to the voice of humanity. Nor did these outrages cease, as is usual in towns which are carried by assault, when the first fury of the storm was over, The imperialists kept possession of Rome several months; and, during all that time, the insolence and brutality of the soldiers hardly abated. Their booty in ready money alone amounted to a million of ducats; what they raised by ransoms and exactions far exceeded that sum. Rome, though taken several times by the northern nations, who overran the empire in the fifth and sixth centuries, was never treated with so much cruelty by the barbarous and heathen Huns, Vandals, or Goths, as now by the subjects of a Catholic monarch."—*Robertson.*

3. Battle of St. Quentin (p. 291, ¶ 16).—"A deadly blow was struck to the very heart of France. The fruits of all the victories of Francis and Henry

withered. The battle, with others which were to follow it, won by the same hand, were soon to compel the signature of the most disastrous treaty which had ever disgraced the history of France. The fame and power of the Constable faded —his misfortunes and captivity fell like a blight upon the ancient glory of the house of Montmorency—his enemies destroyed his influence and popularity—while the degradation of the kingdom was simultaneous with the downfall of his illustrious name. On the other hand, the exultation of Philip was as keen as his cold and stony nature would permit. The magnificent palace-convent of the Escurial, dedicated to the saint on whose festival the battle had been fought, and built in the shape of a gridiron, on which that martyr had suffered, was soon afterwards erected in pious commemoration of the event."—*Motley.—Rise of the Dutch Republic.*

4. France at the Death of Henry IV. (p. 296, ¶ 29).—"Though great advances were made in France during this reign, it was still far from that state of civilization which it attained a century afterwards. It contained about fifteen millions of inhabitants, and Paris about one hundred and fifty thousand. The nobles were numerous and powerful, and engrossed the wealth of the nation. The people were not exactly slaves, but were reduced to great dependence, were uneducated, degraded, and enjoyed but few political or social privileges. They were oppressed by the government, by the nobles, and by the clergy. The king was nearly absolute. The parliament was a judicial tribunal, which did not enact laws, but only registered the edicts of the king. Commerce and manufactures were extremely limited, and far from flourishing; and the arts were in an infant state. Architecture, the only art in which half-civilized nations have excelled, was the most advanced, and was displayed in the churches and royal palaces. Paris was crowded with uncomfortable houses, and the narrow streets were favorable to tumult as well as pestilence. Tapestry was the most common and the most expensive of the arts, and the hangings on a single room often reached a sum which would be equal, in these times, to one hundred thousand dollars. The floors of the palaces were spread with Turkey carpets. Chairs were used only in kings' palaces, and carriages were but just introduced, and were clumsy and awkward. Mules were chiefly used in traveling, the horses being reserved for war. Dress, especially of females, was gorgeous and extravagant; false hair, masks, trailed petticoats, and cork heels ten inches high, were some of the peculiarities. The French, then, as now, were fond of the pleasures of the table, and the hour for dinner was eleven o'clock. Morals were extremely low, and gaming was a universal passion, in which Henry IV. extravagantly indulged."—*Lord's Modern History.*

5. Effect of Marlborough's Victories (p. 301, ¶ 42).—"The victories of Malplaquet, Ramilies, and Blenheim, broke the military power of France; and it was only by a change of ministry in England, brought about by the agency of Abigail Masham, Queen Anne's waiting-woman, that Marlborough's apparition upon the heights of Montmartre was prevented. Louis obtained a peace much more favorable to France than her ruler had a right to expect; but the false glitter of his reign was effaced, and, as the phantasm of glory faded from before the eyes of the French people, they awoke to a sense of the incalculable evils of a reign which, having endured seventy-two years, left the country, after all its prodigious expenditure of blood and treasure, in debt to the then almost fabulous amount of £140,000,000 sterling. Louis XIV., once so idolized, expired amidst the scarcely suppressed murmurs and execrations of his subjects, bequeathing an inheritance of danger and difficulty to his successor, which nothing but the wisest fore-

hought, the most consummate prudence, could hope to dissipate or overcome."—*Chambers.—The Bourbon Family.*

6. Death of Louis XIV. (p. 302, ¶ 43).—"At eight o'clock on the following morning, Louis XIV. expired. As he exhaled his last sigh, a man was seen to approach a window of the State apartment which opened on the great balcony, and throw it suddenly back. It was the captain of the body-guard, who had no sooner attracted the attention of the populace, by whom the courtyard was thronged in expectation of the tidings which they knew could not be long delayed, than, raising his truncheon above his head, he broke it in the center, and throwing the pieces among the crowd, exclaimed, in a loud voice, 'The king is dead!' Then, seizing another staff from an attendant, without the pause of an instant, he flourished it in the air as he shouted, 'Long live the king!' And a multitudinous echo from the depths of the lately deserted apartment answered as buoyantly, 'Long live the king!'"—*Pardoe's Louis XIV.*

7. Marie Antoinette (p. 304, ¶ 47).—"Meanwhile the fair young Queen, in her halls of state, walks like a goddess of Beauty, the cynosure of all eyes; as yet mingles not with affairs; heeds not the future; least of all, dreads it. Weber and Campan have pictured her there within the royal tapestries, in bright boudoirs, baths, peignoirs, and the Grand and Little Toilet; with a whole brilliant world waiting obsequious on her glance: fair young daughter of Time, what things has Time in store for thee! Like Earth's brightest Appearance, she moves gracefully, environed with the grandeur of Earth: a reality, and yet a magic vision; for, behold shall not utter Darkness swallow it?"—*Carlyle's French Revolution.*

8. States-General of 1789 (p. 304, ¶ 49).—"No event ever interested Europe so much as the meeting of the States-General in 1789. There was no enlightened man who did not found the greatest hopes upon that public struggle of prejudices with the lights of the age, and who did not believe that a new moral and political world was about to issue from the chaos. The *besoin* of hope was so strong that all faults were pardoned, all misfortunes were represented only as accident; in spite of all the calamities which it induced, the balance leaned always towards the Constituent Assembly. It was the struggle of humanity with despotism. The States-General, six weeks after their convocation, was no longer the States-General, but the National Assembly. Its first calamity was to have owed its new title to a revolution; that is to say, to a vital change in its power, its essence, its name, and its means of authority. According to the Constitution the commons should have acted in conjunction with the nobles, the clergy, and the king. But the commons in the very outset, subjugated the nobles, the clergy, and the king. *It was in that that the Revolution consisted.*"—*Dumont's Recollections of Mirabeau.*

9. Robespierre (p. 308, ¶ 57).—"Maximilian Robespierre was born at Arras, of a poor family, honest and respectable; his father, who died in Germany, was of English origin. This may explain the shade of Puritanism in his character. The Bishop of Arras had defrayed the cost of his education. Young Maximilian had distinguished himself on leaving college, by a studious life and austere manners. Literature and the bar shared his time. The philosophy of Jean Jacques Rousseau had made a profound impression upon his understanding; that philosophy, falling upon an active imagination, had not remained a dead letter; it had become in him a leading principle, a faith, a fanaticism. Robespierre was the Luther of politics; and in obscurity he brooded over the confused thoughts of a renovation of the social world, and the religious world, as a dream which unavailingly beset his youth, when the Revolution came to offer him what destiny always offers to those who watch her progress—opportunity. He seized on it. He was named deputy

of the third estate in the States-General. Alone, perhaps, among all these men who opened at Versailles the first scene of this vast drama, he foresaw the termination; like the soul, whose seat in the human frame philosophers have not discovered, the thought of an entire people sometimes concentrates itself in the individual, the least known in the great mass."—*Lamartine.—History of the Girondists.*

10. Reign of Terror (p. 308, ¶ 58).—"Night and day the cars incessantly discharged victims into the prison; weeping mothers and trembling orphans were thrust in without mercy with the brave and the powerful; the young, the beautiful, the unfortunate, seemed in a peculiar manner the prey of the assassins. Nor were the means of evacuating the prisons augmented in a less fearful progression. Fifteen only were at first placed on the chariot, but their number was soon augmented to thirty, and gradually rose to eighty persons who daily were sent forth to the place of execution; when the fall of Robespierre put a stop to the murders, arrangements had been made for increasing it to one hundred and fifty. An immense aqueduct, to remove the gore, had been dug as far as the Place St. Antoine (*plahs sang ahntwahn*); and four men were daily employed in emptying the blood of the victims into that reservoir. It was at three in the afternoon when the melancholy procession set out from the Conciergerie; the troop passed slowly through vaulted passages of the prison, amid crowds of captives who gazed with insatiable avidity on the aspect of those about to undergo a fate which might so soon become their own. The higher orders, in general, behaved with firmness and serenity; silently they marched to death, with their eyes fixed on the heavens, lest their looks should betray their indignation. Numbers of the lower class piteously bewailed their fate, and called heaven and earth to witness their innocence."—*Alison. —History of Europe.*

11. Robespierre and his Associates (p. 308, ¶ 58).— "This combination of wicked men had filled France with terror. By them opulent cities were overturned; the inhabitants of the communes decimated, the country impoverished by means of absurd and terrible regulations; agriculture, commerce, and the arts destroyed; the foundations of every species of property shaken; and all the youth of the kingdom driven to the frontiers, less to uphold the integrity of France than to protect themselves against the just vengeance which awaited them both within and without. All bowed the neck before this gigantic assemblage of wickedness; virtue resigned itself to death or dishonor. There was no medium between falling the victims of such atrocities or taking a part in them. A universal disquietude, a permanent anxiety settled over the realm of France; energy appeared only in the extremity of resignation: it was evident that every Frenchman preferred death to the effort of resistance, and that the nation would submit to this horrid yoke as long as it pleased the Jacobins to keep on."—*Dumont.*

12. Execution of Robespierre (p. 309, ¶ 59).—"When Robespierre ascended the fatal car, his head was enveloped in a bloody cloth, his color was livid, and his eyes sunk. When the procession came opposite his house, it stopped, and a group of women danced round the bier of him whose chariot-wheels they would have dragged the day before over a thousand victims. Robespierre mounted the scaffold last, and the moment his head fell, the applause was tremendous. In some cases the event was announced to the prisoners by the waving of handkerchiefs from the tops of houses."—*Hazlitt.*

13. Napoleon at Lodi (p. 309, ¶ 60).—"This battle, which he used to call 'The terrible passage of the bridge of Lodi,' carried his fame to the highest pitch, while the great personal bravery he displayed in it endeared him to the troops. The men who cannot always appreciate military genius and science, know perfectly

well how to estimate courage, and they soon idolize a commander that shows himself ready to share in their greatest dangers. It was on this occasion that the soldiers gave Bonaparte the honorary and affectionate nick-name of 'the Little Corporal.' He was then slight in figure, and had almost an effeminate appearance. 'It was a strange sight,' says a French veteran, 'to see him on that day on foot on the bridge, under a *feu d'enfer*, and mixed up with our tall grenadiers—he looked like a little boy.'"—*Bourienne's Memoirs.*

14. Battle of the Pyramids (p. 309, ¶ 61).—On the 21st of July, the French army set itself in march before daybreak. It knew that it should soon come in sight of Cairo, and encounter the enemy. At dawn of day, it at last discovered on its left and on the other side of the river, the lofty minarets of that great capital, and on its right, in the desert, the gigantic Pyramids, gilded by the sun. At sight of these monuments, it halted, as if seized with curiosity and admiration. The face of Bonaparte beamed with enthusiasm. He began to gallop before the ranks of the soldiers, and pointing to the Pyramids, 'Consider,' he exclaimed, 'that from the summits of those Pyramids, forty centuries have their eyes fixed upon you!' They advanced at a quick step. They saw, as they advanced, the minarets of Cairo shooting up; they saw the Pyramids increase in height; they saw the swarming multitudes which guarded Embabeh; they saw the glistening arms of the ten thousand horsemen, resplendent with gold and steel, and forming an immense line. Bonaparte immediately made his dispositions, * * * He immediately gave the signal. Desaix, who formed the right, first set himself in march. Mourad Bey resolved to charge during the decisive movements of the French. He left two thousand Mamelukes to support Embabeh, and then rushed with the rest on the two squares upon the right. That of Desaix, having got among some palm-trees, was not yet formed, when the first horsemen came up to it; but it formed instantaneously, and was ready to receive the charge. It is an enormous mass that is composed of eight thousand horse, galloping all at once in a plain. They bore down with extraordinary impetuosity upon Desaix's division. Our brave soldiers, who had become as cool as they had formerly been fiery, waited for them calmly, and received them at the muzzle of their guns with a tremendous fire of musketry and grape. Checked by this fire, these innumerable horsemen hovered along the ranks, and galloped around the blazing citadel. Some of the bravest threw themselves on the bayonets, then, turning their horses, and backing them upon our infantry, they succeeded in making a breach, and thirty or forty penetrated to the very center of the square, where they expired at the feet of Desaix."—*Thiers—History of the French Revolution.*

15. Charge of the Mamelukes (p. 309, ¶ 61).—"Nothing in war was ever seen more desperate than the charge of the Mameluke cavalry. Failing to force their horses through the French squares, individuals were seen to wheel them round, and rein them back on the ranks, that they might disorder them by kicking. As they became frantic with despair, they hurled at the phalanxes which they could not break, their pistols, their poniards, and their carbines. Those who fell wounded to the ground dragged themselves on, to cut at the legs of the French with their crooked sabres. But their efforts were all in vain."—*Scott's Life of Napoleon.*

16. The Retreat of the French from Moscow (p. 375, ¶ 74).—"On the 6th of November, the Russian winter set in with unwonted severity. Cold fogs first rose from the surface of the ground, and obscured the heretofore unclouded face of the sun; a few flakes of snow next began to float in the atmosphere, and filled the army with dread; gradually the light of day declined, and a

thick, murky darkness overspread the firmament. The wind rose, and soon blew with frightful violence, howling through the forests, or sweeping over the plains with resistless fury. The snow fell in thick and continued showers, which soon covered the earth with an impenetrable clothing, confounding all objects together, and leaving the army to wander in the dark through an icy desert. Great numbers of the soldiers, in struggling to get forward, fell into hollows or ditches which were concealed by the treacherous surface, and perished miserably before the eyes of their comrades; others were swallowed up in the moving hills, which, like the sands of the desert, preceded the blast of death. To fall was certain destruction; the severity of the tempest speedily checked respiration; and the snow accumulating around the sufferer soon formed a little sepulcher for his remains. The road, and the fields in its vicinity, were rapidly strewed with these melancholy eminences; and the succeeding columns found the surface rough and almost impassable, for the multitude of these icy mounds that lay upon their route."—*Alison.—History of Europe.*

17. Character of Marshal Ney (p. 315, ¶ 74).—"The great characteristic of Marshal Ney was his impetuous courage, which gained for him, even among the giants of the era of Napoleon, the surname of the 'Bravest of the Brave.' This remarkable characteristic is thus described in the Memoirs published by his family: 'It is well known with what power and energy he could rouse the masses of the soldiers, and precipitate them upon the enemy. Vehement and impetuous when heading a charge, he was gifted with the most imperturbable *sang froid* when it became necessary to sustain its movements. Dazzled by the luster of that brilliant valor, many persons have imagined that it was the only illustrious quality which the Marshal possessed; but those who were nearer his person, and better acquainted with his character, will concede to him greater qualities than the enthusiasm which captivates and subjugates the soldier. Calm in the midst of a storm of grape-shot—imperturbable amid a shower of balls and shells, Ney seemed to be ignorant of danger; to have nothing to fear from death. This rashness, which twenty years of perils had not diminished, gave to his mind the liberty, the promptitude of judgment and execution, so necessary in the midst of the complicated movements of war. This quality astonished those who surrounded him, more even than the courage in action which is more or less felt by all who are habituated to the dangers of war."—*Alison's Miscellaneous Essays.*

18. Battle of Waterloo (p. 317, ¶ 79).—"Waterloo moreover is the strangest encounter in history. Napoleon and Wellington—they are not enemies, they are opposites. Never has God, who takes pleasure in antitheses, made a more striking contrast and a more extraordinary meeting. On one side, precision, foresight, geometry, prudence, retreat assured, reserves economized, obstinate composure, imperturbable method, strategy to profit by the ground, tactics to balance battalions, carnage drawn to the line, was directed, watch in hand, nothing left voluntarily to chance, ancient classic courage, absolute correctness; on the other, intuition, inspiration, a military marvel, a superhuman instinct; a flashing glance, a mysterious something which gazes like the eagle, and strikes like the thunderbolt, prodigious art in disdainful impetuosity, all the mysteries of a deep soul, intimacy with Destiny; river, plain, forest, hill, commanded and in some sort forced to obey, the despot going even so far as to tyrannize over the battle-field; faith in a star joined to strategic science, increasing it, but disturbing it. Wellington was the Barrême of war, Napoleon was its Michael Angelo; and this time genius was vanquished by calculation."—*Victor Hugo.*

SECTION III.

European States.

1. The history of the States of *Southern* and *Central Europe,* down to the latter part of the fifteenth century, has been given in connection with the history of the Middle Ages. The more northern states, having a later origin, have not as yet been treated of. A brief outline of the history of each of the European States is given in this section.

Germany,

From the Accession of Maximilian.

2. The reign of *Maximilian* (1493–1519) is noted for the commencement of the preaching of *Martin Luther* against the doctrines of the Church of Rome (1517). **Charles V.**, who succeeded Maximilian, his grandfather, was one of the greatest monarchs of ancient or modern times. He had become King of Spain by hereditary right, previous to his election as Emperor of Germany; and was, besides, ruler over Austria, the Netherlands, and Naples. His contests with Francis I. of France have been already sketched.

3. The other interesting events of his reign are his conflicts with the Turks, his defeat of the pirate *Bar-ba-ros'sa* at Tunis (1535), and his repeated contests with the Protestants. This name was first given to the followers of Luther at Spire, on account of their protest against the decree passed by the representatives of the Catholic States

1. What portion of the history is contained in this section?
2. For what is the reign of Maximilian noted? What is said of Charles V.?
3. What are the most interesting events of his reign? What is the origin of the name *Protestants?* What is said of the "Confession of Augsburg?" Of the "League of Smalcalde?" What was the effect of the latter? Where is Augsburg? (*Ans.* In Germany—Map, No. 7.) How was protestantism secured? What occurred in 1556?

(1529). At Augsburg they published their *Confession of Faith*, which was drawn up by *Me-lanc'thon* (1530), and signed by the Protestant princes. The latter, after the condemnation of the "Confession of Augsburg" by the Diet, formed, for their defence, the famous "League of Smal' cal-de." This firm stand on the part of the supporters of the new doctrines compelled Charles to relax the severity of his measures against them. Protestantism was secured by the efforts of *Maurice of Saxony*, resulting in the treaty of Passau (1552). Charles V. abdicated the throne in 1556, and was succeeded by his brother Ferdinand.

4. The next important event in the history of Germany is the "**Thirty Years' War**," which commenced in 1618, in Bohemia, on account of the attempt of the king (*Ferdinand*) to extinguish Protestantism within his dominions. During the progress of this outbreak in Bohemia, Ferdinand was elected Emperor of Germany; but the Bohemians chose *Frederic*, Elector-palatine, son-in-law of James I. of England. Frederic being defeated in the battle of Prague, was obliged to flee; and the Bohemians were punished without mercy (1620). This is considered the *first period* of the war.

5. Frederic's general, *Mans'feldt*, held out for a time against the imperial generals *Til'ly* and *Wal'len-stein;* and succeeded in gaining the assistance of *Christian IV.*, king of Denmark. The latter was defeated by Tilly; and Wallenstein invaded and took possession of nearly the whole of Denmark. A defeat sustained by Wallenstein at *Stralsund** afterward compelled the emperor to grant peace to Christian IV., on condition of his deserting the Protestant cause (1629). This ended the *second period* of the war.

6. The next year (1630), by the intrigues of Richelieu,

* *Stralsund* is a strongly fortified town of Prussia, on the Baltic Sea.

4. What led to the *Thirty Years' War?* Give an account of the *first period* of it.

5. Give an account of the *second period.*

Wallenstein, the greatest of the imperial generals, was dismissed; and *Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden*, was induced to enter the contest as the champion of the Protestant cause. With a small, but finely disciplined army, he invaded Germany, and passed triumphantly through the country, having defeated Tilly in a great battle near Leipsic (1631). Tilly being slain soon afterward, the emperor was obliged to recall Wallenstein, who by his skilful operations soon retrieved the imperial cause. In 1632, occurred the memorable battle of *Lutzen*, in which the Protestants triumphed, but with the loss of their great leader Gustavus (1632). Soon after this, *Wallenstein*, being accused of treason, was assassinated by the command of the emperor (1634). This ended the *third period* of the war.

7. Richelieu now directly took part in the struggle on the side of the Protestants, allying France with Sweden, Holland, and the Protestant states of Germany against his implacable foe, the House of Austria. During the remainder of the war, the imperial cause declined, through the influence of Richelieu's masterly diplomacy and energetic military operations. The Emperor Ferdinand II. died in 1637, and Richelieu, in 1642; but the war lingered on six years longer. The peace of Westphalia established the religious independence of the Protestant states, made Holland and Switzerland free, increased the territories of France, and stripped the German empire of very much of its ancient power and splendor (1648).

8. The long reign of the emperor **Leopold I.** (1658–1705) was principally occupied in wars with the Turks and with France. The former, in 1683, penetrated to the heart of the empire, and laid siege to Vienna, from which Le'o-

6. What caused the intervention of Gustavus Adolphus? Give an account of the third period of this war.

7. What was the effect of Richelieu's intervention? How did the war end? What were the terms of the treaty of Westphalia? When was it made?

8. With what was the reign of Leopold I. occupied? What was done by the Turks? By whom were they defeated and expelled? In what other wars was Germany involved? What is said of Prince Eugene?

pold was compelled to flee. Through the courage and address of the celebrated Polish king, *John So'bi-es-ki*, the city was relieved, and the Turks were obliged to retreat to their own dominions. Germany was involved in the wars caused by the ambitious schemes of Louis XIV. of France; and several brilliant victories were gained in her interest by her illustrious general, Prince Eugene, who, as has been already stated, participated in the great battles fought during the War of the Spanish Succession, at Blenheim, Oudenarde, and Malplaquet.

9. Prince Eugene also gained several important victories over the Turks, of which the greatest were that of *Zenta*, in Hungary (1697); and that of *Bel-grade'* (1717), the latter resulting in an immense loss to the Turks, including the city itself, over which, as being the key of Hungary, very many severe conflicts had taken place between the Austrian and Ottoman forces. **Charles VI.**, who reigned from 1711 to 1740, was the last of the male line of the Hapsburgs; and his death was followed by disputes which led to the famous War of the Austrian Succession.

10. In this war, *Frederick the Great*, king of Prussia, joined the enemies of Maria Theresa, in their attempt to deprive her of her dominions; and the elector of Bavaria, assuming the imperial throne, under the title of Charles VII., and being assisted by France, advanced to Vienna, and compelled her to flee to Hungary. The Hungarians drew their swords enthusiastically in her favor, and Charles VII. was forced to retreat. The latter died in 1745; and Francis of Lorraine, Grand Duke of Tuscany, the husband of Maria Theresa, was elected emperor, under the title of **Francis I.**

11. The reign of Francis I. was distinguished by the

9. What victories over the Turks were gained by Prince Eugene? What is said of Belgrade? What line ended with Charles VI.? What war followed?

10. Give an account of the "War of the Austrian Succession." Who became emperor in 1745?

11. For what was the reign of Francis I. distinguished? What caused the "Seven Years' War?"

great "*Seven Years' War*," which broke out eight years after the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1756). Great Britain and France quarrelled about their colonial possessions in North America; Austria was eager to regain the territories which Frederick of Prussia had conquered during the previous war; and the Empress of Russia was desirous of curbing the pride and ambition of the Prussian monarch. Poland and Sweden joined Russia; and thus Frederick, whose only ally was Great Britain, had to contend against five great states.

12. The Prussian king was, however, the greatest general of his age; and the many splendid victories which he gained with his small but highly-disciplined army, illustrate, in a very striking manner, to what an extent the genius of a military commander can triumph over superior numbers. This war was closed by the Treaty of Paris, in 1763.

13. During the reign of Francis II. (1792–1835), occurred the great wars with Napoleon, the result of which was, that the Empire was dissolved in 1806, after an existence of more than a thousand years. Most of the states were formed into the "Confederation of the Rhine;" and Austria became an hereditary empire, over which Francis continued to rule until his death in 1835.

14. After the defeat of Napoleon at Leipsic, in 1814, the Confederation of the Rhine was dissolved; and, in 1815, the Congress of Vienna formed the "Germanic Confederation," consisting of 39 states, of which the central assembly, or Diet, held its sessions at Frankfort on the Mayne (*mine*). Subsequently, the peace of Germany was much disturbed by the repeated contests of Austria and Prussia for supremacy in the affairs of the Confederacy. During the revolutionary period of 1848–9, the King of Prussia,

12. What was accomplished by Frederick the Great?
13. What distinguished the reign of Francis II.? What took place in 1806?
14. What change occurred in the constitution of Germany in 1814 and 1815? How was the quiet of Germany disturbed? What occurred in 1849?

whose policy had been to give greater unity to Germany, obtained, by a vote of half the states, the title of *Emperor of the Germans;* but to this the other states would not consent.

15. The "Six Weeks' War" of 1866 gave to Prussia that leading control in Germany for which she had so long contended. In June of that year, war was declared against Austria by Prussia and Italy; by the latter, to obtain possession of the Venetian territories. The Italians were defeated; but the Prussians, under the command of their king (*William I.*), invaded Bohemia, and in the battle of *Sad'o-wa*, defeated with great loss the Austrians, under Marshal *Benedek*. By the treaty which soon followed, Austria was excluded from the Germanic Confederation; and Prussia, after incorporating with her own dominions some of the states, formed of those north of the Mayne, with herself, the *North German Confederation.* After the German-French war of 1870, a union of all the states, north and south, was formed; and in January, 1871, the German Empire was re-established, with King William at its head.

16. Austria.—Austria, after its organization as a separate empire in 1806, continued to be involved in the great conflict with Napoleon, in which she suffered terrible disasters. The great defeat at Wagram left her powerless; and the Emperor Francis was obliged to submit to the humiliation of accepting the victorious Corsican as his son-in-law (1810). Since the settlement of affairs by the Congress of Vienna, the most noted events in the history of the Austrian empire have been the unsuccessful revolt of Hungary, in which *Kossuth* (*kos-shoot'*) took so distinguished a part (1849), and the wars waged with Prussia and Italy. Since then, concessions have been made to Hungary, and enlarged rights of representation granted. The present title of the united nation is the *Austro-Hungarian Monarchy* (1874).

15. Give an account of the "Six Weeks' War"? Subsequent history?
16. Give a sketch of the history of Austria since 1806.

Prussia.

17. *Prussia* derives its name from the *Bo-rus'si*, a fierce and warlike tribe of the Slavonic race, who early settled on the lands bordering on the Baltic Sea. In the first part of the eleventh century they were partially subdued by *Boles'las*, king of Poland; but, for more than two centuries, they resisted every effort made to convert them to Christianity. This was finally established among them by means of the crusade carried on against them by the *Knights of the Teutonic Order*,* during more than fifty years. The country remained under the government of the Knights for about two centuries, when it became partly dependent upon the great kingdom of Poland (1462).

18. The *Duchy of Bran'den-burg*, a part of these Prussian territories, became, in 1640, the nucleus of the present kingdom of Prussia, through the efforts of *Frederick William*, styled the *Great Elector*. From Poland he obtained a recognition of his claim to the Duchy of Prussia, which had been hitherto possessed by that kingdom. He particularly distinguished himself for his successful wars against the Swedes, whom, in 1679, he entirely expelled from the country. He was also noted for his strenuous efforts in the cause of the Protestants; for which he received letters of congratulation and thanks from Oliver Cromwell. When the Edict of Nantes was revoked by Louis XIV., many of the exiled Huguenots found a refuge in the dominions of the Great Elector.

19. Prussia became a kingdom in 1701, the last Elector,

* The order of Teutonic Knights was founded during the Crusades. Their first seat was at Acre; but, after the destruction of the kingdom of Jerusalem, they removed to the banks of the Vistula, and succeeded finally in establishing a sovereignty, which had the control of nearly three millions of people.

17. What is the origin of the name *Prussia?* Give an account of the Borussi. How was Christianity established? Who were the Teutonic Knights? (*See note.*) Into whose control did the country pass, and when?

18. What was the nucleus of the kingdom of Prussia? Who was called the Great Elector? What is related of him?

19. How and when did Prussia become a kingdom? What is said of Frederick William I.?

Frederick III., having been acknowledged king by the emperor of Germany, on condition that he should aid the cause of Austria in the War of the Spanish Succession. His troops gained great distinction by their valor in the battle of Blenheim. He was succeeded by *Frederick William I.*, in 1713, noted for his harsh and eccentric character, his fondness for tall soldiers, and his savage treatment of his son, who succeeded him as *Frederick the Great* (1740).

20. Under the latter, Prussia became one of the greatest military powers in Europe, partly through the magnificent army which had been collected by Frederick William I., and disciplined to the highest degree of efficiency. The achievements of Frederick the Great in the Seven Years' War, have already been referred to. The details of this remarkable struggle present one of the most interesting chapters in history. In 1772, the Prussian territories were greatly enlarged by the *first partition of Poland.* Frederick gave considerable attention to the internal improvement of his kingdom, encouraging agriculture, manufactures, and commerce. He was passionately fond of literature, was an intimate friend and associate of *Voltaire*, and acquired himself some distinction as an author. He died in 1786, at the age of 75.

21. The wars with Napoleon occurred during the reign of Frederick William III. In these, Prussia suffered the terrible overthrow of Jena (1806), but redeemed her honor through the achievements of *Blucher* (*bloo'ker*), to whose skill, courage, and promptitude the great victories of Leipsic and Waterloo were partly due. Blucher's hatred of Napoleon and the French was intense; and, had he not been overruled by the other generals, Paris, in 1814, would have been given up to be pillaged by the soldiers.

---

20. What is said of the reign of Frederick the Great? Of the "Seven Years' War?" How was Prussia enlarged in 1772? What is said of Frederick? When did he die?

21. During whose reign did the wars with Napoleon occur? How was her defeat at Jena retrieved? What is related of Blucher?

22. By the Congress of Vienna the Prussian territories were much enlarged; and during the subsequent part of the reign of Frederick William, the condition of Prussia was greatly improved. The commercial league among the states, called the *Zoll-ver-ēin'*, has very considerably facilitated trade; and the establishment of common schools of a high order of excellence, has done much to enlighten the people and augment the real strength of the kingdom. Frederick William III. was succeeded in 1840 by his son, *Frederick William IV.*, who died in 1861. During the reign of his successor, *William I.*, the changes in the Prussian dominions occurred, which have been explained in connection with the history of Germany. The reconstruction of the Empire of Germany, with King William as Emperor, has made him one of the great potentates of the world.

Poland.

23. *Poland* was erected into a kingdom, and became an extensive and powerful monarchy, during the Middle Ages. In the latter part of the fourteenth century occurred its first union with Lith-u-a'ni-a, a large district extending to the Nĕ'men and Dnie'per rivers. Soon after this, successful wars were waged with the Teutonic Knights, which resulted in uniting the Prussian provinces with Poland (1462). During the reign of *Sigismund I.* (1506–1548), a war was carried on with the Russians, who thus acquired Smolensk. Through the wise and beneficent measures of this sovereign, Poland was much improved, and reached a very high degree of greatness and splendor.

24. In the next reign (*Sigismund II.*), occurred the final union of Poland and Lithuania (1569); and the Protestant

22. What other events are mentioned in the reign of Frederick William III.? Who succeeded him? What occurred in the reign of William I.? How did these kings reign?

23. Give a sketch of the early history of Poland. By whom was the kingdom much improved?

24. When was Protestantism introduced? Who was the first elected monarch?

doctrines took a firm hold of the higher classes. At the close of this reign (1572), the monarchy was made elective; and the first king chosen was *Henry of Valois*, afterward Henry III. of France. This change in the constitution of the kingdom was very injurious to its interests, since it fomented faction and gave rise to repeated civil wars.

25. The next century was chiefly occupied in wars with the two great northern powers, Sweden and Russia. During the reign of *John Cas'i-mer* (1648–68), a Swedish army overran Poland, took War'saw and Cra'cōw, and compelled the king to flee. The Poles, however, made a vigorous effort to preserve their independence, and, having expelled the Swedes, restored their sovereign to his throne.

26. The reign of *John Sobieski* is one of the most brilliant in Polish history. He was a great warrior, and saved his country from the *Cossacks* and the Turks. His defeat of the latter near Vienna, in 1683, has already been referred to. The constant dissensions and turbulence of the Polish nobles, however, frustrated all his efforts to improve and strengthen the kingdom, and prepared the way for its final dismemberment and ruin. The last king of Poland was *Stanislas Augustus*, during whose reign occurred the *first partition* (1772), by which Austria, Russia, and Prussia divided most of its dominions among themselves, leaving to the Polish king only a nominal authority over those remaining to him.

27. Twenty years later, the war with the Russians again broke out; but they were defeated by the Poles, under their renowned leader *Prince Po-ni-a-tow'ski*, in several engagements, notwithstanding which Stanislas submitted to the *second partition*, by which the Polish territories were still further diminished (1793). The next year, the

---

25. How was the next century occupied? What occurred during the reign of John Casimer?

26. What is said of John Sobieski? Who was the last king of Poland? Describe the *first partition*.

27. What events preceded the *second partition?* What was done in 1794?

Poles made an ineffectual effort to regain their lost liberties, under that noble and illustrious patriot *Thad'de-us Kos-ci-us'ko*, who had so generously lent his sword to the cause of American freedom, in the war of the Revolution.

28. At first victorious, the brave Poles were soon obliged to succumb to the overwhelming masses of the Russians, commanded by the fierce and relentless *Suwarrow;* and Kosciusko was wounded and made a prisoner (1794). Warsaw was soon after taken by storm; and the last relic of Polish independence was destroyed by the *third partition* (1795). Stanislas died a broken-hearted exile in St. Petersburg (1798). Kosciusko, kept for some time a captive at St. Petersburg, was afterward released; and for many years wandered in America, France, and Switzerland. In the last-named country he died, from the effects of a fall from his horse (1817).

29. The wars waged by Napoleon I. against the enemies of Poland excited new hopes in the people of regaining their independence; but these were destroyed by the Congress of Vienna, who gave some of the Polish territories to Prussia and Austria, and formed of the remainder the *Kingdom of Poland*, under the control of the Czar. After the unsuccessful insurrection of the Poles in 1830, this kingdom was incorporated with the Russian empire. Another, but still unsuccessful, insurrection against the Russian government, took place in 1862.

Holland and Belgium.

30. *Holland and Belgium*, called the *Netherlands*, or *Low Countries*, constituted, in 843, a part of Germany. For several centuries, it was under the rule of petty princes; and afterward constituted a part of the Duchy of

28. What led to the *third partition?* What is related of Stanislas and Kosciusko?

29. When and how was the kingdom of Poland formed? What occurred in 1830 and 1862?

30. Give a sketch of the early history of Holland and Belgium.

Burgundy. Several of its cities, as *Ghent, Ant'werp, Brussels,* and *Mech'lin,* grew strong and rich by their trade and manufactures. The death of *Charles the Bold,* and the marriage of his daughter, Mary of Burgundy, with Maximilian, brought the Netherlands, for a time, under the sway of Austria (1477); but they subsequently passed, by inheritance, to the emperor Charles V., who was the grandson of Mary of Burgundy.

31. The historical importance of these states commences in the reign of Philip II. of Spain, the son and successor of Charles, through the resistance made by their spirited inhabitants to the tyranny and intolerance of that bigoted monarch. Under their great leader, *William of Orange,* surnamed the "Silent," the *Seven United Provinces* successfully revolted against the cruelties of the *Duke of Alva,* viceroy of Philip, and achieved their independence, William becoming the first Stadtholder (1579). This illustrious personage was assassinated in 1584, but the United Provinces were presided over by the Princes of Orange till the French Revolution. The other provinces (Belgium) continued to belong to Spain, till they were transferred to Austria (1713).

32. The Dutch Republic became, a short time after its independence, the most formidable maritime power in the world. The part taken by it in the great European wars, and its successive contests with Great Britain, have already been related. During the French Revolution, the National Convention having declared war against Holland, the country was overrun by the French armies; and the anti-Orange faction excited a popular insurrection which expelled *William V.,* the last of the Stadtholders, and led to the establishment of the *Batavian Republic,* under the

31. When and how does the historical importance of the Netherlands commence? How was the independence of the Seven Provinces secured? What is said of William the Silent? How long did the Princes of Orange preside over the country? To whom did Belgium belong?

32. What did the Dutch Republic become? What happened during the French Revolution?

protection and control of the French (1795). Belgium was made a part of France.

33. Napoleon Bonaparte made his brother *Louis* king of Holland, but afterward dethroned him, and annexed the country to France. After the fall of Napoleon, the Congress of Vienna reunited Holland and Belgium, and thus formed the *Kingdom of the Netherlands*, which was placed under one of the Orange family, with the title of *William I.* This union lasted till 1830, when Belgium successfully revolted, and became a separate kingdom, *Leopold*, a German prince, being placed upon the throne. In 1865, he was succeeded by Leopold II. Holland is now (1869) ruled by William III., who ascended the throne in 1849.

Sweden, Norway, and Denmark.

34. These three countries were in the Middle Ages inhabited by a Scandinavian people, the descendants of the Goths and other barbarous races. Each was governed by its own princes till the beginning of the 14th century, when Norway was united with Sweden. The three countries were formed into one kingdom, under the rule of *Margaret*, Queen of Denmark, in the latter part of the same century (1397). This union, however, was neither effectual nor permanent; but the kings of Denmark continued to claim and exercise some sway over these countries till 1523, when Sweden was freed from the tyranny of *Christian II.* of Denmark, by the patriotic exertions of the renowned *Gustavus Vasa.*

35. Sweden.—This illustrious man was afterward elected king of Sweden, and, by his wise and beneficent measures, established the prosperity of the kingdom, and gave to this semi-barbarous state an honorable place among

33. What disposition was made of Holland by Napoleon? By the Congress of Vienna? What other changes occurred in Holland and Belgium?

34. Give the history of Sweden, Norway, and Denmark to the time of Gustavus Vasa.

35. What is related of Gustavus Vasa? Of Gustavus Adolphus? Of Oxenstiern?

the civilized monarchies of Europe. His reign of thirty-seven years (1523–1560) was also signalized by the establishment of Protestantism. The next important reign was that of the celebrated *Gustavus Adolphus*, the hero of Lutzen. His death, in 1632, would have been an irreparable disaster to his country but for the virtues and talents of his minister *Ox'en-stiern* (*-stern*), who administered the government during the minority of *Chris-ti'na*, daughter of Gustavus.

36. *Charles XI.*, during his long reign (1660–1697), succeeded in enlarging the Swedish territories, and obtained from the Diet a decree giving to him absolute power. His reign was exceedingly prosperous, and the internal condition of the kingdom was much improved. *Charles XII.*, called sometimes the "*Madman of the North*," succeeded. His passion for conquest and military glory plunged his country in many miseries and misfortunes. A coalition formed against him by Denmark, Poland, and Russia, led to the *Northern War*, in which Charles gained several brilliant victories over the Danes and Russians; and having succeeded in dethroning the king of Poland, placed in his stead *Stanislas* (1704).

37. The celebrated contest with *Peter the Great* followed; and Charles invaded Russia with a large army, which, after suffering the most dreadful hardships from cold and hunger, was finally defeated at *Pol-ta'va* (1709). Charles took refuge in Turkey, and succeeded in persuading the Turkish emperor to declare war against Russia; but he afterward quarrelled with the emperor, and was compelled, after remaining more than five years in Turkey, to flee. He returned to Sweden in 1714, and still continued to carry out his ambitious designs till his death, which occurred during the siege of a town in Norway (1718).

36. What is said of the reign of Charles XI.? What was the character of Charles XII.? What led to the Northern War? What was accomplished in it by Charles XII.?

37. What other events occurred during his reign? When did it end?

38. The vacillating policy of *Gustavus IV.*, during the Napoleonic wars, led to the loss of Bothnia and Finland; and, in 1809, he was obliged to abdicate in favor of his uncle, *Charles XIII.* This king being without heirs, *Berna-dotte'*, one of Napoleon's marshals, was raised to the rank of Crown Prince (1810), and became virtually the king. With the title of *Charles XIV.* he formally ascended the throne of Norway and Sweden in 1818, the two countries having been united by the Congress of Vienna. His reign, which was characterized by vigor and moderation, lasted until 1844, when he was succeeded by his son *Oscar*, who ruled till 1859, when he was succeeded by his grandson *Charles XV*, who died in 1872. The reigning monarch is *Oscar II.* the brother of Charles (1874).

39. Norway continued to be united with Denmark till 1814, when, by the treaty of *Kiel* (*keel*), the allied powers compelled the latter to resign her possession of Norway to Sweden. The union of the two countries was afterward confirmed by the Congress of Vienna. The people of Norway made some resistance to this arrangement; but the country being invaded by an army under Bernadotte, they were reduced to submission. The constitutional privileges of the nation have, however, been retained; and the condition of the country, under the Bernadotte dynasty, has been one of peace and prosperity.

40. Denmark.—After the separation of Sweden and Denmark (1523), the latter was governed by Frederick I., who introduced the Lutheran religion into his dominions. During the next reign, *Sles'wick* and *Hol'stein* were annexed to the Danish territories. Under *Christian IV.*, Denmark took an active part in the Thirty Years' War; but defeat and

38. What caused the loss of Bothnia and Finland? What led to the election of Bernadotte? Of what countries was he made king? What is said of his reign? Who succeeded him? Who is the reigning sovereign?

39. Give the history of Norway subsequent to 1814.

40. What events are related in the history of Denmark subsequent to the loss of Sweden?

disaster were the consequence, and Christian was obliged to submit to very humiliating conditions of peace (1629).

41. During the Napoleonic wars, Great Britain, claiming the right to search foreign vessels, took a Danish frigate that had made resistance. This led to a league with Russia, Prussia, and Sweden, against the naval power of Great Britain. Nelson, however, attacked and destroyed the Danish fleet in the harbor of Copenhagen, and thus paralyzed the power of the confederacy (1801). The British again destroyed the Danish fleet in 1807, in consequence of a threatened alliance with France. By the treaty of Vienna, Denmark received the Duchy of Lau'en-burg (1815).

42. In 1848, a revolt occurred in Sleswick and Holstein, to produce a separation of the Duchies from the Danish crown; but it was subdued, through assistance furnished by Austria. In 1864, Prussia, in alliance with Austria, compelled Denmark to give up these territories, and thus confined her sway to the peninsula and the adjacent islands. The marriage, in 1863, of the English Prince of Wales to *Alexandra*, daughter of the Danish king, *Christian IX.*, has a third time allied Denmark to Great Britain.

Russia.

43. The ancestors of the Russians were the Slaves, who, at an early period, formed settlements near the sources of the Dnieper, Dniester, and Don rivers, and the Baltic Sea. Of these, *Nov-go-rod'* and *Kief* (*ke-ef'*) were the chief. The size and influence of the former, while a member of the Hanseatic League in the 13th century, were so great, that it was called the "Mighty Novgorod." It was the metropolis of one of the most extensive of the Russian states, oc-

41. What events occurred during the Napoleonic wars?
42 What revolt happened in 1848? What caused the loss of the Duchies? What alliance has been formed with England?
43. Who were the ancestors of the Russians? Where did they settle? Which were their chief settlements? What is said of Novgorod?

cupying a vast tract stretching from the Baltic to the White Sea.

44. For several centuries Russia was overrun by the Mongols, from whom it was emancipated by *Ivan III.*, one of the greatest of its monarchs, who, during his reign of nearly half a century (1462–1505), did very much to improve and elevate the people. He had married a niece of Constantine Palæologus, and endeavored to introduce into his country the laws, institutions, and arts of civilization peculiar to the Greek empire. During this and the two succeeding reigns, the petty principalities were abolished, and Russia assumed the character of a consolidated empire (1584). A short time previous to this, the conquest of Siberia had been commenced; and, in 1661, *Ir-koutsk'* was founded.

45. Russia owes its greatness as a European power to the talents and energy of *Peter the Great*, who was one of the most extraordinary personages described in history. With an inflexible will, he was dismayed by no difficulty and appalled by no danger. With the spirit of an enlightened patriot, he resolved to introduce among his people the useful arts, the civilized customs, and the beneficent institutions which he saw prevailing in other countries of Europe. To accomplish this, he visited England, Holland, and other countries; and even engaged himself as a common mechanic, to obtain a knowledge of the arts which he desired to teach his people. In 1703, the capital was removed from Moscow to his new city, *St. Petersburg.*

46. Previous to this, the war with Charles XII. of Sweden broke out; and Peter was defeated with great loss in the battle of *Narva* (1700).* Profiting by this experience, the Russian monarch reorganized his army; and when Charles

* *Narva* is situated in the western part of Russia, near the Gulf of Finland.

44. By whom was Russia overrun? What is said of Ivan III.? What change took place in Russia? What conquest was made?
45. To whom does Russia owe its greatness? What is said of Peter the Great?
46. Describe his wars with Charles XII. What saved him from defeat by the Turks? When did Peter the Great die?

invaded Russia, in 1707, he was permitted to penetrate farther and farther into those dreary regions of frost and famine, till, with a small and half-famished remnant of his great army, he was surrounded at *Poltava*, and entirely defeated (1709). Two years later, Peter allowed the Russian army to be surrounded by the Turks near the Pruth (*proot*) river; and was saved from a terrible disaster by an artifice of the Empress Catharine, who bought off the vizier with her jewels. Peter the Great died in 1725.

47. *Catharine I.*, the widow of the great Czar, succeeded him, ruling for two years. She had originally been a peasant girl; but by her prudence, intelligence, and enterprise, she did much to facilitate the beneficent objects of her distinguished husband. Prince *Men'schi-koff*, the chief minister of Peter, had also risen from a very humble station. During the reign of *Elizabeth*, daughter of Peter the Great and Catharine, Russia became prominent among the nations of Europe, and took a distinguished part in the Seven Years' War (1740–48).

48. The profligate empress *Catharine II.* (1762–96) had the celebrated *Po-tem'kin* for her minister and favorite. Wars were waged with Turkey and Poland, and the Crimea was wrested from the former in 1784. The Turks were afterward severely defeated by the famous general *Suwarrow*, and compelled to submit to further loss of territory. This general also distinguished himself during the next reign (Paul) in the wars waged against Napoleon. Paul was assassinated in 1801, and was succeeded by Alexander I., who entered into the several coalitions formed against Napoleon. He died in 1825.

49. The reign of *Nicholas I.*, who was a stern despot, is

47. What is said of Catharine I.? Prince Menschikoff? The Empress Elizabeth?

48. What is related of the reign of Catharine II.? Of Suwarrow? Who succeeded Catharine II.? What ended the reign of Paul? Who succeeded him? What is said of the reign of Alexander I.?

49. What were the chief events of the reign of Nicholas I.? By whom was he succeeded? What took place in 1856?

noted for the insurrection in Poland (1830); and the cruel punishments inflicted upon the unfortunate Poles by the remorseless emperor. The crushing out of the Hungarian insurrection by the interference of Russia, and the Crimean war, were also events of this reign. Nicholas died while the latter was in progress, and was succeeded by the present emperor, Alexander II. (1855). The next year, the treaty of Paris was concluded, by which Russia was obliged to resign her pretensions to the Danubian principalities, and to the unrestricted navigation of the Black Sea.

50. Alexander's reign has, in many respects, been mild and beneficent. Many important reforms have been introduced into the empire, the greatest of which is the *abolition of serfdom*, by which fourteen millions of people have been released from bondage, and made free citizens. The emperor's severe measures against the Poles, after the insurrection of 1863–4, considerably modified the good opinion in which he had previously been held. During this reign, Russia has made considerable acquisitions of territory in Asia, the chief of which are the regions of the *Cau'ca-sus* (1859), the valley of the *A-mour' River*, and a large part of *Tur-kes-tan'* (1874).

Switzerland.

51. The chief events in the history of Switzerland, after the establishment of its independence in 1499, were those connected with the changes in religion brought about by the celebrated Protestant preacher *Zwin'gle*, an associate of Luther and Melancthon. The Cantons were soon involved in a civil war on account of religious dissensions. Zurich, in 1523, adopted the opinions of Zwingle, and was followed by Berne, and other Cantons in the north; while

50. What is said of the reign of Alexander II.? What have been its chief events?

51. What is said of the history of Switzerland subsequent to 1499? Who was Ulric Zwingle? What involved the Cantons in civil war? What was the result? Who was Calvin? What is said of his doctrines?

the forest Cantons remained attached to the Church of Rome. In a battle fought in 1531, the latter were victorious, and Zwingle was slain. *Geneva* was the residence of *John Calvin,* one of the most distinguished of the Protestants; and from his preaching spread the doctrines which afterward characterized the Puritans of England, and the people of Scotland. The death of Calvin occurred in 1564.

52. The neutrality of Switzerland was preserved during the Thirty Years' War; and at its close, the peace of Westphalia secured the independence of the Confederacy, by acknowledging it as a separate state. At this period, the Swiss were among the best soldiers in Europe, and were employed in immense numbers by foreign states. In 1798, the French armies overran Switzerland; and, in 1802, Napoleon, as First Consul, annexed three of the Cantons to France, and constituted of the others a Confederation dependent upon it. The Congress of Vienna restored the Cantons, and re-established the republic, consisting of 22 Cantons (1815). The Constitution of 1848 vests the supreme power in a Federal Assembly consisting of two houses, whose place of meeting is at *Berne.*

Italy.

53. Italy continued to be divided into a number of small states until a very recent period. Among these, the *Duchy of Sa-voy'* became, in the latter period of the Middle Ages, a power of considerable importance. During the wars of Louis XIV. of France, it took sides with the allies, and was rewarded, by the treaty of Utrecht, with the island of Sicily and other territories. The *Kingdom of Sardinia* originated in a treaty made between Savoy and Austria (1720), by which Sicily was exchanged for the island of Sardinia, and

52. What followed the peace of Westphalia? What is said of the Swiss soldiers? What changes have occurred since, in the government of Switzerland?
53. What is said of Italy in the Middle Ages? What is said of Savoy? Of the kingdom of Sardinia?

the Duke of Savoy was acknowledged king. By Napoleon it was stripped of much of its territory, which was restored by the Congress of Vienna, who also annexed to it the ancient republic of Genoa.

54. *Charles Albert* was a vigorous and enterprising monarch; and during his reign (1831–49) many reforms were introduced into the government, in compliance with the demands for a more liberal policy, by the people. At the revolutionary period of 1848, the king announced a new constitution, which was hailed with much satisfaction. An insurrection of the Austrian states of Italy broke out, and the king placed himself at the head of the Italian forces. Being disastrously defeated, he was compelled to abdicate in favor of his son, *Victor Emanuel* (1849).

55. During the reign of the latter, many changes have taken place in Italy. *Joseph Gar-i-bal'di*, called by some, from the simplicity of his dress, the "Hero of the Red Shirt," landing in Sicily, proclaimed himself Dictator for Victor Emanuel. Having stormed Palermo, and defeated the troops of the King of Naples, he invaded the mainland, and, continuing in his victorious career, compelled the king (Francis II., nicknamed *Bombino*) to flee (1860).

56. Victor Emanuel afterward entered Naples, and was acknowledged king. Lombardy had been wrested the year before from Austria, through the aid of the French emperor, Napoleon III., who gained the splendid victories of *Magenta* and *Solferino* over the Austrian forces. As a result of the successful insurrection of 1860, the states of Italy, except Venetia and a small part of the Papal territories, were consolidated into the **Kingdom of Italy**, under the rule of Victor Emanuel. After the Six Weeks' War of 1867, Venetia was also surrendered by Austria, and annexed to

---

54. What account is given of Charles Albert? Who succeeded him?
55. What is said of the insurrection under Garibaldi?
56. Who was acknowledged king of Naples? How was Lombardy annexed to Italy? How was the kingdom of Italy formed? How was Venetia acquired? What is now the capital of Italy?

the Italian kingdom. Since then the Papal States have also been annexed, and Rome is now the capital of united Italy (1874).

Spain.

57. Charles V. of Germany, previous to his election as emperor, inherited the throne of Spain, being the grandson of Isabella of Castile. His reign, which commenced at the death of Ferdinand (1516), lasted forty years; but is chiefly occupied with the general affairs of Europe. *Cardinal Ximenes* (*he-ma'nes*), one of the most celebrated personages of his age, administered the government till 1517, with great vigor and ability. Charles was succeeded, on his abdication, by Philip II. (1556), who thus became one of the greatest potentates on earth, being ruler over Spain, the Netherlands, Sicily, Naples, and other parts of Italy, besides of such parts of the New World as had been added to the dominions of Spain by the discoveries of Columbus and his Spanish successors.

58. Philip's schemes were principally actuated by bigotry, and nearly all ended in utter failure; so that, at his death (1598), he left the country despoiled of some of its best possessions, impoverished by ruinous wars, and greatly lowered in the respect of foreign nations. His successor (*Philip III.*) still further weakened the kingdom by the expulsion of the Moors (1610), who had been permitted by Ferdinand to remain in the country, on condition of their accepting Christianity. This measure of Philip III., which was based on the charge of hypocrisy in the professed conversion of the Moors, deprived Spain of 500,000 of its most useful population.

59. The reign of *Philip IV.* (1621–65) was noted for the loss of Portugal, which had been annexed to Spain during the reign of Philip II. (1580). It now re-established its

57. What is said of Charles V. and his reign in Spain? Who was Cardinal Ximenes? What is said of Philip II.?

58. What was the character of Philip's schemes and their result? How was Spain weakened by Philip III.? What is said of this measure?

59. For what is the reign of Philip IV. noted? Charles II.? Philip V.?

independence as a separate kingdom under the *Duke of Bra-gan'za* (1640). Philip IV. made the most strenuous exertions to recover the lost province, and his failure is said to have partly occasioned his death. During the next reign (*Charles II.*, 1665–1700), Spain was left, by the imbecility of its government, a prey to the other nations of Europe, by whom it was despoiled of many of its best possessions. The placing of *Philip V.* upon the throne, by his grandfather, Louis XIV., led to the War of the Spanish Succession.

60. The attempts of the Emperor Napoleon I. to obtain control of Spain, occasioned the *Peninsular War*, the chief events of which have already been related. The conclusion of peace, in 1814, restored *Ferdinand VII.* to the throne, who dissolved the *Cortes*, or Parliament, and established an absolute rule. A revolution which broke out in 1820, compelled him to restore the free constitution formed in 1812, and placed him under restraint. Louis XVIII. of France, however, sending an army into Spain, released him, and restored his authority.

61. *Isabella* succeeded her father in 1833, but was soon opposed by *Don Carlos*, her uncle, who claimed the throne on the ground that Isabella was excluded by the Salic law. A war of four years followed, between the party who supported the government of the queen-dowager, Chris-ti'na, acting as regent for the young queen, and the adherents of Don Carlos. Great Britain finally sent an army in aid of Isabella; and Don Carlos, hopeless of success, fled to France. Isabella's rule gave great dissatisfaction, and several revolutionary movements have occurred, in the last of which, the queen was deprived of the throne (1868). A provisional government now exercises authority over the country; but a constituent Cortes has been elected, in which the monarchist party is largely in the ascendant (1869).

60. What caused the Peninsular War? What was done in 1814? In 1820?
61. Give an account of Isabella's reign. How did it end?

Portugal.

62. It was during the reign of *Manuel,* surnamed the *Great* (1495–1521), that Vasco da Gama made his successful voyage to India, by way of the Cape of Good Hope (1497). This was soon followed by the accidental discovery of Brazil, by *Cabral* (1500), thus giving that extensive and fertile region to the Portuguese. An unfortunate expedition of *Sebastian III.* to Morocco (1578), from which he never returned, left Portugal without a sovereign, and occasioned disorder and anarchy,—the people constantly looking for the return of their king, of whose fate no tidings were ever received.

63. Philip II. of Spain, taking advantage of these circumstances, seized upon the country (1580); and for sixty years it was held in subjection to the Spanish crown. During this period, it suffered much from the oppressive exactions of its conquerors, being obliged to share in the taxation occasioned by the long and expensive wars waged by the Spanish monarchs. At last, it was set free by a revolution; and *John IV., Duke of Braganza,* ascended the throne (1640). Long wars followed with Spain, which did not acknowledge its independence till 1668.

64. During the next century, Portugal remained in a state of inglorious stagnation, being steeped in ignorance and bigotry; and, after being one of the greatest maritime nations of the world, was content to become a kind of commercial dependent of Great Britain. Under the reign of *Joseph I.* (1750–77), the genius and enterprise of his great minister, *Don Carvalho* (*kar-val'yo*) infused a temporary vigor in the government; but this was checked by the accession of his daughter *Maria,* who permitted the nobles

62. What is said of the reign of Manuel of Portugal? How and by whom was Brazil discovered? What occasioned trouble and disorder?
63. To what did these troubles lead? How long was Portugal under Spanish rule? What was its character? How and when did it regain its freedom?
64. What is said of its history during the next century? Of the reign of Joseph I.?

and clergy to resume their destructive influence. Her insanity led to the appointment of her eldest son, *John VI.*, as regent (1792).

65. The invasion of Portugal by the French, under Marshal Junot, induced John to abandon Portugal and retire to Brazil (1807), where he remained until 1821; although, by the death of his mother, he had been acknowledged king in 1816. His return was occasioned by the breaking out of a revolution in Portugal, which had for its object the establishment of a government securing the rights of the people. John VI. accepted the new constitution, and acknowledged the independence of Brazil, the throne of the latter country being occupied by his son, *Don Pedro* (1825), with the title of Emperor.

66. On the death of John VI. (1826), his son Don Pedro, preferring the Brazilian throne, resigned that of Portugal in favor of his daughter, *Maria da Gloria;* but his brother, *Don Miguel* (*me'ghel*), who had previously opposed the reforms in the government, laid claim to the throne, and obtained an acknowledgement of his right by the Cortes (1828). This led to a dreadful condition of anarchy, which was terminated by Don Pedro, with the aid of the British; and Miguel being defeated, Maria obtained possession of the throne (1833). This and the subsequent reign were characterized by great national disasters. The present king, *Louis I.*, ascended the throne in 1861; and a better state of things now prevails.

Turkey. (*From* 1453 *to the present time.*)

67. *Mohammed II.*, the conqueror of Constantinople, greatly enlarged the Turkish territories; and his son, *Bajazet II.* (1481–1512), extended his dominions to the

65. What followed Junot's invasion of Portugal? When and why did John return from Brazil? What course did he adopt with respect to the new constitution? With respect to Brazil?

66. What followed the death of John VI.? Who laid claim to the throne? What was the result? What else is related of Portugal?

67. What is said of Mohammed II.? Bajazet II.? Selim I.? Soliman?

present limits of the Ottoman empire, adding besides a part of the region north of the Black Sea, and portions of Italy and Austria. His successor, *Selim I.*, a monarch of great enterprise and ability, made conquest of Syria and Egypt, and laid the foundation of the Turkish naval power, which so long disputed the empire of the Mediterranean with the fleets of Venice. The greatest power and splendor were, however, attained by the Ottoman empire during the reign of *Soliman*, surnamed *the Magnificent* (1520–66).

68. This great monarch reduced the powerful Danubian fortresses of Belgrade, wrested the island of Rhodes from its persevering and valiant defenders, the *Knights of St. John*, and, having subjugated Hungary, marched to Vienna, which he besieged for four years. He also carried on a successful war with the Shah (emperor) of Persia; and his fleets triumphantly swept the Mediterranean from the Strait of Gibraltar to the Levant. One of his last undertakings was an unsuccessful attack on the island of Malta, which the Emperor Charles V. had given to the Knights of St. John, after their expulsion from Rhodes.

69. During the reign of *Selim II.* (1566–74), the German emperor agreed to pay an annual tribute to the Turks for their surrender of Hungary. The attempt to take *Astrachan*,* preliminary to the construction of a canal between the Don and Volga rivers—a scheme projected by the Turkish emperor for commercial purposes—aroused the hostility of the Russians, a people until that time little known in Southern Europe. Thus were commenced those fierce wars, which for centuries have been waged by these neighboring empires. During the reign of Selim, the fleets of Turkey received a check by the great naval defeat

* A city of Russia, near the mouth of the Volga River.

68. What conquests were made by Soliman? Where was he defeated?
69. What events occurred during the reign of Selim II.?

sustained at *Lepanto*,* in an action fought with *Don John* of Austria (1571).

70. The subsequent reigns, for more than a century, present only a continuous series of contests with Austria, Poland, and Russia, in which the Ottoman power succeeded in extending its dominions from the Danube to the Tigris, and from the southern limits of Egypt to the falls of the Dnieper River. It sustained, however, several defeats, of which that at Vienna by the Poles under their king, John Sobieski, was the most memorable. The assistance given to Charles XII., after the battle of Poltava, involved the Turks in a war with Peter the Great, to whom it would have proved a great disaster, had he not been rescued by the skilful artifice of the Empress Catharine. A short time after this, the *Morea*† was taken from the Venetians (1714).

71. The remaining portion of the history of Turkey is characterized by its contests with Russia, which has proved its most formidable foe, despoiling it of many of its most valuable possessions. During a six-years' war (1768–74), the Russians overran the *Crimea*, which they succeeded in retaining, notwithstanding the most desperate efforts of the Turks to regain it. While Catharine II. of Russia was on the throne, the Turks were assailed by the combined power of Russia and Austria, the forces of the former being commanded by *Marshal Suwarrow*, the most famous of Russian generals, and particularly noted for his resolution and relentless ferocity,—qualities which he particularly displayed in his contests with the unfortunate Poles. Peace was concluded between Russia and Turkey in 1792.

* *Lepanto* is situated in Greece, on the north coast of the gulf of the same name.
† *Morea* is the modern name of the ancient Peloponnesus, in the southern part of Greece.

70. What do the subsequent reigns present? What defeats did Turkey sustain? What caused a war with Peter the Great? What is said of it? What conquest was made from the Venetians?

71. What is said of the contests of Turkey with Russia? When was the Crimea conquered? What war arose during the Empress Catharine's reign? What is said of Suwarrow? When was peace made?

72. The conquest of Egypt and the invasion of Syria by Napoleon have already been referred to. By the aid of the British, the lost territories were regained. One of the most interesting events since that time, is the successful insurrection of the Greeks, whose independence was secured by the battle of *Navarino* (1827). The wars waged with the rebellious Pacha of Egypt, *Mehemet Ali* (*ma'hemet ah'le*), still further reduced the strength of the empire. This contest was terminated in 1841, by the virtual surrender of Egypt to Mehemet Ali, he being made hereditary viceroy. His son, *Ibrahim Pacha* (*ib'rah-him pa-shaw'*), succeeded him in 1848.

73. Russia has repeatedly taken advantage of the present weakness of the Ottoman empire, to attempt its spoliation. In the Crimean war, Turkey was successfully aided by Great Britain and France, in opposing the schemes of conquest of the Emperor Nicholas; and, by the treaty of Paris, it regained a portion of territory north of the Danube, and was released from its ignoble subservience to the Russian empire. During the last few reigns, attempts have been made to introduce reforms in the government, and to advance the civilization of the people. The present emperor (*Ab'dul A'ziz*) ascended the throne in 1861, and has shown in his administration a liberal and energetic spirit.

Greece.

74. From the capture of Constantinople (1453) until a recent date, Greece was under the Mohammedan yoke, which was made galling and oppressive to the last degree by the brutal and fanatical Turks. In 1820, the Greeks determined to make a struggle for their independence; and *Mav-ro-cor-da'to* was proclaimed president. His most cel-

72. What other events are mentioned? When was Egypt surrendered?
73. What caused the Crimean War? What was its result? What is said of the recent reigns?
74. How long was Greece under the Mohammedan rule? What is said of it? What took place in 1820? What is related of Marco Bozzaris? For what is Missolonghi noted?

ebrated compeer in the dreadful contest that ensued, was *Marco Bozzaris* (*bot-sah'ris*),—called, sometimes, the "Leonidas of Modern Greece." This heroic chief perished in a night-attack upon the Turkish camp (1823), near *Missolonghi*, one of the chief centres of the insurrection. This place also derives a mournful interest from the death of Lord Byron, who died there of a fever, occasioned by his earnest efforts in behalf of Greece (1824).

75. The fall of this place, after a long siege, in which its brave defenders suffered the most dreadful hardships from famine, and which closed by their captivity, aroused the sympathy of Europe; and England, France, and Russia formed a league to assist the brave Greeks in their unequal contest. The combined fleets of the allies entirely destroyed the Turkish and Egyptian fleets in the harbor of Navarino (Oct. 20, 1827). After this victory, *Count Capo d'Istria*, a native of the island of Corfu, was formally installed as President of Greece. Its independence was acknowledged by the Turkish sultan in 1829.

76. Made a separate kingdom by the allied powers, its first king was *Otho*, a Bavarian prince (1832). His reign was somewhat troubled, by the discontent of his subjects with his German officials and foreign troops, and by Russian intrigues for the purpose of involving the little kingdom in the insurrections of the neighboring provinces against Turkey. Having abdicated in 1862, he was succeeded the following year by *Prince William of Denmark*, who now occupies the throne with the title of *George I., King of the Hellenes.**

* George I. is a brother of Alexandra, wife of the Prince of Wales, the heir-apparent to the British throne.

75. What excited the sympathy of Europe? Who were defeated at Navarino? Where is Navarino? (See Progressive Map, No. 7.) Who was made President of Greece? When was its independence acknowledged?

76. Who was the first king of Greece? What is said of his reign? By whom was he succeeded? When?

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

1397. Union of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden.
1462–1505. Reign of *Ivan III.*, Czar of Russia.
1493. Accession of Maximilian, Emperor of Germany
1500. Discovery of Brazil by the Portuguese navigator, *Cabral.*
1516. Accession of *Charles I.* of Spain (Charles V. of Germany).
1517. Commencement of **Martin Luther's** preaching.
1519. Accession of Charles V., Emperor of Germany.
1520. Accession of *Soliman the Magnificent.*
1523. Sweden freed from the yoke of Denmark by **Gustavus Vasa.**
1529. Lutherans called *Protestants* at Spire.
1530. Confession of Augsburg signed.
1531. Zwingle slain.
1552. Treaty of Passau.
1556. Accession of Philip II. of Spain.
1564. Death of John Calvin.
1569. Union of Poland and Lithuania.
1571. The Turkish fleet defeated at Lepanto by Don John of Austria.
1579. William the Silent, the first Stadtholder of Holland.
1580. Portugal annexed to Spain by Philip II.
1584. Assassination of William the Silent.
1598. Death of Philip II. of Spain.
1610. Expulsion of the Moors from Spain.
1618. Commencement of the **Thirty Years' War.**
1632. Battle of Lutzen. Death of Gustavus Adolphus.
1640. Portugal freed from the Spanish yoke. Accession of *John IV., Duke of Braganza.*
1648. Peace of Westphalia. End of the Thirty Years' War.
1661. Irkoutsk founded by the Russians.
1679. Defeat of the Swedes by William, the Great Elector.
1683. Defeat of the Turks by John Sobieski.
1697. The Turks defeated by Prince Eugene.
1700. Defeat of Peter the Great at *Narva* by Charles XII.
1703. The capital of Russia removed to *St. Petersburg.*
1709. Battle of *Poltava.* Defeat of Charles XII. by Peter the Great.
1714. The Morea conquered from the Venetians, by the Turks.
1717. The Turks defeated at Belgrade by Prince Eugene.
1718. Death of Charles XII. of Sweden.
1725. Death of Peter the Great.
1740. Accession of *Frederick the Great* of Prussia.

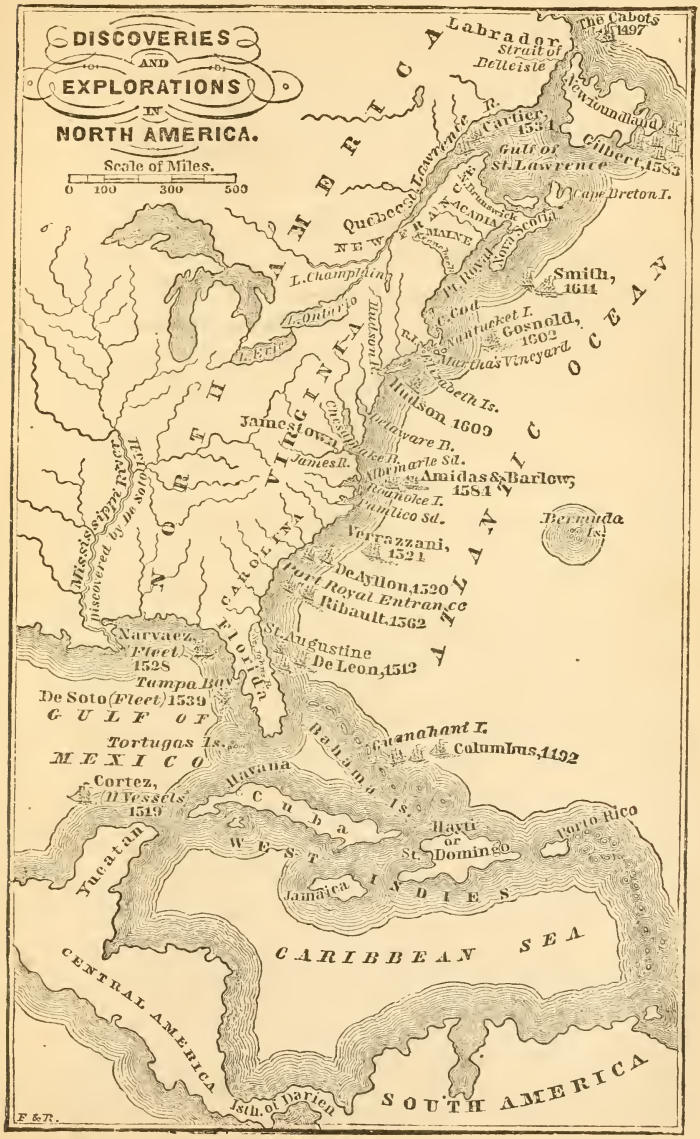
1745. Accession of Francis I., Emperor of Germany.
1756. Commencement of the Seven Years' War.
1772. First Partition of Poland.
1784. The Crimea ceded to Russia by the Turks.
1793. Second Partition of Poland.
1794. Kosciusko defeated and taken prisoner.
1795. Third Partition of Poland.
1801. The Danish fleet destroyed by Nelson at Copenhagen.
" Paul, emperor of Russia, assassinated.
1806. End of the Empire of Germany.
1807. Prince John, Regent of Portugal, flees to Brazil.
" Second bombardment of Copenhagen by the British.
1810. *Bernadotte* elected Crown Prince of Sweden.
1815. Switzerland made independent by the Congress of Vienna.
1823. Death of Marco Bozzaris.
1825. Brazil acknowledged an independent empire, under *Don Pedro*
1827. Battle of Navarino.
1829. The independence of Greece acknowledged.
1830. Polish insurrection.
" Belgium made an independent kingdom by a revolution.
1832. Accession of *Otho*, first king of Greece.
" Poland incorporated with the Russian empire.
1833. Accession of Isabella, Queen of Spain.
1841. Mehemet Ali made hereditary Viceroy of Egypt.
1848. Revolt of Hungary, under Kossuth.
1849. Accession of *Victor Emanuel*, king of Sardinia.
" Revolt of the Danish Duchies.
1855. Accession of *Alexander II.*, emperor of Russia.
" Fall of Sebastopol.
1859. The Caucasus conquered by the Russians.
" Campaign of Magenta and Solferino.
1860. Insurrection in Italy, under Garibaldi.
" "King Bomba" of Naples compelled to flee.
1862. Polish insurrection.
1863. New kingdom of Italy formed, under Victor Emanuel.
" Accession of George I., King of the Hellenes.
1866. The "Six Weeks' War." Battle of Sadowa.
1868 Revolution in Spain. Queen Isabella dethroned.
1870. German-French War. Battle of Sedan.
1871. German Empire re-established.
1873. Abdication of Amadeo I. Spain a Republic.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. State what you can in relation to Martin Luther....235-237-325-326
2. Give a sketch of the reign of Charles V. of Germany... 325-326
3. When did the battle of Lutzen take place, and with what result?..... 327
4. Give a statement of the causes and events which led to that battle ... 326-327
5. Describe the part which Richelieu took in the "Thirty Years' War".297-326-327
6. Give a connected account of the Thirty Years' War.....297-326-327
7. Name, in order, the principal events of the reign of Leopold I..... 327-328
8. Give an account of the War of the Austrian Succession.... .. 269-270-303-328
9. Give an account of the great "Seven Years' War"..... 270-303-329
10. Name important events of the reign of Francis II. 307-309-310-311-312-313-316-329
11. Give the history of the "Germanic Confederation"..... 329-330
12. Give the history of the "North German Confederation"..... 330
13. Of Austria, after its organization as a separate empire in 1806..... 330
14. Give a sketch of the history of Prussia up to the year 1462..... 331
15. Give the subsequent history of Prussia up to the year 1701.... 331
16. Give the further history of Prussia to the time of Frederick the Great. 331-332
17. Give the history of Prussia during the reign of Frederick the Great... 332-333
18. State all the facts you can in relation to Blucher... 315-316-317-332
19. Give a sketch of the recent history of Prussia..... 333
20 Give a sketch of the history of Poland to the reign of Sigismund II.... 333-334
21. Of subsequent events, to the reign of John Sobieski..... 333-334
22. Give the facts, as far as you can, in relation to Sobieski 328-334
23. What occurred in Poland during the reign of Stanislas Augustus?..... 334-335
24. Give the particulars of the further history of Poland..... 335
25. Give the history of the Netherlands, to the reign of Charles V..... .. 336-338
26. Give a sketch of the subsequent history of the Netherlands..... ... 336-337
27. Give a sketch of the early history of Sweden, Norway, and Denmark.. 337
28. Name the important facts in the history of Sweden..... 337-338-339
29. Name the important facts in the history of Norway..... 337-338-339
30. Give a sketch of the history of Denmark..... 337-338-339-340
31. Of Russia, to the reign of Peter the Great..... 340-341
32. Give the particulars, as far as you can, in the life of Peter the Great... 341-342
33. Of Charles XII. of Sweden..... 338-341-342
34. Of Catharine I. and Catharine II. of Russia..... 342
35. Of Nicholas I. of Russia 342-343
36. Of Alexander I. and Alexander II. of Russia..... 342-343
37. Give a sketch of the history of Switzerland..... 217-219-343-344
38. Of events in the modern history of Italy..... 344-345-346
39. Of events in the modern history of Spain..... 346-347
40. Give a sketch of the life of Philip II. of Spain.....239-291-336-346-348
41. Of events in the modern history of Portugal 348-349
42. Of events in the modern history of Turkey..... 351-352
43. Of events in the modern history of Greece.... 352-353
44. Name, in order, important events of the 15th century...185-203-228-281-322-354
45. The important events of the 16th century..... 281-322-323-354
46. The important events of the 17th century..... 281-282-323-354-355
47. The important events of the 18th century..... 282-283-323-354-355
48. The important events of the 19th century..... 283-323-355
49. Give the names, as far as you can, of all the European monarchs of modern times that have died of other than a natural death..... 231—353

A.D.	England.	France.	Other Countries.
1483		Charles VIII.	
1485	Henry VII.		
1493			Maximilian of Germany.
1498		Louis XII.	
1509	Henry VIII.		
1515		Francis I.	
1519			Charles V. of Germany.
1520			Soliman the Magnificent.
1547	Edward VI.	Henry II.	
1552			Treaty of Passau.
1553	Mary.		
1556			Philip II. of Spain.
1558	Elizabeth.		
1559		Francis II.	
1560		Charles IX.	
1571			Battle of Lepanto.
1572		St. Bartholomew's Massa.	
1574		Henry III.	
1579			William the Silent.
1589		Henry IV.	
1603	James I.		
1610		Louis XIII.	Moors expelled from Spain
1618			Thirty Years' War begins
1625	Charles I.		
1632			Battle of Lutzen.
1640			Portugal independent.
1643		Louis XIV.	
1648			Peace of Westphalia.
1653	Cromwell, Protector.		
1660	Charles II.		
1683			Sobieski defeats the Turks
1685	James II.		
1689	William and Mary.		
1700			Battle of Narva.
1702	Anne.		
1709			Battle of Poltava.
1714	George I.		
1715		Louis XV.	
1718			Death of Charles XII.
1727	George II.		
1740			Frederick the Great.
1760	George III.		
1774		Louis XVI.	
1789		French Revolution.	
1795			Third Partition of Poland
1799		Napoleon First Consul.	
1804		Napoleon Emperor.	
1806			End of German Empire.
1814		Louis XVIII.	
1820	George IV.		
1824		Charles X.	
1825			Brazil independent.
1827			Battle of Navarino.
1830	William IV.	Louis Philippe.	
1833			Isabella of Spain.
1837	Victoria.		
1848		Louis Philippe dethroned.	
1849			Victor Emanuel.
1852		Napoleon III.	
1855			Sebastopol taken.
1859			Battles of Magenta and Solferino.


DISCOVERIES
AND
EXPLORATIONS
IN
NORTH AMERICA.
Scale of Miles.
0 100 300 500
Labrador
The Cabots 1497
Strait of Belleisle
Newfoundland
Cartier, 1534
Gilbert, 1583
Gulf of St. Lawrence
Cape Breton I.
Quebec
NEW FRANCE
ACADIA
Nova Scotia
MAINE
Pt. Royal
Smith, 1614
L. Champlain
L. Ontario
Mississippi
C. Cod
Nantucket I.
Gosnold, 1602
Martha's Vineyard
Elizabeth Is.
Hudson 1609
Jamestown
James R.
Delaware B.
Albemarle Sd.
Amidas & Barlow, 1584
Roanoke I.
Pamlico Sd.
Bermuda Is.
Verrazzani, 1524
De Ayllon, 1520
Port Royal Entrance
Ribault, 1562
Narvaez, Fleet 1528
St. Augustine
De Leon, 1512
Florida
Tampa Bay
De Soto (Fleet) 1539
GULF OF MEXICO
Tortugas Is.
Guanahani I.
Columbus, 1492
Bahama Is.
Cortez, 11 Vessels 1519
Havana
Cuba
Hayti or St. Domingo
Porto Rico
Yucatan
WEST INDIES
Jamaica
CARIBBEAN SEA
CENTRAL AMERICA
Isth. of Darien
SOUTH AMERICA
F. & R.

SECTION IV.

American History.

Discoveries and Settlements.

1. America was discovered in 1492 by *Christopher Columbus,* a native of Genoa (*jen'o-a*), Italy. With a fleet of three vessels, supplied by Queen Isabella, he set sail from Spain, and, after a voyage of ten weeks, reached one of the Bahama islands, to which he gave the name of *San Salvador.* He also discovered other islands belonging to the group of the West Indies; and in another voyage he discovered the mainland, at the mouth of the O-ri-no'co (1498), in South America; but he was not aware that he had reached a new continent, supposing that the lands discovered belonged to Asia. [*See Note* 1, *end of Section.*]

2. The mainland of North America was first reached at Labrador, by John Cabot (*kab'bot*) and his son Sebastian, while sailing under a commission from Henry VII. of England (1497). The country was called *America,* from *Amerigo Vespucci* (*ah-ma-re'go ves-poot'che*), a Florentine navigator, who, in 1499 and 1501, visited the eastern coast of South America, and, on his return to Europe, gave an interesting account of his voyages, thus acquiring the reputation of being the first discoverer of the country.

3. Twenty years after Columbus's first voyage, *Ponce de Leon* (*pōn'tha da la-ōn'*), an aged Spaniard, accidentally

---

Map Questions.—(See Map, p. 358.) Where are the Bahama Islands? The West Indies? Where is Guanahani, or San Salvador? Labrador? Florida? Quebec? Acadia? Nova Scotia? New Brunswick? Port Royal Entrance? St. Augustine? Virginia? Cape Cod? Maine? Jamestown?

1. By whom and when was America discovered? Who was Columbus? What land was first discovered? What else did Columbus discover? What did he suppose these lands to be?

2 When and by whom was North America discovered? Why was the country called America?

3 What account is given of the discovery of Florida? Why was it so called? Give an account of the discovery and conquest of Mexico.

discovered *Florida*, which received its name from the abundance of flowers with which its forests were adorned (1512). Five years later, Cor'do-va discovered *Mexico*, and explored the coast of *Yu-ca-tan'*. Mexico was afterward conquered by another Spaniard named *Cor'tez*, and became a province of Spain (1521).

4. The belief being general among the Spaniards that Florida abounded in riches, *De Soto* (*da so'to*) landed on its shores in 1539, and penetrated into the interior. During his wanderings, which lasted nearly three years, he discovered the Mississippi (1541).* Meanwhile, the French had sent out *Verrazzani* (*ver-rat-tsah'ne*), who explored the eastern coast of North America (1524); and *James Cartier* (*car-te-ā'*), who, in two voyages, discovered the gulf and river of St. Lawrence (1534–5).

5. The Huguenots desiring a place of refuge, at first attempted a settlement at Port Royal entrance (1562), in the region afterward named *Carolina* (in honor of the French king, Charles IX.); and two years later on the banks of the St. John's River, Florida. Both attempts were unsuccessful. The year after (1565), the Spaniards made a settlement in Florida, at *St. Augustine*, having previously put the French settlers to death with barbarous cruelty.

6. In 1583, an unsuccessful expedition was made by *Sir Humphrey Gilbert*, sailing from England under a patent granted by Queen Elizabeth; and the next year *Sir Walter Raleigh* dispatched two vessels to the new world, under *Am'idas* and *Barlow*, who visited the islands near the coast of North Carolina, and on their return gave so glowing an account of the country, that Elizabeth named the region discovered *Virginia*, as a memorial of her unmarried state.

7. Two unsuccessful attempts were afterward made to es-

* *See Note* 2, *end of the Section.*

4. What account is given of De Soto's expedition? Verrazzani's? Cartier's?
5. Where did the Huguenots attempt to settle? With what results? When and by whom was St. Augustine settled?
6. What voyages were made by the English? Why was the country called Virginia?

tablish a colony on Roanoke Island (1585–7);* and an attempt farther north was made by *Bartholomew Gosnold*, who discovered Cape Cod (1602), but failed to effect a settlement. *Martin Pring* the following year explored the coast and large rivers of Maine. In 1606, King James I. divided the territory claimed by the English into *North* and *South Virginia*, and granted the former to the Plymouth Company, the latter, to the London Company. The first permanent settlement under this grant was made at *Jamestown*, in 1607, by an expedition sent out by the London Company.

8. **Virginia** was thus the first English colony successfully planted in North America. The want of industrial habits among the settlers at Jamestown at first greatly impeded its prosperity, and brought it at one time to the verge of ruin (1610). New emigrants, however, arrived; and its affairs being managed by the virtuous and prudent *Lord Delaware* (appointed governor in 1609), it soon began to assume a flourishing condition. Virginia afterward became a royal province, the London Company being dissolved by the king (1624).

9. **Massachusetts** was first settled in 1620, at *Plymouth*, by English Puritans, who, during the reign of James I., emigrated to America to find that religious liberty of which they were deprived in their own country. After the accession of Charles I., another company of emigrants settled at *Salem* (1628); and two years afterward *Boston* was settled, principally by Puritans (1630). These two settlements belonged to the *Massachusetts Bay Colony*.

10. **New Hampshire** was first settled in 1623, at *Little Harbor*, near Portsmouth, and at *Dover*, by English emigrants sent out by Ferdinand Gorges (*gor'jez*) and John

* *See Note 3, end of the Section.*

7. What other attempts at settlement were made by the English? What is said of Martin Pring? How was the territory divided by James I.? What was the first settlement made?

8. What is said of the early history of Virginia? When and how did it become a royal province?

9. Give an account of the settlement of Plymouth. Of Salem. Of Boston. What were the first settlements of the Massachusetts Bay Colony?

10. Give a sketch of the early history of New Hampshire.

Mason, to whom this region had been granted, under the name of *Laconia*. The name *New Hampshire* was given to it in 1629. From 1641 to 1680, this colony was united to Massachusetts, from which it was not permanently separated until 1741.

11. Connecticut was settled in 1633, by a company of persons from Plymouth, at a place called *Windsor* (*win'zer*). Other settlements were made, by emigrants from Massachusetts, a short time afterward, the principal one being that at *Hartford* (1635–6).* These settlements formed at first the *Connecticut Colony*. About the same time, a colony was planted at the mouth of the Connecticut River, which was called *Saybrook*. A third colony was established in 1638, which received the name of *New Haven*. These three colonies subsequently formed the colony of Connecticut (1665).

12. Rhode Island was settled by *Roger Williams*, who had been banished from Massachusetts because of his denunciation of the religious intolerance practised there, as well as for certain opinions entertained by him with respect to civil matters. The settlement was made in 1636, at *Providence*. The next year a company of emigrants left Boston on account of religious persecution, and settled on the island of Rhode Island, which was purchased from the Indians. These two settlements were united by a charter in 1644.

13. New York, at first called *New Netherlands*, was settled in 1614 by the Dutch, who built a fort on Man-hat'tan Island, for the purpose of trading with the Indians. Their attention had been directed to this spot by the discovery (in 1609) of the Hudson River, by *Henry Hudson*, an English navigator, in the service of the "Dutch East

* *See Note* 4, *end of the Section.*

11. What were the first settlements made in Connecticut? What other colonies were planted? What did they afterward form?

12. What account is given of the early history of Rhode Island?

13. By whom was New York first settled? What led to it? What was its name at first? When did its colonization commence? What settlements were made?

India Company." On this discovery the Dutch claimed the whole region from Cape Cod to the southern shore of Delaware Bay. The actual colonization of the country did not commence until 1623, when two settlements were made—one on Manhattan Island, called *New Amsterdam*, and the other at Albany, called *Fort Orange*.

14. Four governors ruled in succession, the last and most noted of whom was *Peter Stuyvesant* (*sti've-sant*), during whose administration (1664) New Amsterdam was taken by the English; and New Netherlands accordingly became an English colony, with the name of *New York*, being so called in honor of the Duke of York, to whom Charles II. had granted the territory. In 1673, during a war between England and Holland, the Dutch regained their former possessions; but, after a period of fifteen months, returned them to the English.

15. New Jersey.—The Dutch, who included New Jersey in the province of New Netherlands, established a trading-post at *Bergen* as early as 1622; but the colonization of the country did not commence till 1664, when a settlement was made at *Elizabethtown* (now Elizabeth) by emigrants from Long Island. Previous to this, however, this portion of New Netherlands had been sold by the Duke of York to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret, and was named New Jersey in honor of the latter, who had been governor of the island of Jersey in the English Channel. The whole territory, in 1682, became the property of William Penn and other Quakers; but in 1702, being given up by the proprietors, it formed, with New York, a royal province, and thus continued till 1738, when it became a separate province.

16. Maryland was settled under a charter granted by Charles I. to *Ce'cil Calvert, Lord Baltimore*, who wished to

14. How many governors ruled? Who was the most noted? What occurred during Stuyvesant's rule? Why was the country called New York? What happened in 1673?

15. What was the first settlement made in New Jersey? Why was it so called? Give a sketch of its history.

provide an asylum for Roman Catholics, who were then persecuted in England. It was named Maryland in honor of *Henrietta Maria*, wife of King Charles. The first settlement was made in 1634, at a place which was called *St. Mary's*, under the direction of Leonard Calvert, brother of the proprietor. Free toleration was granted to settlers of every Christian denomination. Upon the death of Cecil Calvert, his son Charles became proprietor of the province, of which he retained possession until deprived of it by King William (1691). In 1715, the proprietor's rights were restored to his infant heir, the fourth Lord Baltimore; and Maryland remained a proprietary government till the Revolution.

17. Pennsylvania.—Although small settlements had been previously made by the Swedes on both sides of the Delaware River, the permanent settlement of Pennsylvania dates from the founding of Philadelphia, in 1682, by *William Penn*, a distinguished Quaker. Penn had obtained a grant of the country from Charles II., with a view to found a colony where civil and religious liberty might be enjoyed, and where the people might dwell together in peace. His conduct toward both the Indians and the Swedish settlers was characterized by remarkable uprightness. With the former he made a treaty, and paid them for their lands; to the latter he gave assurances of protection in every civil and religious right. His descendants continued to administer the government till the Revolution. [*See Note* 5.]

18. Delaware.—This territory was first settled by Swedes, in 1638, and named *New Sweden*. Subsequently, Governor Stuyvesant subjected it to the authority of Holland (1655), to which it continued to belong till 1664, when it became the property of the Duke of York. By him it

---

16. What account is given of the settlement of Maryland? What was granted to all settlers? Give the subsequent history of the colony.

17. By whom and where was Pennsylvania first settled? Who was William Penn? What course did he pursue? What else is related of this colony?

18. Give a brief sketch of the early history of Delaware.

was granted to William Penn, under the name of "The Territories;" and continued to be connected with Pennsylvania, although having a separate Assembly, until the Revolution.

19. North and South Carolina.—The first permanent settlement in this tract was made in 1650, by emigrants from Virginia, who settled near the present village of *E'den-ton.* In 1670, a colony was planted on the western bank of the Ashley River; but was soon after removed to the present site of Charleston. In 1729, Carolina was sold to the king of England, and separated into *North* and *South Carolina.* From that time they were royal provinces till the Revolution.

20. Georgia.—This part of the country was granted by the English king, George II., to General Oglethorpe (*o'glthorp*) and others, who desired to provide an asylum for their destitute countrymen. In honor of the king it was called *Georgia.* The first settlement was made in 1733, at *Savannah.* Oglethorpe defended the settlers against the hostile attacks of their Spanish neighbors; but the people, afterward, becoming dissatisfied with the government of the trustees, the latter relinquished their rights to the crown, and Georgia became a royal province (1752).

21. French Colonies.—The first permanent French settlement in America was made by *De Monts* (*da mong*) a wealthy Huguenot, who, having obtained a grant from the French king, Henry IV., of an extensive region in the vicinity of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, planted a settlement on the present site of An-nap'o-lis, Nova Scotia (1605). To this place he gave the name of *Port Royal,* and to the whole territory that of *A-ca'di-a.* At the close of the War of the Spanish Succession (called in American history *Queen Anne's War*), this region, including Nova Scotia,

19. What account is given of the settlement of North and South Carolina?
20. What led to the settlement of Georgia? Give its subsequent history.
21. What was the first permanent French settlement? How was it made? Give the subsequent history of Acadia and Port Royal.

Progressive Map, No. 8

New Brunswick, and some of the adjacent islands, was given up to the English by the treaty of Utrecht (1713). Port Royal was then named, in honor of Queen Anne, *Annapolis.*

22. *Canada,* originally called *New France,* was first permanently settled at *Quebec,* by the French, under Champlain, in 1608; and continued in their possession until 1760, when, by the successful expedition of General Wolfe, in the previous year, it was surrendered to the English, whose possession of it was confirmed by the treaty of Paris (1763). By this treaty, the French ceded to Great Britain nearly all her American possessions east of the Mississippi River, and thus put an end to those boundary disputes, about which the war, called the "French and Indian War," had been waged for more than six years (1754–60).

23. Louisiana was visited by *La Salle,* who discovered the mouth of the Mississippi River in 1691; and an unsuccessful attempt at settlement was made by *Iber-ville,* in 1699. It was named after Louis XIV., who made a grant of it in 1712: and was subsequently purchased by the Mississippi company of John Law, after whose failure it was restored to the crown. In 1762, it became the property of Spain, by which it was retained until 1800, when it was given back to the French government, then under the control of Napoleon. Louisiana at that time comprised nearly all the territory included between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains; and, in 1803, this immense tract was ceded by France to the United States for $15,000,000.

24. Discovery and Colonization in South America.—In 1500, Cabral, a Portuguese navigator, reached the coast of *Brazil,* and took possession of the country for the crown of Portugal, although it had been visited by one of

---

22. When and by whom was Canada settled? How and when was it conquered by the British?

23. What is said of the early history of Louisiana? Why was it so called? Give its subsequent history. What was its extent?

24. What is said of the discovery of Brazil? Of the Amazon River?

the companions of Columbus a short time previously. Settlements were afterward made along the coast by the Portuguese, in whose possession the country continued until its independence was acknowledged in 1825. The *Amazon River* was first explored by a Spaniard, named *Orellana* (*o-rel-yah'nah*), in 1539.

25. In 1520, *Magellan*, a Portuguese navigator in the service of Spain, having discovered the strait which now bears his name, crossed the Pacific Ocean (so named by him), but was killed at one of the Philippine Islands. The voyage was, however, continued after his death; and one of the ships reached Spain by the Cape of Good Hope,—thus completing the first voyage ever made round the world (1522).

26. In 1513, a Spaniard named *Bal-bo'a* crossed the Isthmus of Darien, and obtained a view of the ocean lying beyond.* He then turned to the southward and penetrated many miles into the country. Subsequently, *Francisco Pi-zar'ro*, a brave but cruel leader, who had accompanied Balboa in the previous expedition, sailed from Panama with a company of less than 200 men, and landed on the western coast of *Peru*—the wealthiest and most powerful state in America at the time of its discovery. By means of the basest treachery and the most revolting cruelties, Pizarro succeeded in effecting the conquest of the country, although the unfortunate natives defended their liberties with admirable spirit and valor (1533). The monster, Pizarro, was afterward assassinated (1541).

27. Peru became, after Pizarro's conquest, the principal seat of the Spanish empire in America; and Lima (*le'mah*), its capital, rose to a very high degree of magnificence. It received from Pizarro the appellation of the *City of the Kings*. *Chili* (*chil'le*), which originally belonged to the

*See Note 6, *end of the Section.*

25. What account is given of Magellan's voyage?
26. What was done by Balboa? By Pizarro? What is said of Pizarro?
27. What account is given of Peru? Of Lima? Of Chili?

Peruvian empire, was conquered by Almagro and Valdiv'i-a, two of the successors of Pizarro, the latter of whom founded Santiago (*sahn-te-ah'go*) in 1541. Southern Chili was so bravely defended by the Indians, that it resisted for centuries the rule of the invaders.

28. *Venezuela* (*ven-e-zwe-lah*) was so called by Vespucci and Ojeda (*o-ha'dah*), the latter one of the companions of Columbus, who, near the Lake of Maracaybo (*mah-rah-ki'-bo*), discovered an Indian village built on piles in the water. Hence, they named it Venezuela, or *Little Venice* (1499). The interior of the country was not conquered till the middle of the next century. The *Rio de la Plata* was explored in 1530, by Sebastian Cabot, then in the service of Spain; and, in 1580, the city of *Buenos Ayres* (*bo'nus a'riz*) was founded by the Spaniards.

29. Thus, nearly all South America, except Brazil, fell into the possession of Spain, and was retained under her rule until the beginning of the present century, when, by a series of revolutions, commencing in Chili, this extensive region was wrested from her, and formed into independent states. Peru was the last to secure her independence, which was acknowledged in 1826.

30. The most prominent individual connected with these movements was the patriot *Bol'i-var*, in honor of whom the republic of Bo-liv'i-a received its name. Nine states now occupy the territory formerly included in the several Spanish viceroyalties of South America: *Peru*, *Bolivia*, *Ecuador* (*ek-wah-dore'*), *Co-lom'bia*, *Venezuela*, *Chili*, *The Argentine Republic*, *Paraguay* (*pah-rah-gwi'*), and *Uruguay* (*oo-roo-gwi'*). These states, since their formation, have been under republican governments, but have been very much disturbed by internal dissensions and civil war.

---

28. What is said of Venezuela? Of the Rio de la Plata? Buenos Ayres?
29. How long did these territories remain under the Spanish government? When did Peru become independent?
30. Who was Bolivar? What states were formed? What is said of them?

The United States.

31. The expenses which Great Britain had incurred in the French and Indian War greatly increased her national debt; and the British ministry, asserting that this had been done in defending their American possessions, proposed to lessen the burden by taxing the colonies. In pursuance of this proposition, the *Stamp Act* was passed in 1765; the effect of which was to excite a great storm of indignation throughout the colonies, the people of which opposed all measures of taxation, on the ground that they had no representatives in the British Parliament.

32. A change having occurred in the British ministry, the act was repealed in 1766; but the next year, the attempt to tax the colonies was renewed, by the passage of an act levying duties on glass, paper, tea, etc. This measure met with decided opposition from the colonists, particularly in Boston, to which General Gage ordered two regiments to overawe the inhabitants (1770). This greatly exasperated the people, and led to the affray called the "Boston Massacre," in which the soldiers fired upon the populace, killing three men and wounding others (1770).

33. Parliament, wishing to conciliate the people, revoked all the duties except that on tea; but as the people were contending for the *principle* of "no taxation without representation," the concession was without avail. Some of the tea sent over was returned; and no one would purchase that which was landed. At Boston, a party of men, disguised as Indians, boarded the ships, broke open the chests of tea, and emptied their contents into the water (1773).

34. The next year, delegates from all the thirteen colonies, except Georgia, met at Philadelphia, and formed the "First

31. What led to the passage of the Stamp Act? What was its effect?
32. When was it repealed? What other law was passed? What was the result? What was the "Boston Massacre?"
33. What conciliatory measure was adopted by Parliament? What was its effect? What was done with the tea?
34. What body met at Philadelphia? What were its proceedings? Who were the "Minute-men?"

Continental Congress." A declaration of rights was then adopted, and a suspension of all commercial intercourse with Great Britain recommended. Meanwhile, Massachusetts had been preparing for a hostile conflict with the mother country, and militia, called "minute-men," were trained so as to be ready at a *minute's* notice.

35. The Revolutionary War.—The great conflict commenced at *Lexington* (April 19, 1775), where a detachment of British troops, sent by General Gage to seize the American stores at Concord, attacked and dispersed a small body of militia collected to oppose them. The stores were destroyed, but the British, on their return, were attacked by the American militia, in large numbers, and with great difficulty made good their retreat to Boston. The patriots wishing to prevent the British from assuming offensive operations, erected fortifications on Breed's Hill, near Boston. This brought on a battle, in which the British troops succeeded in dislodging the Americans from their position, but only after the third attack; so bravely did the patriot militia stand their ground. This conflict is known in history as the "Battle of Bunker Hill" (June 17, 1775).

36. Meanwhile, a general Congress of the thirteen colonies, in session at Philadelphia, resolved on war; and, having decided to raise an army of 20,000 men, elected *George Washington*, one of the delegates from Virginia, commander-in-chief (June 15). This illustrious man was born in Virginia, February 22d, 1732, and consequently was in his 44th year when he received this appointment. He had previously gained great distinction as a military commander in the French and Indian War; while his patriotism, prudence, and sterling worth of character, commended him to the universal confidence of his countrymen.

37. In order to prevent the use of Canada by the British

35. Where and when did the Revolutionary War commence? Describe the battle of Lexington. The battle of Bunker or Breed's Hill.

36. What was done by Congress? Where and when was Washington born? What is said of him?

as a place of rendezvous and supply, Generals *Montgomery* and *Benedict Arnold* were sent by different routes to attack, and, if possible, take Quebec. The assault was made, but failed, Montgomery being slain, and Arnold severely wounded (Dec. 31, 1775). By erecting fortifications on Dorchester Heights, near Boston, Washington compelled the British to evacuate this city (March 17, 1776); after which an unsuccessful attack was made by the latter upon *Charleston*, South Carolina (June 28), which was defended by a fort of palmetto-wood erected on an island in the harbor, and garrisoned by troops under the command of the gallant *Colonel Moultrie* (*mole'tre*), whose name was afterward given to the fort.

38. This was soon followed by the **Declaration of Independence,** adopted by Congress *July 4th.* In the mean time, the British had been collecting a large army, partly consisting of Hessian mercenaries; and on the 27th of August, *General Howe,* the British commander, attacked and defeated the Americans at Brooklyn, Long Island. By this victory the British gained possession of New York, and soon after succeeded in compelling Washington to retreat across the Hudson River and through New Jersey, into Pennsylvania. The patriots were greatly dispirited by this series of disasters; but their hopes were revived by a bold stroke of Washington, who, early on the morning after Christmas day, crossed the Delaware, and suddenly attacking a body of Hessians stationed at *Trenton,* compelled them to surrender (Dec. 26).

39. The next year General Howe, failing to draw Washington into an engagement in New Jersey, conveyed his troops, by means of the fleet of his brother, Lord Howe, to

---

37. Give an account of the expedition to Canada. What led to the evacuation of Boston? What city was next attacked? How was it defended?

38. What occurred July 4th? What account is given of the battle of Long Island? What was the result? What led to the battle of Trenton?

39. What led to the battle of Chad's Ford? What was its result? Where is Chad's Ford? (Map, p. 372.) Where did Washington attack the British, and with what result?

Chesapeake Bay, at the head of which they disembarked, and marched toward Philadelphia. At *Chad's Ford*, on Brandywine Creek, their passage was disputed by Wash ington; but the latter was defeated with considerable loss (Sept. 11, 1777). Two weeks afterward, Philadelphia fell

into the hands of the British. On the 4th of October following, Washington made a vigorous attack on the British army stationed at *Germantown*, near Philadelphia; but, although at first successful, he was finally repulsed.

40. In the mean time, *General Burgoyne*, with an army of ten thousand men, British and German troops, Canadians and Indians, invaded the State of New York from Canada, with the design of effecting a junction with another army from the city of New York, so as to cut off Washington's communication with the Eastern States. At first, Burgoyne

40. Give an account of Burgoyne's invasion. Where was he defeated? What followed?

met with some success, capturing *Ticonderoga*, and compelling the American forces to retreat to the Mohawk; but a detachment of his army having been defeated at *Bennington* (August 16), the Americans, under *General Gates*, advanced to *Bem'is Heights*, where a severe battle was fought, by which Burgoyne found his march to Albany effectually checked (Sept. 19). A few weeks afterward, a second battle occurred near the scene of the previous one, and the British were driven back (Oct. 7). In this battle, called the *Battle of Saratoga*, Benedict Arnold, who afterward turned traitor, greatly distinguished himself. It was soon followed by the surrender of Burgoyne to General Gates, at Saratoga (Oct. 17).

41. Benjamin Franklin and others had, in 1776, been sent to France to solicit aid, and this brilliant success at Saratoga decided the negotiations then set on foot. France acknowledged the independence of the United States; and an alliance was concluded between the two nations, in pursuance of which a French fleet was sent to assist the Americans (April, 1778). The British, under the command of General Clinton, evacuated Philadelphia; and on their retreat through New Jersey, were attacked by Washington at *Monmouth*, where a protracted but indecisive engagement took place (June 28, 1778). This year, to compensate for their loss of Philadelphia, the British took Savannah.

42. With the aid of the French fleet, the Americans, under *General Lincoln*, made a vigorous effort to regain possession of Savannah, but were repulsed with great loss, the gallant Polish officer, *Count Pulaski*, being among the slain (Oct. 9, 1779). The next year, the Americans experienced another severe disaster in the loss of Charleston,

41. How was the alliance with France brought about? What led to the battle of Monmouth? What was the result? What city was taken?

42. Where were the French and Americans defeated? Who was slain? When and how was Charleston taken? What was the result? What partisan leaders distinguished themselves?

Progressive Map, No. 9

which was captured by General Clinton, after a long siege (May 12). General Lincoln and six thousand prisoners, thus fell into the hands of the enemy. This victory virtually delivered South Carolina to the British; but the brave partisan leaders, *Marion*, *Sumter*, *Pickens*, and others, carried on a harassing warfare against them, and thus kept alive the spirit of freedom in the South.

43. General Gates, appointed to succeed Lincoln, having allowed himself to be disastrously defeated by the British general, *Cornwallis*, near *Camden* (Aug. 16, 1780), Washington sent *General Greene* to the South, to check the progress of the enemy. This officer, by his skilful generalship, obtained considerable advantage over the British; and, although not absolutely victorious in the battles that were fought, he succeeded in greatly impairing the strength of the enemy (1781).

44. Cornwallis having retreated into Virginia, occupied *Yorktown*, where he was attacked by the combined French and American forces, while a French fleet, under Count de Grasse (*gras*), blockaded the city by water. After a severe cannonade of two days, Cornwallis was compelled to surrender his entire army prisoners of war (Oct. 19, 1781). This brilliant victory virtually ended the war, and was the cause of great rejoicing throughout the country. Great Britain was obliged to suspend hostilities; and on the 3d of September, 1783, acknowledged the independence of the United States.

45. In 1781, the permanent union of the states was effected by the ratification of the **Articles of Confederation**; but the general government thus established was soon found to be very inefficient, Congress having no power to raise money and pay the debts incurred by the

---

43. Where was Gates defeated? Who succeeded him in the command? What was done by General Greene?

44. What led to the surrender of Cornwallis? What was the result?

45. What was done in 1781? What led to the adoption of the Constitution? When and how did it go into operation?

war. Accordingly, a national convention was held at Philadelphia, with Washington as president; and after four months' deliberation, the **Constitution** was adopted (Sept. 17, 1787). After being ratified by *eleven* of the thirteen states, though not without great opposition, it went into operation; and Washington was inaugurated the first *President of the United States,* at New York (April 30, 1789).

46. Washington's Administration.—(1789–1797.)—Through the judicious management of *Alexander Hamilton,* Secretary of the Treasury, the public finances were soon placed in a good condition, and the credit of the country was established. *Rhode Island* and *North Carolina* joined their sister states in the union; and Vermont, the first new state, was admitted (1791). Two other states were also admitted, during this administration—*Kentucky* (1792) and *Tennessee* (1796). The Indians north of the Ohio were reduced to submission by the victory at the *Mau-mee'*, gained by General Wayne (1794).

47. John Adams's Administration. (1797–1801.)—Washington having declined a nomination for a third term, John Adams was elected to succeed him. The neutral position taken by the United States in the war between England and France, gave great offence to the French Directory; and war being threatened, defensive measures were adopted, Washington again receiving the appointment of commander-in-chief. Hostilities, however, had scarcely commenced, when a treaty of peace was negotiated with Napoleon Bonaparte, who had become First Consul (1800). Washington died the year previous at Mt. Vernon (Dec. 14, 1799). In 1800, the capital was removed from Philadelphia to the city of Washington.

48. Jefferson's Administration. (1801–1809.)—

46. By whom was the financial condition of the country improved? What were the other events of Washington's administration?

47. What events of interest occurred during Adams's administration? Where was the capital located?

Ohio, the seventeenth state, was admitted in 1802; and the French province of *Louisiana*, a vast region extending from the Mississippi River to the Rocky Mountains, was bought from France for fifteen millions of dollars (1803).* The United States, by this purchase, secured the free navigation of the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico. During the wars waged by the European powers against Napoleon, the foreign commerce of the United States suffered greatly in consequence of the French emperor's "Continental System," and the blockade of France by the fleets of Great Britain. The latter also claimed the right to search American vessels, and impress all sailors of English birth found on board; and, in pursuance of this claim, the frigate Chesapeake was fired into and boarded, and four alleged deserters from British service, three of whom, it was afterward proved, were Americans, were seized (1807).

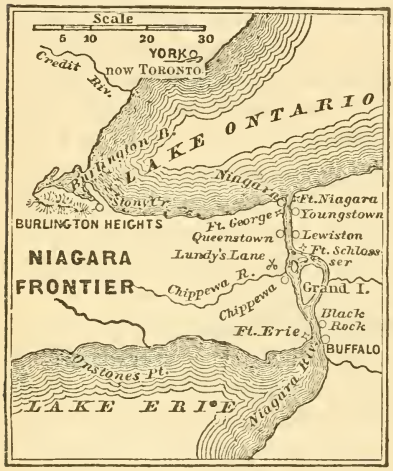
49. Madison's Administration. (1809–1817.)— This outrage and others of a similar character, finally induced Congress to declare war against Great Britain (1812). The year before, the important victory of *Tip-pe-ca-noe'* was gained over the hostile Indians of the northwest by General Harrison. These Indians, incited by British emissaries, and led on by the noted chief *Te-cum'seh*, had begun to form a formidable confederacy; and, in the ensuing war, they fought on the side of the British. The first year of the war (1812) was characterized by disasters to the Americans, on land; the whole of Michigan Territory being lost by the surrender of *General Hull*, at Detroit (August 16).† On the ocean, however, several brilliant victories, gained by *Captain Hull*, *Commodore Decatur*, and others, retrieved the honor of the country.

* The Western limits were not clearly defined. The United States government afterward claimed to the Pacific. † *See Note 7, end of the Section.*

48. Who succeeded Adams? How long was he in office? What state was admitted? What territory was purchased? What injured the commerce of the country? What caused difficulty with Great Britain?

49. When was war declared? What victory was gained by Harrison? What is said of the year 1812?

50. In 1813, *Commodore Perry* gained a splendid victory on Lake Erie, over a British fleet, every vessel of which was compelled to surrender (September 10). His dispatch to General Harrison contained the well-known words, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours." This event was soon followed by the *Battle of the Thames*, in which Harrison entirely defeated the British under Proctor, and the Indians under Tecumseh, the latter being shot in the engagement (October 5). By these victories, Michigan Territory was recovered, and the war on the western frontier terminated.



51. The year 1814 is memorable for the defeat of the British at *Chippewa* (*chip'pē-waw*) and *Lundy's Lane*, near Niagara Falls (July 5 and 25), in the latter of which battles *General Scott*, afterward so famous, particularly distinguished himself. Meanwhile, *General Jackson* had subdued the hostile Indians in Alabama; and had taken Pensacola, a Spanish port, the authorities of the town having allowed the British to fit out expeditions there against the United States. The principal disaster of this year was the capture of the city of Washington by a force under *General Ross* (August 24). The capitol, with its library, the president's house, and other buildings, were burned,

50. What victory was gained by Perry? By Harrison? What was the effect of these victories?

51. For what is 1814 memorable? Where are Chippewa and Lundy's Lane? (See Map.) What was done by Jackson? What disaster occurred? What was the result?

and the British then hastily retreated.* An unsuccessful attempt was made soon afterward to take Baltimore.†

52. One of the most important events of the war was the repulse, by *General Jackson,* of a large force of the British at New Orleans, where 2,000 of the British, including their commander, *General Pakenham* (*pak'n-am*), were slain (January 8, 1815).‡ The next month, the joyful tidings reached the United States that a treaty of peace had been signed at Ghent in December of the previous year, the great European war having been concluded by the fall of Napoleon. The points of dispute between the United States and Great Britain were, however, left undecided. The other important events of this administration were a successful expedition against Algiers, by Commodore Decatur, and the admission of two new States (*Louisiana,* in 1812, and *Indiana,* in 1816).

53. Monroe's Administration (1817–1825).—Madison's successor in the presidency was *James Monroe,* of Virginia, in the first year of whose administration, General Jackson was sent to repress the hostile attacks of the *Seminoles* (*sem'i-nōlz*), a tribe of Indians living in Florida. Finding that the savages had been instigated to their hostilities by persons in Florida, Jackson marched into that province and seized the fort at St. Marks, and the city of Pensacola. This having led to difficulties with Spain, the latter finally ceded Florida to the United States (1821).

54. Five new states were admitted during this administration: *Mississippi* (1817), *Illinois* (1818), *Alabama* (1819), *Maine* (1820), and *Missouri* (1821). A very exciting controversy preceded the admission of Missouri, the states of the North opposing its admission as a slave-state, while those of the South desired such admission. At length a bill

* *See Note* 8, *end of the Section.* † *See Note* 9. ‡ *See Note* 10.

52. Give an account of the battle of New Orleans. When was peace made? What did it fail to decide? What other events occurred?

53. Who succeeded Madison? What led to the acquisition of Florida?

54. What new states were admitted? What was the "Missouri Compromise?" What other events occurred? What is meant by the "Monroe doctrine?"

known as the "Missouri Compromise" was passed, by which it was declared that, with the exception of Missouri, slavery should be prohibited in the territory north of the parallel 30° 30′, and west of the Mississippi. The independence of the South American republics was acknowledged by the United States government; and in 1823 Monroe declared that the American continents "are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power." This is known as the "Monroe Doctrine."

55. John Quincy Adams's Administration (1825-9.)—This administration was one of peace, and under it the nation made rapid increase in population and wealth. On the fiftieth anniversary of American independence, by a singular coincidence, occurred the deaths of the two venerable ex-presidents, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson (July 4th, 1826). Adams was succeeded by Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee.

56. Jackson's Administration (1829–1837) was characterized by great vigor and resolution. He vetoed the bill to recharter the United States Bank; and when the people of South Carolina, dissatisfied with the tariff law of 1828, refused to obey it, and threatened to secede from the Union, he issued a proclamation declaring that the military power of the government would be called into requisition to enforce the laws. A "compromise bill," subsequently passed by Congress, restored quiet. The attempt to remove the Seminoles from Florida to lands west of the Mississippi was met with determined opposition by many of the tribe under their chief, *Osceola* (*os-e-o'lah*); and a fierce war ensued, which lasted for several years. Osceola was finally seized, and sent to Fort Moultrie (1837), and the Indians, two months afterward, were entirely defeated by *Col. Zachary*

55. What is said of John Q. Adams's administration? What interesting coincidence is referred to? By whom was Adams succeeded?
56. What was the character of Jackson's administration? What measures did he adopt? What war broke out? Describe it.

Taylor. Their hostilities, however, were not entirely repressed till 1842.

57. Van Buren's Administration (1837–1841).—Jackson was succeeded in the presidency by *Martin Van Buren*, of New York. His term of four years is chiefly memorable for a disastrous monetary revulsion, by which commerce and manufactures were prostrated, and the mercantile classes of the people were involved in general bankruptcy (1837). The Canadian rebellion enlisted the sympathies and engaged the active co-operation of many of the citizens of the United States; but a proclamation issued by the president was successful in preventing any improper interference in the affairs of Canada.

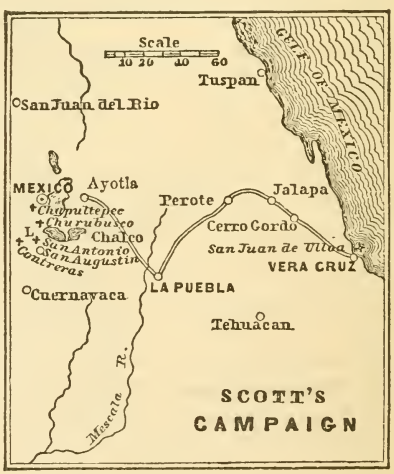
58. Harrison's and Tyler's Administrations (1841–1845).—Van Buren's successor in office was *William Henry Harrison*, the "hero of Tippecanoe and the Thames;" but the new president died just one month after his inauguration, and the vice-president, *John Tyler*, became president.—*Texas*, which had revolted from Mexico, and set up a government of its own (1836), applied to be annexed to the United States; and three days before the expiration of his term of office, the president signed a bill for its annexation.

59. Polk's Administration (1845–1849).—Tyler's

57. What is related of Van Buren's administration?
58. Who succeeded Van Buren? How did Tyler become President? What is related of Texas?

successor in office was *James K. Polk*. On the fourth of July, 1845, the legislature of Texas having approved the "annexation bill" passed by Congress, Texas became one of the United States. This led to a war with Mexico, she not having acknowledged the independence of her revolted province. Hostilities were commenced in 1846, near the Rio Grande (*re'o grahn'da*), to which General Taylor had been sent to protect the new state from Mexican invasion. Having defeated the Mexicans in two battles, he took possession of *Mat-a-mo'ras*, and marching to the strongly fortified city of *Monterey* (*mon-ta-ra'*) compelled it to capitulate (Sept. 24).

60. In another expedition under *Gen. Kearny* (*kar'ne*), the Americans gained possession of New Mexico; and a party under *Captain Fre-mont'*, entered California, and defeated the Mexicans in several skirmishes. The conquest of this important territory was afterward completed by means of the fleet under Commodores Slote and Stockton, assisted by Fremont and General Kearny (1847). Taylor's last engagement in Mexico was the battle of *Buena Vista* (*bwa'nah vees'tah*), in which he defeated an army under *Santa Anna* nearly four times as numerous as his own, driving the Mexicans in disorder from the field (Feb. 23, 1847).



59. Who succeeded Tyler? What caused a war with Mexico? How were hostilities commenced? What was done by Taylor?

60. How was California conquered? What occurred at Buena Vista?

61. With a view to "conquer a peace," General Scott was ordered to proceed against the capital of Mexico (1847). Landing his army near Vera Cruz, he, with the aid of the fleet, compelled this strongly fortified city to surrender, and then marched into the interior. Having defeated Santa Anna at the mountain pass of *Cerro Gordo* (*sār'ro gor'do*), and captured in succession all the strong posts by which the capital was defended, Scott entered it in triumph (Sept. 14). On the second of February following, a treaty of peace was signed, by which all the territory north of the Rio Grande, together with the whole of New Mexico and California, was relinquished to the United States, the latter agreeing to pay to Mexico $15,000,000, and to assume her debts to American citizens, to the amount of $3,000,000.

62. Taylor's and Fillmore's Administrations (1849–1853).—Polk was succeeded by *Zachary Taylor*, the hero who had achieved such brilliant victories in the war with Mexico. Gold having been discovered in California, thousands of emigrants from all parts of the world rushed thither;* and so rapidly did the territory become populated, that in the fall of 1849 it contained a sufficient number of settlers to constitute a state, and, accordingly, applied for admission. The application met with violent opposition from the southern states, because the constitution of the proposed state excluded slavery; but a compromise having been effected through the efforts of *Henry Clay*, California was admitted as a free state (1850). Meantime, General Taylor died (July 9, 1850), and was succeeded by the vice-president, *Millard Fillmore*.

63. Pierce's Administration (1853–1857).—During the administration of *Franklin Pierce*, the successor of

* *See Note* 11, *end of the Section.*

61. Give an account of Scott's expedition. What was the result?
62. Who succeeded Polk? What occurred in California? Why was its admission opposed? How and when was it admitted? How and when did Fillmore become President?
63. What controversy was continued during Pierce's administration? What again excited the slavery question?

Fillmore, the controversy between the slaveholding and non-slaveholding sections of the Union was renewed, the one being in favor of, and the other opposed to, the extension of slavery into the territories. This question, supposed to have been settled by the compromise of 1850, was again excited by the passage of a bill for the organization of Kansas and Nebraska as territories, the bill containing a clause by which the "Missouri Compromise" was repealed, and the question of permitting or excluding slavery was left to be determined by the inhabitants of the territories (1854).

64. No sooner had the bill passed, than emigrants from both sections of the Union began to pour into Kansas, those from the North being determined to make it a free state, while those from the South were equally resolved that slavery should be permitted within it. With such undue zeal was this strife maintained, that frequent collisions took place, in which blood was shed. While these things were in progress, Pierce was succeeded in office by *James Buchanan*, of Pennsylvania.

65. Buchanan's Administration (1857–1861).—The slavery question continued to be the prominent topic of discussion during this administration; and the feeling of opposition prevailing in the South against the North, was greatly intensified by "John Brown's raid,"—an attempt, by seizing the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, to capture and liberate a large number of slaves. The undertaking failed; and several of those engaged in it, including Brown himself, were tried and hung. Kansas was not admitted until 1861, when it came in as a free state.

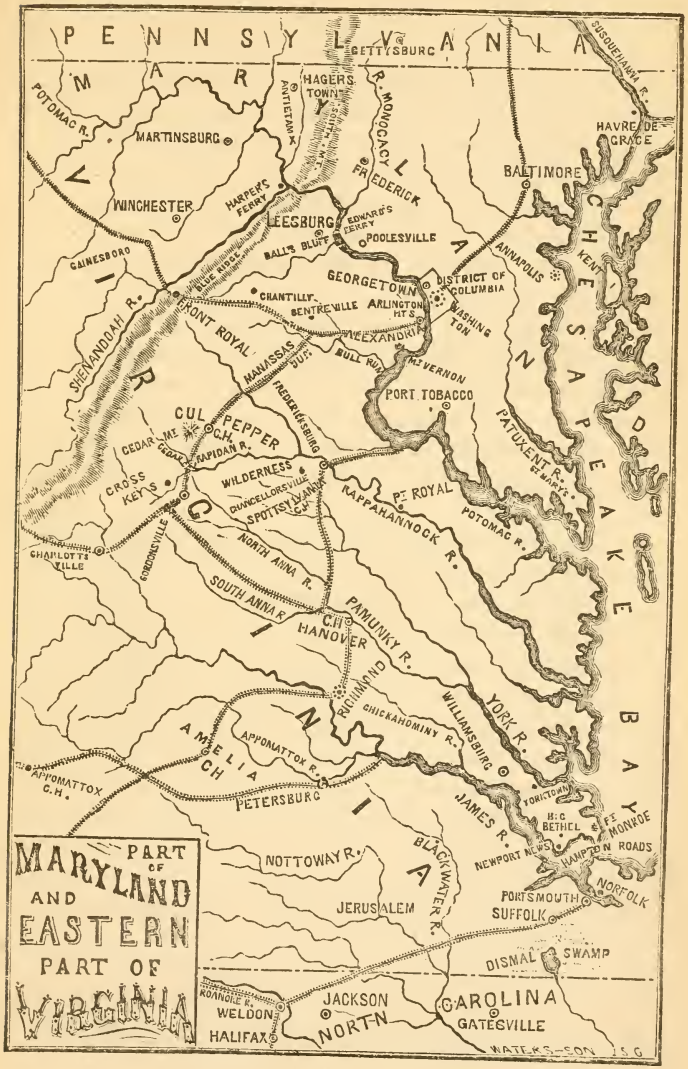
66. The election, in the fall of 1860, of *Abraham Lincoln*,

---

64. What led to civil war in Kansas? Who succeeded Pierce?

65. What question was continued? How were the bitter feelings of the South intensified? What was "John Brown's raid?" What was its result? When was Kansas admitted?

66. What caused a violent outbreak at the South? What was done at Charleston? What events followed this? What property was seized by the insurgents? What forts were retained by the government?


PENNSYLVANIA
GETTYSBURG
SUSQUEHANNA R.
MARYLAND
POTOMAC R.
HAGERS TOWN
ANTIETAM R.
MONOCACY R.
MARTINSBURG
FREDERICK
HAVRE DE GRACE
BALTIMORE
WINCHESTER
HARPERS FERRY
LEESBURG
EDWARDS FERRY
POOLESVILLE
BALL'S BLUFF
ANNAPOLIS
KENT
GAINESBORO
BLUE RIDGE
GEORGETOWN
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA
CHANTILLY
SENTREVILLE
ARLINGTON HTS
WASHINGTON
SHENANDOAH R.
FRONT ROYAL
ALEXANDRIA
MANASSAS JUNC.
BULL RUN
MT VERNON
PORT TOBACCO
CHESAPEAKE BAY
CULPEPPER C.H.
FREDERICKSBURG
CEDAR MT.
RAPIDAN R.
PATUXENT R.
WILDERNESS
CROSS KEYS
CHANCELLORSVILLE
SPOTTSYLVANIA C.H.
PT. ROYAL
RAPPAHANNOCK R.
POTOMAC R.
CHARLOTTESVILLE
GORDONSVILLE
NORTH ANNA R.
SOUTH ANNA R.
PAMUNKY R.
C.H.
HANOVER
RICHMOND
CHICKAHOMINY R.
WILLIAMSBURG
YORK R.
AMELIA
APPOMATTOX R.
APPOMATTOX C.H.
PETERSBURG
JAMES R.
YORKTOWN
H.G. BETHEL
FT. MONROE
NEWPORT NEWS
HAMPTON ROADS
NOTTOWAY R.
BLACKWATER R.
NORFOLK
PORTSMOUTH
SUFFOLK
JERUSALEM
DISMAL SWAMP
ROANOKE R.
WELDON
JACKSON
NORTH CAROLINA
GATESVILLE
HALIFAX
WATERS-SON & C.
PART OF MARYLAND AND EASTERN PART OF VIRGINIA

the candidate of the Republicans (the party opposed to the further extension of slavery), occasioned a violent outbreak in the South; and in South Carolina, a convention was called, which met at Charleston, and passed an ordinance declaring that the State had seceded from the Union (Dec. 20). This was soon followed by the passage of similar secession ordinances in six other states: *Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana,* and *Texas;* and a congress of delegates from the insurgent states met at Montgomery, Alabama, and having adopted a constitution, assumed the title of the "Confederate States of America," and elected *Jefferson Davis,* president (Feb. 9). Forts, arsenals, navy-yards, and other property belonging to the general government, within the Confederate states, were seized, *Fort Pickens,* near Pensacola, *Fort Sumter,* near Charleston, and *Fortress Monroe,* near the entrance to Chesapeake Bay, being nearly all that remained to the United States.

67. Lincoln's Administration.—The Great Civil War. (1861–1865.)—In this sad and distracted condition were the affairs of the country when Lincoln entered upon the office of president. One of the first acts of the Confederates, after his inauguration, was the bombardment and capture of *Fort Sumter;* and this was soon followed by the passage of secession ordinances in *Virginia, Tennessee, Arkansas,* and *North Carolina.* The excitement consequent upon these events throughout the North, was intense. Troops were at once called for by the president; and a large army was soon collected near Washington, under General Scott, to oppose the Confederate army stationed at *Manassas Junction,* a few miles distant. Near this spot, on the 21st day of July, occurred the first great conflict of the war—the battle of *Bull Run,* in which

67. How was the war of the rebellion brought on? What led to the battle of Bull Run? What was its result?

the Union forces were defeated, and fled panic-stricken from the field.

68. *General McClellan* was then called to take the chief command; and an immense army was collected at Washington, with the purpose of invading Virginia, and capturing Richmond, the capital of the Confederate States. This army did not set out until April, 1862. Meanwhile an active warfare had been carried on in Missouri, with varying success; the Federal navy had been greatly increased and strengthened; and by means of it, strong positions in North and South Carolina were wrested from the Confederates. The capture of *Roanoke Island*, and of *Fort Pulaski*, near Savannah, still further strengthened the Union cause.

69. The remarkable contest between the "Monitor" and the powerful ram, Virginia, near Norfolk; the victories of *General Pope* on the Mississippi; and the capture, by *General Grant*, of Forts Henry and Donelson, on the Cumberland and Tennessee Rivers, were important events of the winter of 1861–2 and the following spring. The taking of New Orleans by the fleet under *Far'ra-gut* and *Porter*, aided by a military force under *General Butler*, was a still more valuable conquest (April 25).

70. These great victories were counterbalanced by the ill success of McClellan, who had attempted to reach Richmond by the peninsula between the York and James Rivers. Having arrived within a short distance of the city, he was suddenly attacked by the Confederates at *Fair Oaks*, where a bloody, but indecisive contest took place (May 31). A movement of McClellan's to change his base of operations to the James River, brought on a series of destructive battles, lasting through seven days (June 25–July 1), the re-

68. Who took the command? What was collected? For what purpose? What events occurred in the West and South?

69. What other important events occurred during the winter of 1861–2 and the following spring? What important city was captured? How?

70. What was done by McClellan? Where was a great battle fought? What was its result? What battles followed?

sult of which was to leave the Union army in a very weakened condition.

71. Taking advantage of this, the Confederates, under *General Lee,* marched toward Washington; but were confronted by the armies of Gen. Banks and Gen. Pope. These were defeated, the latter in the *Second Battle of Bull Run* (Aug. 29th and 30th); and Lee crossed the Potomac into Maryland. Meanwhile, McClellan had been recalled from the James; and having assumed the command of the army in Maryland, defeated the Confederate general, Lee, in the great battle of Antietam (*an-te'tam*) (Sept. 17). Lee at once retreated across the Potomac; but McClellan made no pursuit, and in November was superseded by *Burnside.*

72. A dreadful repulse of the Union army at *Fredericksburg* soon followed (Dec. 13); and Burnside, at his own request, was superseded by *Gen. Hooker.* The latter, however, was defeated in the great battle of *Chancellorsville* (May 2d and 3d, 1863), which was followed by another invasion by the Confederate army under Lee, who at this time penetrated into Pennsylvania. At *Gettysburg,* however, a dreadful conflict of three days occurred (July 1st, 2d, and 3d), the result of which was, that Lee was compelled to retreat.

73. In the mean time, General Grant having gained a series of victories over the Confederate forces in the southwest, succeeded in taking *Vicksburg,* after a siege of several months (July 4); and *Port Hudson* having soon afterward surrendered to *Gen. Banks,* the Mississippi was completely opened. *Gen. Rosecrans* (*rōz'krants*), who, in the beginning of the year, had gained an important victory over a large Confederate army, under Gen. Bragg, at *Mur'freesbo-ro* (Jan. 2, 1863), was attacked near *Chick-a-mau'ga*

71. What was then done by General Lee? What victories did he gain? Where was he defeated? By whom was McClellan superseded?
72. What disasters ensued? Where was Lee defeated? With what result?
73. How was the Mississippi opened? What victory did Rosecrans gain? Where was he defeated? How was Bragg driven into Georgia?

Creek by Bragg, and compelled to fall back (Sept. 20). The timely arrival of Hooker and Grant, the latter of whom took the command, enabled the Union army to gain a decided victory, after a three days' conflict; and Bragg was driven back into Georgia (Nov. 25).

74. Gen. Grant, having been appointed commander-in-chief of all the armies of the Union, arranged, in the spring of 1864, two campaigns—one against Richmond, under his own direction, and the other against Atlanta, under *General Sherman.* The latter, by a series of masterly movements, compelled the Confederates to retreat, and finally succeeded in taking Atlanta (Sept. 2), which having destroyed, he made his memorable march through Georgia to the sea-coast, and occupied *Savannah* (Dec. 21). Meanwhile, *Gen. Thomas,* who had been left by Sherman with a considerable force in Tennessee, attacked the Confederate army under *Hood,* and, after a battle of two days, routed it with great slaughter (Dec. 16).

75. In Virginia, Gen. Grant had in the mean time encountered the Confederate army under Lee; and after a series of terrific battles, compelled it to retreat toward Richmond; but Grant having transferred his army to the south bank of the James, Lee, whose movements had been conducted with consummate skill, occupied Petersburg, and thus compelled the Unionists to lay siege to that city (June). This siege lasted until the following April, when, by a skilful movement, Grant compelled its evacuation; and both Petersburg and Richmond were occupied by the nation's victorious troops (April 3, 1865).

76. *Gen. Sheridan,* distinguished for his brilliant victories over the Confederate forces in the Shenandoah valley, was ordered to pursue the retreating army of Lee; and so

74. What campaigns were planned in the spring of 1865? What was accomplished by General Sherman? By General Thomas?

75. Describe Grant's campaign in Virginia. When and how was Richmond taken?

76. What was done by Sheridan? By Sherman, after leaving Savannah?

vigorously was the order obeyed, that in less than a week, Lee, being overtaken and surrounded, was compelled to surrender to Gen. Grant (April 9). Meanwhile, Sherman had continued his victorious march from Savannah. Passing through South Carolina, he occupied Columbia, compelled the evacuation of Charleston and Fort Sumter; and, entering North Carolina, defeated the Confederates in two battles (March).

77. The surrender of Lee was soon followed by that of the other Confederate generals, and the great civil war was at an end, having been brought to a close by the most persevering and gigantic efforts ever put forth by any nation. Through all disasters and discouragements, the patriotic and high-minded president had resolutely striven to save the integrity of the country, and had won the esteem and affection of all by his conscientious devotion to this noble cause. On the first of January, 1863, he had issued his memorable *emancipation proclamation*, giving freedom to all the slaves in the Confederate States, excepting in such portions as were occupied by the national troops. By this more than three millions of slaves were declared free.

78. Having been re-elected president in the fall of 1864, he had served but a few weeks of his second term, when, in less than one week after Lee's surrender, he was assassinated by a desperado acting in sympathy with the Confederate cause (April 14). The intelligence of this sad event filled every loyal heart throughout the land with sorrow and dismay, and for several weeks all the great cities throughout the North were draped in badges and emblems of mourning. The funeral cortege was followed by hundreds of thousands of the citizens of the republic, as it wended its way from the capital to Springfield, the former home of the deceased

77. How did the rebellion end? What is remarked of President Lincoln? What proclamation did he issue in January, 1863? What was its effect?

78. When and by whom was Abraham Lincoln assassinated? What was the result?

president,—thenceforth to be rendered sacred as his burial-place.

79. Johnson's Administration (1865–1869).—Andrew Johnson became president by the death of Abraham Lincoln, April 15. The assassin of the late president was pursued, and refusing to surrender, was shot. Most of his accomplices were apprehended, and, after trial, were hung *Jefferson Davis*, president of the late Confederacy, who had fled to Georgia, was arrested; but, after a long confinement in Fortress Monroe, was released. A resolution of Congress proposing an amendment to the Constitution, abolishing slavery, having been approved by the requisite number of states, slavery was declared to be abolished (Dec. 18th, 1865). At this time the national debt amounted to about $2,700,000,000.

80. Notwithstanding the veto of the president, the "reconstruction act" was passed, admitting the states recently in rebellion to their former participation in the government, on the adoption of republican constitutions, and the election, by the suffrages of both white and black citizens, of representatives, who had not been concerned in the rebellion. Under this law, most of the states have formally returned to their allegiance, and are now (1869) represented in Congress. During the year 1867, *Nebraska* was admitted into the Union, and the territorial possessions of the United States were increased by the purchase of Russian America, to which the name *Alaska* was given. In the fall of 1868, *General Grant* and *Schuyler Colfax* were elected president and vice-president, respectively, of the United States.

---

79. Who succeeded Lincoln in the presidency? What was done with the assassin of the President, and his accomplices? With Jefferson Davis? How was slavery abolished? What did the national debt amount to?

80. What was the "reconstruction act?" How was it passed? What were its chief provisions? What has resulted from it? What new state was admitted in 1867? What territory was purchased? Who were elected President and Vice President in 1868?

Mexico.

81. *Mexico* was inhabited, previous to the discovery of America, by a race called the *Aztecs*, and had risen to a condition of considerable civilization and splendor. It had its orators and poets, its sculptors and architects; and the mighty ruins which still greet the traveller amid the overgrowing forests, attest the genius and enterprise of its inhabitants. As already stated, this great nation was subdued by a few Spaniards under Cortez, a bold and unscrupulous leader, and became a Spanish province (1521).

82. It thus remained for three centuries; but bitter dissensions grew up between the Spaniards and the Creoles and mixed races, and the government was frequently threatened with insurrection. This was particularly the case during the troubles in Spain occasioned by the Peninsular war; but the viceroy succeeded in crushing the various chiefs who sprang up, and preserved the government from overthrow (1811).

83. The revolutionary movement, however, soon commenced again; and *Iturbide* (*e-toor'be-tha*) became emperor in 1822, but in consequence of a tyrannical abuse of power was obliged to abdicate. This was followed by the establishment of the independence of Mexico (1824), which was soon acknowledged by all the principal foreign nations except Spain (1825). A government was then organized on the plan of that of the United States; but its benefits were entirely prevented by the ceaseless intrigues of the military leaders, each ambitious to acquire the supreme authority, and constantly plotting revolution to overturn the established government.

---

81. By whom was Mexico inhabited previous to the discovery of America? What is said of the Aztecs? By whom was Mexico subdued?

82. How long did it remain a province of Spain? What dissensions arose? When were there insurrections? How were they subdued?

83. Who became emperor in 1822? What followed? When was the independence of Mexico acknowledged by foreign nations? What government was organized? How were its benefits prevented?

84. Prominent among these was *Santa Anna*, whose remarkable career presents a singular series of vicissitudes. Repeatedly made president or dictator, he has as often been deposed and driven into exile. During the war with the United States (1846–7), he was at the head of the government, and experienced a succession of disastrous defeats, resulting in the total prostration of the Mexican republic to the power of the United States.

85. Since his final deposition and banishment in 1855, Mexico has been a constant scene of strife and anarchy; and during the civil war waged by the rival chiefs *Miramon* (*me'rah-mon*) and *Juarez* (*hwah'rez*), such acts of flagrant injustice were committed against foreigners, that Great Britain, France, and Spain sent fleets into the Gulf of Mexico, to enforce satisfaction. The allied forces were about to proceed against the capital, when a treaty was entered into with the provisional government of Mexico by all the allies except France (1862).

86. In April, 1862, the French emperor declared war against Mexico, then under the government of Juarez, and having sent a considerable force there, captured *Puebla* (1863), and compelling Juarez to flee, took possession of the country. He then invited the *Archduke Maximilian*, brother of the emperor of Austria, to take the imperial throne of Mexico, which was accepted in 1864. It was, however, soon overturned by an insurrectionary movement under Juarez, who, gaining possession of the emperor, caused him to be shot (June 19, 1867). Since then, the country has continued under the rule of that successful popular leader.

Central America.

87. *Central America*, like Mexico, was formerly inhabited

84. Who was prominent among the Mexican leaders? What is said of Santa Anna?

85. What led to the interference of Great Britain, France, and Spain? What treaty was made?

86. What was done by the French emperor? Who was made emperor of Mexico? How and by whom was he deposed? What followed?

by the Aztecs, the massive ruins of whose cities still astonish the traveller amid its luxuriant tropical forests. It was subdued by the Spaniards soon after the conquest of Mexico, and remained in their possession until 1821, when it became a part of the dominions of the Mexican emperor Iturbide. After his fall (1823) the five states of Guatemala (*gwah-te-mah'lah*), Hondu'ras, Nicaragua (*nik-a-rah'gwah*), San Salvador, and Costa Rica (*re'kah*), formed a federal union, with the title of the "United States of Central America." In 1839 the union was dissolved, and the states became independent republics. *Belize* (*ba-leez'*), since 1783, has been in the undisputed possession of Great Britain, and the *Mosquito Kingdom* is an independent Indian state under British protection.

The West Indies.

88. These islands were discovered by Columbus in his first voyage (1492), *Guanahani*, or *San Salvador*, being the first spot of the new world on which he landed. His discovery of these islands gave to the Spaniards the exclusive right which they claimed to their possession. All the larger islands were soon colonized by them; and such was their harsh and cruel treatment of the mild and inoffensive aborigines, that the latter soon became almost extinct. Their places as slaves were then supplied by the unfortunate negroes, kidnapped from their homes in Africa. The smaller islands, left uninhabited, became places of shelter for the pirates, called *Buccaneers*, who swarmed in the Caribbean (*car-ib-be'an*) Sea and the Gulf of Mexico, and made navigation subject to great peril and disaster.

89. *Cuba*, still in the possession of Spain, was attacked in 1762 by the British; and *Havana* was taken at the point

87. By whom was Central America formerly inhabited? By whom was it subdued? What happened in 1821? In 1823? When was the union dissolved? What is said of Belize? Of the Mosquito kingdom?

88. Who discovered the West Indies? Which of them were colonized by the Spaniards? What was their treatment of the natives? Who were the Buccaneers?

of the bayonet. It was, however, given back the next year. Sir Francis Drake distinguished himself for several successful attacks on the Spanish possessions in the West Indies, particularly *Porto Rico*. *Jamaica* was colonized by the Spaniards in 1509; and by means of the enforced labor of the Indians, and subsequently of the negroes, great quantities of sugar, cotton and other rich products, were raised. It was taken by an expedition under Admiral Penn and Gen. Venables, sent out by Cromwell in 1655. In 1834, the slaves were emancipated by the British government, but were bound as apprentices to their former masters. In 1865, a negro insurrection broke out, but was put down by the prompt and terribly severe measures of *Governor Eyre* (*ire*).

90. *Hayti* (*ha'tee*), or *His-pan-i-o'la* (*Little Spain*) was discovered by Columbus in 1492, and remained the undisputed property of Spain until 1697, when the western part of the island was surrendered to France. The latter part attained a high degree of prosperity, while the Spanish settlements languished and declined. In 1790, the population of the island was estimated at 550,000, a large part of whom were negro slaves. During the French revolution (1794), the negroes found an heroic champion in one of their number named *Toussaint L'Ouverture* (*too'sang loo'ver-ture*), who contended for a long time, with great success, against the white oppressors of his race, finally proclaiming himself *Emperor of Hayti*, in imitation of Napoleon. At last taken prisoner by the French, he was sent to France, and was confined in prison, where he died after ten months' captivity (1803).

91. The sad fate of this man, the greatest and noblest

---

89. By whom was Cuba attacked in 1762? What was done by Drake? Give a sketch of the history of Jamaica.

90. By whom was Hayti discovered? What happened in 1773? What was the population in 1790? Give the history of Toussaint L'Ouverture.

91. What is remarked of his fate? When was the Haytien Republic established? The Republic of St. Domingo? Who was Soulouque? What title did he assume? When did he abdicate?

of the negroes mentioned in history, has reflected undying disgrace upon Napoleon I., by whom he was thus cruelly treated for following his example, but with a much more patriotic devotion to his country and his race. After many years of trouble (1822), the *Haytien Republic* was established, to which the Spanish portion of the island was annexed. In 1844, the inhabitants of the latter, by a successful insurrection, formed themselves into a separate republic, under the name of *St. Domingo.* A few years afterward (1849), *Soulouque* (*soo-look'*), the president of the Haytien republic, made an unsuccessful attempt to subjugate St. Domingo; but the next year he succeeded in making himself emperor of Hayti, with the title of *Faustin I.* In 1859, however, he was compelled to abdicate, and the republic was restored.

NOTES.

1. Columbus in Chains (p. 360, ¶ 1).—"While Columbus, during his third voyage, in 1498, was making discoveries in the New World, his enemies in Spain 'artfully endeavored to undermine his credit with his sovereign,' by circulating false reports about his integrity and loyalty. At last the queen acquiesced in sending out a commission to investigate the affairs of the colony (Hispaniola). The person appointed to this delicate trust was Don Francisco de Rob-a-dil-la.

* * * From the very first, Robadilla regarded Columbus in the light of a convicted criminal, on whom it was his business to execute the sentence of the law. * * * Accordingly, on his arrival at the island, he commanded the admiral to appear before him, and without affecting the forms of a legal inquiry, at once caused him to be manacled and thrown into prison. Columbus submitted without the least show of resistance, displaying in this sad reverse that magnanimity of soul which would have touched the heart of a generous adversary. Robadilla caused the accusation to be sent back to Spain with the admiral, whom he commanded to be kept strictly in irons during the passage. * * * So monstrous an outrage shocked the minds of even those most prejudiced against Columbus; and none partook of the general indignation more strongly than Ferdinand and Isabella. They sent to Cadiz without an instant's delay, and commanded the admiral to be released from his ignominious fetters."—*Prescott's Ferdinand and Isabella.*

2. Burial of De Soto (p. 361, ¶ 4).—"They buried him in the dead of night, with sentinels posted to keep the natives at a distance, that the sad ceremony might be safe from the observation of their spies. The place chosen for the sepulcher was one of many pits, broad and deep, in a plain near to the village, from whence the Indians had taken earth for their buildings. But with all their precautions, they soon found out that the Indians suspected not only the death of the governor, but the place where he lay buried; for, in passing by the pit, they would stop, look round attentively on all sides, talk with one another, and make signs with their chins and their eyes toward the spot where the body was interred. The Spaniards, perceiving this, determined to disinter the body and deposit it in the mid-channel of the Mississippi. As there was no stone in the neighborhood wherewith to sink it, they cut down an evergreen oak, and made an excavation in one side, of the size of a man. On the following night, with all the silence possible, they disinterred the body, and placed it in the trunk of the oak, nailing planks over the aperture. The rustic coffin was then conveyed to the center of the river, where, in presence of priests and cavaliers, it was committed to the stream, and they beheld it sink to the bottom, shedding many tears over this second funeral rite, and commending anew the soul of the good cavalier to heaven."—*Theo. Irving's Conquest of Florida.*

3. The Lost Colony of Roanoke (p. 362, ¶ 7).—"White found the island of Roanoke a desert (1590). As he approached the island, he sounded a signal trumpet, but no answer was heard to disturb the melancholy stillness that brooded over the deserted spot. What had become of the wretched colonists? No man may with certainty say; for all that White found to indicate their fate was a high post bearing on it the letters CRO; and, at the former site of their village, he found a tree which had been deprived of its bark, and bore, in well-cut characters, the word CROATAN. * * * Thus ended the effort to find the lost

colony, and they were never heard of. That they went to Croatan (further south) where the natives were friendly, is almost certain; that they became gradually incorporated with them is probable from the testimony of a historian who lived in North Carolina and wrote in 1714: 'The Hatteras Indians, who lived on Roanoke Island or much frequented it, tell us,' says he, 'that several of their ancestors were white people, and could talk in a book, as we do. The truth of this is confirmed by gray eyes being found frequently amongst those Indians, a circumstance which does not occur in any other tribe.'"—*Hawk's History of North Carolina.*

4. Hooker's Emigration to Connecticut (p. 363, ¶ 11).—"There were of the company about one hundred souls; many of them accustomed to affluence and the ease of European life. They drove before them numerous herds of cattle; and thus they traversed on foot the pathless forests of Massachusetts; advancing hardly ten miles a day through the tangled woods, across the swamps and numerous streams, and over the highlands that separated the several intervening valleys; subsisting, as they slowly wandered along, on the milk of the kine, which browsed on the fresh leaves and early shoots; having no guide through the nearly untrodden wilderness, but the compass, and no pillow for their nightly rest but heaps of stones. How did the hills echo with the unwonted lowing of the herds! How were the forests enlivened by the loud and fervent piety of Hooker! Never again was there such a pilgrimage from the sea-side 'to the delightful banks' of the Connecticut."—*Bancroft's History of the United States.*

5. Penn's Treaty with the Indians (p. 365, ¶ 17).—"On the banks of the Delaware, in the suburbs of the rising city of Philadelphia, was a fine natural amphitheater, used from time immemorial as a place of meeting for the native tribes. At this spot stood one of those glorious elms which so preeminently mark the forests of the New World. It was already one hundred and fifty-five years old. When Penn proposed his solemn conference, he named this spot, as a matter of course, for its location. This conference, we all know, has become one of the most striking scenes in history. Artists have painted, poets have sung, and philosophers have praised it. In the center stood Wm. Penn, in costume undistinguished from the surrounding group, save by his silken sash. * * * When the Indians approached in their old forest costume, their bright feathers sparkling in the sun, and their bodies painted in the most gorgeous manner, the proprietor received them with the easy dignity of one accustomed to mix with European courts. The venerable Indian king then seated himself on the ground, with the older sachems on his right and left; the middle-aged warriors ranged themselves in the form of a crescent, or half-moon, round them; and the younger men formed a third and outer semicircle. Penn then arose and addressed them in their own language, and, unfolding the writing of the treaty of frendship, laid the scroll on the ground. The sachems received his proposal of peace and friendship with decent gravity, and accepted it for themselves and their children. No oaths, no seals, no official mummeries were used; the treaty was ratified with a yea, yea."—*Dixon's Life of William Penn.*

6. Discovery of the Pacific (p. 368, ¶ 26).—"A little before Vas'-co Nuñ'-ez de Balboa reached the height, the Indians informed him of his near approach to the sea (1513). It was a sight in beholding which, for the first time, any man would wish to be alone. He bade his men sit down while he ascended; and then, in solitude, looked down upon the vast Pacific—the first man of the Old World, so far as we know, who had done so. Falling on his knees, he gave thanks to God for the favor shown him, in his being permitted to discover the Sea of the

South. Having taken formal possession, on behalf of the Kings of Castile, of the sea and all that was in it, by cutting down trees, forming crosses, and heaping up stones, he descended with difficulty to the shore, accompanied by eighty of his men. He entered the sea up to his thighs, having his sword on, and with his shield in his hand. Then he called the bystanders to witness how he touched with his person and took possession of this sea for the Kings of Castile."—*Helps's Spanish Conquests in America.*

7. Hull's Surrender of Detroit (p. 377, ¶ 49).—"General Hull had been in many battles of the Revolution. He had led a column of Wayne's troops at the taking of Stony Point, and for his conduct in that action received the thanks of Washington, and promotion in the service. He was in the midst of the battle of White Plains, and was there wounded. He was in the battles of Trenton and Princeton. He fought at Ticonderoga, Bemis Heights, Saratoga, Monmouth, and other places, and led regiments and battalions in most of these battles. * * * * Is it likely, therefore, that he should have been the only man in his army disabled by fear from fighting General Brock? What, then, were his reasons as given by himself? General Hull was now in the position in which, as he had stated to the administration before the war, Detroit must fall. His communications to Ohio were cut off by the Indians in the woods; his communications by the lakes were cut off by the British vessels; and he had no co-operation at Niagara. If he should fight a battle, and defeat the British army, his fate would not be less inevitable, for a victory would not re-open his communications. Besides this, his forces were vastly inferior to those of the enemy, his provisions were nearly exhausted, and there was no possibility of obtaining a supply from any quarter. If he were to fight, he would save his own reputation, but could not save the army or territory, and he would be exposing the defenseless inhabitants of Michigan to all the horrors of Indian warfare, without a reason or an object. Under these circumstances, it would be the part of a selfish man to fight. It was the part of a brave and generous man to hazard the sacrifice of his own reputation as a soldier, and his own selfish feelings, to his duty as a governor and a man. General Hull did the last, and never regretted it for a moment. He was asked, on his death-bed, whether he still believed he had done right in the surrender of Detroit, and he replied that he did, and was thankful that he had been enabled to do so."—*James Freeman Clarke's Campaign of* 1812.

8. Burning of the City of Washington (p. 379, ¶ 51).—"This," says an officer in Ross's army, "was a night of dismay to the inhabitants of Washington. The streets were crowded with men, women, and children, horses, carriages, and carts loaded with household furniture, all hastening toward a wooden bridge which crosses the Potomac." * * * * "At a small beer house opposite to the Treasury, fire was procured, with which the Treasury and then the President's house were set fire to. Before setting fire to the latter building, it was ransacked for booty, especially for objects of curiosity, to be carried off as spoils; but few were found. Some pictures and books, chosen from Mr. Madison's library, were all that were deemed worth preserving, except a small parcel of pencil notes, which, during the last few days, had been received by Mrs. Madison from her husband, while he was with the troops, and which she had rolled up together and put into a table-drawer. To all the rest of the contents of the building—furniture, wines, provisions, groceries, and family stores, together with an excellent library—the torch was applied. After incendiarism had done its worst, both at the President's house and the Navy Yard, indiscriminate pillage closed the scene. * * * * But the day's victory and night's devastation brought the conquerors to a pause and retirement."—*Ingersoll's Second War with Great Britain.*

9. The Star-Spangled Banner (p. 379, ¶ 51).—"During the tremendous bombardment of Fort McHenry, Francis S. Key lay in a little vessel under the British admiral's frigate. He had visited the fleets for the purpose of obtaining an exchange of some prisoners of war, especially of one who was a personal friend, and was directed to remain till after the action. During the day his eye had rested eagerly on that low fortification over which the flag of his country was flying; and he watched with the intensest anxiety the progress of each shell in its flight, rejoicing when it fell short of its aim, and filled with fear as he saw it descend without exploding within those silent enclosures. At night, when darkness shut out that object of so much intense interest, around which every hope and desire of his life seemed to cling, he still stood straining his eyes through the gloom, to catch, if he could, by the light of the blazing shells, a glimpse of his country's flag, waving proudly in the storm. The early dawn found him still a watcher; and there, to the music of bursting shells and the roar of cannon, he composed 'The Star-Spangled Banner.'"—*Headley's Second War with England.*

10. Jackson's Cotton-Bale Defenses of New Orleans (p. 378, ¶ 52).—"Each company had its own line of embankment to throw up, which it called its castle, and strained every muscle in fierce but friendly rivalry to make it overtop the castles of the rest. The nature of the soil rendered the task one of peculiar difficulty. Dig down three feet anywhere in that singular plain, and you come to water. Earth soon becomes the scarcest of commodities near the lines, and had to be brought from far after the first hours. An idea occurs to an ingenious French intellect. *Cotton bales!* The town is full of cotton. And, lo, here, close to the lines, is a vessel laden with cotton, waiting for a chance to get to sea. The idea, however, plausible as it was, did not stand the test of service. The first cannonade knocked the cotton bales about in a manner that made General Jackson more eager to get rid of them than he had been to use them. Some of the bales, too, caught fire, and made a most intolerable and persistent smoke, so that, before the final conflict, every pound of cotton was removed from the lines. A similar error was made by the enemy, who, supposing that sugar would offer resistance to cannon-balls equal to sand, employed hogsheads of sugar in the formation of their batteries. The first ball that knocked a hogshead to pieces, and kept on its destructive way unchecked, convinced them that sugar and sand, though often found together, have little in common."—*Parton's Life of Jackson.*

11. The Rush for Gold (p. 383, ¶ 62).—"An agent of the United States Government, who visited California about three months after the first discovery of gold there, reported that, 'San Francisco was deserted of nearly all its male inhabitants, and even females were very scarce. The mills in the vicinity were idle, the fields were open to cattle, the houses were vacant, and the farms going to waste. At Sutter's, where the discovery was made, there was much life and bustle. Flour was selling at thirty-six dollars a barrel (it sold afterwards at a hundred), and Captain Sutter was carefully gathering his crop of wheat, estimated at forty thousand bushels. The captain had two mechanics in his employ, to each of whom he gave ten dollars a day. A two-story house, within the fort, was rented as a hotel at five hundred dollars a month. At a place about twenty-five miles up the American fork of the Sacramento river, there was a mining camp in full operation. Canvas tents and arbors of bushes covered the hill-side. There was a store, and several shanties were used as boarding-houses. The sun poured down its rays with intense heat upon two hundred miners working for gold, some using tin pans, some baskets, and some rude cradles.'"—*Tuthill's History of California.*

CHRONOLOGICAL RECAPITULATION.

A. D.

1492. Discovery of America by Christopher Columbus.
1497. Mainland of North America reached by John Cabot.
1498. Mainland of South America reached by Columbus.
1499. Voyage of Vespucci and Ojeda.
1500. Coast of Brazil reached by Cabral.
1512. Discovery of Florida by Ponce de Leon.
1513. Pacific Ocean first seen by Balboa.
1519-22. Voyage of Magellan.
1521. Conquest of Mexico by Cortes.
1524. Coast of North America explored by Verrazzani.
1530. Rio de la Plata explored by Sebastian Cabot.
1533. Conquest of Peru by Pizarro.
1534. Gulf and river of St. Lawrence discovered by Cartier.
1539. Amazon River explored by Orellana.
1541. Mississippi River discovered by De Soto.
" Santiago, Chili, founded by Valdivia.
1565. St. Augustine, Florida, founded by the Spaniards.
1580. Buenos Ayres founded by the Spaniards.
1585. First English Colony on the island of Roanoke.
1605. Port Royal, Acadia, settled by De Monts.
1607. **Virginia** (I.) settled at Jamestown by the English.
1608. Quebec settled by the French under Champlain.
1609. The Hudson River discovered by the Dutch under Hudson.
1614. **New York** (II.) settled by the Dutch at *New Amsterdam.*
1620. **Massachusetts** (III.) settled by the Puritans at *Plymouth.*
1623. **New Hampshire** (IV.) settled by the English.
1630. Boston settled by the English.
1633. **Connecticut** (V.) settled by emigrants from Massachusetts.
1634. **Maryland** (VI.) settled by the English Catholics.
1636. **Rhode Island** (VII.) settled by Roger Williams.
1638. **Delaware** (VIII.) settled by the Swedes.
1650. **North Carolina** (IX.) settled by emigrants from Virginia.
1664. New Netherlands taken by the English.
" **New Jersey** (X.) settled by the English at Elizabethtown.
1670. **South Carolina** (XI.) settled by the English.
1682. **Pennsylvania** (XII.) settled by the Quakers under Penn.
1691. Mouth of the Mississippi discovered by La Salle.
1710. Port Royal taken by the English, and named Annapolis.
1732. George Washington born in Virginia, (February 22).
1733. **Georgia** (XIII.) settled by the English at Savannah.

1754. Commencement of the French and Indian War.
1759. Quebec taken by the English. Death of General Wolfe.
1763. Treaty of Paris. Canada given up to the English.
1765. Passage of the Stamp Act.
1773. The tea thrown overboard at Boston.
1774. The *First Continental Congress* met at Philadelphia.
1775. Battles of Lexington and Bunker Hill.
" Montgomery slain at Quebec.
1776. **Declaration of American Independence** (July 4th).
" Battles of Long Island and Trenton.
1777. Battles of Chad's Ford and Germantown.
" **Surrender of Burgoyne** at Saratoga (October 17th).
1778. American independence acknowledged by France.
" Battle of Monmouth.
1779. Repulse of the Americans and French at Savannah.
1780. Charleston taken by the British.
" Gates defeated by Cornwallis at Camden.
" Treason of Benedict Arnold.
1781. Greene's Campaign in the South.
" **Surrender of Cornwallis** at Yorktown (October 19th).
1783. Independence of U. S. acknowledged by Great Britain.
1787. Constitution of U. S. adopted by the Convention at Philadelphia.
1789. **Washington** (I.) the first President of the United States.
1791 *Vermont* admitted into the Union.
1792. *Kentucky* admitted into the Union.
1796. *Tennessee* admitted into the Union.
1797. **John Adams** (II.) President of the United States.
1799. Death of Washington.
1800. Capital of U. S. removed from Philadelphia to Washington.
1801. **Thomas Jefferson** (III.) President of the United States.
1803. Louisiana purchased from France.
" Death of Toussaint L'Ouverture in prison in France.
1809. **James Madison** (IV.) President of the United States.
1811. Victory over the Indians at Tippecanoe by General Harrison.
1812. War declared by the United States against Great Britain.
" Surrender of Detroit by General Hull.
1813. Perry's victory on Lake Erie.
" Victory at the Thames by General Harrison.
1814. Battles of Chippewa and Lundy Lane.
" The city of Washington taken by General Ross.
" Treaty of peace signed at Ghent.

1815. Victory over the British at New Orleans by Jackson.
1817. **James Monroe** (V.) President of the United States.
1820. Passage of the *Missouri Compromise* bill.
1826. Independence of Peru acknowledged by Spain.
1825. **John Quincy Adams** (VI.) President of the United States.
" Independence of Mexico acknowledged.
1829. **Andrew Jackson** (VII.) President of the United States.
1835. War with the Seminoles in Florida.
1837. **Martin Van Buren** (VIII.) President of the United States.
" Defeat of the Seminoles by Taylor.
1841. **William Henry Harrison** (IX.) President of the United States.
" **John Tyler** (X.) President of the United States.
1842. The war with the Seminoles terminated.
1845. **James K. Polk** (XI.) President of the United States.
" Texas admitted into the Union.
1846. Commencement of war between the United States and Mexico
1847. Victory over Santa Anna by Taylor at Buena Vista.
" The city of Mexico taken by General Scott.
1848. Treaty of peace between the United States and Mexico.
1849. **Zachary Taylor** (XII.) President of the United States.
1850. Death of President Taylor.
" **Millard Fillmore** (XIII.) President of the United States.
" California admitted into the Union.
" Soulouque (*Faustin I.*) Emperor of Hayti.
1853. **Franklin Pierce** (XIV.) President of the United States.
1854. Passage of Kansas and Nebraska bill.
1857. **James Buchanan** (XV.) President of the United States.
1859. Abdication of Soulouque, Emperor of Hayti.
1860. Secession ordinance passed by South Carolina.
1861. Secession ordinances passed by ten other States.
" **Abraham Lincoln** (XVI.) President of the United States.
" Beginning of the great war of the Rebellion.
" First battle of Bull Run.
1862. New Orleans taken by the Unionists.
" The Seven Days' battles under McClellan.
" Defeat of the Union army at Bull Run.
" Victory over the Confederates at Antietam by McClellan.
" War declared against Mexico by France.
1863. Emancipation proclamation issued by President Lincoln.
" Victory gained by Rosecrans at Murfreesboro.
" Defeat of the Unionists at Chancellorsville.
" Defeat of the Confederates under Lee at Gettysburg.

1863. Vicksburg taken by General Grant.
1864. Campaign of Grant in Virginia. Petersburg besieged.
" Atlanta taken by General Sherman.
" Battle of Nashville. Confederates defeated by Thomas.
1865. Surrender of General Lee. End of the Rebellion.
" Assassination of President Lincoln.
" **Andrew Johnson** (XVII.) President of the United States.
" Slavery abolished throughout the United States.
1867. Reconstruction Bill passed by Congress.
" The Emperor Maximilian shot in Mexico.
1868. Election of *General Grant* and *Schuyler Colfax*, President and Vice-President of the United States.

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

PAGE

1. What important voyages were made to America in the 15th century? 227-234-359
2. What important voyages were made in the 16th century? 360-361
3. Give a sketch of the colonial history of Virginia 361
4. Of Massachusetts 361
5. Of New Hampshire.... 361
6. Of Connecticut 362
7. Of Rhode Island 362
8. Of New York 362-363
9. Of New Jersey 363
10. Of Maryland 363-364
11. Of Pennsylvania 364
12. Of Delaware 364-365
13. Of Georgia 365
14. Of North and South Carolina.. 360-365
15. Of Louisiana 366
16. What French colonies were established in America? 365-366
17. What did the Portuguese accomplish in America? 366-367
18. Who was Pizarro, and what did he accomplish? 367-368
19. What else was accomplished for Spain in South America? 368
20. In what wars did the British colonies of America suffer? 270-301
21. Give a sketch of the causes of the Revolutionary war 369-370
22. What military events took place before Independence was declared?.. 370-371
23. Give an account of those that occurred in Massachusetts 370-371
24. Give an account of the other events of the year 1775 370-371
25. What events of importance took place in 1776? 371-373
26. Describe the battle of Long Island and Washington's retreat to Penna. 371
27. What were the important events of 1777? 371-372-373
28. Describe Washington's contests with General Howe 371-372
29. Give an account of the invasion and surrender of Burgoyne 372-373
30. Give an account of the events of 1778 373
31. Give an account of the events of 1779 373
32. Give an account of the events of 1780 373-374
33. Give an account of the events of 1781, and close of the war 374
34. What is said of the Articles of Confederation and the Constitution?... 374-375
35. Give an outline of the events of Washington's administration 375
36. Of John Adams's 375
37. Of Jefferson's 375-376
38. What were the causes of the second war with England? 376
39. Give a sketch of the military events previous to 1813 376
40. Give a sketch of the military events of 1813 376
41. Give a sketch of the military events of 1814 377-278
42. Give a sketch of the naval events of the war 376-377-275
43. What were the important events of Monroe's administration? 378-379
44. Of John Q. Adams's? 379
45. Of Jackson's? 379-380
46. Of Van Buren's? 380
47. Of Tyler's? 380
48. Give the cause and commencement of the Mexican war 380-381
49. Give an account of the events of 1846 381
50. Give an account of the events of 1847 381-382
51. When was a treaty made, and what were its terms? 382
52. What were the events of Taylor's and Fillmore's administration? 382
53. Of Pierce's? 382-383
54. Of Buchanan's? 383-384
55. Relate the causes which led to the "Great Civil War" 384-385
56. What did the Confederates do before the inauguration of Lincoln? 385
57. What afterward occurred before McClellan took command? 385
58. Give an account of McClellan's movements 385-386-387
59. Give an account of the operations in Missouri 386
60. Give an account of the operations in Louisiana 386

PAGE

61. Give an account of Lee's operations previous to 1865.... 386–387
62. Give an account of Burnside's operations..... 387
63. Of Pope's ..... 387 64. Of Hooker's..... 387
65. Of Banks's..... 387 66. Of Rosecrans's..... 387
67. Of Grant's..... 386–387–388 68. Of Sheridan's..... 388
69. Of Sherman's ..... 388–389 70. Of Thomas's..... 388
71. What were the closing events of the war?..... 389
72. What had President Lincoln done in reference to the slaves?..... 389
73. What can you state of Lincoln's character, acts, and death? 389
74. Name the principal events of Johnson's administration..... 390
75. Give, as far as you can, the history of slavery in the U. S..... 379–383–389–390
76. By whom was Johnson succeeded in the Presidency?..... 390
77. Give the history of Mexico previous to the discovery of America..... 391
78. Its subsequent history to the establishment of its independence..... 391
79. Give a sketch of the career of Santa Anna..... 381–382–392
80. What treaty was made by Mexico in 1862?..... 392
81. What circumstances led to the making of the treaty?..... 392
82. Give the subsequent history of Mexico.... 392
83. Give the history of Central America previous to 1821..... 392–393
84. Give the subsequent history of Central America... 393
85. What can you state of Belize and the Mosquito kingdom?..... 393
86. What events in the life of Columbus can you mention? 359–367–368–393
87. By what right does Spain hold many islands of the West Indies?..... 393
88. What account can you give of the Buccaneers?..... 393
89. What history can you give of the Island of Cuba?..... 393–394
90. State all the facts you can in relation to Jamaica..... 394
91. Give the history of Hayti, or Hispaniola..... 394–395
92. Give the facts in relation to Toussaint L'Ouverture..... 394–395
93. Name, in chronological order, the most prominent facts in American history of the 15th century 396
94. Name, in order, those of the 16th century..... 396
95. Name, in order, those of the 17th century..... ... 396
96. Name, in order, those of the 18th century. 396–397
97. Name, in order, those of the 19th century..... 397–398

INDEX.

PAGE

A.

Abbasides (*ab-bas'e-dēz*) 152
Abbé de Fleu'ry 302
Abd-el-Ka'der 319
Ab'dul A'ziz 352
Ab-er-crom'bie, Sir Ralph 273
Abouker (*ab-oo-keer'*) 310
A'bra-ham 26
A-bu'be-ker 150
Ab-ys-siu'i-a 280
A-ca'di-a 365
Ac-ar-na'ni-a 34
A-chæ'an League 59
Achaia (*a-ka'yah*) 34
Achaia, a Roman province 61
Achilles (*a-kil'lēz*) 34
Acre (*a'ker*) 208, 210, 310
Act of Conformity 240
Actium (*ak'she-um*) 100
Adams, John 375, 379
Adams, John Quincy 379
Ad'di-son 267
A-dol'phus, King of the Goths 125
Adolphus, Gustavus 327, 338
A'dri-an 111, 112
A-dri-an-o'ple 123, 139
A-dri-at'ic, Wedding the 222
Ægean (*ē-ge'an*) Sea 31, 39
Æ'gos-pot'a-mos 45, 48
Æ'li-a Cap-i-to-li'na 112
Æ-mil'i-us 80, 84
Æ-o'li-ans, Migration of 35
Æ'qui-ans 71
Aetius (*a-e'she-us*) 126
Æ-to'li-a 34
Æ-to'li-an League 59
Af-ghan-is-tan' 278
Af'ri-ca 11, 125 135, 153, 227, 393
A-gath'o-clēs 78
Age of Despots 38
Agesilaus (*a-jes-e-la'us*) 48, 49
Agincourt (*aj'in-court*) 179, 199
A'gis 56, 59
Agnadello (*an-yah-del'lo*) 287
A-gra'ri-an Laws 70, 86
A-gric'o-la 110
Ag-ri-gen'tum 61
Ag-rip-pi'na 107
A-has-u-e'rus 32
Ah'ri-man 33
Aix-la-Chapelle (*ākes lah sha-pel'*) 145
270, 303, 329
Ak'bah 151
Alabama (*al-ah-bah'mah*) 377, 378, 385
Al'a-ric 124, 125
A-las'ka 390
Albany (*awl'ba-ne*) 363
Al-be-marle', Duke of 259
Albert I. 217, 219

PAGE

Albert II. 218
Albert, Prince 278, 280
Albigenses (*al-be-jen'sēz*) 191, 192
Albigeois (*al'be-zhwah*) 191
Al'bo-in 134
Alcibiades (*al-se-bī'ah-dēz*) 45
Alcuin (*al'kwin*) 145
A-lep'po 138
Al-ex-an'der the Great 51, 53, 54, 55
Alexander II. of Russia 343
Alexander III., King of Scotland 171
Alexander VI., Pope 286
Alexander Se-ve'rus 116
Al-ex-an'dri-a 53, 84, 96, 115, 135, 309
Al-fon'so II. of Aragon 285
Al-fon'so III. of Portugal 227
Alfonso VI. of Portugal 227
Alfonso X. of Portugal 225
Alfred the Great 157
Al-ge'ri-a, Conquest of 319
Algiers (*al-jeerz'*) 378
Al-bam'bra 227
Ali (*ah'lē*) 150
Al-le-man'ni 143
Al'li-a River 73
Al'ma 279
Almagro (*al-mah'gro*) 368
Al Mansur (*man-soor'*) 152
Alps 80, 214, 310
Alsace (*al-sahs'*) 297
Altai (*al-ti'*) 134
Al'torf 217
Alva, Duke of 336
Alyattes (*ā-ie-at'tēz*) 17
A-mal'ri 224
A-mā'sis 21
Am'a-zon 367
America 270, 359
America, North, 147, 234, 241, 258, 271 270
359
America, South ... 234, 359, 366, 367, 368
Amerigo Vespucci (*ah-ma-re'go ves-poot'che*) 359, 368
American Colonies 269, 272, 361
Am'i-das 360
Amiens (*am'e-enz*), Treaty of ... 273, 311
A'mir-al-ma 151
Am'mon 31
A-moor' River 343
Am-phic-ty-on'ic Council 51, 62
Am-phip'o-lis 44, 50
Am'ster-dam 300
Am'u-rath 139
An'cus Martius (*mar'she-us*) 68
An'gles 147
Anjou (*ahn'joo*) 187
An-nap'o-lis 365, 366
Anne, Queen of England ... 263, 265, 266
Anne of Austria 298

PAGE
Anne Boleyn (*an bûl'en*).... 235, 236, 237
Anne, Duchess of Brittany.... 285, 286
Anne of Cleves.... 237
An'son, Commodore.... 268
Antalcidas (*an-tal'se-das*).... 48
Antietam (*an-te'tam*).... 387
An-tig'o-nus.... 57, 58
Antigonus Do'son.... 60
Antigonus Go-na'tas.... 59
An'ti-och, founded by Seleucus.... 58
An-ti'o-chus the Great.... 83, 93
An-tip'a-ter.... 51, 56, 57
Antoinette, Marie (*an-twah-net'*) 304, 308
An-to-ni'nus Pi'us.... 112
Antoninus, Marcus Au-re'li-us.. 112, 113
An'to-ny, Mark.... 98, 99, 100
Ant'werp.... 336
A-pol'lo, Oracle and Temple of.... 63
Ap'pi-us Clau'di-us.... 72
A-pu'li-a.... 223
Aquitaine (*ak-we-tain'*).... 143
Ar-a-bel'la Stuart.... 245
A-ra'bi-a.... 23, 24, 55, 150
Ar'a-go.... 319
Ar'a-gon.... 193, 224, 225
A'ram.... 26
A-ra'tus of Sicyon (*sish'e-on*).... 59, 60
Arbela (*ar-be'lah*).... 54
Ar-ca'di-a.... 34
Ar-ca'di-us.... 124, 131
Archangel (*ark-ân'gel*).... 239
Archimedes (*ar-ke-me'dēz*).... 78, 81
Archons (*ar'kons*).... 37
Ardesher (*ard-e-shēr'*).... 116
A-re-op'a-gus.... 37
Argentine (*ar-jen-teen'*) Republic.... 368
Argo.... 35
Ar'go-lis.... 34, 36
Ar-go-naut'ic Expedition.... 35
Ar'gos.... 36, 45, 48, 77
Aristides (*ar-is-ti'dēz*).... 41, 42, 43
Ar-is-to-bu'lus.... 93
Aristobulus II.... 93
Aristotle (*ar'is-tot-el*).... 51
Arles (*arl*).... 146
Ar-ma'da, Invincible.... 241
Ar-me'ni-a.... 92, 96
Ar-min'i-us.... 105
Arnold, Benedict.... 371, 373
Arnold of Winkelried (*win'kel-reed*) 219
Artaphernes (*ar-tah-pher'nēz*).... 39
Artaxerxes I. (*ar-tax-erx'ēz*).... 32, 43
Artaxerxes II.... 46
Arthur, King.... 148
Arthur, Prince.... 167, 234
Artois (*ar'twah*), Count of.... 318
As'ca-lon.... 207
Ascham, Roger (*as'kam*).... 238
As'dru-bal.... 81
Ash'dod.... 26
Ashley River.... 365
Ash'ur.... 14
Asia (*a'she-ah*).... 11, 136, 222
Asia Minor.... 17, 84
As'ke-lon.... 26
As-mo-næ'an Dynasty.... 93
As'pern, Battle of.... 313
As-syr'i-a.... 14
Assyrians.... 17

PAGE
As-tra-chan' (*-kan*) or As-tra-can'.... 350
Astrology.... 23
Astronomy.... 152, 255
As-tu'ri-as.... 225
Astyages (*as-ti'ah jēz*).... 17
Ath'el-stan.... 157
Ath'ens.... 37
Ath'os, Mt.... 89
At-lan'tic.... 25, 146
Atlantic Cable.... 280
At'ta-lus.... 83, 84
Attica (*at'te-kah*).... 34, 37, 41, 44
Attila (*at'te-lah*).... 125, 126, 220
Augsburg (*augs'boorg*).... 214, 326
Augustan Age of England.... 267
Augustan Age of French Literature 302
Au'gustine, St.... 360
An-gus'tus.... 104, 105
Au-gus'tu-lus, Rom'u-lus.... 127
Au-re'li-an.... 119, 120
Au-re'li-us, Marcus.... 112, 113
Aus'ter-litz.... 311
Aus-tra'si-a (*-she-ah*).... 143
Austria.... 217, 296, 312, 330
Austrian Succession, War of, 269, 303, 328
Avars (*a-varz'*).... 133, 134, 145
Avignon (*ah-vēn'yong*).... 192, 194, 225
Az'tecs.... 391, 393

B.

Ba'bel.... 11
Bab'y-lon.... 13
Bab-y-lo'ni-a.... 12
Ba'con.... 244, 246
Bac'tri-a.... 54
Baden (*bah'den*).... 330
Bag'dad.... 136, 152, 153
Bailly (*bahl-ye'*).... 305
Baj'a-zet.... 139
Bajazet II.... 349
Bal-ak-la'va.... 279
Bal-bi'nus.... 117
Bal-bo'a.... 367
Baldwin, Count of Flanders.... 138, 209
Ba'li-ol, John.... 171, 172
Baltic.... 176
Baltimore.... 378
Banks, General.... 387
Ban'nock-burn.... 173
Bar-ba'does.... 259
Barbaric Monarchies, Map of..facing 131
Bar-ba-ros'sa, Frederick, 208, 215, 216, 221
Barbarossa, the Pirate.... 325
Barebone, Praise-God.... 255
Bar'low.... 360
Bar'net.... 182
Ba'sil II.... 136
Bastile (*bahs-teel'*).... 305
Batavian Republic.... 336
Ba-va'ri-a.... 218, 269, 330
Bāy'ard, Chevalier.... 287, 288, 289
Beauharnais (*bo-ar-na'*) Hortense.... 320
Beck'et, Thomas à.... 163, 164, 165
Bel or Be'lus.... 12
Belgium (*bel'je-um*).... 301, 335
Bel-grade'.... 328, 350
Bel-i-sa'ri-us.... 132, 133
Belize (*ba-leez'*).... 393
Bel-shaz'zar.... 14

PAGE
Be'mis (or Bem'is) Heights 373
Ben'e-dek, Marshal..... 330
Ben-e-ven'tum..... 76
Ben-e-ven'to..... 224
Bengal (*ben-gawl'*)..... 271
Ben-ha'dad..... 26
Ben'ning-ton..... 373
Beresina (*ber-e-ze'na*)..... 315
Ber'gen..... 216, 363
Berkley, Lord..... 363
Ber-lin', or Ber'lin..... 312, 330
Ber-na-dotte'..... 339
Berne..... 344
Be-ro'sus..... 14
Ber'tha..... 188
Bible, English..... 237, 247
Bi-thyn'i-a..... 84, 139
Black Prince.. 174, 175, 197, 198, 225, 226
Blackheath..... 177
Blake, Admiral..... 254, 255, 256
Blanche of Castile (*kas-teel'*)..... 192
Blenheim (*blen'him*)..... 266, 328
Blucher (*bloo'ker*)..... 316, 332
Beotia (*be-o'she-ah*)..... 34, 59
Bo-he'mi-a..... 218
Bo'he-mond, Count of Tarentum.... 207
Bo-les'las..... 331
Boleyn, Anne (*bûl'en, an*).. 235, 236, 237
Bolingbroke (*bûl'ing-brûk*)..... 267
Bol'i-var..... 368
Bo-liv'i-a..... 368
Bo'na-parte, Napoleon, 273, 274, 275, 309–317, 375, 376.
Bonaparte, Jer-ome'..... 312
Bonaparte, Joseph..... 311, 313
Bonaparte, Louis Napoleon, 311, 320, 321, 337, 345
Bon'i-face VIII., Pope..... 183, 184
Book of Common Prayer..... 238
Bordeaux (*bōr-do'*)..... 194
Bor'gi-a, Alexander (Pope)..... 286
Borodino (*bor-o-de'no*)..... 314
Borussi (*bo-roos'si*)..... 331
Bo-rys'the-nēs..... 134, 136
Bos'po-rus..... 32, 136
Bos'ton..... 361, 362, 369, 371
Bos'worth Field..... 184
Both'ni-a..... 339
Bouillon (*boo-eel-yong'*), Godfrey of.. 207
Boulogne (*boo-lone'*)..... 320
Bour'bon, the Constable of..... 288, 289
Boyne, Battle of the..... 264
Bozzarris (*bot-sar'ris*)..... 353
Brad'dock, General..... 270
Brad'shaw..... 253, 258
Bra-gan'za..... 346, 347
Bragg, General..... 387, 388
Bran'den-burg..... 331
Bran'dy-wine Creek 372
Bras'i-das..... 44
Brazil (*brah-zeel'*)..... 313, 349, 366, 368
Breed's Hill..... 370
Brem'en..... 216, 314
Bren'nus..... 59, 73
Brit'ain..... 25, 94, 107, 110, 114, 147
Brit'ta-ny..... 187
Brook'lyn..... 371
Brougham (*broo'am*)..... 276
Brown, John..... 383
PAGE
Bruce, Robert..... 171, 172, 173
Bruges (*broo'jis*, or *broozhe*)..... 216
Brun-du'si-um (*-zhe-um*)..... 95
Brus'sels..... 336
Bru'tus, Junius..... 68
Brutus, Marcus..... 97, 99
Buccaneers..... 393
Bu-chan'an, George..... 247
Buchanan, James..... 383
Buckle (*buck'el*)..... 281
Buena Vista (*bwa'nah vees'tah*)..... 381
Buenos Ayres (*bo'nus a'riz*)..... 368
Bulgarians..... 133, 151, 206
Bull Run..... 385, 387
Bulwer (*bûl'wer*)..... 281
Bunker Hill..... 370
Bun'yan, John..... 262
Burgoyne(*bur-goin'*),General, 272,372,373
Bur'gun-dy..... 143, 146, 187
Burke, Edmund..... 273
Burns..... 276
Burnside, General..... 387
Bute, Lord..... 271
Butler, Samuel..... 262
Butler, General..... 386
By'ron, Lord..... 276, 277, 353
Byz'an-tine Empire..... 131
Byzantium (*be-zan'she-um*).....42, 122

C.

Cabal, the..... 259
Cab'ot, John 234, 359
Cabot, Sebastian... ..... 234, 359, 368
Ca-brat'..... 348, 366
Cabul (*kah-bool'*)..... 278
Cade, Jack..... 181
Ca-de'sia (*-she-ah*)..... 150
Cadiz (*ka'diz*)..... 25
Cæsar, Julius.....93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99
Cæsars, the Twelve..... 111
Cairo (*ki'ro*) 153, 309
Ca-la'bri-a..... 223
Calais (*kal'is*)..... 174, 196, 239, 291
Ca'led..... 150
California..... 381, 382
Ca-lig'u-la, Caius.....106, 108, 110, 114
Cal'vin 344
Cam-by'sēs 21, 24, 29, 31
Cam'den..... 374
Ca-mil'lus..... 72, 74, 75
Cam-pa'ni-a..... 83, 110
Campbell, Sir Col'in..... 279
Campo Formio, Treaty of..... 309
Canada... 270, 278, 303, 366, 371, 372, 380
Ca-na'ries..... 25
Cannæ (*kan'ne*)..... 80, 81
Cannes (*kan*). 316
Cannon..... 154, 174
Ca-nos'sa..... 215
Can-ton'..... 280
Ca-nute' the Great..... 159
Cap'et, Hugh (or *kā'pet*)..... 147, 187
Capetian Dynasty..... 147
Ca'po d'Is'tri-a..... 353
Cap-pa-do'cia (*-she-ah*)..... 84, 118
Ca'pre-æ 106, 108
Cap'u-a..... 81, 91
Car-a-cal'la..... 113
Ca-rac'tā-cus..... 107

PAGE

Cardinal de Retz (*rětz*)..... 299
Car-ib-be'an Sea..... 393
Ca-ri'nus..... 120
Carlisle (*kar-līle'*)..... 172
Car'lo-man..... 144
Car-lo-vin'gi-an Dynasty..... 144, 226
Car-lyle'..... 281
Car-o-li'na..... 360
Caroline of Brunswick..... 276
Carr, Robert..... 246
Car'te-ret, Sir George..... 363
Car'thage, 29, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 85, 86, 126, 151
Car-tha-ge'na..... 268
Cartier (*kar-te-a'*)..... 360
Cas'pi-an..... 16, 31, 94
Cas-san'der..... 57, 58
Cas'si-mer, John..... 334
Cassius (*kush'e-us*)..... 94, 97, 98, 99
Cassius, Spurius..... 70
Castile (*cas-teel'*)..... 225, 227
Catharine de' Medici (*med'e-che*). 290, 292, 293, 294
Catharine of Ar'a-gon..... 234
Catharine I. of Russia..... 342, 351
Catharine II. of Russia..... 342, 351
Cat'i-līne..... 93
Ca'to..... 97
Cau'ca-sus..... 343
Can'dīne Forks..... 75
Cavaliers..... 250
Gawn-pore'..... 279
Caxt'on, William..... 183
Cecil (*ses'il*), Lord Burleigh..... 240
Cecrops (*se'krops*)..... 37
Cel-ti-be'ri-a, ...(note) 86
Cel-ti-be'ri-ans..... 86
Central America..... 392
Cer'ro Gor'do..... 382
Chad's Ford..... 372
Chaldea (*kal-dē'ah*)..... 12
Chaldees (*kal-dēz*)..... 13
Champagne (*sham-pan'ya*)..... 187
Champlain (*sham-plane'*)..... 366
Chancellor de l'Hopital (*lo'pe-tal*).... 292
Chancellorsville..... 387
Charlemagne (*shar'le-mahn*) 144, 145, 146, 148, 152, 213, 220, 221
Charles Albert, of Savoy..... 345
Charles the Bold..... ....201, 202, 219
Charles the Fat..... 146
Charles the Simple..... 146, 160
Charles the Pretender..... 269, 270
Charles I. of England..... 247, 299
Charles II. of England, 253, 254, 257, 300, 363, 364
Charles II. of Spain..... 301
Charles IV. of France..... 174, 196
Charles IV. of Bohemia..... 218
Charles V. of France..... 198
Charles V. of Germany, 235, 288, 289, 290, 291, 325, 346, 350
Charles VI. of France..... 198, 199
Charles VI. of Germany..... 269, 328
Charles VII. of France..... 199, 200, 201
Charles VIII. of France.....285, 286
Charles IX. of France..... 292, 293, 300
Charles X. of France..... 318
Charles XI. of Sweden..... 338

PAGE

Charles XII. of Sweden.... 338, 341, 351
Charles XIII. of Sweden..... 339
Charles XIV. of Sweden..... 339
Charles XV. of Sweden..... 339
Charles of Anjou..... 193, 224
Charles of Valois (*val-wah'*)..... 195
Charles, Archduke of Austria..... 313
Charleston..... .... 365, 371, 373, 385, 389
Chartists..... 278
Chatham, Earl of..... 271, 272
Chaucer (*chaw'ser*)..... 176
Chesapeake Bay..... 372, 385
Chesapeake, the Frigate..... 376
Chev'y Chase, Ballad of..... 178
Chick-a-maw'ga 387
Chili (*che'le*)..... 367, 368
China..... 138, 222, 280
Chinese Tartary..... 137
Chip'pe-wa..... 377
Chœronea (*ke-ro-ne'ah*)..... 51
Christ..... 9, 105, 123
Christian II. of Denmark..... 337
Christian IV. of Denmark..... 326, 339
Christian IX. of Denmark..... 340
Christianity..... 148, 165, 331
Christians, Persecution of, 107, 112, 113, 117, 121
Christina (*kris-ti'nah*)..... 338
Christina of Spain..... 340
Chronology..... 9
Church, English..... 236
Church, Greek..... 137
Church, Romish..... 137, 236, 249
Chrysostom (*kris'os-tom*)..... 131
Cicero (*sis'e-ro*)..... 93, 98, 99
Cilicia (*se-lish'e-ah*)..... 111, 118
Cimon (*si'mon*)..... 43
Cim'bri-ans (*sim-*) 88, 89
Cin-cin-na'tus 71
Cinna (*sin'nah*)..... 90
Cis-al'pine Gaul..... 89
Cisalpine Republic..... 309
Citium (*sish'e-um*)..... 43
Clairvaux (*clare-vo'*)..... 208
Clar'en-don..... 163
Clarendon, Constitutions of..... 164
Clau'di-us.....106, 107, 109, 119
Clay, Henry..... 382
Cle-ar'chus (*-kus*)..... 46
Clem'ent, the Assassin of Henry III. 294
Clement V., Pope..... 194
Clement VII., Pope..... 235, 290
Cle-om'e-nēs..... 59, 60
Cle'on..... 44, 45
Cle-o-pat'ra 96, 99, 100
Cler-mont'..... 206
Clifford, Rosamond..... 166
Clinton, George..... 373, 374
Clisson (*klēs'song*), Oliver..... 195
Clive, Lord..... 271
Clon'tarf..... 165
Clo-til'da..... 143
Clo'vis..... 143
Clusium (*klu'she-um*)..... 73
Clyde (*klīde*) River..... 115
Cly'tus..... 54
Cnidus (*nī'dus*)..... 48
Cob'ham, Lord..... 179
Cod, Cape..... 361, 363

PAGE
Cod-o-man'nus..... 33
Co'drus..... 37
Colbert (*kōl-bare'*)..... 209
Colchis (*kol'kis*)..... 96
Cole'ridge..... 276
Colfax (*kōl'faxe*), Schuyler (*ski'ler*)... 390
Coligny (*ko-leen-ye'*), Admiral... 292, 293
Cologne (*ko-lone'*)..... 216
Col-la-ti'nus..... 68
Co-lom'bi-a..... 368
Col-os-se'um..... 109, 110
Co-los'sus of Rhodes..... 150
Co-lum'bi-a..... 389
Columbus, Christopher.... 227, 234, 359, 367, 368, 393
Com'mo-dus..... 113
Commonwealth, English..... 253, 254
Com-ne'nus, Manuel..... 208
Con'de, the Great..... 299, 300
Confederation of the Rhine..... 328
Confederation, North German..... 330
Connecticut (*con-net'e-cut*)..... 362
Co'non..... 45, 48
Con'rad of Franconia..... 213
Conrad II. of Germany..... 214
Conrad III. of Germany..... 208, 215
Con'stance, Council of..... 218
Constance, Peace of..... 216
Con'stan-tine..... 121, 122
Constantine Palæologus..... 139
Constantinople, 122, 132, 133, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 151, 206, 209, 222, 349, 352
Con-stan'tius (*-she-us*)..... 121, 122
Co-pen-ha'gen..... 273, 340
Cor-cy'ra (*c like s*)..... 44
Cor'day, Charlotte..... 308
Cor'do-va..... 152
Cordova, the discoverer of Mexico.. 360
Cor'fu..... 353
Cor'inth 38, 44, 48, 51, 61
Cor-i-o-la'nus..... 71
Co-ri'o-li..... 71
Corn Laws, Repeal of..... 278
Cornwall..... 233
Corn-wal'lis, Lord..... 272, 374
Cor-o-ne'a..... 48
Cor'si-ca..... 303
Cor'tez..... 360, 391
Co-run'na, Battle of..... 274
Cos'sacks 334
Cos-so'va..... 139
Costa Rica (*kos'tah re'kah*)..... 393
Covenant, Scottish..... 249, 251
Covenanters..... 254
Cov'er-dale (*kuv-*)..... 238
Cow'per 276
Cra'cow..... 334
Cran'mer..... 236, 238, 239
Cras'sus..... 91, 92, 94
Crat'er-us..... 56, 57
Crecy (*kres'e*)..... 174, 196
Cre-mo'na..... 109
Cri-mœ'a..... 351
Crim'e-an War 279, 343, 352
Crœsus (*kre'sus*)..... 18, 29, 39
Crom'well, Minister to Henry VIII.. 237
Cromwell, Oliver... 252, 253, 254, 258, 331
Cromwell, Richard..... 257
Cro'ton..... 61

PAGE
Cro-to'na..... 223
Crusades... 137, 161, 166, 170, 189, 205, 216
Ctesiphon (*tes'e-fon*)..... 111, 115, 152
Cu'ba..... 393
Cul-lo'den..... 270
Cumæ (*ku'me*)..... 61
Cumberland, Duke of... 269, 270, 271, 277
Cumberland River..... 386
Cu-nax'a..... 46
Cur'few Bell..... 161
Cu'ri-us Den-ta'tus..... 76
Cush..... 12
Cyaxares (*si-ax'a-rēz*)..... 16, 17, 29
Cyn-os-ceph'a-læ, or Cyn-o-ceph'a-le (*sin-*)..... 60, 83
Cy'prus..... 42, 43, 150
Cy-re'ne..... 61
Cyrenaica (*si-re-na'e-kah*)..... 61
Cyrus the Great... 14, 17, 18, 25, 28, 31, 39
Cyrus the Younger..... 46, 47
Cyzicus (*siz'e-kus*)..... 62

D.

Dacia (*da'she-ah*)..... 119, 134
Dacians..... 111
Dal-ma'tia (*-she-ah*)..... 120, 121, 122
Da-mas'cus..26, 135, 138, 150, 151, 208, 209
Dam-i-et'ta..... 209
Dan'do-lo..... 222
Danes..... 157, 158, 159
Dan'ton..... 308
Dant'zic..... 216
Danube...32, 59, 111, 119, 123, 134, 351, 352
Darien, Isthmus of..... 268, 367
Da-ri'us Hys-tas'pes..... 32, 38, 39
Darius Cod-o-man'nus.... 33, 53, 54, 115
Darnley, Lord 242
Da'tis..... 39
Dau'phin-y..... 196
David, king of Israel..... 26, 29
David, king of Scotland... 173, 174, 175
Davis, Jefferson..... 385, 390
De-ca'tur 376, 378
De-cem'virs..... 72
Decius (*de'she-us*)..... 117
Dej o-ces..... 17
Delaware..... 364
Delaware Bay 363
Delaware River..... 364, 371
Delaware, Lord..... 361, 364
Delhi (*del'le*) 279
De Leon, Ponce (*da la-ōn', pōn'tha*). 359
De'li-um 44
Del'phi 50, 59, 62, 63
Delta of the Nile..... 22
De-me'tri-us Pha-le're-us..... 57
Demetrius Po-li-or-ce'tēs..... 57, 58, 59
De Monts (*da mong*)..... 365
De Mont'fort, Simon..... 191
De-mos'the-nēs 51, 56, 99
Denmark, 146, 147, 148, 158, 263, 302, 337, 339
De Quincey..... 281
De Ruyter (*ri'ter*)..... 255, 259
Der'went River..... 160
Deseze (*dūh-sāz'*)..... 308
De So'to..... 360
Dettingen (*det'ling-en*) 269
De Witt..... 300
Diaz (*de'az*), Bartholomew..... 227

PAGE
Dickens ... 281
Dictator ... 69
Dido ... 25
Did'i-us Ju-li-a'nus ... 114
Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*) ... 270
Di'et, German ... 213, 326, 339, 330
Di-o-cle'ti-an (*-she-an*) ... 120, 121
Dionysius (*di-o-nish e-us* ... 78
Dnieper (*ne'per*) ... 340, 351
Dniester (*nees'ter*) ... 340
Doge of Venice ... 221
Domes'day Book ... 161
Domitian (*do-mish'e-an*) ... 110, 111
Don Carlos ... 347
Don Carvalho (*kar-val'yo*) ... 348
Don Miguel (*me'ghel*) ... 349
Don River ... 340, 350
Don'nel-son, Fort ... 386
Dor'ches-ter Heights ... 371
Do ri-ans ... 35
Do ris ... 34
Douglas ... 178
Dover ... 361
Dra'co ... 37
Drake, Sir Francis ... 241
Dres'den ... 315
Dru'sus ... 104
Dry'den ... 262
Dublin ... 165
Dubois (*du-bwah'*) ... 302
Dudley ... 234
Dudley, Lord Guilford ... 238
Du Guesclin (*ga-klang'*) ... 198, 225
Du-il'li-us ... 78, 79
Dumourier (*du-moo-re-a'*) ... 307
Dun'bar ... 171, 254, 256
Dun'kirk ... 256, 258
Du Quesne (*kane*) ... 270
Durazzo (*doo-rat'so*) ... 223
Dur'ham ... 174
Dutch Republic ... 260

E.

Earl of Essex ... 214, 251, 295
Earl of Lind'say ... 251
Earl of Mar ... 267
Earl of Richmond ... 183, 184
Earl of Surrey ... 235, 237, 238
Earl of Warwick ... 180, 181, 182, 233
East Anglia ... 148
East Indies ... 222
East Locris ... 34
E'bro ... 145, 152
Ec-bat'a-na ... 17, 32, 54, 55
Eck muhl ... 313
Ecuador (*ek-wah-dōr'*) ... 368
E'den-ton ... 365
E des-sa ... 207, 208
Edgehill ... 251
Edict of Nantes (*nantz*) ... 295, 301, 331
Edinburgh (*ed'in-bur-ro*) ... 251, 269
Edmund Ironside ... 159
Edward I ... 169, 194
Edward II ... 172, 196
Edward III ... 173, 196, 209, 210
Edward IV ... 181, 232, 233
Edward V ... 183
Ed'ward VI ... 238, 239, 240
Edward the Confessor ... 159, 160, 161
Edward the Elder ... 157
E-gal'i-té, Philip ... 308
Eg'bert ... 148, 157
Egypt, 11, 14, 15, 19, 49, 53, 54, 58, 93, 95 100, 135, 150, 309, 352
Egyptians, civilization of ... 22
Eilau (*i'low*) ... 312
Ek'ron ... 26
El-a-gab'a-lus ... 116
E'lam ... 13
El'ba ... 275, 316
El'ean-or of Guienne (*ghe-en'*), 163, 166 196
El'i-ot, Sir John ... 247, 248
E'lis ... 34, 35, 63
Elizabeth of England, 238, 247, 292, 360
Elizabeth of Russia ... 342
Elizabethtown ... 363
El-len-bor'ough, Lord ... 278
Embalming ... 24
Em'e-sa ... 115
Em'son ... 234
England (*ing'gland*), 148, 157, 232, 353, 360
English Justinian ... 172
E-pam-i-non'das ... 48, 49
Eph'e-sus ... 61
Eph'o-ri ... 36
E-pi'rus ... 33, 34, 58, 76, 95
Era, Christian ... 8, 105
Era of Martyrs ... 121
Erie, Lake ... 377
E'sar-had'don ... 15
Essex ... 148
Essex, Earl of ... 244
Eth'el-red, the Unready ... 158, 159
E-tru'ria ... 72, 73
E-trus'cans ... 75
E-thi-o'pi-a ... 11, 15, 21, 23, 24, 29
Eubœa (*u-be'ah*) ... 34
Eu-dox'i-a ... 126, 131
Eugene, Prince ... 266, 301, 328
Eu-phra'tēs ... 12, 27, 31, 54, 58, 84, 94
Europe ... 11, 54, 142, 152, 153, 175, 206, 210, 221
Europe, Central and Southern ... 213
European States ... 325
Eu-ry-bi'a-dēs ... 40
Eu-rym'e-don ... 43
Eux'ine ... 47, 62, 125
Eves'ham ... 170
Ex-ar'chate of Ra-ven'na ... 134, 144, 221
Eyre (*ār*), Governor ... 394
E-zæ'ki-el ... 21
E'zi-on-ge'ber ... 27
Ez'ra ... 32

F.

Fa'b-i-us Max'i-mus ... 80, 81
Fainéants (*fa-na-ong'*) ... 144
Fairfax, Lord ... 251
Fairfax, Sir Thomas ... 252
Fair Oaks, Battle of ... 386
Falkirk (*fawl'kirk*) ... 171
Falkland (*fawk'land*), Lord ... 251
Faroe (*fa'ro*) Islands ... 146
Far'ra-gut, Admiral ... 386
Fat'i-mites, Kingdom of ... 153
Faus-ti'na ... 113
Fawkes, Guy (*faux, ghi*) ... 245

PAGE
Fer'di-nand the Catholic.... ... 226, 286
Ferdinand II. of Germany..... 326, 327
Ferdinand VII. of Spain..... ... 318, 347
Ferdinand of Bohemia..... 326, 327
Feudal System..... 153
Fill'more, Mil'lard..... 382
Fin'land..... 331
Firearms, commencement of use of, 174 (note), 232
Fish'er, Bishop..... 236
Flanders... 187, 194, 199, 202, 265, 266, 300
Flemings... ..... 194, 199
Fleu'ry, Abbé de..... 302
Fleury, Cardinal..... 302
Flod'den Field, Battle of..... 235
Flor'ence..... 346, 359
Florence, First Duke of..... 290
Florida..... 360, 378, 379, 385
Fontenaille (*fon-te-nel'*)..... 145, 213, 220
Fontenoy (*fon-ta-nwah'*)..... 269
Foth'er-in-gay Castle..... 242
Fox..... 273
France... 143, 187, 244, 285, 352, 360, 373, 375, 376, 392
Franche Comte (*fransh kong'ta*).... 300
Francis I. of France..... 288, 325
Francis I. of Germany..... 328
Francis II. of France..... 242, 291
Francis II. of Austria..... 329
Francis of Lorraine..... 328
Francis, Duke of Guise (*gweez*)..... 291
Fran-co'ni-an Emperors of Germany 214
Frank'fort..... 241, 329
Franklin, Benjamin..... 373
Franks..... 142, 209, 213, 221
Franks, Sa'li-an..... 143
Frederick Barbarossa..... 208, 215
Frederick, Elector-palatine..... 326
Frederick of Austria..... 218
Frederick of Bohemia..... 326
Frederick the Great (of Prussia).... 271, 329, 332
Frederick I. of Denmark..... 339
Frederick II. of Germany..... 209, 216
Frederick III. of Germany..... 219
Frederick III. of Prussia..... 332
Frederick William, the Great Elector 331
Frederick William I. of Prussia 332
Frederick William III. of Prussia... 332
Frederick William IV. of Prussia... 333
Fredericksburg, Battle of..... 387
Fre-mont', John C..... 381
French and Indian War..... 366
Friedland (*freed'land*) Battle of..... 312
Fro'bish-er..... 241
Fronde, Civil War of..... 299
Fu'ri-us Ca-mil'lus..... 72

G.

Ga'dēs..... 25
Gaeta (*gah-a'tah*)..... 320
Gage, General..... 369, 370
Ga-la'tia (*-she-ah*)..... 59, 84
Gal'ba..... 108
Ga-le'ri-us..... 121
Gal-li-e'-nus..... 118, 119
Gama (*gah'mah*), Vasco da..... 227
Gar-i-bal'di..... 320, 345
Gas'co-ny..... 187
Gas'ton de Foix (*fwah*)..... 287
Gaston, Duke of Orleans..... 298
Gates, General..... 373, 373, 374
Gath..... 26
Gau-ga-me'la..... 54
Gaul..... 88, 94, 97, 125, 126, 143, 147
Gaul..... 59, 75, 94
Ga'za..... 53
Gelon (*je'lon*)..... 78
Ge-ne'va..... 211, 344
Genoa (*jen'o-ah*)..... 211, 222, 345, 359
Genseric (*jen'ser-ik*)..... 126
Geoffrey (*jef're*)..... 166, 167
George I. of England..... 267
George I. of Greece..... 353
George II. of England..... 269, 365
George III. of England..... 271, 275
George IV. of England..... 276, 277
George, Prince of Denmark..... 263
Georgia..... 268, 365, 385, 388
Gepidæ (*jep'e-de*)..... 134
Ger-man'i-cus..... 105, 106
Ger'man-town..... 372
Germany, 105, 134, 144, 146, 188, 213, 287, 325
Germanic Confederation..... 329
Gesler (*ghes'ler*)..... 217
Geta (*je'tah*)..... 115
Gettysburg (*ghet-*)..... 387
Ghent..... 275, 336, 378
Ghib'el-lines..... 215, 220
Gibbon, a distinguished historian... 276
Gibraltar (*jib-rawl'ter*)..... 151, 266
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey..... 360
Girondists (*zhe-rond'ists*)..... 307, 308
Glencoe, Massacre of..... 264
Glen'dow-er, Owen..... 178
God'frey of Bouillon (*boo-eel-yong'*), 207, 221
Godwin, Earl..... 159
Gon-zal'vo of Cordova..... 287
Good Hope, Cape of, 223, 227, 241, 269, 348, 367
Gor'di-an..... 117, 119
Gordon, Lady..... 233
Gorges (*gor'jez*), Ferdinand..... 361
Go'shen, the Land of..... 20
Gos'nold, Bar-thol'o-mew..... 360
Goths, 117, 119, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 133
Gower, a distinguished poet..... 176
Grac'chus, Ca'i-us..... 87
Grac'chus, Ti-be'ri-us..... 86, 87
Granada (*grah-nah'dah*)..... 226
Grand Alliance..... 265, 301
Gran-i'cus..... 53, 54
Grant, General.... 386, 387, 388, 389, 390
Gratian (*gra'she-an*)..... 123
Gray, a distinguished poet..... 276
Gray, Elizabeth..... 182
Great Britain, 312, 316, 352, 369, 374, 375, 376, 392
Great Desert..... 22
Grecian Colonies..... 39, 61
Greece..... 33, 84, 124, 352
Greek Empire..... 131, 137
Greek Fire..... 155, 151
Greek Historians..... 14
Greeks..... 35, 47, 138, 352, 353
Greene, General..... 374

PAGE
Greenland..... 146
Greg'o-ry the Great..... 134, 148
Gregory VII., Pope.... 205, 214, 215, 224
Gregory X., Pope..... 217
Grey, Lady Jane.. 238
Guanahani (*gwah-nah-hah'ne*)..... 393
Guatemala (*gwah-te-mah'lah*) 393
Guiana (*ghe-ah'nah*)..... 245
Guienne (*ghe-en'*).. 163, 187, 190, 194, 196
Guelphs (*gwelfs*)..... 215, 220
Guis'card (or *ghees-kar'*), Robert, 223. 224
Gunpowder, invention of, 174, (note), 232, (note)
Gus-ta'vus A-dol'phus.....297, 327, 338
Gustavus Vasa (*vah'sah*)..... 337
Gustavus IV. of Sweden..... 339

H.

Hale, Sir Matthew..... 262
Hal'i-doun Hill..... 173
Ha'lys River... ..... 16, 18
Ham..... 12
Ham'burg..... 216, 314
Ham-il'car..... 79
Ham'il-ton, Alexander..... 375
Hampden (*ham'den*), John.. 250, 251, 261
Han'ni-bal..... 79, 80, 81, 82
Han'o-ver..... 267, 271, 277
Han'sa..... 216
Hanse Towns..... 314
Han-se-at'ic League..... 216
Haps'burg..... 217
Hard'i-ca-nute 159
Har-fleur'..... 197, 199
Har'old..... 159, 160
Harold Harefoot..... 159
Haroun al Raschid (*ha'roon al rash'id*), 152
Har'ri-son, General..... 376, 377, 380
Hart'ford..... 362
Hast'ings, Battle of..... 160
Hast'ings, Lord..... 183
Hastings, Warren..... 272, 273
Havana (*hah-vah'nah*)..... 393
Hav'e-lock, General..... 279
Haw'kins..... 241
Hayti (*ha'tee*)..... 394
Hay'ti-en Republic..... 395
Haz'a-el..... 26
He-gi'ra..... 149
He'li-o-gab'a-lus..... 115, 116
Hel'las..... 33, 34, 61
Hel-le'nes..... 34, 353
Hel'le-spont..... 40, 45, 53, 137
Hen'ghist..... 147
Henry of Burgundy..... 227
Henry I. of England..... 162, 190
Henry II. of England..... 163, 190
Henry III. of England.. .. 169, 192, 193
Henry IV. of England..... 178
Henry V. of England..... 179, 199
Henry VI. of England 180, 200
Henry VII. of England, 184, 217, 232, 242, 285, 359
Henry VIII. of England, 234, 243, 287, 288, 290
Henry I. of France..... 189
Henry II. of France..... 290
PAGE
Henry III. of France..... .. 294, 334
Henry IV. of France..... 247, 294, 365
Henry 1. of Germany, (the Fowler). 213
Henry II. of Germany..... .. 214
Henry III. of Germany..... 214
Henry IV. of Germany, 214, 215, 224, 244
Henry V. of Germany..... 215
Henry VI. of Germany..... 167
Henry of Guise (*gweez*)..... . 294
Henry, Fort..... 386
Henry of Navarre (*na-var'*)..... 294
Henry, Prince, the Navigator..... 227
Hep-tan'o-mis..... 22
Heraclidæ (*her'a-kli'de*)..... 37
He-rac'li-us..... 134, 135, 150
Her-cu-la'ne-um..... 110
Hercules (*her'cu-lēz*)..... 34, 35
Heris-tal (*er-is-tal'*), Pep'in d'..... 144
Her'mann..... 105
Her'od the Great..... 105
He-rod'o-tus 16, 19
Hez-e-ki'ah..... 15, 21, 28
Hi-ber'ni-a..... 165
Hi'e-ro..... 78, 81
Hil'de-brand..... 214, 224
Hin-do-stan'..... 278
Hip-par'chus..... 38
Hip'pi-as..... 38, 39
His-pan-i-o'la..... 394
Hogue (*hōg*), Cape la..... 265
Ho-hen-lin'den 310
Hol'land, 265, 269, 273, 300, 301, 327, 335, 363
Holstein (*hōl-stine'*)..... 339, 340
Ho'mer..... 35, 38
Hon-du'ras..... .. 393
Hong Kong..... 280
Ho-no'ri-us..... .. 124, 125, 131
Hood, General..... 383
Hooker, General..... 387
Hor'ace..... 105
Horn, Cape..... 241
Hor'sa..... 147
Hoshea (*ho-she'ah*)..... 28
House of Commons, English..... 170
Howard, Catharine..... 237
Howard, Henry, Earl of Surrey, 237, 238
Howard, Lord..... 371
Howe, General..... 371
Howe, Lord, Admiral..... 241
Hud'son, Henry..... 362, 371
Hudson River..... 362
Hugh Cap'et..... 147
Hugh the Great..... 207
Hu'go..... 147
Huguenots (*hu'ghe-not*), 292, 293, 294, 295, 297, 301, 331, 360, 365
Hull, Captain..... 376
Hull, General..... 376
Hume..... 276
Hungary (*hung'ga-re*)... 218, 328, 343, 350
Huns..... 123, 125, 134
Huss, John..... 218
Hy-das'pēs..... 55
Hyde (*hide*), Sir Edward. 258
Hyksos (*hik'sōs*)..... 20, 28
Hyph'a-sis..... 55
Hyr-ca'nus, John... 93
Hystaspes (*his-tas'pēz*)..... 32

PAGE

I.

I-ax'ar-tēs..... 54
I'ber-ville..... 366
I-be'rus River..... 80
Ib'ra-him Pacha (*pash-aw'*)..... 352
Ice'land..... 146
I-co'ni-um..... 137
Il-li-nois' (*noi*)..... 378
Il-lyr'i-a..... 114
India... 23, 54, 137, 227, 241, 271, 272, 348
Indiana..... 378
Indian Mutiny..... 279
In'dus River..... 32, 55, 94, 278
Ink'er-mann..... 279
Innocent III., Pope..... 168, 191, 209
Inquisition..... 192
Ionians..... 32, 39
Ion'ic Colonization..... 35
Ip'sus, Battle of..... 57, 58
Ireland..... 165, 249, 254, 264, 274
Ire'ton..... 254, 258
Irkoutsk (*er-kootsk'*)..... 341
Isabella of Castile (*kas-teel'*)... 226, 227, 347, 359
Isabella of England..... 173, 174, 196
Is'ra-el..... 15, 22, 26, 27, 28
Is-ra-el-ites'..... 26
Is'sus..... 53, 114
Isth'mi-an Games..... 63
Italy, 61, 67, 77, 80, 127, 132, 133, 134, 146, 213, 215, 220, 223, 224, 344
Iturbide (*e-toor'be-tha*)..... 391, 393
Ivan III..... 341
Ivry (*eev're*)..... 295

J.

Jack'son, General..... 377, 378, 379
Ja'cob..... 20
Jac'o-bin Club..... 306
Jacquerie (*zhak'e-re*), Insurrection of, 197
Jaf'fa..... 310
Ja-mai'ca..... 256
James I. of England..... 245
James II. of England..... 262, 301
James IV. of Scotland..... 233, 235
James VI. of Scotland..... 245, 267
James, Duke of York..... 259, 261, 363
James River..... 386, 388
James the Pretender..... 267, 270
Jamestown..... 246, 361
Ja'phet..... 11, 34
Ja'van..... 34
Jefferson..... 375, 379
Jefferson Davis..... 385, 390
Jef'fries, Judge..... 262
Je-hoi'a-kim..... 14
Je-hosh'a-phat..... 28
Je-ho'vah..... 27
Jemeppe (*zha-mep'*)..... 307
Jē'na..... 312, 332
Jen'ghis Khan..... 138, 153
Jer-o-bo'am..... 27
Jer-ome' Bonaparte..... 312
Jerome of Prague..... 218
Je-ru'sa-lem, 14, 20, 26, 28, 92, 93, 109, 123, 135, 137, 150, 205, 207, 208, 209
Jews..... 15, 21, 26
Joan of Arc..... 180, 200, 201
John of England..... 167, 191

PAGE

John of France..... 175, 196, 197
John I. of Portugal..... 227
John II. of Portugal..... 227
John IV., Duke of Bra-gan'za..... 348
John VI. of Portugal..... 349
John, Don, of Austria..... 351
John of Gaunt..... 177, 232
John of Suabia..... 217
Johnson, Andrew..... 389, 390
Johnson, General..... 270
Johnson, Samuel..... 275
Jor'dan..... 26
Joseph..... 20
Joseph Bonaparte..... 311, 313
Joseph of Portugal..... 348
Josephine..... 313, 320
Jo-se'phus..... 109
Josh'u-a..... 26
Jo-si'ah..... 21
Jo'vi-an..... 123
Juarez (*hwah'rez*)..... 392
Ju'ba..... 96
Ju-dah..... 20, 27, 28
Ju-de'a..... 15, 92, 105
Ju-gur'tha..... 88, 90
Ju'li-an..... 122, 147
Julius II., Pope..... 287
Ju'ni-us Bru'tus..... 68
Junot (*zhoo-no'*)..... 312, 349
Ju'pi-ter..... 35, 63
Jupiter Am'mon..... 53
Jus'tin II..... 134
Jus-tin'i-an..... 132, 133, 134
Jutes (*joots*)..... 147

K.

Kairwan (*kire'wahn*)..... 151
Kan'sas..... 383
Kar'nak..... 21
Kearny (*kar'ne*)..... 381
Kent..... 148
Ken-tuck'y..... 375
Kharasm (*ka-rasm'*)..... 138
Khosru (*koz'roo*)..... 135
Kief (*ke-ef'*)..... 340
Kiel (*keel*)..... 339
Kleber (*kla-bare'*)..... 310
Knights Hospitallers of St. John... 207
Knights of the Teutonic Order..... 331
Knights Templars... 194, 207
Ko'ran..... 150
Kosciusko (*kos-se-us'ko*)..... 335
Kossuth (*kos-shoot'*)..... 339

L.

Lacedæmon (*las-e-de'mon*)..... 36
La-co'ni-a..... 34, 36, 48, 362
Læ-vi'nus..... 76
Lafayette (*lah-fā-et'*)..... 305, 307, 318
La Hogue (*hōg*)..... 265
Lamartine (*lah-mar-teen'*)..... 319
La'mi-a..... 56
Lamian War..... 56
Lang'ton, Stephen..... 168
Languedoc (*lan'ghe-doc*)..... 191, 192
La Salle (*sal*)..... 366
Lat'i-mer..... 239
Latins..... 67, 68
Latium (*la'she-um*)..... 62

PAGE
Land, Archbishop 249
Lauenburg (*low'en-burg*)..... 310
Law, John..... 302, 366
Lee, General..... 387, 388, 389
Legnano (*len-yah'no*), Battle of..... 216
Leicester (*les'ter*), Earl of..... 169
Leipsic (*lipe'sik*)..... 315, 327, 329
Len'thall..... 250
Leo, Bishop of Rome..... 126
Leo III., Pope 145
Leo X., Pope..... 235, 290
Le-on'i-das 40
Le'o-pold I..... 327, 337
Leopold II..... 337
Le-os'thē-nēs..... 56
Le-pan'to 351
Lep'i-dus..... 99
Les'bos..... 44
Leuctra (*look'trah*)..... 48
Llew-el'lyn..... 170
Lew'es, Battle of..... 169
Lex'ing-ton..... 272, 370
Lib'ya..... 86
Li-cin'i-an Law..... 87
Lima (*le'mah*) 367
Lincoln, Abraham..... 383, 385, 390
Lincoln, General..... 373, 374
Lis'bon..... 227, 313
Lith-u-a'ni-a..... 333
Little Harbor..... 361
Liv'y..... 105
Loch Lev'en Castle..... 243
Locke, John..... 262
Lo'cris..... 59
Loire (*lwahr*)..... 143
Lol'lards ..... (*n*) 178
Lombard League..... 220
Lombards 134, 144
Lom'bar-dy..... 345
Lon'don..... 216, 259, 261
Lou-gi'nus..... 120
Long Island..... 363
Lo-ren'zo de' Medici (*med'e-che*)..... 290
Lor-raine'..... 202
Lothaire (*lo-thare'*)..... 146
Lothaire of Saxony..... 215, 220
Lou'is le Deb-on-naire'..... 145
Louis I. of Portugal 349
Louis V. of France (Le Fainéant)... 147
Louis VI. of France..... 189
Louis VII. of France... 163, 165, 190, 208
Louis VIII. of France..... 191, 192
Louis IX. of France (St. Louis).... 192, 209, 210
Louis X. of France..... 195
Louis XI. of France..... 201, 285
Louis XII. of France..... 286
Louis XIII. of France 296
Louis XIV. of France, 259, 264, 265, 298, 366
Louis XV. of France..... 302
Louis XVI. of France..... 272, 303
Louis XVII. of France 316
Louis XVIII. of France..... 316, 317
Louis, Count of Flanders..... 199
Louis of Bavaria 218
Louis Phil'ippe (or *loo'e fe-leep'*)..... 318
Louis, Prince of Condé..... 292
Louisburg (*loo'is-burg*)..... 269
PAGE
Louisiana (*loo'is-e-ah'nah*), 302, 366, 376, 378, 385
Lou-vaine'..... 191
Louvois (*loo-vwah'*)..... 299
Lu'bec..... 216, 314
Lu'can 107
Luck'now..... 279
Lu-cul'lus..... 92
Lundy's Lane..... 377
Lune'ville..... 311
Lu-te'tia (*-she-ah*)..... 143
Lu'ther, Martin... 235, 237, 289, 325, 342
Lutzen (*loot'zen*).....297, 315, 327
Ly-cur'gus..... 36, 63
Lyd'i-a..... 16, 17, 18, 19
Lyons..... 115
Ly-san'der..... 45
Ly-sim'a-chus..... 58, 84

M.

Ma-cau'lay..... 280, 281
Mac-ca-be'us, Judas..... 93
McClel'lan, General..... 385, 386, 387
Macedon (*mas'e-don*)..... 58, 139
Macedonia..... 33, 49, 58, 59, 60, 84
Macedonian Empire..... 49, 84
Ma-cri'nus..... 114
Madison..... 376
Ma-gel'lan..... 365
Ma-gen'ta..... 321, 345
Magi (*ma-ji*)..... 33
Mag'na Charta (*kar'tah*)..... 168
Magna Græcia..... 61
Mag-nen'tius (*-she-us*)..... 122
Mag-ne'sia..... 83
Ma'ho-met..... 149
Maine..... 191, 192, 361
Maintenon (*main'te-nong*), Madame de, 301
Mal'a-koff..... 279
Malcolm (*mal'kum*)..... 161
Malplaquet (*mal-plah'ka*)..... 266, 328
Malsherbes (*mal-zārb'*)..... 303
Malta (*mawl'tah*)..... 350
Mam'e-lukes..... 209, 309
Mam'er-tines..... 78
Ma-nas'sas..... 385
Ma-nas'sch..... 15
Ma-ne'tho..... 19
Man'fred..... 224
Man-hat'tan Island..... 363
Mans'feldt..... 326
Man-ti-ne'a..... 49
Man'u-el..... 205
Manuel Com-ne'nus..... 208
Manuel the Great..... 348
Mar-a-can'da..... 54
Maracaybo (*mah-rah-ki'bo*)..... 368
Marat (*mah-rah'*)..... 308
Mar'a-thon..... 39, 42
Mar-cel'..... 197
Mar-cel'lus..... 81
Marco Bozzaris (see *Bozzaris*).
Marco Po'lo..... 222
Marcus Manlius..... 72, 74
Mar-do'ni us..... 39, 40, 41
Ma-ren'go..... 310
Margaret of Anjou (*ahn'joo*), 180, 181, 182
Margaret of Denmark 337

PAGE
Marie Antoinette (*mah-re' an-twah-net'*)..... 304
Maria da Gloria (*mah-re'ah*)..... 349
Maria Louisa..... 313, 321
Maria of Portugal..... 348
Maria Theresa..... 269, 328
Marignano (*mah-reen-yah'no*)..... 288
Marigny (*mah-reen'ye*)..... 195
Mar'i-on, General..... 374
Ma'ri-us, Caius..... 88, 89, 90, 96
Marl'bor-ough, Duke of ... 265, 266, 268
Marston Moor..... 252
Mar-tel', Charles..... 144, 149, 152
Martyr, Justin..... 113
Mary de' Medici (*med'e-che*)..... 297, 298
Mary of Burgundy..... 202, 219, 336
Mary, Queen of England.... 238, 239, 291
Mary, wife of William III... 263, 264, 265
Mary, Queen of Scots..... 242, 243, 244
Maryland..... 363, 387
Mas-i-nis'sa..... 85
Mason, John..... 362
Massachusetts..... 249, 272, 361, 362
Massagetæ (*mas-saj'e-te*)..... 31
Mas-sa'li-a..... 61
Mat-a-mo'ras..... 381
Matilda..... 162
Mau-mee'..... 375
Maurice, Elector of Saxony..... 291, 326
Mau-ri-ta'ni-a..... 96
Mav-ro-cor-da'to..... 352
Max-en'tius (*shē-us*)..... 121, 122
Max-i-mil'i-an, Emperor of Germany, 202, 219, 220, 235, 285, 288, 325, 336
Maximilian, Archduke of Austria... 392
Max-im'i-an..... 120, 121
Max'i-min..... 116
Max'i-mus..... 117
Maximus, Pe-tro'ni-us..... 126
Mayenne (*ma-en'*), Duke of..... 295
Maz'a-rin..... 298, 299
Mecænas (*me-se'nas*)..... 105
Mec'ca..... 149
Mech'lin..... 336
Medes..... 16, 18, 29, 33
Me'di-a..... 16, 17, 31
Me-di'na..... 149
Mee'rut..... 279
Mehemet Ali (*ma'he-met ah'le*)..... 352
Me-lanc'thon..... 326, 343
Mem'phis..... 19, 20, 22
Men'a-hem..... 15
Menes (*me'nēz*)..... 19, 28
Men'schi-koff..... 342
Mer'cia (*-she-ah*)..... 148
Mer'o-e..... 24
Mer-o-vin'gians..... 143, 144
Mes-o-po-ta'mi-a, 13, 14, 111, 117, 118, 121
Mes-sa-li'na..... 107
Mes-sa'na..... 61, 78
Mes-se'ne..... 60
Mes-se'ni-a..... 34
Mes-se'ni-ans.....
Me-tel'lus..... 88
Me-tau'rus..... 82
Metz..... 291
Mexico..... 321, 360, 380, 391
Mexico, Gulf of..... 392, 393
Michigan Territory..... 376, 377
Mi-cip'sa..... 88
Mi-cis'las..... 214
Mil'an..... 119, 214, 286, 288
Mi-le'tus..... 39, 61
Milford Haven..... 184
Mil-ti'a-des..... 40, 43
Milton, John..... 262
Min'den..... 303
Mirabeau (*me-rah-bo'*)..... 305
Miramon (*me'rah-mon*)..... 392
Mississippi..... 378, 385
Mississippi River..... 302, 360, 366, 376
Mis-so-lon'ghi..... 277, 353
Missouri..... 378, 379, 386
Mith-ri-da'tēs..... 89, 92, 96
Moawiyah (*mo-ah-we'yah*)..... 151
Mœsia (*me'she-ah*)..... 117, 119, 120
Mo-ham'med..... 149
Mohammed II..... 139, 349
Mohawk River..... 373
Mol-da'vi-a..... 278
Monck'ton, Colonel..... 270
Mongols..... 314
Monitor (Ram)..... 386
Monk, General..... 254, 257, 259
Monmouth, Battle of..... 373
Monmouth, Duke of..... 261, 262
Monroe, Fortress..... 389
Monroe, James..... 378
Montcalm (*mont-kam'*), Marquis of.. 270
Monterey (*mon-ta-ra'*)..... 381
Montgomery..... 385
Montgomery, General..... 371
Montmorency, Constable..... 291
Moore, Sir John..... 274
Moors..... 346
More, Sir Thomas..... 236
Mo-re'a..... 93, 222, 351
Moreau (*mo-ro'*), General... 310, 311, 315
Mor'gar-ten..... 219
Mor'ti-mer..... 173
Mortimer, Edmund..... 178, 196
Moscow..... 314, 341
Moses..... 28, 29
Mosquito Kingdom..... 393
Moultrie (*mole'tre*), Colonel..... 371
Moultrie, Fort..... 371, 379
Mum'mi-us..... 61
Mun'da..... 97, 98
Murat (*mu-rah'*)..... 310, 313
Mur-frees-bor'o, Battle of..... 387
Musa..... 151
Myc'a-le..... 42

N.

Na-bo-nas'sar..... 13
Nan'cy..... 202
Na'pi-er, Sir Charles..... 278
Naples.... 214, 223, 224, 285, 286, 311, 345
Narses (*nar'sēz*)..... 132, 133, 134
Nar'va..... 341
Nascby (*naze'be*)..... 252
Navarino (*nah-vah-re'no*)..... 276
Navarre (*na-var'*)..... 187
Navarrete (*nah-var-ra'ta*)..... 198, 225
Ne-ar'chus..... 55
Ne-bras'ka..... 383, 390
Neb-u-chad-nez'zar..... 14, 21, 25, 28, 29
Neck'er..... 304, 305

PAGE

Ne-ka'o or Ne'chos II 21
Nelson..... 273, 310, 340
Ne-me'a..... 63
Ne-me'an Games..... 63
Nena Sahib (*sah'eeb*)..... 279
Nep'tune..... 63
Ne'ro..... 107, 109, 110
Ner'va..... 111, 114
Neth'er-lands..... 219, 241, 266, 291, 335
Neu'stri-a..... 143
Nev'ille's Cross..... 174
New Amsterdam..... 363
New Brunswick..... 365
Newburg..... 251
Newcastle..... 249
New England..... 246, 249
New France..... 366
New Hampshire..... 361
New Jersey..... 363, 371
New Mexico..... 381, 382
New Netherlands..... 258, 362, 363
New Orleans..... 378, 386
New Sweden..... 364
New York..... 362, 363, 371, 372, 375
Ney (*na*), Marshal..... 315, 316, 318
Nicaragua (*nik-ar-aw'guah*)..... 393
Ni'ce..... 122, 137, 138, 206, 207
Nicholas I..... 342
Nicholas II..... 352
Nicias (*nish'e-as*)..... 45, 78
Ni-cop'o-lis..... 218
Niemen (*ne'men*)..... 314
Nile..... 22, 24, 273
Nim'rod..... 12
Nin'e-veh..... 14, 16, 20, 29
Nis'sa..... 218
No'ah..... 11
Nor'folk..... 386
No'ri-cum..... 104, 134
Normandy..... 146, 160, 161, 223
Normans..... 142, 146, 154, 160
North America..... 147, 359
North Carolina..... 360, 365, 375, 386, 389
Northampton..... 181
Northern Italy..... 220
Northmen..... 146
Norway..... 337
Nova Scotia..... 270, 365
Nov'go-rod..... 216, 340
Nu'bi-a..... 20
Nu'ma Pom-pil'i-us..... 67
Nu-man'tia (*-she-ah*)..... 86
Nu-mid'i-a..... 85, 88, 97

O.

Oates (*ōts*), Titus..... 261
Oc-ta'vi-a..... 100
Oc-ta'vi-us..... 99, 100
O'Connell, Daniel..... 277
O-den-a'tus..... 119, 129
Od-o-a'cer..... 127, 132
O'Donnell..... 318
O'gle-thorpe, General..... 268
Ohio..... 376
Ohio River..... 375
Ojeda (*o-ha'dah*)..... 368
Oliver Clisson (see *Clisson*).
O-lym'pi-a..... 35, 63
O-lym'pi-ad, First..... 63

PAGE

O-lym'pi-as..... 57
O-lym'pic Games..... 63
O-lyn'thus..... 50
O'mar..... 150
Orange, Fort..... 363
Orellana (*o-rel-yah'nah*)..... 367
O-res'tes..... 126
O-ri-no'co River..... 359
O-ri'on..... 12
Ork'ney Islands..... 242
Or'leans..... 200
O-ron'tes..... 58, 208
Os'car..... 339
Os-ce-o'la..... 379
Os'ti-a..... 116
Os'tro-goths..... 132
Oth'man..... 139, 150
O'tho, Emperor of Rome..... 108
Otho I., the Great..... 213, 220, 221
Otho II..... 214, 223
Otho III..... 214
Otho, Prince of Bavaria..... 277
Otho, King of Greece..... 353
O-tran'to..... 133
Ot'ter-burn..... 178
Ot'to-car..... 217
Ot'to-man Empire..... 350
Ot'to-mans..... 139, 218
Ot'way..... 262
Ou'de-narde..... 266, 328
Oudinot (*oo'de-no*)..... 320
Ov'id..... 105
Ox'en-stiern (*-stern*)..... 338
Ox'ford..... 157

P.

Pacific Ocean..... 367
Pac-to'lus..... 17
Pakenham (*pak'n-am*)..... 378
Pa-ler'mo..... 345
Pal'es-tine..... 15, 25, 26, 137, 205, 207, 209
Pal-my'ra..... 27, 119, 120
Pal-œ-ol'o-gus..... 138, 139
Panama (*pan-ah-mah'*)..... 367
Pan-no'ni-a..... 113, 114, 119, 134, 145
Pa-o'li..... 303
Paris, 143, 146, 191, 196, 197, 198, 199, 293, 295, 303, 317
Paris, Treaty of..... 271, 303, 352, 366
Parr, Catharine..... 237
Par'thi-a..... 111
Paul the Apostle..... 107
Paul, Emperor of Russia..... 342
Pau-sa'ni-as..... 41, 42, 43, 51
Pa'vi-a..... 134, 144, 213, 289, 290
Pe'kin..... 280
Pe-las'gi-ans or Pe-las'gi..... 34
Pe-la'yo..... 225
Pelissier (*pa-lis-se-a'*)..... 321
Pe-lop'i-das..... 48
Pel-o-pon-ne'sus, 33, 34, 35, 36, 48, 49, 56
Pe-lu'si-um (*-zhe-um*)..... 21, 29
Penn, Admiral..... 256
Penn, William..... 363, 364, 365
Pennsylvania..... 364, 371, 387
Pen-sa-co'la..... 377, 378, 385
Pep'in d'Her-is-tal'..... 144
Pepin the Short..... 144
Percy, Harry..... 178

PAGE
Per-dic'cas..... 55, 56, 57
Per'ga-mus..... 83, 84, 87
Per-i-an'der..... 38
Per'i-cles (*-klēz*)..... 42, 44
Perry, Commodore..... 377
Per-sep'o-lis..... 54, 55
Per'seus (*-sūse*)..... 61
Persia, 31, 46, 51, 116, 134, 136, 138, 150, 350
Persian Gulf..... 13, 222
Persians..... 14, 17
Per'ti-nax..... 114
Pe-ru'..... 367, 368
Peter of Aragon..... 193
Peter the Cruel..... 225
Peter the Great..... 338, 341, 351
Peter the Hermit..... 189, 206, 207
Petersburg..... 388
Petersburg, St..... 341
Pe'trarch..... 225
Pha-le're-us, Demetrius..... 57
Phar-na'ces (*-sēz*)..... 96
Phar-sa'li-a..... 98
Phil-a-del'phia..... 364, 370, 372, 373, 375
Philip of Burgundy..... 198
Philip, Emperor of Rome..... 117
Philip I. of France..... 167, 168, 189
Philip II. of France (Augustus), 190, 191, 192, 208
Philip III. of France..... 193, 210
Philip IV. of France..... 172, 193
Philip V. of France..... 195
Philip VI. of France..... 174, 175, 196
Philip of Macedon..... 49, 50, 51
Philip II. of Macedon..... 60, 83, 84
Philip II. of Spain, 239, 241, 291, 292, 294, 336, 346, 348
Philip III. of Spain..... 346
Philip V. of Spain..... 301
Philip Van Artevelde (*ar'te-veld*)..... 199
Phi-lip'pa..... 174
Philippe, Louis (see *Louis Philippe*).
Phi-lip'pi..... 50, 99
Philippine (*fil-ip-peen'*) Islands..... 367
Phil-ip-pop'o-lis..... 117
Phil-is'tines..... 26
Phil-o-pœ'men..... 60
Phocion (*fo'she-on*)..... 56
Phocis (*fo'sis*)..... 34, 59
Phœbus (*fe'bus*), Statue of..... 150
Phœnicia (*fe-nish'e-ah*)..... 24, 53
Phra-or'tes (*-tēz*)..... 17
Pick'ens, Fort..... 385
Pickens, General..... 374
Pierce, Franklin..... 382
Pi-le'ser, Tig'lath..... 15
Pi-sis'tra-tus..... 37
Pitt, William (elder)..... 271
Pitt, William (younger)..... 273
Pius VII., Pope..... 313
Pius IX., Pope..... 320
Pizarro (*pe-zar'ro*)..... 367
Pla-cid'i-a..... 125
Plains of Abraham..... 270
Plan-tag'e-net (*-taj-*), Geoffrey..... 169
Pla-tæ'a..... 41, 42, 44
Pla'to..... 46
Plymouth (*plim'uth*)..... 246, 361
Plin'y..... 109
Plu'tarch..... 111

PAGE
Po River..... 108
Poitiers (*poi-tērz*), 175, 197, 198, 199, 200
Poi-tou (*pwah-too'*)..... 190, 191
Poland..... 134, 333, 342, 343, 351
Pole, Cardinal..... 239
Polk, James K..... 380, 381, 382
Po'lo, Marco..... 222
Poltava (*pōl-tah'vah*)..... 338, 342, 351
Pol'y-carp..... 113
Pol-y-sper'chon..... 57
Pompeii (*pom-pe'yi*)..... 110
Pom'pey the Great, 89, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96
Po'ni-a-tow'ski..... 334
Pon'tus..... 84, 89, 92, 96, 97
Pope, the distinguished poet..... 267
Pope, General..... 386, 387
Port Hudson..... 387
Port Royal, Acadia..... 360
Port Royal, South Carolina..... 365, 366
Porter, Admiral..... 386
Porto Bello..... 268
Ports'mouth..... 248, 361
Por'tu-gal..... 227, 313, 348, 366
Po'rus..... 54
Po-tem'kin..... 342
Po-to'mac River..... 387
Præ-to'ri-an Guards..... 104
Prague (*prāg*)..... 218
Pres'burg..... 311
Pride, Colonel..... 252
Prince of Wales, origin of the title.. 170
Pring, Martin..... 361
Pro-pon'tis..... 62
Protestants..... 325, 327
Provence (*pro-vahns'*)..... 187
Providence..... 362
Pru'sa..... 139
Prussia,..... 307, 311, 312, 316, 331, 334
Pruth (*proot*) River..... 342
Psam-men'i-tus..... 21
Psam-met'i-chus I..... 21, 24
Ptolemy (*tol'e-me*)..... 13, 57, 58, 93
Ptolemy, Ce-rau'nus (*se-*)..... 59
Pub'li-us Scipio (*sip'e-o*)..... 81
Puebla (*pweb'lah*)..... 392
Pul..... 15
Pu-las'ki, Count..... 373
Pulaski, Fort..... 386
Pul-che'ri-a (*-ke-*)..... 132
Pun'jab..... 278
Pu'ri-tans..... 240, 246, 249, 250, 361
Pydna (*pid'nah*)..... 61, 84
Pyr-en-ees'..... 80, 143, 191
Pyrrhus (*pir'rus*)..... 58, 76, 77

Q.

Quebec..... 270, 366, 371
Queen Anne's War..... 365
Quesne (*kane*), Fort du..... 270
Quin-til'i-an..... 109

R.

Raleigh (*raw'le*), Sir Walter, 241, 245, 360
Ra-me'ses I..... 20
Rameses II..... 20, 29
Ramillies (*ram'e-leez*)..... 266
Ravaillac (*rah-val-yak'*)..... 296
Ra-ven'na..... 124, 133, 214, 221
Raymond VI., Count of Languedoc, 191,

PAGE
Raymond, Count of Toulouse..... 207
Red Sea..... 22, 27
Re-dan'..... 279
Re-gil'lus..... 68
Reg'u-lus..... 79
Re-ho-bo'am..... 27
Re'mus..... 67
Rheims (*reemz*)..... 200
Rhine River..... 94, 143
Rhodes..... 140, 350
Rhode Island..... 362, 375
Rialto (*re-ahl'to*)..... 221
Richard I. of England..... 166, 191, 208
Richard II. of England..... 176, 177, 178
Richard III. of England..... 183
Richard, Duke of York..... 180, 181
Richelieu (*rēsh'e-lu*), 248, 297, 298, 326, 327
Richmond..... 386, 388
Rid'ley..... 238, 239
Rienzi (*re-en'ze*)..... 225
Rio de la Plata (*re'o dalah plah'tah*, 368
Rio Grande (*re'o grahn'da*)..... 381, 382
Rivers, Lord..... 183
Rizzio (*reet'se-o*)..... 242
Roanoke Island..... 361, 386
Robert, Count of Flanders..... 207
Robert, King of France..... 187, 189
Robert Guiscard (*ghees-kar'*)..... 223
Robespierre (*ro-bes-pe-are'*), 307, 308, 309
Rochelle (*ro-shel'*)..... 293, 297
Rod'er-ick..... 151
Roger I..... 224
Roger II..... 224
Roger Williams..... 362
Ro'land..... 145
Rol'lo..... 146, 160
Roman Empire..... 320
Rome... 67, 107, 110, 124, 126, 215, 224, 289
Rom'u-lus..... 67
Roncesvalles (*ron-ses-val'les*)..... 145
Rosebecque (*rose'bek*)..... 199
Rose'crans, General..... 387
Ross, General..... 377
Rouen (*roo'ang*)..... 199, 201
Roum (*room*)..... 137, 138
Roxana (*rox-ah'nah*)..... 54, 56
Ru'bi-con..... 95
Rudolf I..... 217
Rudolf of Suabia..... 215
Run-ny-mede'..... 168
Ru'pert, Prince..... 251, 252, 259, 260
Russell, Admiral..... 265
Russell, Lord John..... 277
Russell, Lord William..... 261
Russia..... 340, 351, 352, 353
Rye-House Plot..... 261
Rys'wick..... 265, 301

S.

Sab'a-cus..... 24, 29
Sacred War (Greece)..... 50, 51
Sad'o-wa..... 330
Sa-gun'tum..... 80
St. Albans (*awl'bans*)..... 181
St. Au-gus-tine' (*-teen*)..... 148
St. Augustine, City of..... 360
St. Ber'nard of Clairvaux (*clare-vo'*).. 208
St. Ile-le'na..... 317
St. John, Knights of..... 350
PAGE
St. John's River..... 366
St. Lawrence, River and Gulf.. 360, 365
St. Louis..... 192
St. Mark..... 221
St. Marks..... 378
St. Mary's..... 364
St. Patrick..... 165
St. Peter..... 224
St. Petersburg..... 335, 341
St. Quen'tin, Battle of..... 291
Sal'a-din..... 153, 166, 208
Sal-a-man'ca..... 274
Sal'a-mis..... 40, 43
Sa'lem..... 361
Sa-ler'no..... 215, 223, 224
Sal'ic Law..... 174, 195, 196, 347
Sa-lo'na..... 121
Sam'ar-cand..... 54
Sa-ma'ri-a..... 15, 28
Sam'nite War..... 75
Sam'nites..... 75
Samuel..... 26
San'croft..... 263
San Sal-va-dor'..... 359, 393
San'ta An'na..... 381, 382, 392
Sa'por..... 117, 118
Saracen Empire..... 152, 153
Saracens..... 135, 144, 149, 225
Sar'a-cus..... 16
Sar-a-to'ga..... 272, 373
Sar-dan-a-pa'lus..... 16
Sar-din'i-a, Kingdom of..... 321, 344
Sar'dis..... 18, 32, 45, 58
Sar'gon..... 15
Sas-san'i-des..... 116, 135
Saul..... 26, 29
Sa-van'nah..... 365, 373, 386, 388, 389
Sa-voy'..... 344, 345
Saxe Co'burg, Go'tha..... 278
Saxe (*sax*), Marshal..... 269
Saxon Hep'tar-chy..... 148
Saxons..... 142, 147, 148, 213
Say'brook..... 362
Scan-di-na'via..... 117
Schwartzenberg (*shwartz'en-berg*), Prince, 316
Schweitz (*shwites*)..... 219
Scinde (*sind*)..... 278
Scipio (*sip'e-o*), Roman Consul..... 80
Scipio, Lucius (Asiaticus)..... 83
Scipio, Pub'li-us Cor-ne'li-us (Af-ri-ca'nus), 81, 82, 83
Scotland..... 171, 172, 173, 235, 242, 267
Scots..... 112, 115, 147
Scott, General..... 377, 382, 385
Scott, Sir Walter..... 276
Se-bas'tian III. of Portuga..... 348
Sebastian Cab'ot..... 234, 359, 368
Se-bas'to-pol..... 279, 321
Sedge Moor, Battle of..... 262
Seine (*sane*) River..... 146
Se-ja'nus..... 106
Se-leu'cia (*-she-ah*)..... 111, 115, 152
Se-leu'cus..... 58, 84
Se'lim I..... 350
Selim II..... 350
Seljuk (*sel'yook*) Turks..... 137, 205
Sem'i-noles..... 378, 379
Sem'pach, Battle of..... 219

PAGE
Sem-pro'ni-us..... 80
Sen-nach'e-rib..... 15, 21, 28
Sen'e-ca..... 107
Sen-ti'num..... 75
Sep-tim'i-us Se-ve'rus..... 114
Serfdom in England..... 176, 177
Ser-to'ri-us..... 91
Ser'vi-a..... 139
Ser'vi-us Tul'li-us..... 68, 70
Servile War..... 91
Se-sos'tris..... 20
Seven Years' War..... 329, 332
Se-ve'rus, Alexander..... 116
Severus, Septimius..... 114
Seymour, Jane..... 237, 328
Shakes'peare..... 244
Shal-man-e'ser..... 15, 25
She'chem..... 27
Shelly..... 276
Shem..... 11
Shen-an-do'ah Valley..... 388
Sher'i-dan..... 273
Sheridan, General..... 388
Sherman, General..... 388
Sho'shonk..... 20
Shi'ites..... 159
Shi'nar..... 12
Ship Money..... 248
Shi'shak..... 20, 29
Shrewsbury, Battle of..... 178
Si-be'ri-a..... 341
Sicilian Vespers, Massacre of... 193, 224
Sicily, 61, 76, 77, 78, 79, 132, 193, 223, 224, 344, 345
Sicyon (*sish'e-on*)..... 38
Sidney, Al'ger-non..... 261
Sidney, Sir Philip..... 244
Si'don..... 52
Sigismund (*sij'is-mund*) of Hungary, 218
Sigismund I. of Poland..... 333
Sigismund II. of Poland..... 333
Sikhs..... 278
Sim'nel, Lambert..... 233
Simon de Mont'fort..... 169, 170
Sin'o-pe..... 62
Si-wah'..... 31
Six Weeks' War..... 330
Slaves..... 214
Sla-vo'ni-ans..... 133, 214
Sles'wick..... 339, 340
Slote, Commodore..... 381
Smal'cal-de, League of..... 326
Smer'dis..... 31, 32
Smo'lensk..... 314, 333
Smyr'na..... 113
So-bi-es'ki, John..... 328, 334, 351
Social War (Greece)..... 50
Social War (Italy)..... 89
Soc'ra-tes (*-teez*)..... 45, 46
Sog-di-a'na..... 54
Solferino (*sol-fa-re'no*)..... 321, 345
Sol'i-man, Sultan of Roum..... 137, 207
Soliman the Magnificent..... 289, 350
Sol'o-mon..... 27, 29
So'lon..... 37
Somerset, Earl of..... 246
Sophia, grand-daughter of James I.. 267
Soulouque (*soo-look'*)..... 395
South America..... 359, 366, 368, 369
PAGE
South Carolina, 365, 371, 374, 375, 385, 386
South Sea Scheme..... 267
Spain, 77, 80, 81, 82, 86, 91, 104, 125, 145, 151, 152, 225, 256, 265, 268, 274, 313, 346, 366, 367, 368, 378
Spanish Netherlands..... 336
Spanish Succession, War of.... 265, 301
Spanish War..... 86
Spar'ta..... 36, 37, 42, 44, 45, 46, 48, 50, 60
Spar'ta-cus..... 91, 92
Spenser..... 244
Sphac-te'ri-a..... 44
Spire..... 325
Spu'ri-us Cassius..... 70
Spurs, Battle of..... 235, 287
Staf'ford, Earl of..... 261
Stan'is-las, Augustus..... 334, 335, 338
Stanislas of Poland..... 302
States General of France... 195, 285, 292, 297, 304
Steele..... 267
Stephen, King of England..... 162, 163
Stil'i-cho (*-ko*)..... 124
Stir'ling..... 171
Stock'ton, Commodore..... 381
Straf'ford, Earl of..... 248, 249
Stral'sund..... 326
Stras'burg..... 300, 320
Stu'art, Arabella..... 245
Stuart Family..... 245
Stuyvesant (*sti've-sant*), Peter... 363, 364
Suabians (*swa'be-ans*)..... 213
Su'ez..... 21
Sul'ly, Duke of..... 247, 296, 297
Sum'ter, Fort..... 385, 389
Sumter, General..... 374
Sun'nan..... 151
Sun'nites..... 150
Supremacy, Act of..... 240
Su-rat'..... 247
Surrey, Earl of..... 237
Susa (*soo'sah*)..... 32, 54, 55
Sus'sex..... 148
Su-war'row, Marshal..... 310, 335, 351
Sweden, 260, 311, 312, 314, 327, 331, 334, 337
Sweyn (*swane*)..... 158, 159
Swift..... 267
Switzerland..... 217, 219, 327, 335, 343
Syb'a-ris..... 61
Sylla (*sil'lah*)..... 89, 90, 91, 92, 96
Syr'a-cuse..... 45, 79, 81
Syr'i-a.... 15, 25, 84, 92, 94, 117, 118, 137, 138, 150, 205, 310, 351

T.

Ta'bor, Mount..... 310
Tacitus (*tas'e-tus*), Emperor..... 120
Tacitus, the historian..... 110
Tad'mor..... 27
Tal-a-ve'ra..... 274
Tam'er-lane..... 139
Tan'a-is, River..... 134
Tan'cred..... 207
Tara (*tah'rah*)..... 165
Ta-ren'tum..... 61, 76, 77, 207, 214, 223
Ta'rik..... 151
Tar'quin the Elder..... 68
Tarquin the Proud..... 68
Tar-quin'i-i (*-e-i*)..... 75

PAGE
Tar'ta-ry..... 137, 222
Tau'rus Mountains..... 84
Taylor, General..... 379, 380, 381, 382
Te-cum'seh..... 376
Tell, William..... 217
Ten-nes-see'..... 375
Tennessee River..... 386, 388
Ten'ny-son..... 281
Test Act..... 260
Teu-ton'ic Order of Knights..... 331
Tewks'bu-ry 182
Tex'as..... 380, 381, 382, 385
Thack'e-ray..... 281
Thames (*temz*), Battle of..... 377
Thames River..... 259
Thap'sus..... 96, 98
Theb'a-is..... 22
Thebes (*thebz*) in Egypt 22
Thebes in Greece..... 48, 49, 51
The-mis'to-cles (*-klēz*)..... 41, 42
The'o-dore, King of Abyssinia..... 280
The-od'o-ric..... 132
The-o-do'si-us (*-she-us*) the Great, 123, 124
Theodosius II..... 131, 132
The-re'sa, Maria..... 269, 270, 304
Ther-mop'y-læ..... 40, 62
Thescus (*the'suse*)..... 34
Thes'sa-ly..... 33, 35, 50, 56, 60
Thomas, General..... 388
Thot'mes II..... 29
Thotmes III..... 20
Thotmes IV..... 20
Thrace..... 32, 34, 44, 59, 117, 122, 139
Thras-y-bu'lus..... 46
Thu-cyd'i-des (*-sid-*)..... 45
Ti'ber..... 116
Ti-be'ri-us..... 104, 105, 106, 108
Tiberius of France..... 201
Tiberius Gracchus..... 86, 87
Ticinus (*te-si'nus*)..... 80
Ti-con-de-ro'ga..... 373
Tig'lath Pi-le'ser..... 15
Tigranes (*te-grah'nēz*)..... 92
Ti'gris River..... 14, 121, 131, 150, 351
Til'ly..... 326, 327
Til'sit..... 312
Ti-mo'le-on..... 78
Ti'mour..... 139
Tip-pe-ca-noe' (*-noo*)..... 376
Tir-ha'kah..... 21
Tis-sa-pher'nes (*-nēz*)..... 45
Ti'tus..... 109, 110
Titus, Colonel..... 256
To-lo'sa..... 225
Tor'bay 263
Tos'tig..... 159
Totila (*tot'e-lah*)..... 133
Tou-lon'..... 309
Tou-louse' (*-looz*)..... 191, 192, 207
Tou-raine'..... 195
Tours (*toor*)..... 144
Tou'ton, Battle of..... 182
Traf-al-gar'..... 274
Tra'jan..... 111
Tras-i-me'nus..... 80
Tre'bi-a..... 80
Treu'ton..... 371
Triple Alliance..... 260
Tri-um'vir-ate..... 94, 99
PAGE
Troyes (*trwah*). 179, 199, 200
Tu'dor, Edmund 232
Tudor Henry..... 183, 184
Tuileries (*tweel're*).....307, 318
Tul'lus Hos-til'i-us..... 67
Tu'nis. 193, 210
Turgot (*toor-go'*)..... 303
Turenne (*tu-ren'*), Marshal..... 298, 300
Tu'rin..... 266
Turkey.... 279, 325, 338, 342, 349, 351, 352
Tur-kis-tan'..... 343
Turks, Ottoman..... 137, 352
Turks, Seljuk..... 137
Tus'ca-ny..... 67
Tus'cu-lum..... 68
Ty'burn..... 234
Ty'ler, John..... 380
Tyler, Wat..... 176, 177
Tyn'dale, William..... 238
Tyne (*tīne*)..... 249
Tyre (*tīre*)..... 25, 27, 29, 53

U.

Ulm..... 311
Um'bri-a..... 75, 82
Union of England and Scotland..... 267
United States..... 275, 366, 369
Unterwalden (*oon'ter-wal-den*) 219
Ur..... 13
Ur'ban II., Pope..... 206
Uri (*oo're*)..... 219
Uruguay (*oo'roo-gwī*)..... 368
U'ti-ca..... 25, 82, 85, 96
U'trecht, Treaty of..... 266, 301, 366

V.

Va'lens..... 123
Val-en-tin'i-an I..... 123
Valentinian II..... 123
Valentinian III..... 125, 126, 147
Val-div'i-a..... 368
Va-le'ri-an..... 117, 118, 119
Van Ar'te-velde, Philip..... 199
Van Bu'ren, Martin..... 380
Vane, Sir Henry..... 251
Van Tromp, Admiral..... 255
Var'ro..... 80
Va'rus..... 105
Vas'co da Gama (*gah'mah*)..... 348
Vauban (*vo-bahng'*)..... 300
Veii (*ve'yī*)... 72
Ven'a-bles, Admiral..... 256
Ven'e-ti..... 126, 220
Ven-e'tia (*-she-ah*)..... 345
Ve-ne'tians (*-she-ans*)..... 351
Ven'ice... 214, 220, 235, 286, 287, 309, 350
Venezuela (*ven-e-zwa'lah*)..... 368
Vera Cruz..... 382
Vergniaud (*vārn'yo*)..... 308
Vermont..... 375
Vernon, Admiral..... 268
Vernon, Mount..... 375
Ve-ro'na..... 124, 214
Verrazzani (*ver-rat-tsah'ne*) 360
Ver-sailles'..... 304
Ve'rus Lucius..... 113
Ves-pa'si-an (*-she-an*) 109, 110
Vespucci, Amerigo (*ves-poot'che, ah-ma-re'go*, 359, 368

PAGE
Ve-su'vi-us..... 91, 110
Vicks'burg..... 387
Victor Emanuel..... 345
Victoria, Queen..... 277
Vienna (*ve-en'nah*), 113, 316, 328, 329, 334, 340, 350, 351
Villa Franca..... 321
Villiers (*vil'yerz*), George..... 206
Vimeira (*ve-ma'e-rah*)..... 274
Vin-do-bo'na..... 113
Vin-de-li'cia (*-lish'e-ah*)..... 104
Virgil..... 105
Vir-gin'i-a .. 241, 360, 361, 365, 370, 386
Vir-i-a'tus..... 86
Vi-tel'li-us..... 108, 109
Vit-to'ri-a..... 274
Vol'e-ro, Law of..... 70
Vol'ga..... 350
Vol'sci-ans (*-she-ans*)..... 71
Vol-taire'..... 305, 332

W.

Wa'gram..... 313, 314, 330
Wake'field, Battle of..... 181
Wales..... 147, 162, 170
Wallace, William..... 171
Wal-la'chi-a (*-ke-ah*)..... 278
Wal'len-stein (*-stīne*)..... 326, 327
Wal'pole, Sir Robert..... 268
Wal'sing-ham, Sir Francis..... 240
Wal'ter the Pennyless..... 206
Wal'worth..... 177
War'beck, Perkin..... 233, 234
War'saw..... 335
Warwick (*war'rik*), Earl of, 180, 181, 182
Washington City, 375, 377, 385, 386, 387
Washington, George, 272, 370, 371, 372, 373, 375
Waterloo, Battle of..... 275, 317
Wayne, General..... 375
Wel'les-ly, Sir Arthur, } 274, 275, 313, 316,
Wel'ling-ton, Duke of, } 317
Went'worth, Sir Thomas..... 247, 248
We'ser..... 45
Wes'sex..... 148
West Indies..... 359, 393
West Lo'cris..... 34
West-pha'li-a..... 298
Wick'liffe, John..... 176, 178

PAGE
William, Duke of Normandy..... 168
William I. of England (the Conqueror), 160, 189
William II. of England (Rufus), 161, 189
William III. of England, 263, 264, 265, 300, 336
William IV. of England..... 277
William III. of Holland..... 237
William the Silent..... 336
William and Mary..... 264
Williams, Roger..... 362
Wind'ham..... 273
Wind'sor..... 362
Win'kel-ried (*-reed*), Arnold of..... 219
Wolfe, General..... 270, 366
Wolsey, Thomas (Cardinal).. 234, 235, 236, 288
Worcester (*woos'ter*), Battle of.. 254, 256
Words'worth..... 276
Wur'tem-berg..... 330
Wy'att, Sir Thomas..... 238
Wycherly (*witch'er-le*)..... 262

X.

Xan-thip'pus..... 79
Xen'o-phon..... 16, 45, 46, 47
Xerxes I. (*zerx'eez*)..... 32, 40, 42, 54
Ximenes (*he-ma'nēz*)..... 346

Y.

York, City of..... 115, 121, 180, 252
York, Duke of (James).. 259, 260, 261, 363
York River..... 386
Young..... 276

Z.

Zach'a-ry, Pope..... 144
Zama (*za'mah*)..... 82
Zed-e-ki'ah..... 14, 28
Ze'la..... 96
Ze'no..... 132
Ze-no'bi-a..... 119, 120
Zen'ta..... 338
Zim'is-ces (*-sēz*)..... 136
Zis'ca, John..... 218
Zoll'ver-ein (*-īne*)..... 333
Zo-ro-as'ter..... 33
Zu'rich..... 343
Zwingle..... 343, 344

LBJa'15

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 018 511 745 5